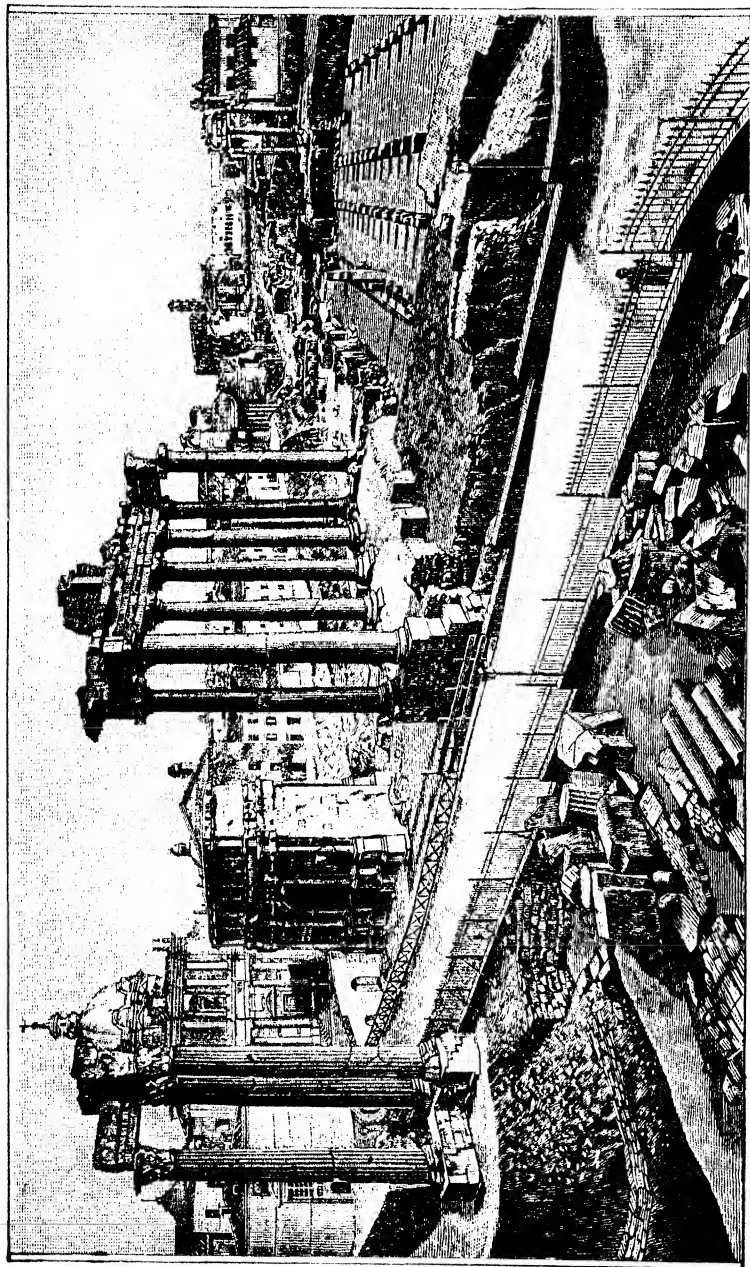


तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय

SANTINIKETAN
VISWA BHARATI
LIBRARY

937

M 99



THE ROMAN FORUM IN 1885.

Frontispiece

ROME: ITS RISE AND FALL

*A TEXT BOOK FOR HIGH SCHOOLS
AND COLLEGES*

BY

PHILIP VAN NESS MYERS, L.H.D.

AUTHOR OF "A HISTORY OF GREECE," "MEDIEVAL AND MODERN
HISTORY," "A GENERAL HISTORY," ETC.

SECOND EDITION

EXTENDED TO A.D. 800

GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON

COPYRIGHT, 1900, 1901, BY
PHILIP VAN NESS MYERS

• — — — •
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

111.2

The Athenæum Press
GINN & COMPANY • PRO-
PRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

PREFACE.



THIS book has been written in response to requests from many teachers that the author should expand his little textbook on Roman history into a more extended account of Roman affairs. Although the entire narrative has been laid on the lines drawn in the earlier book, still the present volume is practically a new work. The development of the Roman constitution during republican times has been traced carefully step by step; while special emphasis has been laid upon the causes that undermined the institutions of the republic, and which later brought about the fall of the empire. A somewhat larger space than usual has been given to the decay of paganism and to the rise and progress of Christianity in the empire. Three chapters at the end of the volume are devoted to an account of Roman civilization. The whole work is bound together with numerous cross-references from paragraph to paragraph, and the text supplemented by maps, illustrations, chronological tables, lists of colonies and provinces, census rolls and tabulated statements, which, it is believed, will be found especially serviceable to both teachers and students.

The title of the work has designedly been given a form calculated to make prominent the unity of the history of

Rome, something that is apt to be obscured by the way in which the transition from the republic to the empire is often represented. It is worth while, we think, to impress upon the mind of the student that the empire simply carried to completion the work begun by the republic -- the making of the whole world Roman; and that the essence of the history of Rome, as is so admirably shown by Thierry in his *Tableau de l'Empire Romain*, is the uninterrupted story of how she acted upon the world about her and how that world reacted upon her.

From the preface of the original work I transfer to this place my acknowledgment of special indebtedness in the preparation of the earlier slight sketch, which forms the nucleus of the present volume, to the following authors and works: Arnold's, Mommsen's, Niebuhr's, Merivale's, Liddell's, Gibbon's, and Leighton's histories of Rome; Long's *Decline and Fall of the Roman Republic*; Smith's *Rome and Carthage*; Froude's *Cæsar*; Guhl and Koner's *Life of the Greeks and Romans*; Hadley's *Introduction to Roman Law*; Dunlop's and Cruttwell's works on Roman literature; and Lanciani's admirable work, *Ancient Rome in the Light of Recent Discoveries*.

The works that I have used in the present revision and expansion are mentioned in the reference lists which follow the chapters throughout the book. In the case of important works that have appeared in different editions, as, for instance, Gibbon's and Mommsen's, the editions used have been indicated in connection with the first mention of these publications, and as a further aid to the searcher after the

passages recommended for parallel reading, the references have been made to chapter and subject as well as to page.

The maps and illustrations that enriched the earlier volume were, in the main, selected from various sources by the late Prof. William F. Allen, my associate in the preparation of Allen and Myers' *Ancient History*, for his part of that work. It was through the kind permission of his representatives that they afterward reappeared in my little history of Rome. In the present volume a large part of the illustrative material is new; in cases where the old cuts and maps have been retained, they have in almost every instance been re-drawn and reengraved. A considerable number of the maps in color are based on the charts accompanying Freeman's *Historical Geography of Europe*. A fair proportion of the cuts are from photographs; the remainder are chiefly a selection from Baumeister's *Denkmaeler des klassischen Altertums*, Oscar Jaeger's *Weltgeschichte*, and Schreiber's *Atlas of Classical Antiquities*.

It remains for me to express to my friends Dr. F. W. Coy, Principal of Hughes High School, Cincinnati, Dr. George B. Wakeman, Instructor-elect in History in the University of California, and Mr. Joseph E. White of the Franklin School, Cincinnati, my grateful appreciation of the kindly interest they have taken in the progress of this work and the generous aid they have given me in its preparation.

P. V. N. M.

COLLEGE HILL, OHIO,

June, 1900.

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.



I HAVE embraced the opportunity afforded by an early call for a second edition of this book to extend the narrative to the year 800. This has been done in compliance with the request of teachers who have their work in history planned so as to meet the requirements of the Regents of the University of the State of New York and the recommendations of the Committee of Seven.

To many scholars and friends I am under deep obligation for services of various kinds. I gratefully acknowledge aid received from Dr. Eduard Meyer of the University of Halle and Prof. Henry F. Pelham of the University of Oxford, each of whom read the proofs of all the chapters up to the fall of Rome, A.D. 476, and favored me with his criticisms and suggestions.

But I am under still more special indebtedness to Prof. George Lincoln Burr of Cornell University, not only for the kind encouragement which he has given me in my work, but also for his generous courtesy in placing at my service his exact and wide scholarship by taking time from a great press of work to read and criticise the greater part of the proof-sheets covering the period between the fall of Rome and the restoration of the Empire in the West by Charles the Great.

COLLEGE HILL, OHIO,
August, 1901.

P. V. N. M.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.



PREFACE	iii
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS	ix
LIST OF MAPS	xi
TABLES AND CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARIES	xii

PART I. - ROME AS A KINGDOM.

(753? 509 B.C.)

CHAPTER

I. Italy and its Early Inhabitants	I
II. The Society and Government of Early Rome	11
III. The Roman Religion	25
IV. Rome under the Kings	39

PART II. - ROME AS A REPUBLIC.

(509-31 B.C.)

V. The Early Republic; Plebeians become Citizens with Full Rights. (509-367 B.C.)	62
VI. The Conquest of Italy. (367-264 B.C.)	111
VII. The First Punic War. (264-241 B.C.)	139
VIII. Rome and Carthage between the First and the Second Punic War. (241-218 B.C.)	154
SECTION I. — Rome	154
SECTION II. — Carthage	158
IX. The Second Punic War. (218-201 B.C.)	162
X. Events between the Second and the Third Punic War: Conquest of the East by Rome. (201-146 B.C.)	181
XI. The Third Punic and Numantine Wars	200
SECTION I. — The Third Punic War. (149-146 B.C.)	200
SECTION II. — The Numantine War. (143-133 B.C.)	205

CHAPTER	PAGE
XII. The Period of the Revolution (133-98 B.C.)	207
XIII. The Period of the Revolution (<i>Continued</i>). (98-78 B.C.)	235
XIV. The Period of the Revolution (<i>Concluded</i>). (78-31 B.C.)	264

PART III.—ROME AS AN EMPIRE.

(31 B.C.—A.D. 476.)

XV. The Establishment of the Empire and the Reign of Augustus Cæsar. (31 B.C.—A.D. 14)	315
XVI. From Tiberius to Marcus Aurelius. (A.D. 14-180) . .	334
XVII. The Empire under Commodus and "The Barrack Emperors." (A.D. 180-284)	371
XVIII. The Reign of Diocletian. (A.D. 284-305)	381
XIX. Reign of Constantine the Great and Establishment of Christianity as the Favored Religion of the Empire. (A.D. 306-337)	391
XX. Julian the Apostate and the Pagan Restoration. (A.D. 361-363)	405
XXI. The Last Century of the Empire in the West. (A.D. 376-476)	415
XXII. Summary of the Causes of the Fall of the Empire . .	445

PART IV. ARCHITECTURE, LITERATURE, LAW, AND SOCIAL LIFE.

XXIII. Architecture	456
XXIV. Literature, Philosophy, and Law	477
XXV. Social Life	512

PART V.—THE ROMANO-GERMAN OR TRANSITION AGE.

(A.D. 476-800.)

XXVI. The Old and the New	526
XXVII. The Barbarian Kingdoms	529
XXVIII. The Church and its Institutions	536
Section I.—The Conversion of the Barbarians . .	536
Section II.—The Rise of Monasticism	541
Section III.—The Rise of the Papacy	545

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

IX

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXIX. The Fusion of Latin and Teuton	552
XXX. The Roman Empire in the East	560
XXXI. The Rise of Islam	570
XXXII. Charles the Great and the Restoration of the Empire in the West	587
INDEX AND PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY	597

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

After photographs and from cuts taken from Baumeister's *Denkmaeler des klassischen Altertums*, Oscar Jaeger's *Weltgeschichte*, Schreiber's *Atlas of Classical Antiquities*, and other reliable sources.

	PAGE
1. The Roman Forum	Frontispiece
2. Scene on the Tiber	5
3. An Ancient Etruscan Tomb	7
4. Wall-Painting of an Etruscan Banquet	8
5. Ruined Temples at Paestum	9
6. Sacrificial Victims ¹	27
7. Head of Janus	29
8. Vestal Virgin	30
9. Divining by Means of the Appearance of the Entrails of a Sacrificial Victim	31
10. The Site of Tibur, the Modern Tivoli	40
11. An Ancient Roman Coin bearing the Prow of a Ship	46
12. A Section of the Servian Wall	47
13. The Cloaca Maxima	48
14. View of the Capitoline	49
15. Roman Soldier	53
16. The Capitoline Wolf	58
17. Lictors	63
18. Samnite Warrior	116
19. View on the Appian Way	124
20. The Prow of a Roman War-Ship	145
21. The Column of Duillius	147
22. Augur's Birds	151
23. Hannibal	162
24. Philip V. of Macedonia	175

¹ From a photograph secured at Rome by Miss Lucy M. Blanchard, the author's former pupil, and kindly loaned by her for reproduction.

	PAGE
25. Publius Cornelius Scipio (Africanus Major)	179
26. Coin of Antiochus the Great	187
27. Perseus of Macedonia	188
28. Marius	232
29. Coin of the Italian Confederacy	240
30. Mithradates the Great	247
31. Pompey the Great	271
32. Roman Trading Vessel	276
33. Julius Cæsar	299
34. Marcus Brutus	302
35. Mark Antony	303
36. Octavius as a Youth	305
37. Cicero	306
38. Augustus	316
39. Mæcenas	326
40. The Pantheon (Exterior)	329
41. Tiberius	334
42. Galba	346
43. Vespasian	347
44. "Judæa Capta"	348
45. Triumphal Procession from the Arch of Titus	349
46. The Colosseum (Exterior)	350
47. A Street in Pompeii	351
48. Trajan	355
49. Bridge over the Danube, built by Trajan	356
50. Trajan's Column	357
51. Battle Scene from Trajan's Column	358
52. Besieging a Dacian City	359
53. The Roman Wall in Northern Britain	361
54. Hadrian	363
55. Roman Soldiers attacking a German Fortress	367
56. Commodus (as Hercules)	371
57. Caracalla	375
58. Triumph of Sapor over Valerian	378
59. Diocletian	381
60. Arch of Constantine, as it appears to-day	393
61. Julian the Apostate	407
62. Germans crossing the Rhine	416
63. Roman Signal-Towers, Sentries, and Storehouse on the Danube	418
64. The Pantheon (Interior)	457

	PAGE
65. Ruins of Theatre at Aspendos	459
66. The Colosseum (Interior)	461
67. Grotto of Posilipo	464
68. The Pont du Gard, near Nîmes	465
69. The Claudian Aqueduct	467
70. Great Hall of the Baths of Diocletian	469
71. Bathing Chair	470
72. Peristyle of a Pompeian House	471
73. Ruins of the Palace of the Cæsars	472
74. Mausoleum of Hadrian	475
75. Vergil	488
76. The Orator Quintus Hortensius	495
77. Seneca	501
78. Chariot-Racing	517
79. Gladiators	519
80. Semicircular Dining-Couch	521
81. Roman Lamentation for the Dead	525

LIST OF COLORED MAPS.

1. Italy before the Growth of the Roman Power after	2
2. The Mediterranean Lands at the Beginning of the Second Punic War, 218 B.C.	140
3. The Roman Dominions at the End of the Mithradatic War, 64 B.C.	280
4. The Roman Empire at the Death of Augustus, A.D. 14 . . .	320
5. The Roman Empire under Trajan, A.D. 117	360
6. The Roman Empire divided into Prefectures	400
7. Barbarian Inroads on the Fall of the Roman Empire . . .	434
8. General Reference Map of the Roman Empire at its Greatest Extent	444
9. Europe in the Reign of Theodoric (about A.D. 500)	530
10. Greatest Extent of the Saracen Dominions (about A.D. 750) .	578
11. Europe in the Time of Charles the Great (A.D. 814)	592

LIST OF SKETCH MAPS.

	PAGE
1. The Mountain System of Italy	3
2. Rome under the Kings	50
3. The Ager Romanus (B.C. 450)	79
4. The Ager Romanus (B.C. 338)	118
5. Route of Hannibal	163
6. Central Italy at the Time of the Second Punic War	167
7. Plan of the Battle of Cannæ	170
8. Roman Britain	353
9. Rome under the Empire	370

TABLES AND CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARIES.

1. The Senate, the Assemblies, and the Magistrates of the Republic	107
2. Table of Latin Colonies in Italy	137
3. Table of Civic [Roman] Colonies in Italy	138
4. Chronological Summary of Roman History to the End of the Republic	312
5. List of Roman Provinces chronologically arranged	313
I. — Provinces Organized under the Republic	313
II. — Provinces Organized under the Empire	314
6. Table showing the Number of Roman Citizens at Different Periods of the Republic and the Empire	333
7. Table of Roman Emperors from Augustus to Marcus Aurelius	368
8. Table of Roman Emperors from Commodus to Romulus Augustus	444
9. Final Partition of the Roman Empire	444

ROME: ITS RISE AND FALL



PART I.—ROME AS A KINGDOM.

(753?—509 B.C.)



CHAPTER I.

ITALY AND ITS EARLY INHABITANTS.

1. Divisions of the Italian Peninsula. — Before Rome rose to greatness, the name *Italia* was limited to a small district in the southwestern part of modern Italy. By the beginning of the Christian era, however, it had come to embrace the whole of the peninsula from the Alps to the Sicilian straits. We shall, from the outset, use the name in its latest and widest application.

As a matter of convenience, the Italian peninsula is generally conceived as consisting of three sections, — Northern, Central, and Southern Italy. The first comprises the great basin of the river Po (*Padus*), lying between the Alps and the Apennines. In ancient times this part of Italy included three districts, namely, Liguria, Gallia Cisalpina, and Venetia. Liguria embraced the southwestern and Venetia the northeastern part of Northern Italy. Gallia Cisalpina lay between these two districts, occupying

the finest portion of the valley of the Po. It received its name, which means "Gaul on this (the Italian) side of the Alps," from the Gallic tribes that about the fifth century before our era found their way over the mountains and settled upon these rich lands.

The countries of Central Italy were Etruria, Latium, and Campania, facing the Western, or Tyrrhenian Sea; Umbria and Picenum, looking out over the Eastern, or Adriatic Sea; and Samnium and the country of the Sabines, occupying the rough mountain districts of the Apennines.

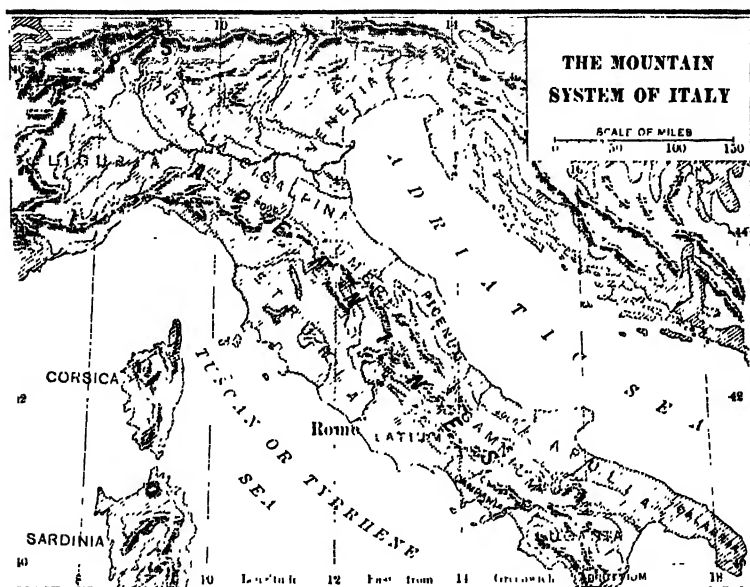
Southern Italy comprised the districts of Apulia, Lucania, Calabria, and Bruttium. Calabria¹ formed the "heel," and Bruttium the "toe," of the boot-like peninsula. The coast region of Southern Italy was called *Magna Græcia*, or "Great Greece," on account of the number and importance of the Greek cities that during the period of Hellenic supremacy were established on these shores.

2. Islands. — The large island of Sicily, lying just off the mainland on the south, may be regarded simply as a detached fragment of Italy, so intimately has its history been connected with that of the peninsula. In ancient times it was the meeting-place and battle-ground of the Carthaginians, Greeks, and Romans.

This island had some such influence upon Roman history as the islands of the Ægean Sea exerted upon the history of Greece. As the islands which stud that sea were, in effect, stepping-stones that drew the inhabitants of continental Greece to the shores of Asia Minor and thus made

¹ During the Middle Ages this name was transferred to the southwestern part of Italy, that is, to the toe of the peninsula, and this forms the Calabria of to-day.

those lands a part of the Greek world, so was Sicily a stepping-stone that, as we shall learn (par. 88), enticed the Romans to the African shore, and thus started them on a career of foreign conquest which did not end until their armies had made not only North Africa but all the other Mediterranean lands a part of the empire of Rome.



The great islands of Corsica and Sardinia, lying to the west of Italy, were early taken possession of by the Romans (par. 97), yet they exerted no special influence, as Sicily did, upon the course of their fortunes.

3. Mountains and Rivers.—Italy, like the other two peninsulas of Southern Europe, Greece and Spain, has a high mountain barrier, the Alps, along its northern frontier. Cicero once said that the gods had raised this wall to protect the peninsula from the northern barbarians. If such

was the purpose of the celestial mountain-builders, it was a strange oversight on their part that they should have left a great gap in the Eastern, or Julian Alps; for here is a low pass through which the barbarians, as we shall learn, often poured like devastating floods into Italy.

Corresponding to the Pindus range in Greece, the Apennines run as a great central ridge through Italy. Eastward of the ancient Latium they spread out into broad uplands, which in early times nourished a race of hardy mountaineers, who incessantly harried the territories of the more civilized lowlanders of Latium and Campania. Thus the physical conformation of this part of the peninsula shaped large sections of Roman history (par. 76), just as in the case of Scotland the physical contrast between the north and the south was reflected for centuries in the antagonisms of highlanders and lowlanders.

Italy has only one really great river, the Po, which drains the large northern valley, already mentioned, lying between the Alps and the Apennines. The streams running down the eastern slope of the Apennines are short and of little volume. Among them the Aufidus, the Metaurus, and the Rubicon are connected with great matters of history. On the banks of the Aufidus was fought the great battle of Cannæ (par. 111); upon the Metaurus, Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal, was defeated in the Second Punic War (par. 118); and into the Rubicon it was that Cæsar plunged when he cast the die for the empire of the world (par. 195).

Among the rivers draining the western slopes of the Apennines, the one possessing the greatest historic interest is the Tiber, on the banks of which Rome arose. North

of this stream is the Arno (*Arnus*), which watered a part of the old Etruria; and south of it, the Liris, one of the chief rivers of Campania.

4. **The Front and the Back of the Land.**—The physical structure of a country, that is, the position and the trend of its mountain chains, the course of its rivers, the slope of



SCENE ON THE TIBER.

(After an old engraving.)

its plains and valleys, and the distribution of its seaports, determines which side shall be the front and which the back of the country — a matter often of very great importance.

Now Northern Italy fronts the east. This circumstance brought it about that the field of mercantile and political enterprise of the great city of Venice, which in mediæval times grew up near the mouth of the Po, should be the countries of the Eastern Mediterranean.

But Middle and Southern Italy, on the other hand, front

the west. The Apennines here hug the eastern shore of the peninsula, and thus render that coast precipitous, with few good havens for ships. On the west, however, the mountains recede from the sea, and several wide and rich plains stretch from their feet to the waters of the Tyrrhenian Sea. On this side also are several fine harbors, the most celebrated of which is that of Naples (*Næapolis*).

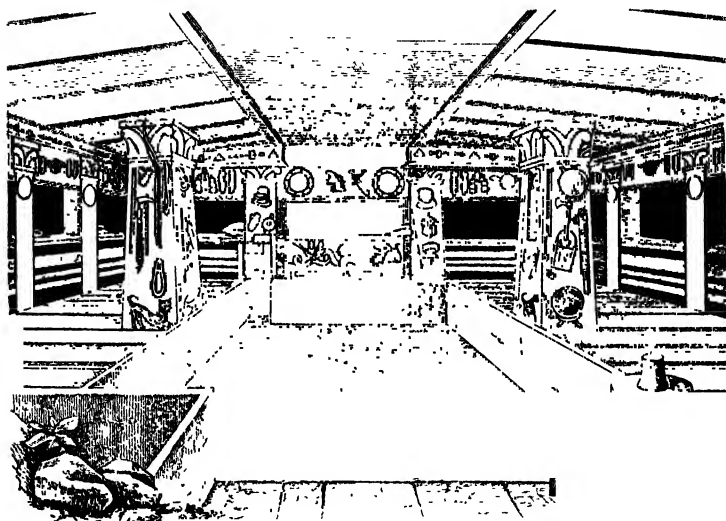
Thus, as we have said, this part of the peninsula turns its face westward. What makes it important for us to notice this circumstance is the fact that Greece faces the east, and that thus these two peninsulas, as the historian Mommsen expresses it, turn their backs to each other.² This brought it about that Rome and the cities of Greece had almost no dealings with one another for many centuries. Had the two lands faced each other, their fortunes might early have been united, and thus the whole course of the history of antiquity might have been changed.

5. Early Inhabitants of Italy. — There were in early times three chief races in Italy: the Italians, the Etruscans, and the Greeks.³ The Italians, a branch of the Aryan family, embraced two principal stocks, — the Latin and the Umbro-Sabellian (Umbrians, Sabines, Samnites, Lucanians, etc.), — the various tribes or nations of which occupied nearly

² "While the regions on which the historical development of Greece has been mainly dependent — Attica and Macedonia — look to the east, Etruria, Latium, and Campania look to the west. In this way the two peninsulas, so close neighbors and almost sisters, stand as it were averted from each other." — MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*, vol. i. p. 27.

³ Besides these principal races there were the Iapygians in Calabria, and the Venetians and the Ligurians in the north of the peninsula. The Ligurians were probably of non-Aryan race, but the others were of Aryan relationship, both of them belonging to the Illyrian race.

all Central, and a considerable part of Southern, Italy.⁴ Most important of all the Italian peoples were the Latins, who dwelt in Latium, between the Tiber and the Liris. These people, like all the Italians, were near kindred of the Greeks, and brought with them into Italy those customs, manners, beliefs, and institutions that formed the



AN ANCIENT ETRUSCAN TOMB.

(This is the so-called "Tomb of Reliefs," at Cervetri, the ancient Cære, in Etruria. The walls and pillars are decorated with arms and utensils in painted relief, doubtless intended as a substitute for the articles themselves. — SCHREIBER, *Atlas of Classical Antiquities*.)

common possession of the various branches of the great Aryan race. Their life was for the most part that of shepherds and farmers. The leading representatives of

⁴ Notice carefully the large area covered by the Italian color on the accompanying map (p. 2). The Italian race formed the best part of the material out of which the real Roman nation was formed.

this branch of the Italians were the Romans, of whose social and religious life and political arrangements we shall come to speak in subsequent chapters.

Among the Umbro-Sabellian folk, the Samnites are of special interest to the student of Roman history, for the reason that they were one of the most formidable of the enemies of early Rome, and were conquered by the Romans only after long and stubborn fighting.

The Etruscans, a wealthy, cultured, and sea-faring people of uncertain race and origin, dwelt in Etruria, now called Tuscany after them. They here formed a league of twelve cities, prominent among which were Volsinii, Tarquinii, Veii, Caere, Clusium, and Arretium. Before the rise of the Roman people they were the lead-

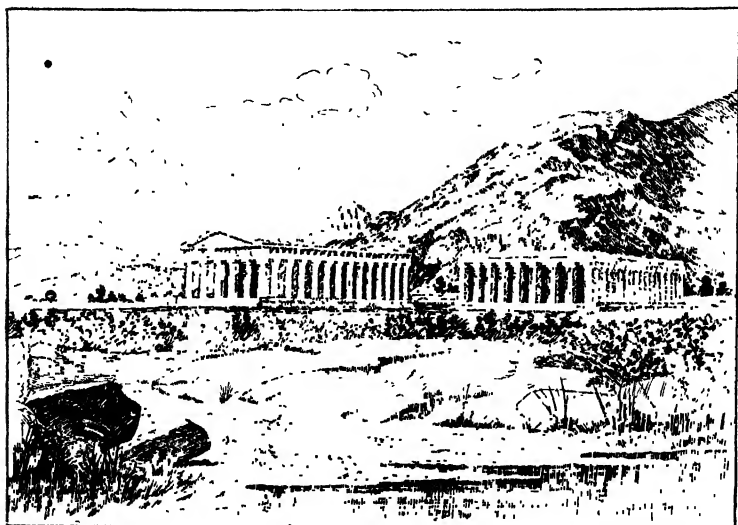


WALL-PAINTING OF AN ETRUSCAN BANQUET.

(From an Etruscan tomb of the fifth century B.C. This cut illustrates, among other things, the state of art among the Etruscans at that early date. Banqueting scenes are favorite representations on Etruscan tombs, sarcophagi and funeral urns. The participants "were represented in the height of social enjoyment to symbolize the bliss on which their spirits had entered." — DENNIS, *Cities and Cemeteries of Etruria*, vol. i. p. 445.)

ing race in the peninsula. Numerous art remains, rock-cut tombs, fragments of walls, massive dikes to keep back the sea, and long drainage tunnels piercing the sides of

hills, show the advance in civilization that they had made at a very remote date. Certain elements in their culture, as for instance the alphabet they used, lead us to believe



RUINED TEMPLES AT PÆSTUM.

(Pæstum was the Greek Posidonia, in Lucania. These ruins form the most noteworthy existing monuments of the early Greek occupation of Southern Italy.)

that they had learned much from the Greek cities in Southern Italy. The Etruscans in their turn became the teachers of the early Romans and imparted to them at least some minor elements of civilization, including hints in the art of building and various religious ideas and rites (par. 23).

Some five hundred years before our era, the Gauls came over the Alps, pressed the Etruscans out of Northern Italy, in which quarter this people had in very early times formed a confederacy like that they established in Etruria, and settling in those regions, became the most formidable enemies of the infant republic of Rome (par. 68).

The Greeks began their settlement in lower Italy during the age of Greek colonial expansion, that is to say, towards the end of the eighth century B.C. Among the cities that they founded here was Tarentum (Taras), which at one time had a severe fight with Rome (par. 82). The Greeks also established many colonies in the eastern portion of Sicily. Of the cities here, Syracuse was the one of most importance for Roman history (par. 114). Through the medium of these various Greek cities the Romans were taught the use of letters and given valuable suggestions in matters of law and constitutional government.

REFERENCES. — [The books that at the ends of the different chapters have been suggested for parallel reading, are, of course, only a selection out of a vast literature. With very few exceptions, the references have been restricted to works in English. The particular books and chapters which it has been thought would prove most helpful and stimulating to young readers have been indicated by asterisks. The most of the books thus marked, aside from the extended histories of Mommsen, Ihne, Merivale, and Gibbon, are monographs or one-volume works on special subjects, and consequently can, at small expense, be added to the school library, should it happen that they have not already found a place there. For further references, and for valuable hints and suggestions in regard to courses of study and reading in Roman history, the student should consult the latest edition of C. K. Adams' *Manual of Historical Literature*.]

MOMMSEN (T.), **History of Rome* (trans. by W. P. Dickson), vol. i. chaps. i. and ii. FREEMAN (E. A.), *The Historical Geography of Europe*, vol. i. (text) pp. 7-9, 43-49. TOZER (H. F.), *Classical Geography* (Literature Primers, edited by John Richard Green), chaps. ix. and x. MERIVALE (C.), *History of the Romans under the Empire*, vol. iv. pp. 414-416; for some interesting observations on the evidence afforded by ancient geographical names of the wooded character in early times of the districts about Rome. DENNIS (GEO.), *The Cities and Cemeteries of Etruria*, vol. i. "Introduction." The author probably exaggerates the debt which the early civilization of Rome owed to the preceding culture of Etruria.

CHAPTER II.

THE SOCIETY AND GOVERNMENT OF EARLY ROME.

6. **The Roman Family.** — One great difference between modern and ancient society is that modern society is made up of individuals, while ancient society was made up of groups of individuals. Thus in early Rome — and Rome in this respect is representative of all the primitive cities of Greece and Italy of which we possess any knowledge — we find composing the community various groups, bodies, or associations of persons.

First, at the bottom as it were of Roman society and forming its ultimate unit, was the family; a group, however, quite different in its composition, and in the rules and usages determining the mutual duties and relations of its members, from the group that among us bears the same name.

The typical Roman family consisted of the father (*paterfamilias*) and mother, the sons, together with their wives and sons, and the unmarried daughters. When a daughter married she became a member of the family to which her husband belonged. Marriage in early times was usually solemnized by a sacred religious ceremony,⁷ for the reason,

⁷ Marriage, however, assumed different forms among the Romans, and was brought about by different ceremonies. The most formal and sacred rite was that known as *confurreatio*, from the cake of meal (*farreus panis*) that constituted the offering. In later times marriage lost its sacredness and the marital tie became very lax (par. 312).

as we shall see in a moment, that the family was a group of co-worshippers, as well as a group of kinsmen, and the bringing in of a new member, like the young wife, was a matter that concerned the guardian spirits of the association.

The most important feature or element of this family group was the authority of the father. His power over each and all of its members was legally absolute.⁸ He was the proprietor of the family in almost the same sense that he was the proprietor of its goods and lands. He could sell his wife or his son just as he could sell one of his slaves. He was the sole judge of the members of the family, and could put to death without appeal even a son grown to man's estate. For the son, though married and living in his own house, and holding perhaps high office in the state, remained under the power of the father during the father's lifetime. Late in the period of the republic a father actually put to death his son who was at the time a senator.⁹

But although this power of the father was in early Rome thus wholly unlimited by the constitution and laws of the state, still it was restricted by custom and religion, just as among ourselves many acts are legal which, however, are disapproved by conscience and public opinion. Custom required that the father in exercising his authority as judge should seek the advice of the nearest relatives of the

⁸ The husband's authority over his wife, however, was not absolute unless his marriage had been celebrated in one of the three ways (*confarreatio*, *coemptio*, and *usus*) which alone could transfer the daughter out of the father's power into that of her husband. This branch of the power of the *pater-familias* was designated by the term *manus*; and that which concerned his children was known as the *patria potestas*.

⁹ The son was implicated in the conspiracy of Catiline (par. 188).

accused, although he was not bound to follow the counsel they might give. And religion and the public conscience also laid their restraints upon the father. The father who exercised his authority with flagrant injustice or tyranny was execrated by his fellow-citizens and was regarded as accursed.

The father was the high priest of the family; for the family, as we have said, had a common worship. This was the cult of its dead ancestors. The spirits of these were believed to linger near the old hearth. If provided with frequent offerings of meat and drink, they would, it was thought, watch over the living members of the family and aid and prosper them in their daily work and in all their undertakings. If they were neglected, however, these spirits became restless and suffered pain, and in their anger would bring trouble in some form upon their undutiful kinsmen.

It was this worship of ancestors that, as we have intimated, made the Roman family a religious body, and which caused it to be so exclusive and to close its doors against all strangers; for the spirits of its dead members could be served only by their own kith and kin. It was sacrilege for a stranger to sacrifice at a family altar not his own. But by a certain religious ceremony such a person could be adopted into a family, and thus could acquire the same rights as its members by birth or by marriage to participate in its worship and festivals.

When the father died, the sons became free, and each in his own household now came to exercise the full authority that the father had held. The mother and unmarried daughters became the wards of their nearest male rela-

tives, so that frequently the mother came under the tutelage of her sons, and the daughter under that of her brothers.

7. Dependents of the Family : Clients and Slaves.— Besides those members constituting the family proper, there were attached to it usually a number of dependents. These were the clients and slaves. The client was a person standing to the head of the family, who was called his patron, in a relation which, in some respects, was like that of the mediæval serf to his lord, and in others like that of the feudal vassal to his suzerain. He held a position between the slave and the son. The class of clients was probably made up of homeless refugees or strangers from other cities, or of manumitted slaves, dwelling in their former master's house. They were looked upon as members of the family to the extent that they were allowed to participate in its worship and its festivals. They were free to engage in business at Rome, and to accumulate property, though whatever they gathered was legally the property of the patron.

The duty of the patron was in general to look after the interests of his client, especially to represent him before the legal tribunals. The duty of the client, on the other hand, was faithfulness to his patron, and the making of contributions of money to aid him in meeting unusual expenses.

The clients, as we shall see, were an influential class in early Rome, while the usage or principle of clientage constituted at all periods of Roman history a most important feature of Roman life and society. A large clientage was regarded as the crown and glory of a patrician house.¹⁹

¹⁹ The clients of the later republican and imperial periods were as a rule freedmen, who on emancipation assumed the gentile name of their former master. Under the early empire the clients making up the following of a great man were often most servile and despicable characters.

The slaves were simply adjuncts of the family. They constituted merely a part of its property. There were only a few slaves in the early Roman family, and these were held for service chiefly within the home and not in the fields. They relieved the mother and daughters of the family of the coarser work of the household. It was not until later times, when luxury crept into Rome, that the number of domestic slaves became excessively great (par. 318).

8. The Place of the Family in Roman History. — Such in briefest outline was the early Roman family. It would be difficult to overestimate the influence of this group upon the history and destiny of Rome. It was the cradle of at least some of those splendid virtues of the early Romans that contributed so much to the strength and greatness of Rome, and that helped to give her the dominion of the world.

It was in the atmosphere of the family that were nourished in the Roman youth the virtues of obedience and of deference to authority. When the youth became a citizen, obedience to magistrates and respect for law was with him an instinct and indeed almost a religion. And, on the other hand, the exercise of the parental authority in the family taught the Roman how to command as well as how to obey — how to exercise authority with wisdom, moderation, and justice.

9. The Clan or Gens. — Having gained some idea of the Roman family, we may pass with briefer notice the other groups or bodies in the Roman community, for the reason that each of these larger associations seems to have been modelled upon the family, and consequently repeated many of its characteristic features.

First above the family stood the clan or gens. This was

probably in the earliest times simply the expanded family, the members of which had outgrown the remembrance of their exact relationship. Yet they all believed themselves to have had a common ancestor and called themselves by his name — as, for instance, in the case of the Fabii, the Claudii, the Julii, and so on. The gens, like the family, had a common altar and its members participated in a common worship. Like the family, again, it had clients, who in some cases formed a numerous body.

As the family circle could be enlarged by the adoption of individuals into the group, so could the clan be augmented by the adoption, in a similar way, of families. Even entire clans could be, and often were, formed artificially, the natural clan of kinsmen being taken as a model. In such a case the ancestor worshipped by the clansmen was of course a factitious personage.

10. The Curia. — The family and the gens of which we have been speaking were simply, at the time when Rome first appears before us as a city, social and religious groups, and not political divisions of the state. If they ever had been political units or bodies, they had now lost all political significance. But it was different with the next highest group or division of the community, namely, the *curia*, which has been compared to the ward of the modern city.

This was the most important political division of the people, as the family was the most important social group. So important was it that according to some authorities it gave a special name to the Romans — *Quirites*, that is, "men of the curies."¹

¹ Mommsen, however, derives this name from *quiris* or *curis*, "lance," and *ire*. *History of Rome*, vol. i. p. 107.

We do not know whether the members of a curia looked upon themselves as kinsmen, as did the members of the family and of the gens. They had, in any event, a common worship, held common festivals, and possessed priests who in the name of the association offered sacrifices on the common altars.

What made the curia so important a division of the community was the fact that the levies for the army were made by curies, and that the voting in the primitive assembly of the people, as we shall explain presently (par. 15), was done by these same bodies. There were thirty curies in the original Rome.

11. The Tribe.—Above the curies was the tribe, the largest subdivision or subgroup of the community. It had, so far as our knowledge goes, neither magistrates nor assemblies of its own. In early Rome there were three tribes, each composed of ten curies.

12. The City.—These various groups or organizations, — the families, the gentes, the curies, the tribes, — forming successive strata, as we have indicated, of the social and political structure, made up the community of early Rome. This city, like all the cities of ancient Greece and Italy, was a “city-state,” that is, an independent sovereign body like a modern nation. As such it possessed a constitution and government which bound all the different groups or bodies which we have been describing into an organic whole, directed and controlled their common activities, and brought the many-membered community into international relations with the similar communities by which it was surrounded.

Of this constitution and government we will now pro-

ceed, in the paragraphs immediately following, to give a short account.

13. The King. — At the head of the early Roman state stood a king, the father of his people, holding essentially the same relations to them that the father of a family held to his household. He was at once ruler of the nation, commander of the army, and judge and high priest of his people. In theory his power was absolute. He was preceded by servants called lictors, each bearing a bundle of rods (the *fascēs*) with an ax bound therein, the symbol of his power to punish by flogging and by putting to death (par. 45).

14. The Senate. — Next to the king stood the senate, or "council of the old men," composed of the "fathers" or heads of the ancient clans of the community. It consisted of three hundred members, a number corresponding to the traditional number of gentes composing the early city. This number remained unchanged until the later period of the republic (par. 178). The senators were appointed by the king and held their position for life.

One special duty of the senate was the election of a king in cases where the king died without having named a successor. This was done in the following way: One of the senators was chosen as a "between-king" or "king for an interval" (*interrex*). On or before the expiration of five days this temporary king chose another of his colleagues as *Interrex*. And thus the kingly office continued to be filled by this system of rotation until the permanent king was named.

Another very important function of the senate was its right and duty, acting rather in a judicial than in a legislative capacity, to examine carefully every law or resolution

passed in the public assembly (par. 15), and if it was found to violate the constitution of the state, or any treaty Rome had entered into with another city, or the rights of any citizen, to nullify it by refusing to give to the measure the vote of ratification required to render it legal and binding.

A third function of the senate was to give counsel to the king whenever he desired it. Especially was the opinion of the senators sought by the king on resolutions which he was proposing to lay before the assembly of citizens. The king thus learned beforehand whether they were likely to ratify the proposal after its approval by the people.

15. The Popular Assembly. — The popular assembly (*comitia curiata*) comprised all the citizens of Rome; that is, all the members of the curial divisions (par. 12) old enough to bear arms. It was this body that, acting upon proposals laid before it by the king, enacted the laws of the state, determined upon offensive war, and also elected the king, or at least ratified the king's nomination of his successor.² It also confirmed the wills of citizens and sanctioned the adoption of a stranger by a family, or the admission of a new clan among the clans of a tribe (pars. 6 and 9). Every resolution or measure of this assembly, however, as has already been explained (par. 14), required for its validity the confirming vote of the senate.

The manner of taking a vote in this assembly should be noticed, for the usage here was followed in all the later legislative bodies of the republican period. The voting

² Mommsen supposes that the assembly simply concurred in the nomination made by the ruling king, who before his death thus provided for the succession.

was not by individuals, but by curies; that is, each curia had one vote, and the measure before the body was carried or lost according as a majority of the curies voted for or against it.

It should be further noticed that this assembly was not a representative body, like a modern legislature, but a primary assembly, that is, a meeting composed of all the citizens of Rome, each being present in his own person as a member of the community, and not as a delegate representing some division, or some class, of the state. All of the later assemblies at Rome were like this primitive assembly of patricians. The Romans never learned, or at least never employed, the principle of representation, which constitutes the very basis of modern democratic government, and without which device government by the people in the great states of the present day would be impossible. How important a bearing this lack of a representative system had upon the political fortunes of Rome and the development of the constitution of the city, we shall learn later (par. 166).

16. The Patricians and the Rights of the Roman Citizen. — The heads of the ancient gentes at Rome, who constituted the senate (par. 14), were called *patres*, or “fathers,” whence it probably came that all the members of these groups were called *patricians*, that is, “children of the fathers.”

These patricians formed the hereditary nobility of the earlier Roman state. They alone possessed the full rights and privileges of citizenship.

And here we must acquaint ourselves with what the

rights and privileges of full Roman citizenship embraced. The rights of the Roman citizen were divided, first, into private rights and public rights.

The chief private rights were two, namely, the right of trade (*jus commercii*) and the right of marriage (*jus connubii*). The right of trade or commerce was the right to acquire, to hold, and to bequeath property (both personal and landed) according to the forms of the Roman law. This in the ancient city, where business and property both tended towards a monopoly in the hands of the citizens, was an important right and privilege.⁸

The right of marriage was the "right of contracting a full and religious marriage." Such a marriage could take place only between patricians. Marriage between clansmen and non-clansmen was contrary to the law of the ancient city; and it was only after a long struggle, as we shall learn (par. 63), that the non-clansmen at Rome acquired this important right of intermarriage with the members of the exclusive social and religious organizations which we have described in the earlier part of this chapter.

The three chief public or political rights of the Roman citizen were the right of voting in the public assemblies (*jus suffragii*), the right to hold office (*jus honorum*), and the right of appeal from the decision of a magistrate to the people (*jus provocationis*).

These rights taken together constituted the most highly valued rights and prerogatives of the Roman citizen. What

⁸ In some modern states aliens are not allowed to acquire landed property; in Roman terms there is withheld from them a part of the *jus commercii*.

we should particularly notice is that the Romans adopted the practice of bestowing these rights in instalments, so to speak. For instance, the inhabitants of one vanquished city would be given a part of the private rights of citizenship, those of another perhaps all of this class of rights, while upon the inhabitants of a third place would be bestowed all the rights, both private and public. This usage created many different classes of citizens in the Roman state; and this, as will appear later, was one of the most important matters connected with the internal history of Rome.

Now in primitive Rome the patricians alone, that is, the clansmen, possessed all these rights of citizenship. Some of the private rights they shared with an inferior class in the state, as will appear in the following paragraph, but the chief political rights they jealously guarded as the sacred patrimony of their own order.

17. The Plebeians or Citizens with Partial Rights. — When Rome first appears in history, we notice a large class in the community who enjoy only a part of the rights of citizenship as these have been enumerated in the preceding paragraph. We cannot be quite certain as to how this class was first formed, but it seems to have embraced (1) refugees from various quarters, (2) the inhabitants of subjugated Latin towns and other places, (3) immigrant traders from other cities who had taken up their permanent residence at Rome and entered into business there, and (4) freedmen and other clients ⁴ (par. 7).

⁴ This latter class seem only gradually to have detached themselves from the interests of the patrician order, and to have cast in their fortunes with the other plebeians.

The greater number of the plebeians were petty land-owners, holding and tilling with their own hands farms of a few acres in extent in the near neighborhood of Rome.

From what has already been said of them, it will be seen that these plebeians possessed at least one of the most important rights of Roman citizenship, namely, the private right of engaging in trade. But from most of the other rights and privileges of the full citizen they were wholly shut out. They could not contract a legal marriage with one of the patrician order. They could not hold office nor appeal from the decision of a magistrate. A large part of the early history of Rome is made up of the struggles of these plebeians to secure for themselves social and political equality with the patricians.⁵

⁵ The student who consults different authorities is apt to be confused by the fact that some writers, like the historian Ihne, refer to the plebeians of early Rome as citizens, while others, like Mommsen, call them non-burgesses or "tolerated aliens." This is simply a matter of definition. All that is necessary on the part of the student in order to avoid mental confusion is to bear in mind what is said in par. 16 about the rights of Roman citizenship being bestowed in instalments, and the creation thereby of many different grades of citizens. Whether the bestowal upon any class of one of these several rights, as, for instance, the *jus commercii*, which the plebeians possessed, shall be allowed to constitute them citizens, though of course citizens with only partial rights, is, as we have said, a mere matter of definition.

REFERENCES. — MOMMSEN (T.), *History of Rome*, vol. i. chap. v. pp. 88–122, "The Original Constitution of Rome." TIGHE (A.), ***The Development of the Roman Constitution*, chaps. ii. and iii. pp. 28–58. This little book gives a rapid but admirable survey of the growth of the constitution up to the time of the empire. The student would do well to read it carefully before taking up Mommsen's history or Ihne's larger work. COULANGES (FUSTEL DE), **The Ancient City* (from the French), bk. ii. chap. i., "Religion was the Constituent Principle of the Ancient

Family"; and chap. x., "The Gens at Rome and in Greece." IHNE (W.), **Early Rome* (Epoch Series), chaps. vii. viii. and ix. pp. 104-106. FOWLER (W. W.), *The City-State*, chaps. ii. and iii.; deals suggestively with the genesis and nature of the city-state in Greece as well as in Italy. MOREY (WM. C.), ***Outlines of Roman Law*, chap. i., "The Organization of Early Roman Society."

CHAPTER III.

THE ROMAN RELIGION.

18. The Place of Religion in Roman History. — In Rome, as in all the ancient cities of Italy and Greece, religion and the state were not separated, as they are in some of the most advanced nations to-day, as, for example, in our own country. Religion was a part of the constitution of the city. And this part of the constitution was not worked by a special class of persons. There was no priesthood at Rome,⁶ such as we find in Egypt, India, and most other oriental lands. The ordinary magistrates of the city possessed a sort of sacerdotal or priestly character. So wise and prudent did this union of civic and religious functions in the same persons seem to Cicero that he declared that the fathers who arranged it thus must have been inspired by the gods.

Since almost every magisterial act was connected in some way with the rites of the temple or the sacrifices of the altar, it happens that the political or secular history

⁶ The *flamines* ("kindlers"?), or priests appointed to maintain the cult of particular deities, and the members of the sacred colleges (par. 24) cannot be regarded as forming such a caste. They were chosen from the body of citizens, and were simply the religious servants of the state. "The Romans, notwithstanding all their zeal for religion, adhered with unbending strictness to the principle that the priest ought to remain completely powerless in the state, and, excluded from all command, ought like any other burgess to render obedience to the humblest magistrate." — MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*, vol. i. p. 232.

of the Romans is closely interwoven with their religion. Therefore, in order to understand the transactions of the period upon which we are about to enter, we must first acquaint ourselves with at least the prominent features of the religious institutions and beliefs of the Romans.

19. **The Nature of the Roman Gods.** — The Roman idea of the gods was very different from the Greek conception. The Greeks possessed a lively imagination, and pictured to themselves the divinities of Olympus under clear-cut human form and figure. So vivid was this picturing that often the shining forms of the gods appeared to the pious Greek in his dreams — and sometimes in his waking hours. So real were they, and so like men in all their feelings and passions, that the Greeks invented a thousand stories about their loves and hates, their occupations and adventures. Hence the beautiful mythology, and art too, of the Greeks.

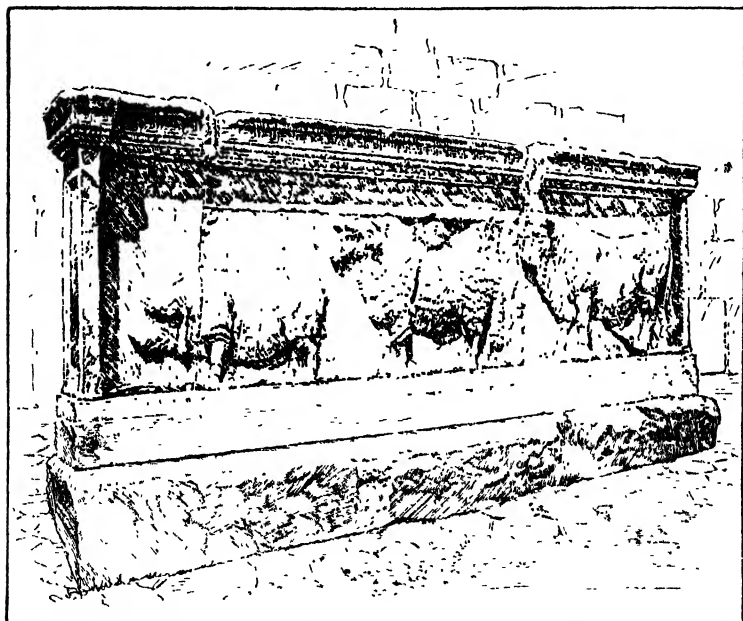
Now the Romans possessed little or none of this vivid Greek imagination. Their gods were simply vague personifications of the parts, powers, and processes of nature, and of every thought, act, and relation of men. The early Roman temples are said to have contained no images or statues of the gods, but merely some symbol of divinity, as, for instance, "a stone for Jupiter, the holy lance for Mars, the fire for Vesta."⁷ The Romans first learned to represent their gods under human form from the Greeks, either directly or through the medium of the Etruscans.

But this dim world of spirits formed nevertheless a very positive factor in the life of the ancient Roman. He conceived the two worlds, this visible world of men and that invisible world of spirits, to be very closely related. He

⁷ Leighton, *History of Rome*, p. 37.

thought of the gods as watchful of the conduct of their worshippers, and as interested in their affairs. Hence the Roman was in his way very religious, and exceedingly scrupulous in rendering to the divinities the worship due them.

20. **The Utilitarian Character of the Religion.**—The Roman did not, however, serve his gods for naught; he expected



ANIMALS FOR THE SACRIFICE: SUS—OVIS—TAURUS.⁸

from them a full equivalent for the sacrificial victims that he offered them, for the incense that he burned upon their altars, for the gifts he hung up in their temples, and for

⁸ The animals here shown—a swine, a sheep, and a bull—were offered as a lustratory sacrifice which ended the Ambarvalian festivals (par. 23, n. 3), in which the fields were purified and blessed. This interesting piece of relief-sculpture was recently discovered in the great forum at Rome.

the costly games and spectacles he provided for their entertainment in the circus and the amphitheatre.

And the gods, on their part, were ready to meet this expectation. They gave counsel and help to their faithful followers, and secured them good harvests and a successful issue of their undertakings. On the other hand, neglect angered the gods and caused them to bring upon their unfaithful worshippers all kinds of troubles and calamities --- dissensions within the state, defeat of their armies in the field, drought, fire and flood, pestilence and famine.

But their anger could be turned aside or appeased by expiatory sacrifices and offerings. "The profound and fearful idea of substitution also meets us here: when the gods of the community were angry and nobody could be laid hold of as definitely guilty, they might be appeased by one who voluntarily gave himself up (*devovere se*); noxious chasms in the ground were closed,⁹ and battles half lost were converted into victories, when a brave burgess threw himself as an expiatory offering into the abyss or upon the foe."¹⁰

21. The Legal Character of the Religion. — Another noteworthy feature of the Roman religion was its legal character; for the Roman religion was a sort of contract between the gods and their worshippers. If the worshippers performed their part of this contract, then the gods were bound to fulfil theirs.

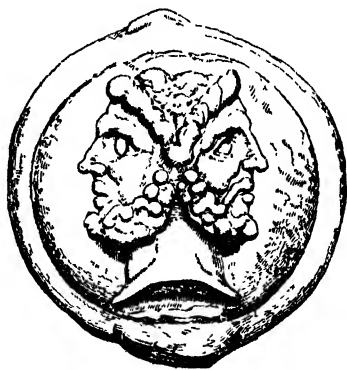
⁹ The reference is to the legend of Marcus Curtius. In the year 359 B.C., a great chasm having opened in the forum, this heroic youth, mounting his horse, plunged into the gulf, and through such self-sacrifice appeased the gods, and closed the crevice. See Livy, vii. 6.

¹⁰ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. i. pp. 232, 233. For instances of commanders voluntarily devoting themselves to death, see pars. 77 and 81.

But the Roman was ever ready to take advantage of a flaw in a contract and to overreach in a bargain, and making his gods like unto himself, he imagined that they would act in a like manner. If the worshipper through ignorance, inadvertence or accident had failed to carry out his part of the contract in every particular and to the very letter, the gods were supposed to be ready and disposed to take advantage of this in order to avoid carrying out their part of the engagement. Hence the anxious care with which the Romans performed all the prescribed religious rites and ceremonies. If there was any mistake made in the recital of the given formulas, or any interruption of the sacred ceremony, then the whole must be repeated in order to insure that there be no flaw in the proceedings which might be taken advantage of by the gods.

22. The Chief Roman Deities ; the Lares and Penates. — At the head of the Roman pantheon stood Jupiter, identical in all essential attributes with the Hellenic Zeus. He was the special protector of the Roman people. To him, together with Juno and Minerva, was consecrated a magnificent temple upon the summit of the Capitoline hill, overlooking the forum and the city.

Mars, the god of war, standing next in rank, was the favorite deity and the fabled father of the Roman race, who were fond of calling themselves the "Children of



HEAD OF JANUS.

(From a Roman coin.)

Mars." They proved themselves worthy offspring of the war-god. Martial games and festivals were celebrated in his honor during the first month of the Roman year,



VESTAL VIRGIN.

which bore, and still bears, in his honor, the name of March.

Janus was a double-faced deity, "the god of the beginning and the end of everything." The month of January was sacred to him, as were also all gates and doors. The gates of his temple were always kept open in time of war and shut in time of peace.

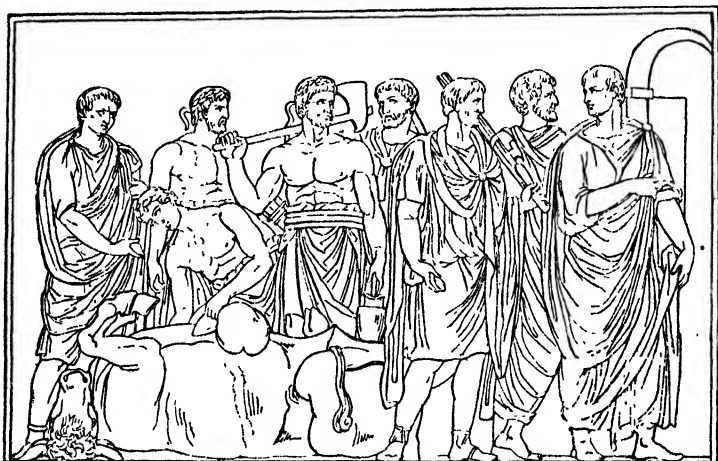
The fire upon the household hearth was regarded as the symbol of the goddess

Vesta. Her worship was a favorite one with the Romans. The nation, too, as a single great family, had a common national hearth, in the Temple of Vesta, where the sacred fires were kept burning from generation to generation by six virgins, daughters of the Roman state.¹

¹ For an interesting account of the remains of the House of the Vestals, brought to light by recent excavations, see Lanciani's *Ancient Rome in the Light of Recent Discoveries*, chap. vi.

The Lares and Penates were household gods. Their images were set in the entrance of the dwelling. The Lares were the spirits of ancestors, which were thought to linger about the home as its guardians.

This worship of ancestors was one of the most important elements in the religion of the ancient Romans. It was this religion of the domestic hearth that helped greatly to



DIVINING. BY MEANS OF THE APPEARANCE OF THE ENTRAILS OF A SACRIFICIAL VICTIM.

(This was with the Romans a usual way of foretelling future events.)

make the Roman family what it was, that gave the father his priestly authority (par. 6), and that organized many of the institutions of the Roman state.² The student should bear this feature of the early Roman religion carefully in mind, for the reason that it formed to the very last the most vital element in it, and for the further reason that it was the germ out of which later grew important

² Read Coulanges, *The Ancient City*.

religious developments, as, for instance, the strange cult of the Cæsars (par. 216).

23. Oracles and Divination. — The Romans, like the Greeks, thought that the will of the gods was communicated to men by means of oracles, and by strange sights, unusual events, or singular coincidences. There were no true oracles at Rome. The Romans, therefore, often had recourse to those among the Greeks. Particularly in great emergencies did they seek advice from the celebrated oracle of Apollo at Delphi.

From Etruria was introduced the art of the haruspices, or soothsayers, which consisted in discovering the will of the gods by the appearance of the entrails of victims slain for the sacrifices.

24. The Sacred Colleges. — The four chief sacred colleges, or societies, were the Keepers of the Sibylline Books, the College of Augurs, the College of Pontiffs, and the College of the Herald.³

A curious legend is told of the Sibylline Books. An old woman came to Tarquinius Superbus (par. 39) and offered to sell him, but at an extravagant price, nine volumes. As the king declined to pay the sum demanded, the woman departed, destroyed three of the books, and then returning,

³ Among the minor colleges or priesthoods there were two companies or guilds of the *Salii*, or "leapers," and two of the *Luperci*, or "wolves." The duplication of these guilds arose probably through the union of primitive communities. In the month of March, the *Salii* "performed a war-dance in honor of Mars, and accompanied it by a song." The *Luperci* celebrated each year a festival known as the *Lupercalia*, in honor of the god Faunus, the Roman counterpart of the Greek god Pan. The *Fratres Arvales*, or "field brothers," twelve in number, constituted a guild or company whose duty it was to celebrate certain festivals known as the *Ambarvalia*.

offered the remainder at the very same sum that she had wanted for the complete number. The king still refused to purchase, so the sibyl went away and destroyed three more of the volumes, and bringing back the remaining three, asked the same price as before. Tarquin was by this time so curious respecting the contents of the mysterious books that he purchased the remaining volumes. It was found upon examination that they were filled with prophecies respecting the future of the Roman people. The books, which were written in Greek, were placed in a stone chest, and kept in a vault beneath the Capitoline temple; and special custodians were appointed to take charge of them and interpret them. The number of keepers throughout the most important period of Roman history was fifteen. The books were consulted only in times of extreme danger.

The duty of the members of the College of Augurs was to interpret the omens, or auspices, which were casual sights or appearances, particularly the flight of birds, by which means it was believed that Jupiter made known his will. Great skill was required in the "taking of the auspices," as it was called. No business of importance, public or private, was entered upon without the auspices being first consulted, to ascertain whether they were favorable. The public assembly, for illustration, must not convene, to elect officers or to enact laws, unless the auspices had been taken and found propitious. Should a peal of thunder occur while the people were holding a meeting, that was considered an unfavorable omen, and the assembly must instantly disperse.

It is easy to see how the power of the augurs might be

used corruptly for political ends. At first all the members of the college were patricians, and very frequently they would prevent the plebeians from holding a meeting by giving out that the auspices were not favorable; and sometimes, when matters were not taking such a course in the popular assembly as suited the nobles, and some measure obnoxious to their order was on the point of being carried, they would secure an announcement from the augurs that Jupiter was thundering, or manifesting his displeasure in some other way; and the people were obliged to break up their meeting on the instant. One of the privileges contended for by the plebeians was admission to this college, that they might assist in watching the omens, and that thus this important matter might not be left entirely in the hands of their enemies.

The College of Pontiffs was so called probably because one of the duties of its members was to keep in repair the Bridge of Piles over the Tiber.⁴ This guild was the most important of all the religious institutions of the Romans; for to the pontiffs belonged the superintendence of all religious matters. In their keeping, too, was the calendar, and they could lengthen or shorten the year, which power they sometimes used to extend the term of office of a favorite, or to cut short that of one who had incurred their displeasure. The head of the college was called *Pontifex Maximus*, or "Chief Bridge-builder," which title was assumed by the

⁴ The *Pons Sublicius*. This bridge united the city to the Janiculum, a fortified hill that formed the Roman outpost against the Etruscans on their side of the Tiber. It is possible, according to Mommsen, that *pons* originally signified not "bridge," but "way" generally, and that *pontifex* therefore meant "constructor of ways."

Roman emperors, and after them by the Christian bishops of Rome; and thus the name has come down to our times.

The College of Herald's (*Fetiales*) had the care of all public matters pertaining to foreign nations. Its members were the keepers of the treaties which Rome had made with other peoples, and the interpreters of international law. If the Roman people had suffered any wrong from another state, it was the duty of the heralds to demand satisfaction. If this was denied, and war determined upon, then a herald proceeded to the frontier of the enemy's country and hurled over the boundary a spear dipped in blood. This was a declaration of war. The Romans were very careful in the observance of this ceremony.

25. Sacred Games and Festivals.—The Romans had many religious games and festivals. Prominent among these were the so-called Circensian Games, or Games of the Circus, which were very similar to the sacred games of the Greeks. They consisted, in the main, of chariot-racing, wrestling, foot-racing, and various other athletic contests.

These festivals, as in the case of those of the Greeks, had their origin in the belief that the gods delighted in the exhibition of feats of skill, strength, or endurance; that their anger might be appeased by such spectacles; or that they might be persuaded by the promise of games to lend aid to mortals in great emergencies.⁵ At the opening of the year it was customary for the Roman magistrate, in

⁵ "The games were an entertainment offered to the guests [the gods, who were "the guests of honor"], which were as certainly believed to be gratifying to their sight as a review of troops or a deer hunt to a modern European sovereign."—WHEELER, *Dionysos and Immortality*, p. 11.

behalf of the people, to promise to the gods games and festivals, provided good crops, protection from pestilence, and victory were granted the Romans during the year. So, too, a general in great straits in the field might, in the name of the state, vow plays to the gods, and the people were sacredly bound to fulfil the promise. Plays given in fulfilment of vows thus made were called votive games.⁶

Towards the close of the republic these games lost much of their religious character, and at last became degraded into mere brutal shows given by ambitious leaders for the purpose of winning popularity.

The *Saturnalia* were a festival held in December in honor of Saturn, the god of sowing. It was an occasion on which all classes, including the slaves, who were allowed their freedom during the celebration, gave themselves up to riotous amusements; hence the significance we attach to the word *saturnalian*. The well-known Roman Carnival of to-day is a survival of the ancient Saturnalia.

26. Defects of the Religious System. — What we have already said has revealed some of the most serious defects of the Roman religion; but an additional observation or two at this point respecting these will help us all the better to understand some facts in the religious life of the Romans which will later come under our notice.

First, the character of the Roman divinities and their relation to their worshippers were such that the system did not awaken or nourish devotional feeling, as did, for instance, the religion of the ancient Hebrews. There is nothing in the remains of Roman literature corresponding to the devotional Psalms of the Bible.

⁶ For the festivals of the Lupercalia and Ambarvalia, see par. 24, n. 3.

Again, in this religion, so legal and formal (par. 21), there was an almost entire separation of morality and worship. The state of the heart of the worshipper was a matter of no concern, if only the prescribed acts were performed, and the prescribed words pronounced, precisely in accordance with the given formulas. Such a religious belief could, of course, afford but feeble support to true morality, or do little in the way of awakening and fostering the sentiments of love, gratitude, and reverence towards the gods.

These, together with other defects of their religious system, such as its vague and unsatisfactory teachings in regard to the future life, caused the Romans, at an early period, to begin to supplement it by borrowings from the religious systems of the various peoples with whom they came in contact. To meet the lack of companionable gods, they borrowed the attractive divinities of Greece, or transferred the attributes of these to their own gods. To supply those emotional elements that were so conspicuously wanting in their own system, the Romans introduced into it the venerable, mysterious, and awe-inspiring cults of the Orient, such as the worship of the Great Mother (Cybele) of Phrygia, of Isis of Egypt, and of Mithra of Persia. To supply the lacking moral element there was a late effort made to borrow the morality of Christianity (par. 256).

But none of these additions or borrowings changed fundamentally the system as it stood at first. There came a time when it no longer satisfied the religious wants and cravings of men, and it gave place to another religion which had been worked out by Judæa, and which taught

new views of God and his relations to man, and new conceptions of duty and of the future life.

REFERENCES. — MOMMSEN (T.), *History of Rome*, vol. i. bk. i. chap. xii. pp. 218-245. IHNE (W.), *Early Rome* (Epoch Series), chap. vi. pp. 92-104, "Religious Institutions in the Time of the Kings." INGE (W. R.), *Society in Rome under the Cæsars*, chap. i. pp. 1-8; deals with the religion of the early Romans. COULANGES (FUSTEL DE), *The Ancient City*, bk. i. chaps. i.-iv., "Ancient Beliefs."

CHAPTER IV.

ROME UNDER THE KINGS.

27. Latium before Rome. — What was the origin of the city of Rome? What was the genesis of that remarkable social and political constitution with which it first appears in history, and which we have endeavored to describe in a preceding chapter?⁷

We shall best find answers to these questions by first noticing what the condition of Latium was before Rome arose. With the aid of tradition and the science of primitive culture, or comparative ethnology, we can form some sort of a picture of the land and its people in prehistoric times — a picture which, though somewhat dim and blurred in its details, we may rely upon with a good degree of certainty as corresponding, in its broad outlines, very nearly with actual fact.

In very early times Latium, the “flat country,” as the name probably signifies, lying south of the lower course of the Tiber, was dotted with settlements of the Latin people. These settlements were merely groups of clans (par. 9), or village communities, to which has been given the name of cantons. The villages constituting any given canton were generally, it would seem, scattered over the little cantonal territory, in order that the villagers, who were petty farmers

⁷ Chap. ii.

and shepherds, might be near the land they cultivated or the common pastures out upon which they drove their sheep and cattle; but sometimes the villages appear to have been huddled together on some eligible spot, such as a low hill might afford. Whether or not the clans forming a canton were united by blood or descent is unknown; but at any rate they had a common worship, and thus were closely united by the tie of religion, if not by that of relationship.



THE SITE OF TIBUR, THE MODERN TIVOLI.

(After an old engraving. To the left, the ruins of an ancient temple of Vesta.)

Each canton had a central stronghold, which served as a refuge for the villagers in times of danger, and as a common meeting-place for their markets and religious festivals. The site chosen for this canton-centre was, whenever practicable, some easily defended rock or hill, of which the situation of Tibur, built on a spur of the Apennines

jutting out into the Campagna, and that of Alba Longa, on the isolated Alban Mount, are good illustrations.⁸

According to tradition there were in all Latium in pre-historic times thirty of these clan-clusters, or embryo-cities, as we, with our eye upon their future, may designate them. Each formed a sovereign, independent state, with power to wage war against its neighbors or to make treaties with them. Before the dawn of history these cantons had formed an alliance among themselves known as the Latin League. The leadership in this confederacy was held at first by Alba Longa, just referred to, the "Long White City," which received its name from the circumstance that the buildings of the place stretched along the summit of a white ridge of the Alban Hills.

The confederated cantons possessed a common god, Jupiter Latiaris, who had a sanctuary on the Alban Hills, whence he kept watch and ward over the Latian plain. On the mount was celebrated each year what was known as the "Latin Festival."

28. The Beginnings of Rome. ---- It was in the midst of such an environment as that which we have described in the preceding paragraph that Rome arose and grew into greatness.

Among the cantons or embryo-cities of early Latium was one formed by the Ramnes, — whence possibly the name Romans, — a community of the Latin stock. The canton embraced three clans or villages, the dwellings of which were upon the slopes or at the foot of the Palatine mount, one of a cluster of low hills on the left or south bank of the Tiber, about fifteen miles from the sea. On the summit of the hill was the citadel or stronghold of the settle-

⁸ See map opposite page 78.

ment. Modern excavations have revealed portions of the foundations of the ancient walls, together with remains of two of the gates. The enclosure seems to have been large enough to allow at least many of the villagers to reside within its walls.⁹ This little Palatine settlement was called *Roma Quadrata*, or "Square Rome."

This little fortress-town we may regard as the nucleus around which grew up the Rome of history. It was intended doubtless to serve as an outpost to protect the northern frontier of Latium against the Etruscans, -- the most powerful and aggressive neighbors of the Latin people, -- and thus its inhabitants early became inured to military discipline and learned those military virtues which made them preëminent among their neighbors in the art of war even in a warlike age.

29. How Greater Rome was formed. -- In the neighborhood of the little Palatine settlement were two other canton-communities. One of these seems to have been a settlement established on the Quirinal, a hill close to the Palatine, by the Sabines, a sturdy people of near kin to the Latins. Respecting the exact location of the other community, we know nothing, nor are we informed as to their relationship to the Ramnes, but we may conjecture that they were of the Latin stock.

In times before history there took place between these three cantons something which, so far as our knowledge goes, never occurred in the case of any others of the clan-clusters of Latium. After hostile relations had been long maintained and much hard fighting had taken place between the rival communities, --- for in this way we may

⁹ See chart on page 50.

summarize the legend of these prehistoric times,¹⁰ — they accommodated their differences, united on equal terms to form a single nation, and learned to call themselves by the same name. The Capitoline hill was chosen for the location of the stronghold of the new and enlarged city.

Each of the old cantons constituted a tribe (*tribus*) or division of the new state. Each tribe was composed of ten curies. There were thus in the new city three tribes, known as the *Ramnes*, the *Tities*, and the *Luceres*,¹¹ thirty curies, and, if we are to follow the numbers given by tradition, three hundred gentes or clans. The cults and other institutions of the uniting communities were mingled and gradually modified to meet the needs of the new nation. Thus came into existence the Rome of the kings, with those social features and those political arrangements that we have already described.¹

30. Importance of this Prehistoric Union. — This confederation of the three little communities by the Tiber, by whatsoever means effected, was one of the most important matters, not only in the history of Rome, but in the

¹⁰ See pars. 40–44, in which are summarized the accounts which the Romans themselves gave of these matters.

¹¹ Some modern historians are of the opinion that the tribe bearing the name of Tities was confederated with the Ramnes in the way related in par. 41, and the Luceres in the manner set out in par. 42. Others, however, conceive both the Sabines and the Albans to have been incorporated with the Roman state subsequent to the formation of the threefold community by an original confederation effected in the earliest times, and of which even tradition had lost all remembrance.

¹ See chap. ii. In the new enlarged city, the earlier clans and cantons of course at once or gradually lost their political significance, and sank to the position of mere divisions of the larger aggregate, or lost all connection whatsoever with the political life of the new state, and retained their old organization for social or religious purposes alone.

history of civilization. It laid the basis of the greatness of Rome, and foreshadowed her marvellous political fortunes, just as the union of the thirteen English colonies on the Atlantic seaboard, now over one hundred years ago, laid the basis of our greatness as a nation, and determined what should be the political fortunes of the American people. For in each case it was not the mere fact of the creation of the wider union that was significant, but rather the nature of that union and the mode of its formation. In each instance what should be the principle of national expansion or growth in all after time was established.

In the case of early Rome the principle of national expansion adopted was what we may call the principle of incorporation.¹ Now the ancient city was a very exclusive association. On religious and other grounds it closed its gates against strangers. The rights and privileges of the citizens were not shared with aliens. The vanquished were made subjects or tributaries. But Rome at the very outset of her career adopted a more liberal policy than that adopted by any other ancient city-state. And for seven hundred years and more the Romans followed, more or less steadily and consistently, this good precedent set them in prehistoric times, and bestowed the freedom of their city, that is, the rights and privileges of Roman citizenship, upon the peoples they successively conquered, until at last the roll of Roman citizens had increased from a few thousand to several million names.² The way in which they did this, the reluctance at times with which they granted the boon to the vanquished, — this makes up a very large part of the internal history of Rome, and

² See the table of the census lists on page 333.

constitutes also a chief element of its interest and instructiveness.³

31. The Influence of Geography upon the Early History of Rome. — It was, without doubt, close neighborhoodship that brought about the union of the cantons which called the Rome of history into existence, — that forced upon the city at the very outset of her career that policy of expansion through incorporation under which the city never ceased to grow, or the list of her citizens to increase, until “Rome was the whole world and all the world was Rome.”

This is the ground of the declaration made by the historian Freeman to the effect that “the course of all history has been determined by the geological fact that certain hills by the Tiber were lower and nearer together than the other hills of Latium.”⁴ The thought in the mind of the historian Ihne is the same when he assigns as a chief cause of Rome’s greatness “the proximity of the Seven Hills to each other.”⁵

32. Influence of Commerce upon the Growth of Early Rome. — Besides the primary cause given in preceding paragraphs of the remarkable fortunes of Rome, various secondary causes contributed without doubt to the early and rapid growth of the city.

Among these a prominent place must be given to the advantages in the way of trade and commerce afforded by the fortunate situation of the city upon the Tiber. Its distance from the sea protected it against the depredations of the pirates who in early times swarmed in the Mediterranean

³ Consult particularly chap. v. and pars. 77, 164, 219, and 233.

⁴ *Chief Periods of History*, p. 41.

⁵ *Early Rome*, p. 6.

and swept away the cattle and the crops from the fields of the coast settlements, while its location on the chief stream of Central Italy naturally made it the centre of the lucrative trade of a wide reach of inland territory bordering



AN ANCIENT ROMAN COIN
BEARING THE PROW OF A SHIP.

(From the use of this symbol on the city's money we may assume that commerce held an important place in the life of early Rome.)

upon the Tiber and its tributaries. The early founding by the city of the seaport of Ostia at the mouth of the Tiber, and the adoption for its early coinage of the device of a ship's prow, are cited as evidences of the important place that commerce held in the early life of the Romans.⁶

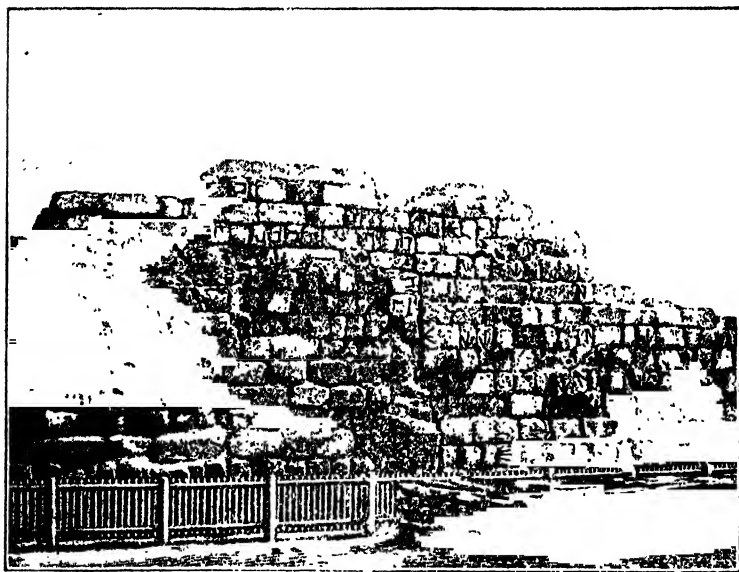
Without doubt, it was this commercial element in the life of the inhabitants of early Rome that helped to form the temper and bent of the Roman mind, and that contributed to give the city that place of influence and authority it held among the towns of Latium when first it appears in the light of history.

33. The Legendary Kings. -- For nearly two and a half centuries after the legendary founding of Rome (from 753 to 509 B.C.) the government was a monarchy. To span this period, the legends of the Romans tell of the reigns of seven kings,—Romulus, the founder of Rome; Numa, the lawgiver; Tullus Hostilius and Ancus Martius, conquerors both; Tar-

⁶ "Rome was in fact a commercial city, which was indebted for the commencement of its importance to international commerce."—MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*, vol. i. p. 128.

quinius Priscus, the great builder ; Servius Tullius, the reorganizer of the government and second founder of the state ; and Tarquinius Superbus, the haughty tyrant whose oppressions led to the abolition by the people of the office of king.

The traditions of the doings of these monarchs and of what happened to them blend hopelessly fact and fable. We cannot be quite sure even as to their names. Respecting Roman affairs, however, under the last three rulers (the



A SECTION OF THE SERVIAN WALL. (Present condition)

Tarquins), who were of Etruscan origin, some important things are related, the substantial truth of which we may rely upon with a fair degree of certainty ; and these matters we shall notice in the following paragraphs.

34. Growth of Rome under the Tarquins. — The Tarquins extended their authority over the whole of Latium. The

position of supremacy thus given Rome was naturally attended by the rapid growth of the city in population and importance. The original walls soon became too strait for the increasing multitudes; new ramparts were built—tradition says under the direction of the king Servius Tullius—which, with a great circuit of 'seven miles, swept around the entire cluster of seven hills on



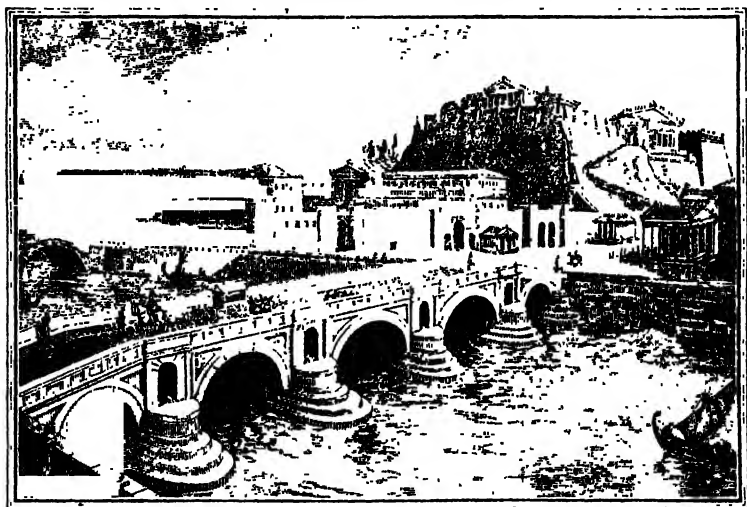
THE CLOACA MAXIMA.

the south bank of the Tiber, whence the name that Rome acquired of "the City of the Seven Hills."

A large tract of marshy ground between the Palatine and Capitoline hills was drained by means of the *Cloaca Maxima*, an arched canal, which was so admirably constructed that it has been preserved to the present day. It still discharges its waters through a great arch into the Tiber.⁷ The land thus reclaimed became the *Forum*, the

⁷ "There is no doubt that the work is simply wonderful. An immense sewer, built twenty-five centuries ago, on unstable ground under enor-

public market-place of the early city. At one angle of this public square, as we should call it, was the *Comitium*, an enclosure where assemblies for voting purposes were held. Standing on the dividing line between the comitium and the forum proper was the stand, later named the *Rostra*,⁸ from which the public speakers delivered their addresses.



VIEW OF THE CAPITOLINE.

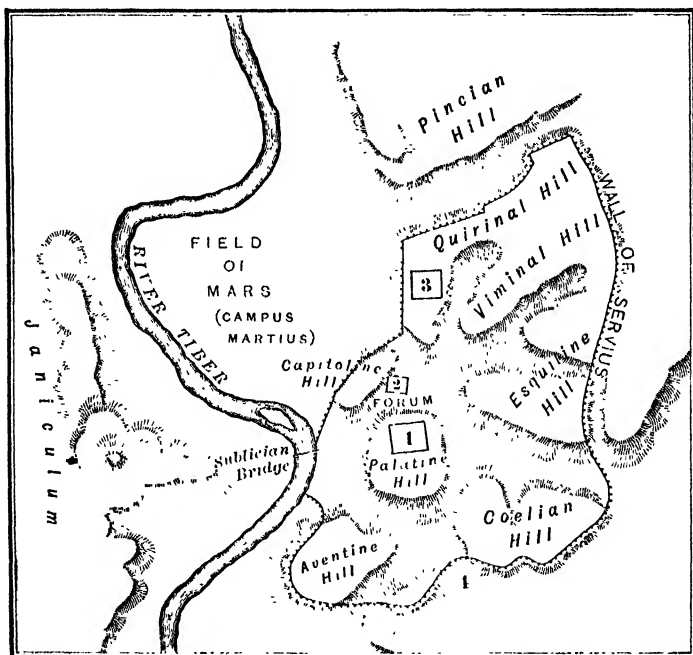
(A Reconstruction.)

This assembling-place, which after the creation of other fora came to be known as the *Forum Romanum magnum*, in later times was enlarged and decorated with various monuments and surrounded with splendid buildings and porticoes. It was the centre of the political, the religious, and the practical difficulties, which still answers well its purpose, is a work to be classed among the great triumphs of engineering." — LANCIANI, *Ancient Rome in the Light of Recent Discoveries*, p. 54.

⁸ So called because decorated with the beaks (*rostra*) of war-galleys taken from enemies (see par. 77).

and the business life of Rome. Here more was said, resolved upon, and done, than upon any other spot in the ancient world.

The Senate-house occupied one side of the forum; and facing this on the opposite side were the Temple of Vesta



ROME UNDER THE KINGS.

1. "Square Rome" (Roma Quadrata), the City of Romulus.
2. The Comitium.
3. The Sabine City.
4. The Wall of Servius Tullius.

and the palace of the king. Overlooking all from the summit of the Capitoline was the famous sanctuary called the Capitol, or the Capitoline Temple, where beneath the same roof were the shrines of Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva, the three great national deities.

Upon the level ground between the Aventine and the Palatine was located the *Circus Maximus*, the "Great Circle," where were celebrated the Roman games. The most noted of the streets of Rome was the *Via Sacra*, or "Sacred Way," which traversed the forum and led up the Capitoline hill to the temple of Jupiter. This was the street along which passed the triumphal processions of the Roman conquerors.

35. The Reforms of Servius Tullius : the Five Classes and the Four New Tribes. — It was the second king of the Etruscan house, Servius Tullius by name, to whom tradition attributes a most important change in the constitution of the Roman state.⁹ He made property instead of birth, or membership in the patrician clans (par. 9), the basis of the constitution.

Up to this time service in the army had been the duty and the privilege of the patricians, each of the three tribes (par. 11) furnishing to the army one thousand foot soldiers and one hundred horsemen. But the growing state had come to need a larger military force than the patrician order alone could maintain. Servius Tullius increased the army by requiring all landowners, whether patricians or plebeians, between seventeen and sixty years of age, to assume a place in the ranks.

The whole body of persons thus made liable to military service was divided into five classes, according to the amount of land each possessed. The largest landowners were enrolled in the first three classes, and were required

⁹ The reform itself is an historical fact, but it is possible that it was not effected by the efforts of any particular king. It may have been the result of a long period of slow constitutional development.

to provide themselves with complete armor; the smaller proprietors, who made up the remaining two classes, were called upon to furnish themselves with only a light equipment.

For the purpose of facilitating the levy or conscription of the army, Servius Tullius divided the city and its territory into four districts, which were like our wards and townships.¹⁰ All of the landowners residing in any one of these regions formed a tribe. There were thus created four new tribes, made up of freeholders. These tribes superseded the three original patrician tribes (par. 11). Though they bore the same name, still they were very different in character. Membership in one of the old tribes was determined by birth or relationship, while membership in one of the new tribes was determined by residence in a particular district, although after a person had once been enrolled in a certain tribe he remained a member of that tribe, notwithstanding he changed his dwelling-place.¹¹ Once a member of a tribe, always a member, was the rule in both cases.

The formation of these new tribes was a matter of very great importance for the internal history of Rome. Such a grouping of the patrician and the plebeian landowners tended of course to break down the wall of separation between the two orders and to unite them in a single body. These tribal divisions, too, as we shall learn, because they became voting units in the later legislative assemblies of the people, acquired great political importance. As fresh

¹⁰ These regions bore the following names: the *Palatine*, the *Sub-uran*, the *Esquiline*, and the *Colline*. Each district embraced not only a portion of the city proper, but also lands outside the city walls.

¹¹ This was not the rule at the very first, but it soon came to be the law.

territory was acquired by the Romans through conquest, new tribes were created, until there were finally thirty-five, which number was never exceeded.

36. The Army; the Legion.—The unit of the military organization was the century, probably containing at this time, as the name (*centuria*) indicates, one hundred men.¹ Forty-two centuries were united to form the legion, which thus at this period probably numbered four thousand two hundred men, its normal strength. The tactical formation of the legion was the old Grecian phalanx, which seems to have been borrowed from the Dorian cities of Magna Græcia. This legion-phalanx had probably a front of five hundred men, and a depth of six ranks. The heavy-equipped citizens made up the front, the light-equipped the rear, ranks. Attached to the legion, yet without constituting an organic part of it, was a considerable body of carpenters, musicians, and common workmen, made up of non-freeholders.



ROMAN SOLDIER.

There were at the period of the Servian reform four legions. Two, composed of the younger men, were for service in the field; the remaining two, made up of the older citizens, formed a sort of home guard.² Besides the

¹ Later the number of the body was increased so that the term *century* lost all numerical significance.

² The first class, known as the *juniors*, comprised all persons between

four legions there was a cavalry force of eighteen hundred men (eighteen centuries), made up of the richest land-owners. This brought the total strength of the army up to about twenty thousand men.

37. The Comitia Centuriata.—The assembling-place of those liable to military service, thus organized into centuries and classes, was on a large plain just outside the city walls, called the *Campus Martius*, or “Field of Mars.” The meeting of these military orders was called the *comitia centuriata*, or the “assembly of hundreds.”³ This body, which of course was made up of patricians and plebeians, came in the course of time to absorb the most of the powers of the earlier patrician assembly (*comitia curiata*).

As the voting in the *comitia curiata* was by curies (par. 15), so was the voting in the *comitia centuriata* by centuries. Since out of the total number of one hundred and ninety-three centuries eighty were embraced in the first class and eighteen in the cavalry, this manner of voting threw the preponderance of power in the assembly into the hands of the wealthy citizens.

38. Importance of the Servian Reforms.—The reforms of Servius Tullius were an important step towards the establishment of social and political equality between the two great orders of the state—the patricians and plebeians. The new constitution, indeed, as Mommsen says, assigned to the plebeians duties only, and not rights: but being called to discharge the most important duties of citizens,

the ages of seventeen and forty-six; the second class, known as the *seniores*, embraced the remaining persons liable to military duty.

³ This assembly was not organized by Servius Tullius, but it grew out of the military organization he created.

it was not long before they demanded all the rights of citizens; and as the bearers of arms they were able to enforce their demands. Indeed, their position in the state was radically changed. We shall see them from this on, availing themselves of the vantage ground on which they have been placed, gradually wresting from the patricians one concession after another until they have come into possession of all the rights of full and active citizenship.

Viewed from another standpoint, the standpoint of the sociological student, the reforms attributed to Servius Tullius mark simply one step in the transition of Roman society from the clan-stage of organization to the territorial. That is to say, they mark the transition from that primitive form of society in which the unit is a group of kinsmen (par. 6) and the political status of the individual is determined by the fact of his membership or lack of membership in such a group, to that form of society in which the individual is the unit, and the possession of a certain amount of property, or more generally residence alone, determines his status and his public rights and duties.

This reform movement at Rome was part of a revolution which was participated in by all the peoples of Greece and Italy who had reached the city stage of development. Thus, for instance, at just about the time that tradition represents Servius Tullius as effecting his reform at Rome, Solon, the great Athenian legislator, was instituting a similar reform in the constitution of Athens. There, also, the rule that no one could be a citizen with full rights unless a member of one of the ancient clans of the city was abrogated, and the new and more democratic rule, which made the ownership of a certain amount of property and not

birth in some family or clan the ground of participation in the rights and duties of citizenship, was established.

39. The Expulsion of the Kings.—The legends make Tarquinius Superbus, or “Tarquin the Proud,” the last king of Rome. He is represented as a monstrous tyrant, whose arbitrary acts caused both patricians and plebeians⁴ to unite and drive him and all his house into exile. This event, according to the Roman annalists, occurred in the year 509 B.C., only one year later than the expulsion of the tyrants from Athens.⁵

So bitterly did the people hate the tyranny they had abolished that they all, it is said, the nobles as well as the commons, bound themselves by most solemn oaths never again to tolerate a king, enacting that, should any one so much as express a wish for the restoration of the monarchy, he should be considered a public enemy, and be put to death.

⁴ From the situation existing immediately after the establishment of the republic we must, despite what tradition says of the matter, regard the revolution as having been effected by the patricians and in the interest of their own order exclusively.

⁵ The sixth and fifth centuries B.C. in ancient history correspond politically to the eighteenth and nineteenth in modern history. As the later period is characterized in the political sphere by the substitution of democracy for monarchy, so was the earlier era marked by the decay of monarchical and the growth of popular forms of government. Speaking of the abolition of monarchy at Rome, Mommsen says: “How necessarily this was the result of the natural development of things is strikingly demonstrated by the fact that the same change of constitution took place in an analogous manner through the whole circuit of the Italo-Grecian world. Not only in Rome, but likewise among the other Latins as well as among the Sabellians, Etruscans, and Apulians,—in fact, in all the Italian communities, just as in those of Greece,—we find the rulers for life of an earlier epoch superseded in after times by annual magistrates.”

LEGENDARY TALES PERTAINING TO THE EARLY
HISTORY OF ROME.⁶

40. Æneas and his Trojan Companions arrive in Italy.—After Troy had been taken by the Greeks, Æneas, led by the Fates, came in search of a new home to the Laurentian⁷ shores. King Latinus, when he learned that the leader of the band was Æneas, the son of Anchises by Venus, made a league of friendship with the strangers, and gave his daughter Lavinia in marriage to the Trojan hero. Æneas built a town which he called Lavinium, after the name of his wife.

The Trojans and the people of Latium were soon engaged in war with Turnus, king of the Rutulians, to whom Lavinia had been affianced before the coming of Æneas. In the battle that followed, the Rutulians were defeated, but King Latinus was killed; and thenceforth Æneas was king, not only of the Trojans, but also of the people over whom Latinus had ruled. To both nations he gave the common name of Latins.

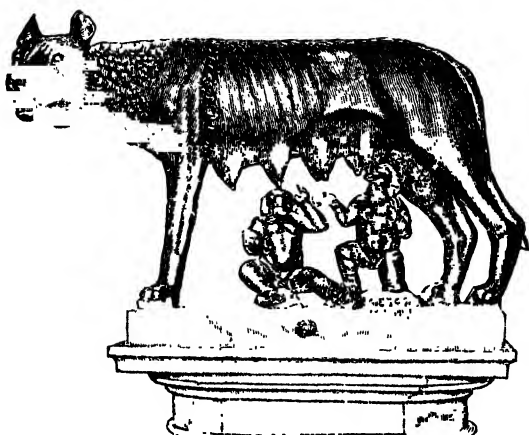
Æneas was followed in the government by his son Ascanius, who, finding Lavinium too strait for its inhabitants, left that town, and built a new city on the Alban Mount, to which was given the name of Alba Longa. In this city ruled Ascanius and a long line of his descendants. At length, by force and violence, ruled Amulius. He had gained possession of the kingdom by dethroning his brother Numitor, putting to death his male offspring, and making his daughter, Rhea Sylvia, a vestal, in order that she should remain unmarried. But Rhea brought forth twins, of whom the god Mars was declared to be the father. The cruel king ordered the children to be thrown into the Tiber. Now it so happened that the river had overflowed its banks, and the cradle in which the children were borne was finally left on dry ground by the retiring flood. Attracted by the cries of the children, a she-wolf directed her course to them, and with the greatest tenderness fondled and nursed them. There, in the care of the wolf, a shepherd named Faustulus found them, and carried them home to his wife, to be reared with his own children.

When the boys had grown to be men, they put to death the usurper Amulius, and restored the throne to their grandfather Numitor. Numitor now reigned at Alba; but Romulus and Remus—for so the brothers were named—had a strong desire

⁶ From Livy's *History of Rome*, i. and ii. In this connection read Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome*. As to the credibility of these legends, see par. 301.

⁷ Italian.

to build a city on the spot where they had been exposed and rescued. A shameful contest, however, arose between the brothers as to which of the two should give name to the new city. It was determined that the matter should be decided by augury (*par. 24*). Romulus chose the Palatine and Remus the Aventine hill, from which to watch for the omens. To Remus first appeared six



THE CAPITOLINE WOLF.

vultures; afterwards twelve appeared to Romulus. Hereupon each was proclaimed king by his followers,—Remus, on the ground that the birds had shown themselves to him first; Romulus, on the ground that the greater number had appeared to him. A quarrel ensuing, Remus was killed. Another account, however, says that Remus, when the walls of the new city had been raised to only a little height, leaped over them in derision; whereupon Romulus in anger slew him, at the same time uttering these words: “So perish every one that shall hereafter leap over my wall.” The city was at length built, and was called Rome, from the name of its founder.

41. The Romans capture the Sabine Women for Wives.—The new city, having been made by Romulus a sort of asylum or refuge for the discontented and the outlawed of all the surrounding states, soon became very populous, and more powerful than either Lavinium or Alba Longa. But there were few women among its inhabitants. Romulus therefore sent embassies to the neighboring cities to ask that his people might take wives from among them. But the adjoining nations were averse to entering

into marriage alliances with the men of the new city. Thereupon the Roman youth determined to secure by violence what they could not obtain by other means. Romulus appointed a great festival, and invited to the celebration all the surrounding peoples. The Sabines especially came in great numbers with their wives and daughters. In the midst of the games, the Roman youth, at a preconcerted signal, rushed among the spectators, and seized and carried off to their homes the daughters of their guests. This violation of the laws of hospitality led to a war on the part of the injured Sabines against the Romans. Peace, however, was made between the combatants by the young women themselves, who, as the wives of their captors, had become reconciled to their lot. The two nations were now combined into one, the Sabines removing to one of the Seven Hills. Each people, however, retained its own king; but upon the death of the Sabine king, Titus Tatius, Romulus ruled over both the Romans and the Sabines. During a thunderstorm Romulus was caught up to the skies, and Numa Pompilius ruled in his stead.

42. The Combat between the Horatii and the Curiatii.— In process of time a war broke out between Rome and Alba Longa. It might be called a civil war, for the Romans and Albans were alike descendants of the Trojan exiles. The two armies were ready to engage in battle when it was proposed that the controversy should be decided by a combat between three Alban brothers named the Curiatii, and three Roman brothers known as the Horatii. The nation whose champions gained the victory was to rule over the other. On the signal being given, the combat began. Two of the Romans soon fell lifeless, and the three Curiatii were wounded. The remaining Roman, who was unhurt, was now surrounded by the three Albans. To avoid their united attack, he turned and fled, thinking that they, being wounded, would almost certainly become separated in following him. This did actually happen; and when Horatius, looking back as he fled, saw the Curiatii to be following him at different intervals, he turned himself about and fell upon his pursuers, one after the other, and despatched them.

So in accordance with the terms of the treaty which the two cities had made, conditioned on the issue of the fight between the champions, Rome held dominion over Alba Longa. But the league between the Romans and the Albans was soon broken, and then the Romans, demolishing the houses of Alba Longa, carried off all the inhabitants to Rome, and incorporated them with the Roman state.⁸

⁸ For the sequel of this story, see Livy, i. 26.

43. The Exploit of Horatius Cocles. — After the expulsion of the Tarquins from Rome, they besought Porsenna, king of Clusium, a powerful city of Etruria, to espouse their cause, and help them to regain the kingly power at Rome. Porsenna lent a favorable ear to their solicitations, and made war upon the Roman state. As his army drew near to Rome, all the people from the surrounding country hastened within the city gates. The bravery of a single man, Horatius Cocles, alone prevented the enemy from effecting an entrance into the city. This man was posted as a guard on the Sublician Bridge, which led across the Tiber from the citadel of the Janiculum. The Janiculum having been taken by the enemy, its defenders were retreating in great disorder across the bridge, and the victors following closer after. Horatius Cocles called after his fleeing companions to break down the bridge, while he held the pursuers at bay. Taking his stand at the farther entrance of the bridge, he, with the help of two comrades, held the enemy in check, while the structure was being destroyed. As the bridge fell with a crash into the stream, Cocles leaped into the water, and amidst a shower of darts swam in safety to the Roman side. Through his bravery he had saved Rome. His grateful countrymen erected a statue to his honor in the comitium, and voted him a plot of land as large as he could plough in a single day.

44. The Fortitude of Mucius Scaevola. — Failing to take Rome by assault, Porsenna endeavored to reduce it by a regular siege. After the investment had been maintained for a considerable time, a Roman youth, Caius Mucius by name, resolved to deliver the city from the presence of the besiegers by going into the camp of the enemy and killing Porsenna. Through a mistake, however, he slew the secretary of the king instead of the king himself. He was seized and brought into the presence of Porsenna, who threatened him with punishment by fire unless he made a full disclosure of the Roman plots. Mucius, to show the king how little he could be moved by threats, thrust his right hand into a flame that was near, and held it there unflinchingly until it was consumed. Porsenna was so impressed by the fortitude of the youth, that he dismissed him without punishment. From the loss of his right hand, Mucius received the surname of *Scaevola*, "The Left-handed."

The sequel of the story is that Porsenna, having learned from Mucius that three hundred Roman youth had entered into a vow to sacrifice themselves, if need be, in order to compass his death, made a treaty of peace with the Romans and withdrew his army from before their city.

REFERENCES. — PLUTARCH, *Lives of Romulus and Numa*. (Stewart and Long's translation, 4 vols., is recommended). In the case of these particular lives, the student will of course bear in mind that he is reading Roman folklore; but it is worth while for the student of Roman history to know what the Romans of later times themselves believed respecting their early kings.

LIVY (Bohn), i. For a word in regard to the way in which Livy's account of the affairs of the early Romans should be read, see par. 301. MOMMSEN (T.), *History of Rome*, vol. i. bk. i. chaps. vi. and vii. pp. 123-159. HUNE (W.), ***Early Rome* (Epoch Series), chaps. i-v. pp. 1-91, and chaps. vii-ix. pp. 104-116; and the same author's *History of Rome* (English edition), vol. i. bk. i. chap. xiii. pp. 108-124, "The Roman People in the Times of the Kings." MACAULAY (T.), *Lays of Ancient Rome*.

PART II. — ROME AS A REPUBLIC.

(509-31 B.C.)

— — —

CHAPTER V.

THE EARLY REPUBLIC; PLEBEIANS BECOME CITIZENS
WITH FULL RIGHTS.

(509-367 B.C.)

45. Republican Magistrates ; the Consuls and the Dictator. — With the monarchy overthrown and the last king and his house banished from Rome (par. 39), the people set to work to reorganize the government. In place of the king, there were elected (509 B.C.), by the *comitia centuriata*, in which assembly the plebeians had a vote, two patrician magistrates, called at first *prætors*, or “leaders,” but later, *consuls*, or “colleagues.” These magistrates were chosen for one year, and were invested with all the powers, save some priestly functions,⁹ that had been exercised by the king during the regal period. In public each consul was attended, as the king had been, by twelve lictors, each bearing the “dread fasces” (par. 13).

Each consul had the power of obstructing the acts or vetoing the commands of the other. This was called the “right of intercession.” This division of authority weak-

⁹ These were devolved upon a magistrate known as *rex sacrorum*, or “king of the sacrifices.”

ened the executive, so that in times of great public danger it was necessary to supersede the consuls by the appointment of a special officer bearing the title of *dictator*, whose term



LICTORS WITH FASCES.

(The symbolic fasces — par. 13 — borne by these officers were probably of Etruscan origin. The Tarquins are said to have brought them to Rome along with other insignia of the kingly office)

of office was limited to six months, but whose power during this time was as unlimited as that of the king had been.

The dictator was nominated by one of the consuls acting under an order of the senate which must be obeyed, and was clothed with his sovereign authority (*imperium*) by the

comitia curiata.¹⁰ He was preceded by twenty-four lictors. The dictator always named as his lieutenant and representative a magistrate known as the "master of the horse" (*magister equitum*). Sometimes a dictator was appointed merely to hold an election, or to perform some religious ceremonial act.

A consul could not be impeached, or reached by any legal or constitutional process, while in office; but after the expiration of his term he could be prosecuted for any misconduct or illegal act of which he might have been guilty while holding his magistracy. This rule was applied to all the other magistrates of the republic.¹¹

Lucius Junius Brutus and Tarquinius Collatinus were the first consuls under the new constitution. But it is said that the very name of Tarquinius was so intolerable to the people that he was forced to resign the consulship, and that he and all his house were driven out of Rome.¹² Another consul, Publius Valerius, was chosen in his stead.

46. Conspiracy to restore the Tarquins; the Consul Brutus condemns his Sons to Death (509 B.C.). — The exiled king had

¹⁰ Our authorities usually represent the dictator as being appointed by the senate without any reference to the consuls. Practically the senate did appoint him: "According to an usage never established by law but never violated in practice, the creation of a dictatorship depended simply upon the resolution of the senate, and the fixing of the person to be nominated, although constitutionally vested in the nominating consuls, really under ordinary circumstances lay with the senate." — MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*, vol. i. bk. ii. p. 402.

¹¹ "No accusation was ever brought against an actual magistrate." — ILLI, *History of Rome*, vol. iv. p. 82.

¹² The truth is, he was related to the exiled royal family, and the people were distrustful of his loyalty to the republic.

partisans in Rome who were ready to take part in any movement looking to his restoration. An opportunity was soon afforded these persons to show how little in sympathy they were with the revolution that had overturned the old order of things. Tarquinius was scarcely outside of Rome before he sent commissioners back to the city, ostensibly for the purpose of asking the people to permit the property which he had left behind to be brought to him, but really for the object of enticing this disaffected party to join in a plot for restoring the monarchy. Such a conspiracy was formed. Among those who entered into it were the two sons of the consul Lucius Junius Brutus. Through a slave, the plans of the conspirators were revealed to the magistrates. The plot was thus frustrated, and those who had taken part in it were brought to justice. The consul Brutus, mindful of his duty as a public magistrate, suppressed the feelings of the father, and sternly executed the law of treason against his own sons. He caused them to be flogged and then beheaded in his presence.

This tradition, whether or not it preserves the memory of something that actually took place in the early days of Rome, is of value as illustrating what virtue in the public magistrate was most highly esteemed by the Romans. Above all other duties and obligations was placed that of unselfish devotion to the city. It was this Roman virtue of loyalty to public duty, this devotion on the part of the citizen to the interests of the state, that, more than any other quality of the Roman character, helped to make Rome great and to give her finally the government of the world. When the Romans lost this supreme virtue, as at last they did, then Rome's greatness departed.

47. **Tarquinius tries to reënter Rome by Force** (508–496 B.C.). — The conspiracy having miscarried, Tarquinius sought to reinstate himself in Rome by open war. He had various Etruscan allies and helpers, and particularly Lars Porsenna, king of Clusium. It is the annals of this war that the Romans embellished with the stories of Horatius Coclès and Mucius Scævola (pars. 43 and 44).

Taking advantage of the distress of the Romans, the Latin towns, which during the regal period had been forced to acknowledge the supremacy of Rome (par. 34), rose in revolt, with the result that almost all the conquests that had been made under the kings were lost.

The situation grew so serious that the Romans placed their affairs in the hands of a dictator (par. 45), Aulus Postumius by name, the first, according to some of our authorities, of a long line of such commanders, for the military or the political situation at Rome often became critical.

Tradition tells of a great battle fought at Lake Regillus in 496 B.C., in which the Romans gained a decisive victory over both the Etruscans and the Latins. This victory ended the war and secured the future of Rome.

48. **The Right of Appeal secured by the Lex Valeria** (509 B.C.). — We have seen that virtually all the authority exercised by the king was transferred in undiminished measure to the consuls (par. 45). But the very year of the overthrow of the regal power, the authority of the consuls was restricted in a most important respect. The consul Publius Valerius, moved doubtless by a desire to conciliate the plebeians, secured the passage of a law concerning appeals known as the Valerian law,¹ which forbade any

¹ *Lex Valeria de provocatione.*

magistrate, save a dictator, to put any Roman citizen to death without the concurrence on appeal of the people in the centuriate assembly. This law, however, did not bind the consuls when they were at the head of the army outside the city. From this time on, the consular lictors, when accompanying the consuls within the city, removed the axe from the fasces (par. 13), as a symbol that the power to execute there the death sentence upon any citizen had been taken away.

This right of appeal from the sentence of a magistrate in cases involving life and death was afterwards extended to cases of flogging, and thus it became a very great security to the citizen against unjust and cruel treatment at the hands of arbitrary magistrates. The law securing this right has been well called "the Habeas Corpus Act of the Romans."² More than five hundred years after the enactment of this law Paul the Apostle, having been flogged by his jailer, caused him to fall into great fear by sending him word that he had beaten openly and uncondemned a Roman citizen.³

Valerius carried other laws in the interests of the people. Because of his devotion to the popular cause he was given the surname of *Poplicola* (Publicola), or "the Friend of the People."

49. First Secession of the Plebeians (494 B.C.). — 'Troubles without brought troubles within. The poor plebeians, during this period of disorder and war, fell in debt to the

² The Habeas Corpus Act was a statute passed by the English Parliament in the reign of Charles II., and was designed to protect the citizen against illegal imprisonment.

³ Acts, xxii. 25-29.

wealthy class, and payment was exacted with heartless severity. A debtor became the absolute property of his creditor, who might sell him as a slave to pay the debt, and in some cases even put him to death.

Livy draws the following picture of the condition of the poor debtor. One day an old man, pale and emaciated, and clothed in rags, tottered into the forum. To those that crowded about him to inquire the cause of his misery, he related this tale: While he had been away serving in the Sabine war, the crops on his little farm had been destroyed by the enemy, his house burnt, and his cattle driven off. To pay his taxes, he had been forced to run in debt; this debt, growing continually by usury, had consumed first his farm, a paternal inheritance, then the rest of his substance, and at length had laid hold of his own person. He had been thrown into prison and beaten with stripes. He then showed the bystanders the marks of scourging upon his body, and at the same time displayed the scars of the wounds he had received in battle. Thereupon a great tumult arose, and the people, filled with indignation, ran together from all sides into the forum.⁴

The situation was intolerable. The plebeians resolved to secede from Rome, and build a new city for themselves on a neighboring eminence, known afterwards as the Sacred Mount. Having been called to arms under the pretext that the Æquians — a hostile people, dwelling east of Rome, who were constantly making forays into the Roman territory — were threatening the land, they refused to march out against the enemy, but instead marched away in a body from Rome to the spot selected before-

⁴ ii. 23.

hand, and began to make preparations for erecting new homes (494 B.C.).

50. The Covenant and the Tribunes. — The patricians saw clearly that such a division would prove ruinous to the state, and that the plebeians must be persuaded to give up their enterprise and come back to Rome. The consul Valerius was sent to treat with the insurgents. The plebeians were at first obstinate, but at last were persuaded to yield to the entreaties of the embassy to return, being won to this mind, so it is said, by one of the wise senators, who made use of the well-known fable of the Body and the Members.

The following covenant was entered into, and bound by the most solemn oaths and vows before the gods: The debts of the poor plebeians were to be cancelled, and those debtors held in slavery set free; and two plebeian magistrates (the number was soon increased to ten), called *tribunes*, whose duty it should be to watch over the plebeians, and protect them against the injustice, harshness, and partiality of the patrician magistrates, were to be chosen in an assembly of the plebeians.⁵

That the tribunes might be the protectors of the plebeians in something more than name, they were invested with an extraordinary power known as the *jus auxilii*, "the right of aid"; that is, they were given the right, should any patrician magistrate attempt to deal wrongfully with a plebeian, to annul his act or stop his proceeding.⁶

⁵ This was an assembly voting by curies. It was soon reorganized, and became the historically important *concilium tributum plebis* (par. 58).

⁶ A tribune, however, had no authority over a consul when he was at the head of the army away from Rome, but under all other circumstances he could for disobedience even arrest and imprison him.

The persons of the tribunes were made sacrosanct, that is, inviolable, like the persons of heralds or ambassadors of a foreign state. Any one interrupting a tribune in the discharge of his duties, or doing him any violence, was declared an outlaw, whom any one might kill. That the tribunes might be always easily found, they were not allowed to go more than one mile beyond the city walls. Their houses were to be open night and day, that any plebeian unjustly dealt with might flee thither for protection and refuge.

The tribunes were attended and aided by officers called *aediles*, who were elected from the plebeian order, and, like the tribunes, invested with a sacrosanct character.⁷ Among their duties was the care of the streets and markets and of the public archives.

We cannot overestimate the importance of the change effected in the Roman constitution by the creation of the plebeian tribunate. Under the protection and leadership of their inviolable tribunes, the plebeians carried on a struggle for a share in the offices and dignities of the state that never ceased until the Roman government, as yet republican only in name, became in fact a real democracy, in which patrician and plebeian shared equally in all emoluments and privileges.

There were, however, germs of mischief in this office, as we shall learn.⁸ It in effect created a state within the

⁷ It would seem, however, that they did not possess this inviolability until after the passage of the Valerio-Horatian laws (par. 61).

⁸ The tribune's original and simple right of intercession on behalf of oppressed plebeians was in time greatly extended, and he claimed and exercised the authority to block any administrative or judicial act of the magistrates of the city. Consult par. 151.

state, for the plebeians, organized as they now were with their own assembly presided over by officers whose inviolability had been recognized by a solemn compact, stood over against the patricians almost as one nation stands to another.

51. The Reestablishment of the Latin Alliance (493 B.C.).—The year following the creation of the plebeian tribunate marks a most important transaction in the external history of the young republic. We have seen how the Latin cantons, or towns, improving the opportunity afforded by the overthrow of the monarchy at Rome, had recovered their lost independence (par. 47). In the year 493 B.C., the Roman consul Spurius Cassius renewed with them the ancient alliance (par. 27), which was a defensive league of the Latin communities against the numerous enemies which surrounded Latium on almost every side. A little later the alliance was joined by the Hernicans, a hill people on the southeastern frontier of Latium.

The formation of this triple alliance was a matter of great moment to Rome. It brought her good allies at a critical period of her development, and establishing a belt of friendly fortresses all along the southern and eastern borders of her own territory, left only her northern frontier directly exposed to the incursions of an enemy.⁹

52. The Public Lands.—As we have already learned (par. 49), there was even at this early period in the history of Rome a large number of persons in the city included in the class of the wretchedly poor. A chief cause of this state of things was the unfair management of the public land (*ager publicus*). As the contention over this land

⁹ Consult map opposite page 78.

was almost constant throughout the period of the republic, we must endeavor here, at the outset of our study, to understand the matter.

According to the rules of war in antiquity, the property, the liberty, and even the lives of the vanquished were at the free disposal of the conqueror. But the Romans, actuated probably by considerations of policy rather than by motives of humanity, did not usually exercise all these harsh rights of the victor. They generally left the conquered peoples not only life and liberty, but also a large part of their lands. The remainder, amounting to a third or more, they confiscated, and added to the public lands of the Roman state.

This government land was disposed of in the following ways: (1) A part was granted in small holdings, under what we should term homestead laws, to discharged veterans or poor citizens, who went out as soldier-settlers or colonists to the new territory; (2) another part of the land was offered at public sale, and was purchased by the patricians or the rich plebeians; (3) still another portion was leased at a fixed rental to be paid in money. Lands allotted or sold became of course private property; with these, as well as with the regularly leased lands, the agrarian disputes had little or nothing to do.

But these several methods of disposing of the public land left still remaining in the hands of the state large unsurveyed tracts, usually the more remote and wilder portions of the confiscated territories. Now respecting these, custom or the law permitted persons to enter upon and cultivate them, or to turn their flocks and cattle out upon them. In return for such use of the public land the

occupier paid the state usually a fifth or a tenth of the yearly produce. Persons who availed themselves of this privilege were called possessors or occupiers;¹⁰ we should call them "squatters," or "tenants at will."

Now what created the earliest agrarian troubles at Rome was this: The patricians claimed for themselves the exclusive right to occupy the unsold or unleased public lands. Through this monopoly many of them acquired great riches. The plebeians naturally complained because of their exclusion from these common lands, since it was their sacrifices and their blood that had helped to win them.

What gave the plebeians further ground for complaint was the notorious fact that the patrician quæstors, whose business it was to collect the rents due the state from the occupiers of the public lands, favoring their own order, were very slack in making these collections. Moreover, these occupiers of the common lands were coming to employ slaves instead of freemen, for the reason that the work of the slaves was not liable to be interrupted by their being called upon for military service.

What has now been said will enable the reader to understand the quarrels between the patricians and the plebeians, the rich and the poor, which from the fifth century forward were almost constantly agitating the Roman state. The land question was the eternal question at Rome, and the failure of the Romans to settle it equitably was one cause, as we shall learn, of the downfall of the republic and of the final ruin of the empire.

53. Spurius Cassius and his Agrarian Proposals (486 B.C.).
— Spurius Cassius has been called the first of the "social

¹⁰ The Latin term for this kind of tenure was *possessio*

reformers" of Rome. He was a patrician, and a man held in great distinction on account of his eminent public services, among which was his negotiation of the recent alliance between Rome and the Latin towns (par. 51).

This patrician, with a view to relieving the distress of the poor plebeians, now brought forward as consul the following proposals: (1) That lands recently acquired by the state, instead of being sold or leased, be allotted in small holdings to needy Romans and to the Latins; (2) that the amount of land for such distribution be increased by taking away from the rich patricians those public lands which they were occupying as tenants at will¹¹ (par. 52).

These proposals stirred up a fierce debate. The patricians very naturally denounced the proposal touching the common lands they were occupying as downright robbery. They had occupied these lands so long,—in some cases they had probably inherited them,—and had spent so much money in improving them, that they now looked upon them as their own. The rich plebeians whom the patricians had admitted to the enjoyment of their privileges sided with them. Many of the poorer plebeians were also lukewarm in their support of the measures, for the reason that the Latins were to be given a share in the allotted lands.

The fate of the proposals is uncertain. If they were made a law, the law was never carried into effect. The act, however, served as the inspiration and the model of later agrarian measures, and for this reason it constitutes a great landmark in the history of the land problem at Rome.

¹¹ This is what Livy (ii. 41) gives us as the substance of the proposals.

Spurius Cassius suffered the fate of many of the other social reformers who arose after him at Rome. Upon the expiration of his term as consul (par. 45), he was brought to trial by his patrician enemies on the charge of endeavoring to make himself king through purchasing with donations of land the favor of the people. He was declared guilty and was put to death.

We may regard Spurius Cassius as a martyr to the cause of the Roman poor; for we are not at liberty to accept the interpretation of his enemies as to what were his real motives in espousing the cause of the plebeians. We may no more impugn the motives of the social reformers of Rome than those of the social reformers of our own day. The best of the Romans were quite as capable as ourselves of disinterested and unselfish service, not only for the state, but for the poor and the disinherited class of citizens within its borders.

54. Border Wars and Border Tales. — The chief enemies of Rome and her Latin allies were the Volscians, the Æquians, the Sabines, and the Etruscans.¹ For more than a hundred years after the founding of the republic, Rome, either alone or in connection with her confederates, was almost constantly fighting one or another or all of these peoples. But these operations cannot be regarded as real wars. They were, on the side of both parties, for the most part, mere plundering forays or cattle-raiding expeditions into the enemy's territories. We shall probably not get a wrong idea of their real character if we liken them to the early so-called border wars between England and Scotland. Like the Scottish wars, they were embellished

¹ For the location of these peoples, see map opposite page 78.

by the Roman story-tellers with the most extravagant and picturesque tales. Three of the best known of these are those of Coriolanus, the Fabii, and Cincinnatus.

In the following paragraphs we shall repeat these stories after Livy, but the reader must bear in mind that they are not to be regarded, in their details, as historically true, although there is doubtless a nucleus of fact in each. Nevertheless they are historically valuable as casting a strong side light upon the situation of things at Rome during a troublous period in the history of the young republic, and as further bringing out in strong relief certain admirable qualities of the Roman character.

55. The Legend of Coriolanus. - The tale of Coriolanus is connected not only with the Volscian border wars but also with the matter of the establishment of the plebeian tribunate.

According to the tradition, during the prevalence of a severe famine at Rome,² Gelon, king of Syracuse, sent a large quantity of grain to the capital for distribution among the suffering poor. A certain patrician, Coriolanus³ by name, made a proposal that none of the grain should be given to the plebeians save on condition that they gave up their tribunes. These officials straightway summoned him before the plebeian assembly, on the charge of having broken the solemn covenant of the Sacred Mount (*par. 50*), and so bitter was the feeling against him that he was obliged to flee from Rome.

² In the year 492 B.C.

³ This was his surname. His full name was Gaius Marcius Coriolanus. He received his surname, to speak in modern military phrase, for conspicuous bravery in the storming of the Volscian city of Corioli.

He now allied himself with the Volscians, enemies of Rome, and even led their armies against his native city. An embassy from the senate was sent to him, to sue for peace. But the spirit of Coriolanus was bitter and resentful, and he would listen to none of their proposals. Then the priests of the city, clothed in the sacred vestments of their office, appeared as intercessors before him, but their supplications he also rejected. Then came to him at last his mother and his wife with her two sons and a band of Roman matrons. Coriolanus, amazed and disturbed, hastened to embrace his mother. But she repelled him, and addressed him with words at once of entreaty and complaint: "Do you come as my son or as an enemy of Rome to meet me? Does not the sight of your native city remind you that there is your family altar, and there your mother, your wife, and your children? Alas, that I were ever a mother; had I never borne a son, then Rome would not now be held in siege!"

The mother's entreaties, and the tears and prayers of the wife and children finally prevailed. Embracing his mother, Coriolanus exclaimed: "Mother, thou hast saved Rome, but lost thy son." He then withdrew his army from the Roman soil. According to one account he soon after this perished at the hands of the Volscians.⁴

56. The Legend of the Fabii. — This tradition connects itself with the incursions into Roman territory of the Etruscans, who from the first were the most troublesome enemies of Rome. Just at this time⁵ it was the city of

⁴ Livy, ii. 33, 34, 39, and 40 — the last two chapters for the main part of the story; also Plutarch, *Life of Coriolanus*.

⁵ The enterprise of the Fabii with which the tradition deals belongs to about the years 477-475 B.C.

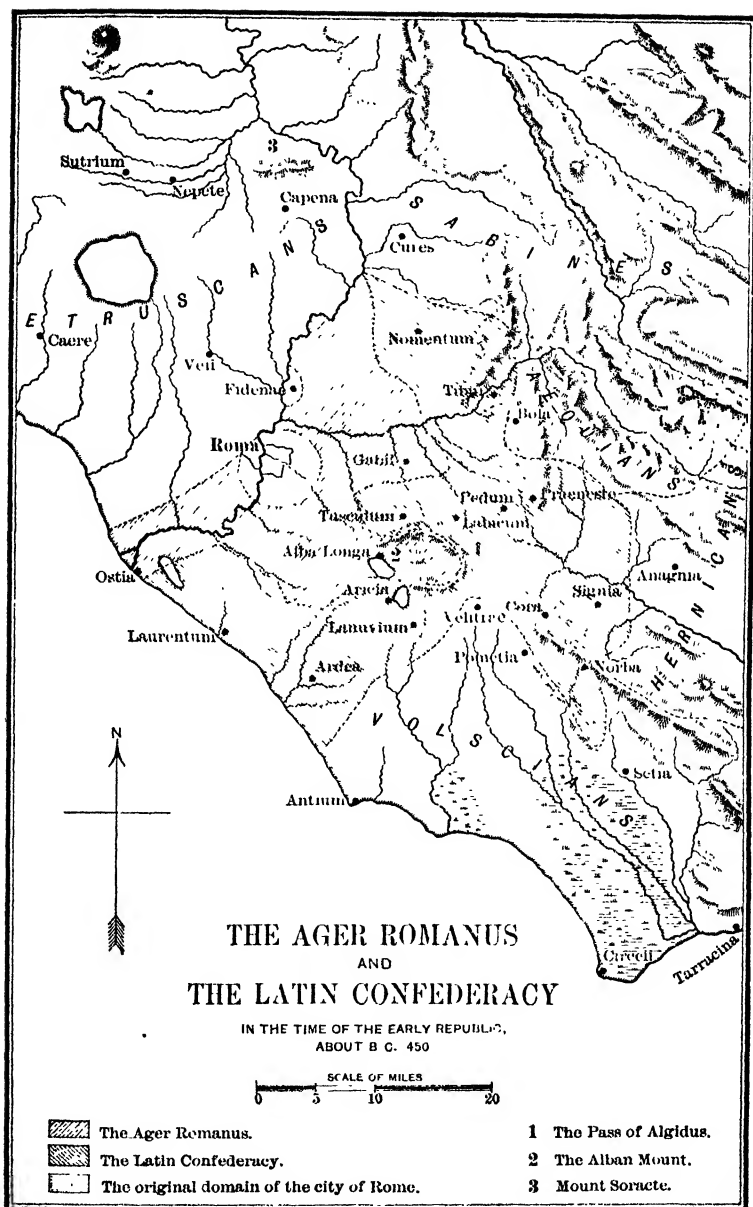
Veii that was fitting out these marauding expeditions, and thereby keeping the Romans in a state of constant uneasiness and preventing them from using their full strength against their other enemies. It was under these circumstances that, according to the tradition, the Fabian gens⁶ at Rome made to the senate the following proposal: That they would undertake to carry on the war against the Veientians with their own men and at their own expense, thus leaving the state free to throw its whole remaining strength against the Volscians and the other enemies of the city.

This patriotic action of the Fabii aroused the greatest enthusiasm throughout the city, and caused the members of the clan to be overwhelmed by their fellow-citizens with expressions of admiration and gratitude.

The very next day after this offer had been accepted by the senate, all the men of the Fabian gens able to bear arms, — three hundred and six in number, and every man capable of taking the supreme command of an army, — together with the three or four thousand clients of the gens, marched in proud array, and amidst the prayers of the people for the success of their undertaking, out through one of the city gates, and proceeded to the neighborhood of Veii. On the little stream of the Cremera they built a fort, and by constant forays for two years kept the Veientians busily employed in defending their own territory.

In all encounters in the open field the Fabii were invariably the victors. At last, however, the Veientians ensnared their enemies. They drove some cattle into a field, some distance from the fort, yet in full view from its

⁶ This legend is a good commentary on par. 9.



walls. Seeing the cattle, and perceiving no one of the enemy between them and the fort, the Fabii set out on a full run to capture the herd. While they were engaged in rounding up the affrighted cattle, the Veientians, who were lying in ambush, sprang up and, surrounding them, slew them to a man. The only representative of the clan remaining alive was a boy, who on account of his tender years had been left behind in the city. From him the Fabian race sprang up anew, and in later generations furnished the Roman state with many counsellors and commanders, men who worthily sustained the honor and fame that their ancestors had won for the Fabian house.⁷

57. The Legend of Cincinnatus. — The third and best known tale, that of Cincinnatus,⁸ brings before us the Æquians, who equally with the Volscians, the Sabines, and the Etruscans were disturbers of the peace of Rome and of her allies.

In the year 456 B.C. the Æquians, while one of the consuls was away fighting the Sabines, defeated the forces of the other, and shut them up in a narrow valley, near Mount Algidus, a spur of the Alban Hills, whence escape seemed impossible. There was great terror in Rome when news of the situation of the army was brought to the city.

The senate immediately appointed Cincinnatus, a grand old patrician, dictator. The commissioners who carried to him the message from the senate found him upon his little farm across the Tiber, at work ploughing. When he learned that his callers bore him some official communica-

⁷ Livy, ii. 48 and 49.

⁸ As in the case of Coriolanus we have here simply a surname. The full name was Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus. The legend belongs to the year 456 B.C.

tion, he called to his wife to bring him his toga, and wiping the sweat from his face, he put on the garment, that he might receive in befitting dress the deputies' message. He was then informed of the perilous situation of the army of the consul, and of the action of the senate in naming him dictator.

Cincinnatus at once accepted the office and hurried across the river to Rome. Having appointed a master of the horse, he ordered every citizen liable to military duty to repair to the Campus Martius before the setting of the sun, with a five days' supply of provisions, and twelve stakes. All promptly and eagerly responded to the call, and in a few hours the whole array was on the march to the relief of the beleaguered army. By midnight they were in front of the enemy's camp. Raising a great shout to let the imprisoned army of the consul know that relief was at hand, the soldiers under Cincinnatus, with the stakes they had brought with them, began to construct a trench and palisade around the enemy. Meantime the troops of the consul began to attack the enemy from within. During the night the palisade was drawn in a circle about the hostile camp. In the morning the Æquians, seeing that they were surrounded and escape was impossible, surrendered. Cincinnatus sent them all beneath the yoke.⁹ He then led his army back to Rome in triumph, laid down his office, having held it only sixteen days, and sought again the retirement of his farm.¹⁰

⁹ This was formed of two spears thrust firmly into the ground and crossed a few feet from the earth by a third spear. Prisoners of war were forced to pass beneath this yoke as a symbol of submission.

¹⁰ Livy, iii. 26-28.

58. Creation of the Plebeian Assembly of Tribes by the Publilian Law (471 B.C.). — While these petty border wars were furnishing the material for these tales of adventure and heroism, the contest between the patricians and plebeians was going on unceasingly in the very heart of the community itself. As a consequence of this struggle, there was called into existence a new legislative body which was destined to exert a great influence upon the history of the city.

This constitutional change came about in this way. After the creation of the tribunate office (par. 45), the tribunes, as the leaders and patrons of the plebeians, often called them together in meetings of the curies (par. 10), for the purpose of addressing them or of holding elections. In these assemblies the patricians were able to influence the proceedings through their clients, who as plebeian members of the curies had a place in the meetings.

The tribune Volero Publilius resolved to put an end to this state of things. He brought forward a proposal to the effect that the voting in the plebeian assembly should be by tribes instead of by curies.

Now it will be recalled that in the tribes only freeholders had a place (par. 35). The proposed arrangement then of voting by tribes instead of by curies would throw out of the assembly most of the freedmen and clients, since not many of these were landowners.¹ Thus the influence of the patricians in the meetings of the assembly would be destroyed.

The proposal was carried after much opposition on the part of the patricians; and thus came into existence, as an

¹ They were clerks, merchants, etc.

outgrowth of the original plebeian assembly of the curies, the plebeian assembly of the tribes (*concilium tributum plebis*), made up exclusively of plebeian freeholders. Mommsen pronounces the law that created this special plebeian assembly "one of the most important in its consequences with which Roman history has to deal."²

At this same time the number of tribes was raised to twenty-one by the addition of a new tribe.³ This addition was made probably merely for the purpose of creating an odd number of tribes and thus preventing a deadlock in the voting in the new tribal assembly.⁴

59. The Decemvirs and the Twelve Tables of Laws (451–450 B.C.). — The next phase of the struggle between the orders constitutes a great landmark in the history of the Roman people. It consisted in the revision and reduction to writing of the customs and laws of the state.

Written laws are always a great safeguard against oppression. Until what shall constitute a crime and what shall be its penalty are clearly written down and well known and understood by all, judges may render unfair decisions, or inflict unjust punishment, and yet run little risk -- unless they go altogether too far -- of being called to an account; for no one but themselves knows what either the law or the penalty really is. Hence, in all struggles of the masses

² *History of Rome*, vol. i. p. 361.

³ The number had been increased to twenty probably about 495 B.C., but possibly at an earlier date. The sixteen new tribes were formed out of the country districts of the incorporated lands of the city, while the four Servian tribes (par. 35) were restricted to the city proper and the lands in the immediate neighborhood of the walls. These latter were henceforth known as the city tribes, and the former as the rural tribes.

⁴ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. i. pp. 361, 362.

against the tyranny of a ruling class, the demand for written laws is one of the first measures taken by the people for the protection of their persons and property. Thus the commons at Athens, early in their struggle with the nobles, demanded and obtained a code of written laws.⁵ The same thing now took place at Rome. The plebeians demanded that a code of laws be drawn up, in accordance with which the patrician magistrates, in the administration of justice, should render their decisions. The patricians offered a stubborn resistance to their wishes, but finally were forced to yield to the popular clamor.⁶

A commission, so tradition says, was sent to the Greek cities of Southern Italy and to Athens to study the Grecian laws and customs. Upon the return of this embassy, a commission of ten magistrates, who were known as decemvirs, was appointed to frame a code of laws (451 B.C.). These officers, while engaged in this work, were also to administer the entire government, and so were invested with the supreme power of the state. The patricians gave up their consuls, and the plebeians their tribunes. At the end of the first year, the task of the board was quite far from being finished, so a new decemvirate was elected to complete the work. Appius Claudius was the only member of the old board that was returned to the new.

The code was soon finished, and the laws were written on twelve tablets of bronze, which were fastened to the

⁵ Draco in 621 B.C. and Solon in 594 B.C. revised and published the laws of Athens, in some such way as the Roman commission codified and made public the laws of Rome.

⁶ The so-called Terentilian Rogation, proposed by the tribune Gaius Terentilius Harsa, in 461 B.C., marks the beginning of the struggle.

rostra, or orator's platform in the forum, where they might be seen and read by all.

Only a very few fragments of these celebrated laws have been preserved, but the substance of a considerable part of the code is known to us through the indirect quotations from it or allusions to it occurring in the works of later writers and jurists. The following quotations will convey some idea of the general character of this primitive legislation.

The provisions regarding interest and the treatment of debtors are noteworthy. The law provided that interest should not exceed one-twelfth part of the principal per annum⁷ (eight and one-third per cent), and that, after the lapse of a certain number of days of grace, the creditor of a delinquent debtor might either put him in the stocks or in chains (but the weight of the chains must not exceed fifteen pounds), sell him to any stranger resident beyond the Tiber, or put him to death.⁸

In case of there being several creditors the law provided as follows: "After the third market day his [the debtor's] body may be divided. Any one taking more than his just share shall be held guiltless."⁹ We are informed by later Roman writers that this savage provision of the law was, as a matter of fact, never carried into effect.

A special provision touching the power of the father

⁷ The quotations that follow are from Ortolan's *History of the Roman Law* (trans. by Prichard and Nasmith), p. 106 *et seq.*

⁸ This part of the law of debt is known to us only through the indirect notices of later writers.

⁹ Here the actual text has been preserved to us, and reads as follows: *Tertiis nundinis partis secanto: si plus minusve secuerint, ne fraude esto* (Ortolan's *History of the Roman Law*, trans. by Prichard and Nasmith, p. 106).

over his sons provided that "during their whole life he shall have the right to imprison, scourge, keep to rustic labor in chains, to sell or to slay, even though they may be in the enjoyment of high state offices." ¹⁰

If the son sold into slavery were made a freeman by his master, the father could sell him again, but after the third sale and third enfranchisement, the son escaped forever from his father's control.¹¹

Another of the laws had for its aim to set a check to useless and extravagant expenditures on funerals. This regulation enacts as follows: "The dead are not to be buried nor burned in more than three fillets of purple; nor shall the funeral be attended by more than ten flute players."

The prevalence of popular superstitions is revealed by one of the laws which provides for the punishment of any one who by enchantments should blight the crops of another.

The two following provisions show what minor regulations were thought worthy a place in the code, and further illustrate how nearly in these particular matters the Roman sense of what is permissible and reasonable corresponded with our own: "Any one committing a robbery by night may be lawfully killed."¹²

"A proprietor may go on to adjoining land to pick up the fruit that has fallen from his tree."

These "Laws of the Twelve Tables" were to Roman

¹⁰ See par. 6.

¹¹ Here again the text of the code has come down to us. It runs thus: *Si pater filium ter venum duit, filius a patre liber esto.*

¹² *Si nox furtum factum sit, si im occisit, jure caesus esto.*

jurisprudence what the good laws of Solon were to the Athenian constitution. They formed the basis of all new legislation for many centuries, and constituted a part of the education of the Roman youth—every schoolboy being required to learn them by heart.

Especially influential were the Laws of the Twelve Tables in helping to establish social and civil equality between the patricians and plebeians. They tended to efface the legal distinctions that had hitherto existed between the two orders, and helped to draw them together into a single people; for up to this time the relations of the plebeians to the patricians, notwithstanding the reforms of Servius Tullius, had been rather those of foreigners than of fellow-citizens.

60. Misrule and Overthrow of the Decemvirs; Second Secession of the Plebeians (450 B.C.).—The first decemvirs used the great power lodged in their hands with justice and prudence; but the second board, under the leadership of Appius Claudius, instituted a most infamous and tyrannical rule. No man's life was safe, be he patrician or plebeian. An ex-tribune, daring to denounce the course of the decemvirs, was caused by them to be assassinated.

Another act, even more outrageous than this, filled to the brim the cup of their iniquities. Virginia was the beautiful daughter of a plebeian, and Appius Claudius, desiring to gain possession of her, made use of his authority as a judge to pronounce her a slave. The father of the maiden, preferring the death of his daughter to her dishonor, killed her with his own hand. Then, drawing the weapon from her breast, he hastened to the army, which was resisting a united invasion of the Sabines and

Æquians, and, exhibiting the bloody knife, told the story of the outrage.¹

The soldiers rose as a single man and hurried to the city. The excitement resulted in a great body of the Romans, probably chiefly plebeians, seceding from the state, and marching away to the Sacred Hill. This procedure, which once before had proved so effectual in securing justice to the oppressed (par. 49), had a similar issue now. The situation was so critical that the decemvirs were forced to resign. The consulate and the tribunate were restored. Eight of the decemvirs were forced to go into exile; Appius Claudius and one other, having been imprisoned, committed suicide (450 B.C.).

61. **The Valerio-Horatian Laws; "the Roman Magna Charta"** (449 B.C.) The consuls chosen were Lucius Valerius and Marcus Horatius, who secured the passage of certain laws, known as the Valerio-Horatian laws, which are of such constitutional importance that they have been called "the Magna Charta of Rome." Like the great English charter, their purpose was not so much the creation of new safeguards of liberty as the reaffirming and strengthening of the old securities of the rights and privileges of the humbler citizens of Rome. Among the provisions of the laws the following were the most important:

1. That the resolutions (*plebiscta*) passed by the plebeian assembly of tribes² should in the future have the force of laws and should bind the whole people the same as the

¹ Livy, iii. 44-50. This tale is possibly mythical, but it at least gives a vivid, and doubtless truthful, picture of the times.

² *Concilium tributum plebis*. See par. 58

resolutions of the *comitia centuriata*. Hitherto these resolutions had possessed no force save as expressions of opinion, like the resolutions of a mass meeting among ourselves.

2. That the law of appeal (par. 48) be revived and extended in its operations to all magistrates.³ A chief aim of this provision was to prevent the setting up again of such a tyranny as that of the decemvirs just overthrown.

3. That the law ⁴ which made sacred and inviolable the person of the tribunes be reaffirmed and its operation extended to the plebeian ædiles (par. 50), and that he who did injury to any of these plebeian magistrates be accursed and his property dedicated to the service of the gods.

4. That the tribunes be permitted to sit as listeners before the door of the senate house. This was an important concession, on account of what it led to; for very soon the tribunes secured the right, first to sit within the senate hall itself, and then to put a stop to any proceeding of the senate by the use of the veto.⁵

The mere reading of these laws impresses one with their

³ The authorities are divided as to whether the law applied to the dictator. According to some, the dictator was not obliged to allow appeals from his sentences until a much later time.

⁴ The so-called *lex sacrata*.

⁵ About this same time, in the year 447, the plebeians gained another advantage in their contention with the patricians, in the arrangement that the quæstors, hitherto nominated by the consuls, should be chosen by the community. In the year 421 the quæstorship was opened to the plebeians, and the number of quæstors increased from two to four. See Mommsen's *History of Rome*, vol. i., p. 370, and Pelham's *Outlines of Roman History*, p. 62.

great significance for the plebeians. We may summarize their effects by saying that they made the tribunes and the other plebeian magistrates, as well as the plebeian assembly, a recognized part of the constitutional arrangements of the Roman commonwealth. They mark a long step taken towards the equalization and union of the two orders within the state.

62. The New Patricio-Plebeian Assembly (*Comitia Tributa*).

— In connection with the popular election of the quæstors mentioned in the last footnote on the preceding page (par. 61, n. 5), we have brought to our notice for the first time a fourth legislative body made up of the entire people, patricians and plebeians, in which voting took place by tribes (the *comitia tributa*). Our authorities tell us nothing about its origin; but from this time (449 B.C.) on it constituted one of the most important legislative bodies of the state. It was presided over by consuls and prætors, and its resolutions had the same binding force upon the whole people as those of the other two chief legislatures.⁶

63. Marriages between Patricians and Plebeians made Legal (445 B.C.). Up to this time the plebeians had not been allowed to contract legal marriages with the patricians⁷ (par. 17). But only three or four years after the passing of the Valerio-Horatian laws, the tribune Gaius Canuleius carried in the *comitia tributa* a resolution known as the Canuleian law, whereby marriages between the plebeians and the patricians were legalized.

⁶ The *comitia centuriata* and the *concilium tributum plebis*. Consult pars. 37 and 58.

⁷ The laws of the Twelve Tables (par. 59), confirming the ancient custom, prohibited marriages between the two orders.

This law established social equality between the two orders. The plebeians were now in a more advantageous position for continuing their struggle for additional civil rights and for perfect political equality with the patricians.

64. Military Tribunes with Consular Power⁸ (444 B.C.). — This same tribune Canuleius also brought forward another proposal, which provided that plebeians might be chosen as consuls. This suggestion led to a violent contention between the two orders. The issue of the matter was a compromise.

It was agreed that, in place of the two patrician consuls, the people might elect from either order magistrates that should be known as "military tribunes with consular powers." These officers, whose number varied, differed from consuls more in name than in functions or authority. In fact, the plebeians had gained the consular office, but not the consular name.

The patricians were especially unwilling that any plebeian should bear the title of consul, for the reason that an ex-consul enjoyed certain dignities and honors, such as the right to wear a particular kind of dress and to set up in his house images of his ancestors (*jus imaginum*). These honorary distinctions the higher order wished to retain exclusively for themselves. Owing to the great influence of the patricians in the elections, it was not until about 400 B.C. that a plebeian was chosen to the new office.

65. The Censors (443 B.C.). — No sooner had the plebeians secured the right of admission to the military tribunate with consular powers, than the jealous and exclusive patricians began scheming to rob them of the fruit of the victory they had gained. They effected this by taking

⁸ *Tribuni militum consulari potestate.*

from the consulate some of its most distinctive duties and powers, and conferring them upon two new patrician officers called *censors*.

The functions of these magistrates, which were gradually extended as time passed, were many and important. They took the census of the citizens and their property,⁹ and thus assigned to every man his position in the different classes. They could, for immorality or any improper conduct, degrade a knight from his rank, expel a member from the senate, or deprive any citizen of his vote by striking his name from the roll of the tribes. It was their duty to rebuke ostentation and extravagance in living, and in particular to watch over the morals of the young. Thus we are told of their reproving the Roman youths for wearing tunics with long sleeves, an oriental and effeminate custom, and for neglecting to marry upon arriving at a proper age. From the name of these Roman officers comes our word *censorious*, meaning fault-finding.¹⁰

The first censors were elected probably in the year 443 B.C.; about one hundred years afterwards, in 351 B.C., the plebeians secured the right of holding this office also.

⁹ The census was taken every five years, and from the circumstance that at the end of the enumeration the whole body of citizens underwent a certain ceremony of purification or lustration, the period of five years came to be called a *lustrum*.

¹⁰ The existence at Rome of this censorship and the wide range of authority which the censor exercised over the private life of the citizen show how much less of individual freedom there was among the Romans than among ourselves. This was so because in antiquity a man was regarded as belonging primarily to the state, and not to himself. For the state he lived, and if need be died. It was this view as to what was the chief end of the citizen that made the assumption by the state of such authority over him appear perfectly reasonable.

66. Siege and Capture of Veii (405-396 B.C.). — We must now turn our attention once more to the fortunes of Rome in war. Almost from the founding of the city, we find its warlike citizens carrying on a fierce contest with their powerful Etruscan neighbors on the north.

Fidenæ¹¹ was first taken and destroyed, and then the war gathered around Veii, the largest and richest of the cities of Etruria. According to the tradition, the Romans, like the Greeks at Troy, laid siege to this city for ten years.

The Roman writers embellished their account of this long siege with many wonderful tales. Although the things related in these stories cannot be accepted as literally true, still these tales, like the legends of Coriolanus, the Fabii, and Cincinnatus, which we have already related,¹² have an historical value as illustrating the beliefs and habits of thought of the generations that listened to the recital of them as a true account of the doings and experiences of their fathers.

Livy tells how during the investment the waters in the neighboring Alban Lake swelled mysteriously and overflowed the surrounding country. This great marvel awakened the fears of the Romans, and they sent an embassy to Delphi to learn from the oracle there the meaning of the portent (par. 23). They were told that the gods were offended because of the neglect of their festivals; that these must be more carefully observed in the future, and that the lake must be drained before Veii could be taken. In obedience to the oracle the Romans renewed the neglected festivals, and drained the lake by driving a tunnel

¹¹ See map, p. 79. This was an Etruscan stronghold on the Roman side of the Tiber.

¹² See pars. 55-57.

through the side of the mountain in the extinct crater of which it lay.

These things being done, the siege was pressed with renewed energy and in a spirit of confident hopefulness. The city was finally taken by means of an engineering device suggested possibly by the experience of the Romans in cutting the Alban emissary. A tunnel was dug that, running beneath the city walls, terminated directly under the citadel within. Through this subterranean passage the Romans effected an entrance into the city, and the place was taken.

That part of the legend which deals with the circumstances attending the sack of the city, tells how the Romans, acting under the belief of those times that the possession of the statue of a god secured to the possessor the favor and protection of the god himself, carried off to Rome the image of Juno, the chief deity of Veii. It is related that while the victors were preparing, in reverent mood, to remove the statue, one of them asked the goddess, "Wilt thou go to Rome?" and that a voice from the statue gave assent. The image was taken to Rome and there placed in a temple erected expressly for it on one of the seven hills.

Veii was the most opulent city that the Romans had up to this time captured, and the spoils, which were divided among the soldiers, were immense. The dictator Marcus Furius Camillus, to whose genius was due the happy issue of the war, enjoyed a splendid triumph, in which he rode in a chariot drawn by four white horses.

67. Effects of the Long Siege of Veii upon the Roman Military System; the Romanization of Etruria.—The siege of

Veii forms a sort of landmark in the military history of Rome, for the reason that the circumstances of the investment led to some important innovations in the military system of the Romans. Thus the length of the siege, and the necessity of maintaining a force permanently in the field, winter and summer alike, led to the introduction of pay into the army; for hitherto the common soldier¹ had not only equipped himself, but had served without pay.

Thus was called into existence the professional soldier as distinguished from the citizen-soldier, and thus was laid the foundation of that military power based on martial clientage (par. 7) which, after effecting the conquest of the world, was destined, in the hands of ambitious generals, to overthrow the republic itself. It is this transformation in the Roman army that the historian Merivale has in mind when he makes the declaration that the "siege of Veii foreshadowed the fall of the republic."²

The capture of Veii was followed by that of many other Etruscan towns. Rome was enriched by their spoils, and became the centre of a large and lucrative trade. All that was lost by the revolution that overthrew the monarchy

¹ The knights were allowed a certain sum from the public treasury for the purchase and the maintenance of a horse.

² *History of Rome*, p. 86. About this time a change was made in the formation of the legion. We have seen how at the outset the citizens were grouped in classes and centuries according to their wealth, and were formed in the order of the old Dorian phalanx (par. 36). Probably it was mountain campaigning that had revealed to the Romans the defects of this unwieldy formation. The number of ranks was now reduced to three, and the space between the men increased so as to give each soldier ample room for the use of his weapons. Moreover, the place of the men in the lines was no longer determined by their wealth, but by length of service and soldierly efficiency.

(par. 47) had now been regained, and much besides had been won. These conquests resulted in the addition of the southern portion of Etruria to the Roman domain.³ This new territory was divided into four tribes, which increased the whole number to twenty-five (par. 58). By this act of incorporation all the Etruscan freemen living in these regions and possessing the legal property qualification⁴ were made citizens of Rome, and were invested with that measure of the rights and privileges of Roman citizenship that up to this time had been secured by the plebeians.

Into this rich and inviting region thus opened up to Roman enterprise, Roman immigrants now crowded in great numbers, and soon all this part of Etruria became Roman in manners, customs, and speech. The Romanization of Italy was now fairly begun.

At this moment there broke upon the city a storm from the north which all but cut short the story we are narrating.

68. Sack of Rome by the Gauls (390 B.C.).—We have already mentioned how, in very remote times, tribes from Gaul crossed the Alps and established themselves in Northern Italy (par. 5). While the Romans were conquering the towns of Etruria, these barbarian hordes were moving southward, and overrunning and devastating the countries of Central Italy. In the year 390 B.C. they laid

³ Trace the gradual growth of the Roman domain (*ager Romanus*) by a comparative study of the sketch-maps on pp. 79 and 118.

⁴ It will be recalled that at the outset only landowners were enrolled in the tribes (par. 35); this was still the rule. It was not until the year 312 B.C. that all freemen, without regard to whether they were freeholders or not, were given a place in the tribes.

siege to the city of Clusium in Etruria. The inhabitants of the place sent an embassy to Rome to ask aid. The senate sent to the Gauls three ambassadors, chosen from the Fabian gens (par. 56), who informed them that if they did not cease molesting the Clusians, the Romans would intervene. The Gauls, who it is said had never before heard of the Romans, replied that the Clusians must give up to them a part of their lands, and that if they did not do so, they would take what they wanted by force of arms. All things, they declared, belonged to the brave.

So the siege went on. In an engagement beneath the walls of the city the Roman ambassadors, forgetting in what capacity they were present in the place, took part in the fray, and one of them, Quintus Fabius by name, killed a Gallic chieftain and stripped him of his arms in sight of the army. The Gauls were furious, and sent ambassadors to Rome to demand that the Fabii be surrendered into their hands for punishment. The senate referred the matter to the people, who, instead of yielding to the demands of the Gauls, made themselves participators in the guilt of the Fabii by electing them as military tribunes for the following year.

When the Gauls learned that the Fabii, instead of having been punished by the Romans, had been rewarded by them for their gross violation of the law of nations, they raised the siege of Clusium and marched upon Rome.⁵

A Roman army met them on the banks of the Allia, eleven miles from the capital. But an unaccountable panic seized the Romans, and they fled from the field without exchanging blows with the enemy. The greater part of

⁵ Livy, v. 35-37.

them hastened across the Tiber and sought safety behind the walls of Veii, which were still standing. The Gauls followed the fugitives closely, and slaughtered great numbers of them at the river bank. The remainder of the Roman army retreated in great disorder to Rome. Reaching there, they crowded through the gates, and without stopping to shut them, hurried to the citadel as the only place of refuge.

It would be impossible to picture the consternation and despair that seized the inhabitants of the city as the intelligence of the terrible disaster spread among them. It was never forgotten, and the day of the flight of the army from the Allia was ever after a black day in the Roman calendar. The vestal virgins, hastily burying such of the sacred things as they could not carry away, fled with the remainder into Etruria, and found a kind reception at the hands of the people of Caere. A large part of the population of Rome followed them across the river and threw themselves into such places of safety as they could find. No attempt was made to defend any portion of the city save the citadel.

When the Gauls entered the city they found everything abandoned to them. The aged senators, so the Romans afterwards proudly related, thinking it unworthy of their office to seek safety in flight, resolved to meet death in a befitting way. Arrayed in their splendid robes of office, each with his ivory-headed wand in his hand, they seated themselves in their chairs of state at the doorways of their palaces on and near the forum, and there sat like statues while the barbarians were carrying on their work of sack and pillage about them. The rude Gauls, arrested by the

venerable aspect of the white-haired senators, gazed in awe upon them and offered them no violence. But finally one of the barbarians laid his hand upon the beard of the venerable Papirius, to stroke it, probably under an impulse of childlike reverence. The aged senator, interpreting the movement as an insult, struck the Gaul with his sceptre. The spell was instantly broken. The enraged barbarians struck Papirius from his seat, and then, falling upon the other senators, slew them to a man.⁶

The little garrison within the Capitol, under the command of the hero Marcus Manlius, for seven months resisted all the efforts of the Gauls to dislodge them. A tradition tells how, when the barbarians, under cover of the darkness of night, had climbed the steep rock and had almost effected an entrance to the citadel, the defenders were awakened by the cackling of some geese, which the piety of the famishing soldiers had spared, because these birds were sacred to Juno.

News was now brought the Gauls that the Venetians were overrunning their possessions in Northern Italy. This led them to open negotiations with the Romans. For one thousand pounds of gold the Gauls agreed to retire from the city. As the story runs, while the gold was being weighed out in the forum, the Romans complained that the weights were false, when Brennus, the Gallic leader, threw his sword also into the scales, exclaiming, "*Vae victis!*" "Woe to the vanquished!" Just at this moment, so the tale continues, Camillus, the brave patrician general, who had been appointed dictator, appeared upon the scene with a Roman army that had

⁶ Livy, v. 41.

been gathered from the fugitives. As he scattered the barbarians with heavy blows, he exclaimed: "Rome is ransomed with steel, and not with gold." According to one account, Brennus himself was taken prisoner; but another tradition says that he escaped, carrying with him not only the ransom, but a vast booty besides. Camillus was hailed as a second Romulus.⁷

69. The Rebuilding of Rome. — When the fugitives returned to Rome after the withdrawal of the Gauls, they found the city a heap of ruins. Some of the poorer classes, shrinking from the labor of rebuilding their old homes, and incited by their tribunes, proposed to abandon the site and make Veii their new capital.

Camillus, who still held the dictatorship, resisted the proposal. The gods, he declared, had allowed disaster to befall the city because the Romans had violated the sacred law of nations (par. 68), and had been inattentive to the divine omens. But when the Romans, notwithstanding that their own affairs were in ruins and they themselves were seemingly deserted by the gods, had piously cared for the sacred things of the temples (par. 68), then the righteous wrath of the gods was appeased, and through their gracious aid it was that had come the happy turn in the affairs of the Romans which had restored to them their city.

Camillus then demanded of the people why they had redeemed the city by the sword if they intended to abandon it. He recalled to their minds that the city had been founded under the auspices of the patron gods with omens that promised to it the headship of the world, and that

⁷ Livy, v. 38-49.

there was no spot within its walls that was not consecrated by the presence of some deity, or by the observance of some sacred rite or festival. He asked them to remember that the ceremonies of their religion could be performed only on the consecrated soil of the city; that the sacred fires of Vesta could burn nowhere else without profanation; and that the assemblies of the people could be held only in the places designated by the heavenly auspices. "Shall we become Veientians," he asked, "instead of Romans?" The very proposal were impious, he declared. Far better it were for the citizens to live in the most wretched hovels, like their forefathers in the time of Romulus, the founder of the city, than for the Roman state to go into exile.

The words and arguments of Camillus would seemingly have proved unavailing to prevent the threatened calamity, had not a timely omen appeared to lend force to what he had said. While the senate was deliberating on the matter, some cohorts of soldiers chanced to march into the forum. As they entered the place, a centurion called out to them to fix their standard where they were, adding in a loud voice, "It is best that we should stay here." The senators heard the words, accepted at once the omen, and the people approved their resolution. And so the city remained where the auspices of the immortal gods had first fixed it.

The people now, with most admirable courage, set themselves to the task of rebuilding their ruined homes. The lines of the old streets having been effaced by the fire, every one was allowed to build his home on any spot he might select, and also to get stone and timber wherever he could find them.⁸

⁸ Livy, v. 50-55.

The city was quickly restored, and very soon was enjoying its old position of supremacy among the surrounding states. There were some things, however, which even Roman resolution and energy could not restore. These were the ancient records and documents, through whose irreparable loss the early history of Rome is involved in great obscurity and uncertainty.

70. Social Reform again ; Condemnation of Marcus Manlius Capitolinus (384 B.C.). For nearly half a century after the great misfortune of 390 B.C., the most important matters in the history of Rome are connected with the efforts of the distressed plebeians to secure (1) reforms in the law of debt and in the management of the public land, and (2) to gain admission to the consulate and other offices from which they were excluded by the jealousy of the patricians. First a word in regard to the efforts of Marcus Manlius to aid the plebeian debtors.

The ravages of the Gauls had left the poor plebeians in a most pitiable condition. In order to rebuild their dwellings and restock their farms, they had been obliged to borrow money of the rich patricians, and consequently had soon come again to experience the insult and oppression that were ever incident to the condition of the debtor class at Rome.

The patrician Marcus Manlius, the hero of the brave defence of the Capitol (par. 68), now came forward as the champion of the plebeians. He sold the larger part of his estate, and devoted the proceeds to the relief of the debtor class. It was believed that in thus undertaking the cause of the commons he had personal aims and ambitions. The patricians determined to crush him. He was finally

brought to trial in an assembly of the people, on the charge of conspiring to restore the office of king.

From the forum, where the people were gathered, the Capitol, which Manlius had so bravely defended against the barbarians, was in full sight. Pointing to the temples he had saved, he appealed to the gods and to the gratitude of the Roman people. The people responded to the appeal in a way altogether natural. They refused to condemn him. But brought to trial a second time, and now in a place whence the citadel could not be seen, he was sentenced to death, and was thrown from the Tarpeian Rock.⁹ This event occurred 384 B.C. We may regard Marcus Manlius as the second of the martyrs at Rome in the cause of social reform (par. 53).

71. The Licinian Laws (367 B.C.) ; the Final "Equalization of the Orders." — A very great amelioration in the social condition of the plebeians and a long advance towards their political equality with the patricians were effected through the passage of the Licinian laws, so called from one of their proposers, the tribune Gaius Licinius. These laws provided :

1. That interest already paid on debts should be deducted from the principal, and that the remainder should be paid in three annual instalments.

2. That the plebeians should enjoy with the patricians the right to occupy the public lands ; but that no person should hold more than five hundred jugera¹ (par. 52).

⁹ The Tarpeian Rock was the name given to the cliff which the Capitoline hill formed on one of its sides. It received its name from Tarpeia, a daughter of one of the legendary keepers of the citadel. State criminals were frequently executed by being thrown from this rock.

¹ A jugerum was about half an acre.

3. That the office of military tribune with consular power (par. 64) should be abolished, that two consuls should be chosen yearly as at first, and that one of these should be a plebeian.

4. That in place of the two keepers of the Sibylline Books (par. 24) there should in the future be ten, and that five of these should be plebeians.

The importance of these proposals is obvious without comment. For ten years the patricians resisted the demands of the commons. But the plebeians each year reelected the same tribunes, and under their leadership carried on the struggle. Finally, when the patricians saw that it would be impossible longer to resist the popular demand, they had recourse to the old device. They lessened the powers of the consulship by taking away from the consuls their judicial functions and devolving them upon a new patrician magistrate bearing the name *priotor*. The pretext for this was that the plebeians had no knowledge of the sacred formulas of the law.² The senate then approved the rogations³ and they became laws (367 B.C.). The son of a peasant might now rise to the highest office in the state.

The equalization of the two orders was now practically effected. The plebeians gained with comparative ease admission to the remaining offices, from which the jealousy of the patricians still excluded them.⁴

² A little later (in 365 B.C.), there was created what was known as the curule ædileship, to distinguish it from the plebeian ædileship, which had been created earlier (par. 50).

³ Proposed laws, before passed by the people, were so called, from *rogare*, "to ask."

⁴ They secured admission to the dictatorship in the person of the

As a symbol and a memorial of the happy ending of the long contention between the two orders in the state, which had lasted now almost a century and a half, Camillus, the year following the passage of the Licinian laws, caused to be erected, near the comitium, a temple dedicated to the goddess Concord.

72. The Import of the Admission of the Plebeians to Full Citizenship. — The incorporation of the plebeians with the body of Roman citizens with full rights was, like the earlier union of the patrician clans of the little hill cantons (par. 30), a matter of immense import for the future of Rome. The strength of the state was thereby practically doubled, and the city was advanced a long way towards the goal of its destiny, — the making of all the world Roman.

The wise and prudent policy of incorporation had, indeed, all along been stubbornly resisted by the privileged order; yet the patricians in their opposition had never as a body resorted to force. The spirit of concession, of moderation, of reasonableness, on the part of both of the orders, had marked in a most conspicuous manner the whole of the long contention.

The triumph of the plebs meant of course the end of the old gentile or clan aristocracy, that is, the aristocracy of birth and relationship, which we found in absolute control of the affairs of the state at the dawn of history (par. 16). This privileged body was indeed soon replaced by a new one of wealth, made up both of patricians and

plebeian C. Marcius Rutilius in 356 B.C.; to the censorship in 351 B.C.; to the prætorship in 337 B.C. The curule ædileship was opened to them almost as soon as established, which was in 365 B.C. See Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. i. bk. ii. chap. iii. p. 385.

plebeians; and this new aristocracy, as we shall learn, becoming corrupt, luxurious, and unpatriotic, contributed greatly to the undoing of the republic. But during the century of foreign wars and conquests now immediately before us, there was such a degree of unity and concord in the body of Roman citizens as to insure the triumph of the arms and the policies of the city, and to give it first the sovereignty of Italy, and then of the whole Mediterranean world.

REFERENCES. — PLUTARCH, *Lives of Poplicola, and Caius Marcus Coriolanus*. *LIVY, ii. 33, 34, 39, and 40, for the story of Coriolanus; ii. 48 and 49, for the legend of the Fabii; and iii. 26-28, for that of Cincinnatus (from other writers we get some details omitted by Livy); v. 35-49, on the taking of Rome by the Gauls; v. 50-54, on the debate among the Romans in regard to removing to Veii. The last reference is particularly valuable since the passage here conveys an idea of the feelings of the ancients respecting the sacredness of the city and the relations to it of its patron gods. MOMMSEN (T.), *History of Rome*, vol. i. bk. ii. chaps. i. iii. pp. 319-412. TIGHE (A.), ***The Development of the Roman Constitution*, pp. 63-76. IRNE (W.), ***Early Rome* (Epoch Series). The later chapters of this volume are practically a criticism of the account which the Roman annalists give of the affairs of the early republic. WILSON (WOODROW), **The State*, pp. 94-101. A suggestive summary. STEPHENSON (A.), *Public Lands and Agrarian Laws of the Roman Republic* (Johns Hopkins University Studies); for all questions relating to the *ager publicus* and the reform proposals of Spurius Cassius and others.

THE SENATE, THE ASSEMBLIES, AND THE MAGISTRATES OF THE REPUBLIC.

THE SENATE.

This body dates from the time of the kings (par. 14). It comprised three hundred members. These were at first named by the king, then by the consuls. After 444 B.C. the roll of the body was revised by the censors (par. 65). From about the middle of the fourth century B.C. the usual entrance to the senate was through the magistracies of the city; that is, at this time was conferred on the higher magistrates, and at a somewhat later time upon the lower magistrates also, the right, at the end of their term of office, to take a seat in the body. During the period of the Punic wars the senate was the chief power in the state. The number of senators was raised by Sulla to six hundred (par. 178).

The following succinct account regarding the competence of the senate, and of its relations at different periods to the popular assemblies and to the tribunes, will be found of special interest and value: "The power of the senate seems to have been different at different times. At first its legislative action was limited to the right, asserted from the most remote times, to grant or refuse its approbation to laws voted by the people. During the republic the supreme power belonged to the people; but they seldom passed acts without the authority of the senate. In weighty affairs it was common for the senate to deliberate and decree, and for the people to interpose their sanction. But there were many things which the senate determined by its own authority, even during the free republic, if not by express law, at least by the custom of its ancestors. When the popular cause gained ground, the tribunes assumed the right of putting a negative on the decrees of the senate which rendered them of no effect, and on the other hand, acts were passed in the assembly of the tribes, which did not require the concurrence or approbation of the senate. Under the empire, when the comitia had disappeared, the senate had, for a time, undoubted authority to make decrees which had the force of law, but subject to the veto of the emperor under his tribunitian power." — MACKENZIE, *Roman Law*, pp. 9 and 10.

THE ASSEMBLIES.

The assemblies of the Romans were all primary bodies, that is, they were non-representative in character (par. 15). The meetings, which were summoned and presided over by certain of the magistrates, were opened with sacrifices and prayer. The voting was always by groups, either by curies, or by centuries, or by tribes. The members of the groups voted sometimes orally, sometimes by ballot, and again by count as they filed past a given point. The functions of the assemblies were at the outset electoral, legislative, and judicial. Many of their judicial duties, however, were gradually devolved upon jury courts. After the third century B.C. all the assemblies became scarcely more than the pliant instruments of their presiding magistrates, acting in their own interest, or in the interest of some clique or demagogue.

The four assemblies under the republic were the following :

1. *Comitia Curiata, or the Curiate Assembly.* — This was the most ancient of all the assemblies (par. 15). It was composed of all the citizens of the curies capable of bearing arms. Its meeting-place was commonly the comitium. The voting was by curies. The assembly was in the very earliest times superseded by the *Comitia Centuriata* (par. 37). During the historical period, it was scarcely more than a survival.

2. *Comitia Centuriata, or the Assembly of the Centuries.* — This was at first an assembly of the people organized as an army. It was an outcome of the reforms of Servius Tullius (par. 37). It was made up of both patricians and plebeians, and was presided over by the consuls. The meeting-place of the body was commonly the Campus Martius. The signal for a meeting was a red flag hoisted on the Janiculum. The voting was by centuries. The assembly constituted a court of appeal in cases involving sentences of death, flogging, and banishment. The body was reorganized between the First and the Second Punic War in such a way as to take the power out of the hands of the wealthy classes, where it was at first lodged.

3. *Concilium Tributum Plebis, or the Plebeian Assembly of Tribes.* — This was an assembly of the plebs, voting by tribes. Its meeting-place was generally in the great forum. It was called together and presided over by the plebeian tribunes and ædiles. By the Valerio-Horatian laws (par. 61) it was given power, without the concurrences of the senate (?), to make laws that should bind the whole people. It became in time a chief law-making body in the state.

4. *Comitia Tributa, or the Patricio-Plebeian Assembly of*

Tribes. — This was a body made up of both patricians and plebeians. The vote was taken by tribes. It first appears in 449 B.C. (par. 62). It was presided over by consuls and prætors. Its usual meeting place was the forum.

THE MAGISTRATES.

The Consuls. — These were the two ordinary supreme executive magistrates of the republic. They were invested with their authority for one year only. The first consuls were elected 509 B.C. (par. 45). They possessed at the outset practically all the powers that had been wielded by the kings. Each consul could block the action of his colleague. The consulship was opened to the plebeians by the Licinian laws, 367 B.C. (par. 71). The age of eligibility to the consulship was forty-three. The at first extensive powers of the consuls were gradually broken up and a large part of them distributed among or absorbed by the various magistrates named below.

The Dictator. — The dictator was an officer appointed usually to meet an emergency in the affairs of the state (par. 45). He was chosen for a period of six months and was invested with practically irresponsible and unlimited power. His assistant was called *Magister Equitum*, "Master of the Horse." The plebeians gained admission to the dictatorship in 356 B.C. (par. 71, n. 4). After the Second Punic War the office fell into disuse, until it was revived in the last century of the republic (par. 188, n. 6).

The Plebeian Tribunes. — The first tribunes of the people were elected in 494 B.C. as an outcome of the first plebeian secession (par. 50). There were only two originally, then five, and finally ten (after 457 B.C.). They were inviolable, like ambassadors. They called together and presided over the plebeian assembly of the tribes. Their original duty was to protect the plebeians from arbitrary treatment at the hands of patrician magistrates, but they gradually enhanced their authority and prerogatives until by the second century B.C. they had become the most powerful magistrates of the city (par. 178).

The Prætors. — The prætorship was created by the Licinian laws, 367 B.C. (par. 71). At first there was but one prætor, but before the end of the republican period the number had been raised to sixteen. These officers were charged with the administration of the civil law. Under the later republic the ex-prætors were sent out, under the name of proprætors, as governors of the provinces.

The Ædiles.—There were two ædiles chosen from the plebs, and two known as curule ædiles, chosen from the upper order. The plebeian ædileship was created at the time of the establishment of the plebeian tribunate, 496 B.C. (par. 50). The curule ædileship was created in 365 B.C. (par. 71, n. 2). Among the duties of these officers were the superintendence of the public games, the charge of the public archives, and the care of the streets and markets of the city.

The Quæstors.—Originally there were only two quæstors (par. 61, n. 5), but before the end of the republic the number had been increased to forty. Their chief duties were of a financial nature. They acted as treasurers of the state and as assistants and paymasters of generals and superior magistrates.

The Censors.—The number of these officers was two. The first censors were elected about 443 B.C.¹ (par. 65). One of the duties of these magistrates was to take the census of the citizens and their property. They were also the guardians of the public morals. They further acted as overseers of the work on the military roads, the aqueducts, and the public buildings, seeing to it that all contracts were faithfully performed.

The consuls, the prætors, the patrician ædiles, and the censors were *curule* magistrates, that is, magistrates entitled to use an official stool called the curule chair. A curule office conferred nobility upon the holder of it and all his descendants. For something respecting the fortune of all these assemblies and magistracies under the empire, see pars. 208, 217, and 239.

¹ Some authorities refer the creation of the office to the year 435 B.C.

CHAPTER VI.

THE CONQUEST OF ITALY.

(367-264 B.C.)

73. The Creation of a New Class of Citizens ; Cærite Rights (353 B.C.).—It will be fitting if we begin the present chapter, in which we shall, amidst the recitals of wars of conquest, have much to say respecting the matter of Roman citizenship, with a notice of the creation by the city of a new class of citizens.

We have seen how, after the taking of Veii,^{Jan. 66.} the Romans incorporated with the territory of their state a great part of Southern Etruria (par. 67). The Romanization of these lands, and the threatening advance of the Roman power in these regions, caused an uprising of the Etruscan cities of Tarquinii, Cære, and Falerii.

The movement was suppressed. The Tarquinians, who during the war had sacrificed to their gods over three hundred Roman prisoners, were harshly dealt with, several hundred of their most distinguished citizens being taken to Rome and first flogged and then beheaded in the forum (351 B.C.). But the Cærites, because they, at the time Rome was destroyed by the Gauls, had given an asylum to the vestal virgins and the sacred things of the Roman gods (par. 68), were shown more consideration. Their political independence was, indeed, taken away from them, but they were left in control of their own local affairs, and

were given all the private rights of Roman citizens (*civitas sine suffragio*).

This was probably the first instance in which Rome had conferred these rights upon the inhabitants of a conquered city. The special instalment of rights here bestowed came to be known as the *Caritan franchise*, and was afterwards granted to other communities. Cities thus deprived of sovereignty and incorporated as self-governing towns with the Roman state were called *municipia*.⁵ The government of such towns was modeled as nearly as possible on that of the capital city Rome.

74. The Beginning of the Roman Municipal System. — But the Roman statesmen in determining the relations of Cære to Rome had done something more than to create a new class or grade of Roman citizens. They had consciously or unconsciously created a new system of government, for Rome had never before, save perhaps in one instance,⁶

⁵ The Roman writers used this term with little precision, and modern historians have given it widely different applications. In order to avoid confusion, we shall apply the term exclusively to cities or communities actually incorporated with the Roman state, yet enjoying at least some measure of local self-government. Whenever we use the term in a sense different from this, we shall state carefully with just what significance we are employing it. Thus we shall speak of the *Roman colonies* (par. 84) as *municipia*; but we shall not apply the name either to *Latin colonies* (par. 84) or to prefectures (par. 163, n. 8), for the reason that an essential element of the municipal system was lacking in each instance. Thus in the case of the Latin colony the community did not form a part of the Roman state proper, but was simply an allied community; and in the case of the prefecture, the essential feature of local self-government was wanting. Some writers, however, classify prefectures as *municipia of the second grade*.

⁶ Some authorities maintain that Tusculum, which was subjected in some way to Rome in 381 B.C., was the most ancient of Roman *muni-*

dealt with a conquered city in the way that she dealt with Cære. When Alba Longa was taken, in the times of the kings, the city, according to the tradition, was destroyed, and its inhabitants transported in a body to Rome and incorporated with the Roman people (par. 42). When Veii was taken, in the year 396 B.C. (par. 66), the greater part of the inhabitants were killed or sold as slaves, and the vanquished community was thus wholly broken up and, as it were, wiped out of existence.

Now Rome admittedly could not attain to greatness by following either of these two policies. But in dealing with Cære, she happily hit upon a new governmental device which enabled her to incorporate in her growing dominions one conquered city after another until she had absorbed the whole world. This device was what is known as the municipal system, for the reason that, as we have seen (par. 73), the Romans gave to a city having the status of Cære the name *municipium*.

2. We shall best secure a good understanding of the essential feature of this municipal system, if we glance at the system as it exists among ourselves to-day; for our so-called municipal system, in its underlying principle, is an inheritance from Rome.

A municipality or municipal town in our system of government is a city which, acting under a charter granted by the state in whose territory it is situated and of which it forms a part, elects its own magistrates, and manages, with more or less supervision on the part of the state, its own local affairs. The essential principle involved in the

cipia. The question of precedence here raised has, however, only an antiquarian interest.

arrangement is local self-government, carried on under the paramount authority of the state. The city, without its local political life having been stifled, has been made a constituent part of a larger political organism. It is only when the cities in a state sustain this relation to the superior government that we have what may properly be called the municipal system.

Now, as we have said, when Rome incorporated Cære into her territory and made the inhabitants of the place Roman citizens — although citizens possessing as yet only a part of the rights of the city — she laid the corner stone of this municipal system which rendered possible her own greatness, and which, transmitted by her to later times as a principle of government, was to form the very basis of the structure of the modern free state.

We must not think that the problem here solved by Rome was one easy of solution, and that consequently no great measure of credit need be given the Romans for having solved it. The difficulties met and overcome by them in working out this system were very much like those met and overcome by our statesmen of a century and more ago, when they devised the federal system, and determined what should be the relations of the states of our union to the general government at Washington. Indeed, this whole federal system is nothing more than the application to states of the principles of government that Rome applied to cities. The federal system existed in germ in the municipal system of Rome.

How this form of government fostered among the Italians, at one and the same time, local patriotism and national patriotism, love for one's native city and interest

and pride in the affairs of the greater commonwealth of which that city was only a part, is well illustrated by these memorable words once used by Cicero: "Every burgher of a corporate town," he says, "has, I take it, two fatherlands, that of which he is a native, and that of which he is a citizen. I will never deny allegiance to my native town, only I will never forget that Rome is my greater Fatherland, and that Arpinum⁷ is but a portion of Rome."⁸

What we have now said will convey some idea of the important place which the municipal system of Rome holds in the development of free self-government among men. This was Rome's great, and almost her only, contribution to political history, and after her law system her best gift to civilization (par. 310).

✓75. **The Fall of the Etruscan Power.**—The suppression of the Etruscan uprising, and the incorporation of the city of Cære with the Roman state, marks a turning point in the fortunes of the Etruscan race. In the words of the historian Mommsen, "Their season of power and aspiration had passed away." We shall find them in arms against Rome again and again after this, but their attacks were no longer formidable. Their power had been broken, not alone by the blows they had received from the Romans, but also by the attacks of the Gauls from the North, and of the Greek cities of the South by the way of the sea. Furthermore, great inequality in wealth had arisen among them, and luxury had crept into their cities, as later it entered Rome, and society had become effeminate and

⁷ Cicero's birthplace.

⁸ *De Legibus*, ii. 2, 5; as quoted by Strachan-Davidson, *Cicero*, p. 6.

corrupt. What elements there were remaining in the race of vitality and strength were gradually absorbed by Rome, and the Etruscan people and the Etruscan civilization as distinct factors in history disappeared from the world.



SAMNITE WARRIOR.

(From a vase)

76. **The First Samnite War (343-341 B.C.).**—The power of the Etruscans having been broken, the most formidable competitors of the Romans for supremacy in Italy were the Samnites, rough and warlike mountaineers who held the Apennines to the south-east of Latium. They were worthy rivals of the "Children of Mars." The successive struggles between these martial races are known as the First, Second, and Third Samnite wars.

They extended over a period of half a century, and in their course involved almost all the states of Italy.

The beginning of the struggle was brought about in this way. The Samnites were troubling the people of Campania. The Campanians applied to Rome for help against

the mountain raiders. The appeal was favorably received by the Romans, and thus the great duel began.

Of the first of this series of Samnite wars we know very little, although Livy wrote a long, but palpably unreliable, account of it.

~77. **The Revolt of the Latin Cities** (340-338 B.C.). — In the midst of the Samnite struggle, Rome was confronted by a dangerous revolt of her Latin allies (par. 51). Leaving the war unfinished, she turned her forces against the insurgents.

The strife between the Romans and their Latin allies was simply, in principle, the old contest within the walls of the capital between the patricians and the plebeians transferred to a larger arena. (As the patricians, before the equalization of the orders, had claimed for themselves alone the right to manage the affairs of the state, so now did the united orders claim for Rome alone the right to manage the affairs of all Latium. The Latins were obliged to obey the commands of Rome, and to follow her lead in war. But they were now growing very dissatisfied with their position in the unequal alliance, and resolved that Rome should give up the sovereignty she was practically exercising.) Accordingly they sent an embassy to Rome, demanding that the association should be made one of perfect equality. To this end the ambassadors proposed that in the future one of the consuls should be a Latin, and that one-half of the senate should be chosen from the Latin nation. Rome was to be the common fatherland, and all were to bear the Roman name.⁹

These demands of the ambassadors were listened to

⁹ Livy, viii. 5.

by the Roman senators with amazement and indignation. One of the consuls, Titus Manlius by name, voiced their anger in declaring that, should Latins by any chance gain admission to the senate house, he would enter there with his sword and put them all to death with his own hand. Then turning, and addressing the statue of Jupiter, he exclaimed: "O Jupiter, canst thou endure to behold in thy own sacred temple, strangers as consuls and as senators?"

The demands of the Latin allies were refused, and war followed, a war in which the Romans were fighting their former comrades of the camp and the field. The Campanians lent aid to the Latins, while the Samnites helped the Romans against the common enemy.

The following tale of the war given us by Livy is of value as exhibiting the quality of sternness in the Roman character. In one of the early campaigns of the war the consul Titus Manlius had given strict orders that no one should engage in single combat with any of the enemy. The consul's own son Titus, impelled by the ardor of youth, disobeyed his father's command, and accepted a challenge from one of the foe. He slew his antagonist and brought the spoils stripped from the body to his father's tent. The father turned from his son in anger, and ordered the lictors to lay hold of him, to bind him to the stake, and to strike his head from his body. This was done, the consul standing by and looking on. Through such sacrifice of parental feeling did Titus Manlius maintain military discipline, teach a needed lesson in obedience, and cause his orders, as Livy says, "to be transmitted as a model of austerity to all after times."¹⁰

¹⁰ Livy, vii. 7. Compare par. 46.

There is also preserved to us from this war the following legend of the consul Publius Decius Mus. A dream having revealed to him and his colleague that victory would rest with the army whose leader should offer himself as a victim to the gods of the underworld, they agreed that the one whose soldiers first showed signs of wavering in the fight should devote himself for the army and the Roman people (par. 20).

The troops of Decius Mus were the first to yield ground to the enemy. Thereupon, Decius, repeating the formula used on such occasions, flung himself into the midst of the enemy, and fell pierced with darts. The Romans, now certain of victory, renewed the battle with fresh ardor and courage, and soon put the enemy to flight.

After about three years' hard fighting, the rebellion was subdued.

The Latin League as a political body was now dissolved, the organization being retained merely for religious purposes. Four of the towns, Tibur, Præneste, Cora, and Laurentum,¹¹ retained their independence; the others with their territories were made a part of the Roman domain,¹² and became *municipia* of different grades (par. 73, n. 5). The inhabitants of some of these municipalities were admitted at once to full Roman citizenship, while those of others were given only a part of the rights and privileges of citizens, the political rights of voting and holding office being withheld.

¹¹ The student should not fail to locate these places on the map opposite page 119.

¹² Compare the maps on pages 79 and 118, and note carefully how the *ager Romanus* was extended at this time.

To prevent any further combination among the cities against Rome, intermarriage and trade¹³ between them were forbidden. Each city was forced to conclude a separate treaty with Rome. In this way each community was completely isolated from all the others and coöperation among them effectually prevented.

Part of the lands which were actually incorporated with the Roman domain was added to tribes already existing; out of the remainder two new tribes were formed, which brought the whole number up to twenty-nine¹⁴ (332 B.C.).

One noted trophy of the war set up at Rome was the beaks (*rostra*) of the ships of the Volscian city of Antium, which were attached to the orator's platform in the great forum, and hence the name *Rostra*, by which this stand was ever afterwards known (par. 34).

78. The Second Samnite War (326-304 B.C.); the Humiliation of the Romans at the Caudine Forks.—In a few years after the close of the Latin contest, the Romans were at war again with their old rivals, the Samnites. The most memorable event of this struggle was the capture and humiliation of the Roman army at the celebrated Caudine Forks.

The circumstances were these. It was the year 321 B.C. S. Postumius and T. Veturius were consuls. Word was brought to them that the Samnites were besieging the Apulian city of Luceria, which was under the protection of Rome. Now there were two routes leading to the belea-

¹³ *Commercium* and *connubium* (par. 16).

¹⁴ Two new tribes had been formed in 358 B.C. from lands in the Pomptine region. This increased the number from twenty-five, where it stood after the reconstruction of Southern Etruria (par. 67), to twenty-seven.

guered place, one long but safe, the other short but dangerous. The consuls, in their anxiety to carry help to their allies before it should be too late, unwisely chose the shorter route. At a point called the Caudine Forks, this road led the Roman forces through a narrow mountain-walled valley, entrance to which was gained by a deep cleft in the rocks and exit by a similar difficult ravine. The consuls carelessly led their troops into this pent-up valley, only to discover when it was too late that they were in a trap, with the enemy, who had planned an ambush here, hemming them in. To attempt to extricate themselves would have been idle, and consequently the Romans were forced to capitulate.

The leader of the Samnites, Gavius Pontius, is said to have sent messengers to his aged father for advice as to what he should do with his prisoners. The father is reported to have counselled his son either to let them all go back to Rome uninjured, and thereby make the Romans eternal friends of the Samnites, or to slay every man of them, and thus render the Romans for a long time at least incapable of doing harm to anybody. Pontius adopted a middle course. He forced the consuls to agree to a treaty of peace the terms of which were that the Romans should give up all the territory they had taken from the Samnites, and withdraw their colonies from the same. This treaty was secured by the oaths of the consuls and of all the chief officers of the Roman army, and further by six hundred Roman knights given as hostages.

The terms of the treaty having been arranged, the Romans were deprived of their arms, and then all were sent beneath the yoke (par. 57, n. 9), which was the deepest

humiliation that could be inflicted upon a vanquished enemy. The disgraced consuls and legions made their way back to Rome. To escape the observation of the citizens, they slipped into the city after nightfall, and concealed themselves in their homes for days before venturing to show their faces upon the streets or in the forum.¹

The consuls had exceeded their powers in concluding such a treaty as they had agreed to. The senate refused to confirm it, and thought to meet all the requirements of honor by sending back to the Samnites the consuls who had made it. Pontius, however, refused to receive these men, and insisted that the Romans, if they had any regard for honor or any fear of the oath-witnessing gods, should either ratify what their consuls had done, or put back the released army in the Caudine valley in exactly the same position it occupied before the treaty was made. This the senate refused to do.

From the day of this memorable transaction at the Caudine Forks it has been a matter of debate whether or not in this affair the Roman senate did all that fairness and honor demanded.

The war went on. Soon the tide of fortune turned in favor of the Romans. The consul Lucius Papirius Cursor retook the city of Luceria, which earlier in the war had been captured by the Samnites, and recovered all the spoils taken by the enemy at Caudium, together with the hostages given by the Romans at that time. In requital for the humiliation which the Samnites had inflicted upon the Romans, Papirius sent all his prisoners, seven thousand in number, under the yoke (319 B.C.).

¹ Livy, ix. 7.

Later in the struggle the Etruscans appeared in the field as allies of the Samnites, who now had ranged on their side many of the other Italian peoples. But the Etruscans suffered a decisive defeat² at the hands of the able Roman general Fabius Maximus Rullianus, which forced them to withdraw from the war; and a few years later (in 305 B.C.)



VIEW ON THE APPIAN WAY.

(The construction of this "Queen of Roman Roads" was begun in the year 312 B.C. by the censor Appius Claudius.)

the Romans captured Bovianum, the capital city of the Samnites, and thus brought the war to an end. The Samnites gave up all the conquests they had made and the old treaty relations with Rome were reestablished.

The war had lasted twenty-two years. During its course Rome had added extensive territories to her domain, and

² At the battle of Vadimonian Lake (310 B.C.).

had made her hold of these secure by means of colonies, fortresses, and military roads; for it was at this time that Rome began the construction of those remarkable highways that formed one of the most impressive features of her later empire (par. 292). The first of these roads was begun in the year 312 B.C. under the direction of the censor Appius Claudius, and called after him the *Via Appia*. It ran from Rome to Capua, and thus brought all Campania close to the capital.

79. Alexander the Great and the Roman Generals Compared.

— It was in the midst of this second Samnite war that Alexander the Great, after having conquered a great part of Asia, died at Babylon (323 B.C.). The mutual isolation, at this comparatively late period in the history of antiquity, of the nations of the East and of the West is revealed by the doubt expressed by Livy as to a rumor of the fame of Alexander having ever reached the ears of the Romans of this time. But the contemporaneity of the events of the Samnite war and the conquests of Alexander, leads Livy to reflect whether, had Alexander lived longer and attempted to carry out the design which he is said to have formed of adding Europe to his vast empire, he would have been likely to succeed in the undertaking.

The historian arrives at the patriotic conclusion that Alexander would have found his equal in any one of the great Roman commanders of this time, as, for instance, Titus Manlius, or Lucius Papirius Cursor, or Fabius Maximus Rullianus; and had he delayed the enterprise until he was an old man, it would have been the same. He would have found out that a Roman consul was not a Darius. Besides, in Italy Alexander would have had

men to fight ; in Asia he had been fighting women. And in addition to the commanders and the soldiers, there was the Roman military system, a system that had been worked out and improved by the Romans during five centuries of constant experience in war. In the matter of discipline, in the handling of troops, in the forming of the battle line, in the construction of entrenched camps, the Roman generals were unsurpassed masters of their art.

Furthermore, Carthage and Rome would have joined forces against the Macedonians as against a common enemy. And so, had Alexander come, the issue could not have been doubtful, -- especially since the invaders would have had but one Alexander while the Romans had many, so that if the accidents of war had carried off one, that would have had no material effect upon the final outcome of the contest. Alexander owed his fame to having died young, before fickle fortune had had time to ruin his prosperous affairs -- as they would have been ruined in Italy.⁸

80. Two New Tribes Created (299 B.C.). — Shortly after the close of the Second Samnite War (in 299 B.C.), the Equians having again become troublesome, Rome took away from them some of their territory, and made it a part of the Roman domain. The inhabitants settled in the districts were formed into two new tribes and thus admitted to the Roman franchise.⁴

81. The Third Samnite War (298–290 B.C.). — Although the Samnites were so thoroughly defeated in their second

⁸ Livy, ix. 17–19.

⁴ The number of tribes was now thirty-three. Two tribes had been formed about 330 B.C. out of Volscian territory, which brought the number up to thirty-one.

contest with Rome, still it was only four years before they were again in arms and engaged in their third struggle with her for supremacy in Italy. This time they succeeded in forming against their old enemy a powerful coalition which embraced the Etruscans, the Umbrians, the Gauls, and other nations. It was easy for them to accomplish this, for the rapid advance of the power of Rome had caused all the peoples of the peninsula fully to realize that unless her encroachments were speedily checked their independence would be lost forever.

The danger that threatened Rome from the league against her was great ; but Roman courage rose in proportion to the threatening peril. Two consular armies met the combined forces of the Samnites and their allies at Sentinum in Umbria (295 B.C.). In the midst of the fight, the consul Decius Mus, seeing his soldiers yielding ground to the enemy, resolved to follow the example of his father in the Latin war (par. 77) and offer himself as an expiatory sacrifice for the Roman army and the Roman people. Accordingly, having devoted himself and the army of the enemy with solemn imprecations to the infernal gods, he plunged into the hostile ranks and there found death. His soldiers, seeing what he had done, turned again with more than human courage upon the enemy, and soon the victory rested with them.⁵

This battle broke the power of the coalition against Rome. One after another the states and tribes that had joined the alliance were chastised, and the Samnites were forced to give up the struggle. Rome left them their independence, but stripped them of all their conquests. The brave Samnite

⁵ Livy, x. 28, 29.

general, Gavius Pontius, who sent the Roman army beneath the yoke at the Caudine Forks (par. 78), after having been led in the triumphal procession of the consul Fabius Maximus Gurgus, was ungenerously cast into the dungeon beneath the Capitoline hill and there beheaded.

82. The War with Tarentum and Pyrrhus (282–272 B.C.).
—The period of eight years which followed the end of Rome's struggle with the Samnites and the beginning of her memorable war with Tarentum and Pyrrhus, was filled by the Romans in petty wars with the Etruscans, the Gauls, the Lucanians, and various Greek cities of Magna Græcia; and in the founding of colonies, the building of fortresses, and the extension of her military roads.⁶ Before the end of this period, almost all the Greek cities of Southern Italy, save Tarentum, had fallen under the growing power of the imperial city.

Tarentum was one of the most noted of the cities of Magna Græcia. It was a seaport on the Calabrian coast, and had grown opulent through the extended trade of its merchants. Its inhabitants were luxurious in their habits, idle and frivolous, entering into and breaking engagements with careless levity. They spent the most of their time in feasting and drinking, in lounging in the baths, in attending the theatre, and in idle talk on the streets.

Between Tarentum and Rome there existed a treaty,

⁶ The chief matter of constitutional importance during this period was the passage of the Hortensian law, probably in 286 B.C. This law was the outcome of a secession of the plebeians, the third (?) and last, to the Janiculum hill. Its most important provision, namely, that which made the decrees of the plebeian assembly binding on all the citizens, appears to have been simply a reënactment of a similar provision of the earlier Valerio-Horatian laws. Compare par. 61.

according to the terms of which the Romans were bound not to pass with their war-galleys beyond the promontory of Lacinium. In violation of this treaty, a squadron of Roman war-ships, on its way to the Adriatic,⁷ ran into the harbor of Tarentum. The Tarentines straightway manned their galleys, and attacking the Roman fleet, destroyed several of the ships, and made prisoners of the crews of others. These captives they rashly killed or sold as slaves.

The Romans promptly sent an embassy to Tarentum to demand amends. In the theatre, in the presence of a great assembly, one of the ambassadors was grossly insulted, his toga being befouled by a clownish fellow amidst the approving plaudits of the giddy crowd. The ambassador, raising the soiled garment, said sternly: "Laugh now; but you will weep when this toga is cleansed with blood." Rome at once declared war.

The Tarentines turned to Greece for aid. Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, and a cousin of Alexander the Great, who had an ambition to build up such an empire in the West as his famous kinsman had established in the East, responded to their entreaties, and crossed over into Italy with a small army of Greek mercenaries and twenty war elephants. He organized and drilled the effeminate Tarentines, and soon felt prepared to face the Romans.

The hostile armies met at Heraclea (280 B.C.). It is said that when Pyrrhus, who had underestimated his foe, observed the skill which the Romans evinced in forming

⁷ The extension of the Roman territory across Italy to the Adriatic, and the necessity of opening up communication by sea with the eastern shore of the peninsula, doubtless seemed to the Romans sufficient justification for the violation of the terms of the treaty.

their lines of battle, he exclaimed in admiration: "In war, at least, these men are not barbarians." The battle was won for Pyrrhus by his war elephants, the sight of which, being new to the Romans, caused them to flee from the field in dismay. But Pyrrhus had lost thousands of his bravest troops. Victories gained by such losses in a country where he could not recruit his army, he saw clearly, meant final defeat. As he looked over the battlefield he is said to have turned to his companions and remarked: "Another such victory and I shall be ruined." He noticed also, and not without appreciating its significance, that the wounds of the Roman soldiers killed in the action were all in front. "Had I such soldiers," he said admiringly, "I should soon be master of the world."

The prudence of the victorious Pyrrhus led him to send to the Romans proposals of peace. The embassy was headed by his chief minister, Cineas, of whom Pyrrhus himself often said: "The eloquence of Cineas wins me more victories than my sword." When the senate hesitated, its resolution was fixed by the eloquence of the now old and blind Appius Claudius: "Rome," he exclaimed, "shall never treat with a victorious foe." The ambassadors were sent back to Pyrrhus with the reply that if he wanted peace he must first quit the soil of Italy. It was at this time that Cineas, in answer to some inquiries of his master respecting the Romans, drew the celebrated parallels that likened their senate to an assembly of kings, and war against such a people to an attack upon the Lernean Hydra.

Pyrrhus, according to the Roman story-tellers, who most lavishly embellished this chapter of their history, was not more successful in attempts at bribery than in the arts of

negotiation. Attempting by rich presents to win the celebrated statesman Fabricius, who had been intrusted by the senate with an important embassy, the sterling old Roman replied: "If I am dishonest, I am not worth a bribe; if honest, you must know I will not take one."

Another story relates how, when the physician of Pyrrhus went to Fabricius and offered to poison his enemy, Fabricius instantly put the perfidious man in chains, and sent him back to his master for punishment. The sequel of this story is that Pyrrhus conceived such an exalted opinion of the Roman sense of honor that he permitted the prisoners in his hands to go to the capital to attend a festival, with no other security for their return than their simple promise, and that not a single man broke his word.

After a second victory (the battle of Asculum, 279 B.C.), as disastrous as his first, Pyrrhus crossed over into Sicily, to aid the Greeks there, who at this time were being hard pressed by the Carthaginians. At first he was everywhere successful; but finally fortune turned against him, and he was glad to escape from the island. Recrossing the straits into Italy, he once more engaged the Romans; but at the battle of Beneventum he suffered a disastrous and final defeat at the hands of the consul Curius Dentatus (275 B.C.). Leaving a sufficient force to garrison Tarentum, Pyrrhus now set sail for Epirus. He had scarcely embarked before Tarentum surrendered to the Romans (272 B.C.).

The surrender of Tarentum ended the struggle for the mastery of Italy. Rome was now mistress of all the peninsula south of the Arnus and the Rubicon.⁸

⁸ For the influence of the conquered cities of Magna Græcia upon Roman life and culture, see par. 302.

83. **United Italy.** — "For the first time Italy was now united into one state under the sovereignty of the Roman community."¹ We cannot make out with perfect clearness just what rights and powers Rome exercised over the various cities, tribes, and nations which she had brought under her rule.²

This much, however, is clear. Rome took away from all these hitherto independent states the right of making war, and thus put a stop to the bloody contentions which from time immemorial had raged between the tribes and cities of the peninsula. She thus gave Italy what, after she had impressed her restraining authority upon all the peoples of the Mediterranean lands, came to be called "the Roman Peace."³ She did for Italy what in these later times England has done for India, Russia for Central Asia, and different European powers have done for Africa.⁴

But this political union of Italy would possess no historical significance were it not for the fact that it paved the way for the social and racial unification of the peninsula. The greatest marvel of all history is how Rome, embracing at first merely a handful of peasants, could have made so much of the ancient world like unto herself

¹ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. i. p. 534.

² We refer here, not to those territories and communities which Rome had actually incorporated with the Roman domain (see map, p. 118), but to those communities to which was given the name of *Italian allies*, *socii*, or *civitates federate* (par. 163).

³ *Pax Romana*.

⁴ A symbol of the Roman sovereignty thus established in Italy was the silver money of Rome, which now became current throughout the peninsula. The subjected states were no longer allowed to exercise the sovereign right of coining money. — MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*, vol. i. p. 535.

in blood, in speech, in custom, in manners, in temperament, and in character. That she did so, that she did thus Romanize a large part of the peoples of antiquity, is one of the most important matters in the history of the human race.

Rome accomplished this great feat in large measure by means of her system of colonization, which was, in some respects, unlike that of any other people in ancient or in modern times. We must make ourselves familiar with some of the main features of this unique colonial system.

84. Roman Colonies and Latin Colonies. — The colonies that Rome established in conquered territories fall into two classes, known as Roman colonies and Latin colonies. Roman colonies were made up of emigrants who retained in the new settlement all the rights and privileges, both private and public, of Roman citizens, though of course some of these rights, as for instance that of voting in the public assemblies at Rome, could be exercised by the colonist only through his return to the capital.

Up to the present time colonies of this type had been established only along the coasts of Etruria, Latium, and Campania, but later they were founded at strategic points inland.⁵ They were in effect permanent military camps intended to guard or to hold in subjection conquered territories. Usually it was some conquered city that was occupied by the Roman colonists, the old inhabitants either being expelled in whole or in part or reduced to

⁵ See table on page 138 for the names and the number of Roman colonies established prior to the year 118 B.C. Notice, also, the number of colonists — usually three hundred — sent to the different places.

a subject condition, like that of the plebeians at Rome before the revolt and secession of the year 494 (par. 49).

The colonists in their new homes organized a government which was almost an exact imitation of that of Rome, and through their own assemblies and their own magistrates managed all their local affairs. These colonies were, in a word, viewed as to the political status of the settlers, simply suburbs of the mother city. They were in effect just so many miniature Romes --- centres from which radiated Roman culture into all the regions round about them.

The Latin colonies were so called, not because they were founded by Latin settlers, - for the later colonies of this type were made up almost exclusively of citizens of Rome who had given up their political rights at the capital for the sake of improving in the new settlement their economic condition, - - but because their inhabitants possessed substantially the same rights as the old Latin towns enjoyed that had retained their independence at the end of the great Latin war (par. 77).

The Latin colonist possessed some of the most valuable of the private rights of Roman citizens,⁶ together with the capacity to acquire the suffrage by migrating to the capital and taking up a permanent residence there, provided he left behind in the town whence he came sons to take his place.⁷

⁶ He possessed the *commercium* and probably the *connubium* (par. 16).

⁷ After the year 268 B.C., Rome in founding new Latin colonies curtailed the privileges which had been conferred upon this class of colonists up to that time, and thus created different grades of Latin

There is an analogy between the status of a settler in an ancient Latin colony and of a settler in a territory of our Union. When a citizen of any State migrates to a territory he loses his right of voting in a federal election, just as a Roman citizen in becoming a Latin colonist lost his right of voting in the assemblies at Rome. Then again the resident of a territory has the privilege of changing his residence and settling in a State, thereby acquiring the federal suffrage, just as the inhabitant of a Latin colony could migrate to Rome, and thus acquire the right to vote in the public assemblies there.

The Latin colonies numbered about twenty at the time of the Second Punic War. They were scattered everywhere throughout Italy, and formed, in the words of the historian Mommsen, "the real buttress of the Roman rule." They were, even to a much greater degree than the Roman colonies, active and powerful agents in the dissemination of the Roman language, law, and culture. They supplemented admirably the work of the Roman legions in the field, and were Rome's chief auxiliary in her great task of making all the world Roman.

All these colonies were kept in close touch with the capital by means of splendid military roads, the construction of which, as we have seen, was begun during the Second Samnite War (par. 78).

rights. This diminution of rights consisted in the withdrawal of the earlier right to coin money, also of the *connubium*, and in restricting the privilege of acquiring political rights at Rome to those members of the Latin communities who had held public magistracies in the colonies from which they came. This shut out from the freedom of the capital all save the most influential of the Latins. Ariminum, founded in 268 B.C., was the first Latin colony whose rights were thus restricted.

REFERENCES. -- LIVY, vii. 29-42, and viii.-x. Livy's account of the Samnite wars is broken off abruptly at the year 292 B.C. by the loss of ten of the books of his history. The gap extends to the beginning of the Second Punic War. PLUTARCH, **Life of Pyrrhus*, from c. xxiii. on to the end. MOMMSEN (T.), **History of Rome*, vol. i. bk. ii. chaps. iv.-ix. pp. 413-612. TIGHE (A.), ***The Development of the Roman Constitution*, chap. v. FREEMAN (E. A.), *The Story of Sicily* (Story of the Nations), chap. xiii. pp. 265-271, "Pyrrhus in Italy." BOUCHÉ-LECLERCQ, *Manuel des Institutions Romaines*, pp. 171-186. An excellent account of the Roman municipal system. IHNE (W.), *History of Rome*, vol. i. bk. iii. chap. xviii. pp. 552-575, "Condition of the Roman People before the Beginning of the Wars with Carthage."

TABLE OF LATIN COLONIES IN ITALY.¹

	COLONIES.	LOCATION.	B.C.	No. OF COLONISTS.
1	Signia	Latium	?	—
2	Cerceii	Latium	?	—
3	Suessa Pometia	Latium	?	—
4	Cora	Latium	?	—
5	Velitræ	Latium	494	—
6	Norba	Latium	492	—
7	Antium	Latium	467	—
8	Ardea	Latium	442	300
9	Satricum	Latium	385	300
10	Sutrum	Etruria	383	300
11	Nepete	Etruria	383	300
12	Setia	Latium	382	300
13	Cales	Campania	331	300
14	Fregellæ	Latium	328	300
15	Luceria	Apulia	314	300
16	Suessa	Latium	313	300
17	Pontia	Isle of Latium	313	300
18	Saticula	Samnium	313	300
19	Interamna Lirinas	Latium	312	—
20	Sora	Latium	303	4000
21	Alba	Latium	303	6000
22	Narnia	Umbria	299	300
23	Carseola	Latium	298	4000
24	Venusia	Apulia	291	300
25	Hiatria	Picenum	289	300
26	Cosa	Campania	273	1000
27	Paestum	Lucania	273	300
28	Ariminum		268	300
29	Beneventum	Samnium	268	300
30	Firmum	Picenum	264	300
31	Aesernia	Samnium	263	300
32	Brundisium	Calabria	244	300
33	Spoletium	Umbria	241	300
34	Cremona	Gallia Cis.	218	6000
35	Placentia	Gallia Cis.	218	6000
36	Copia	Lucania	193	300
37	Valentia	Bruttii	192	—
38	Bononia	Gallia Cis.	189	3000
39	Aquileia ²	Gallia Trans.	181	4500

¹ From Stephenson's *Public Lands and Agrarian Laws of the Roman Republic*: Johns Hopkins University Studies, Ninth Series, vii-viii.

² No Latin colonies were founded after the year 180 B.C. Thenceforth all colonies were of the civic or Roman type, the settlers possessing the rights of full citizenship.

TABLE OF CIVIC [ROMAN] COLONIES IN ITALY.¹

	COLONIES	LOCATION.	B.C.	NO. OF COLONISTS.
1	Ostia	Latium	418	—
2	Labici	Latium	418	1500
3	Antium	Latium	338	300
4	Anxur	Latium	329	300
5	Minturnæ	Campania	296	300
6	Sinuessa	Campania	296	300
7	Sent. Gallica	Umbria	283	300
8	Castrium Novum	Picenum	283	300
9	Æsium	Umbria	247	300
10	Alsium	Etruria	247	300
11	Fregena	Etruria	245	300
12	Pyrgi	Etruria	191	300
13	Puteoli	Campania	194	300
14	Vulturnum	Campania	194	300
15	Luturnum	Campania	194	300
16	Salernum	Campania	194	300
17	Buxentum	Lucania	194	300
18	Sipontum	Apulia	194	300
19	Tempsa	Bruttii	194	300
20	Croton	Bruttii	194	300
21	Potentia	Picenum	184	300
22	Pisaurum	Umbria	184	300
23	Pauma	Gallia Cis.	183	1000
24	Mutina	Gallia Cis.	183	1000
25	Saturnia	Etruria	183	300
26	Graviscæ	Etruria	181	300
27	Luna	Etruria	180	300
28	Auximum	Picenum	157	300
29	Fabreria	Latium	124	—
30	Minervia	Bruttii	122	—
31	Neptunia	Iapygia	122	—
32	Dertona	Liguria	100	—
33	Eporedia	Gallia Trans.	100	—
34	Narbo Martius	Gallia Narbo.	118	—

¹ From Stephenson's *Public Lands and Agrarian Laws of the Roman Republic*: Johns Hopkins University Studies, Ninth Series, vii-viii

CHAPTER VII.

THE FIRST PUNIC WAR.

(264-241 B.C.)

85. Carthage and the Carthaginian Empire. — Foremost among the cities founded by the Phœnicians upon the different shores of the Mediterranean was Carthage, upon the northern coast of Africa. The city is thought to have had its beginnings in a small trading-post, established late in the ninth century B.C., about one hundred years before the legendary date of the founding of Rome. The favorable location of the colony upon one of the best harbors of the African coast gave the city a vast and lucrative commerce. At the period which we have now reached it had grown into an imperial city, covering, with its gardens and suburbs, a district twenty-three miles in circuit. It is said to have contained 700,000 inhabitants. A commercial enterprise like that of its mother-city Tyre, and exactions from hundreds of subject cities and tribes, had rendered it enormously wealthy. In the third century before our era it was probably the richest city in the world.

By the time Rome had extended her authority over Italy, Carthage held sway, through peaceful colonization or by force of arms, over the northern coast of Africa from the Greater Syrtis to the Pillars of Hercules, and possessed the larger part of Sicily as well as Sardinia. She also

collected tribute from the natives of Corsica and of Southern Spain. With all its shores dotted with her colonies and fortresses, and swept in every direction by her war-galleys, the Western Mediterranean had become a "Phœnician lake," in which, as the Carthaginians boasted, no one dared wash his hands without their permission.

86. Carthaginian Government and Religion. — The Government of Carthage was democratic in theory, but oligarchical in fact. Corresponding to the Roman consuls, two magistrates, called "suffetes," stood at the head of the state. The senate was composed of the heads of the leading families; its duties and powers were very like those of the Roman senate.

The religion of the Carthaginians was the old Canaanitish worship of Baal. To this cruel fire-god they offered human sacrifices.

87. Rome and Carthage compared. — These two great republics, which for more than five centuries had been slowly extending their limits and maturing their powers upon the opposite shores of the Mediterranean, were now about to begin one of the most memorable struggles of all antiquity — a duel that was to last, with every vicissitude of fortune, for over one hundred years.

In material power and resources the two rival cities seemed well matched as antagonists; yet Rome had immaterial elements of strength, hidden in the character of her citizens and embodied in the principles of her government, which Carthage did not possess.

First, the Carthaginian territories, though of great extent, were widely scattered, embracing remote coasts and isolated islands, while the Roman domains were

compact and confined to a single and easily defended peninsula.

Again, the subject peoples of Carthage's empire were in race, language, and religion mostly alien to their Phœnician conquerors, and so were ready, upon the first disaster to the ruling city, to fall away from their allegiance. On the other hand, the Latin allies and the Italian confederates of Rome were close kin to her, and so through natural impulse they for the most part - although not all were satisfied with their position in the state - remained loyal to her during even the darkest periods of her struggle with her rival.

But the greatest contrast between the two states appeared in the principles upon which they were respectively based. Carthage was a despotic oligarchy. The many different races of the Carthaginian empire were held in an artificial union by force alone, for the Carthaginians had none of the genius of the Romans for political organization and state-building. The Roman state, on the other hand, as we have learned, was the most wonderful political organism that the world had ever seen. It was not yet a nation, but it was rapidly growing into one. Every free man within its limits was either a citizen of Rome, or was on the way to becoming a citizen. Rome was already the common fatherland of more than a quarter of a million of men.⁸ The Roman armies were, in large part, armies of citizen-soldiers, like those Athenian warriors that fought

⁸ The census of the year 265 B.C. gave the number of the citizens of Rome liable to the levy as 292,224. This included those possessing the Cæritan franchise (par. 73), but not those having Latin rights (par. 84).

at Marathon and at Salamis; the armies of Carthage were armies of mercenaries like those that Xerxes led against the Greek cities. And then the Romans, in their long contests with the different races of Italy for the mastery of the peninsula, had secured such a training in war as perhaps no other people before them ever had.

As to the naval resources of the two states there existed at the beginning of the struggle no basis for a comparison. The Romans were almost destitute of anything that could be called a war navy," and were practically without experience in naval warfare; while the Carthaginians possessed the largest, the best manned, and the most splendidly equipped fleet that had ever patrolled the waters of the Mediterranean.

And in another respect Carthage had an immense advantage over Rome. She had Hannibal. Rome had some great commanders, but she had none like him.

88. The Beginning of the War. – Lying between Italy and the coast of Africa is the large island of Sicily. It is in easy sight of the former, and its southernmost point is only ninety miles from the latter. At the commencement of the First Punic¹ War, the Carthaginians held possession of all the island save a strip of the eastern coast, which was under the sway of the Greek city of Syracuse. The Greeks and the Carthaginians had carried on an almost uninterrupted struggle through two centuries for the control of the island.

⁹ Polybius, i. 20, says that they did not have a single galley when they first crossed over to Sicily (par. 88). He says they ferried their army across in boats borrowed from the Greek cities of Southern Italy.

¹ From *Pœni*, Latin for Phœnicians, and hence applied by the Romans to the Carthaginians, as they were Phœnician colonists.

A faint echo of this long conflict reaches us from the battlefield of Himera² and mingles with a like echo from the straits of Salamis. A later phase of the struggle we have just had called to our attention while following the career of Pyrrhus (par. 82).

But the Romans had not yet set foot upon the island. It was destined, however, to become the scene of the most terrible encounters between the armaments of Rome and Carthage. Pyrrhus had foreseen it all. As he withdrew from the island, he remarked, "What a fine battlefield we are leaving for the Romans and Carthaginians."

In the year 264 B.C., on a flimsy pretext of giving protection to some friends,³ the Romans crossed over to the island. That act committed them to a career of foreign conquest destined to continue till their armies had made the circuit of the Mediterranean lands.

² The battle of Himera, between the Sicilian Greeks and the Carthaginians, is said to have been fought not only in the same year (480 B.C.) but also on the very same day as the naval battle of Salamis between the eastern Greeks and the Persians.

³ During the war with Pyrrhus (par. 82), some Campanians, who had been serving as mercenaries in the army of the king of Syracuse, while returning to Italy, conceived the project of seizing the town of Messana, on the Sicilian straits. They killed the citizens, intrenched themselves in the place, and commenced to annoy the surrounding country with their marauding bands. Hiero, king of Syracuse, besieged the ruffians in their stronghold. The Mamertines, or "Sons of Mars," — for thus they called themselves, — appealed to the Romans for aid, basing their claims to assistance upon the alleged fact of common descent from the war-god. Now the Romans had just punished a similar band of Campanian robbers who had seized Rhegium, on the Italian side of the channel. For them to turn about now and lend aid to the Sicilian band would be the greatest inconsistency. But in case they did not give the assistance asked, it was certain that the Mamertines would look to the Carthaginians for succor; and so Messana would come into the hands of their rivals.

The Syracusans and Carthaginians, old enemies and rivals though they had been, joined their forces against the new-comers. The allies were defeated in the first battle, and the Roman army obtained a sure foothold in the island.

In the following year both consuls were placed at the head of formidable armies for the conquest of Sicily. A large portion of the island was quickly overrun, and many of the cities threw off their allegiance to Syracuse and to Carthage, and became allies of Rome. Hiero, king of Syracuse, seeing that he was upon the losing side, forsook the Carthaginians, formed an alliance with the Romans, and ever after remained their firm friend.

89. The Romans build their First Fleet of Quinqueremes.
--- Their experience during the past campaigns had shown the Romans that if they were to cope successfully with the Carthaginians they must be able to meet them upon the sea as well as upon the land. Not only did the Carthaginian ships annoy the Sicilian coast towns which were already in the hands of the Romans, but they even made descents upon the shores of Italy, ravaged the fields and villages, and sailed away with their booty before pursuit was possible. To guard their shores and ward off these attacks, the Romans had no war-ships. Their Greek and Etruscan allies were, indeed, maritime peoples, and possessed considerable fleets, which were at the disposal of the Romans. But these vessels were merely triremes, that is galleys with three banks of oars; while the Carthaginian ships were quinqueremes, or vessels with five rows of oars. The former were worthless to cope with the latter, such an advantage did these have in their greater weight and

height. So the Romans resolved to build a fleet of quinqueremes.

Now it so happened that, a little while before this, a Carthaginian galley had been wrecked upon the shore of Southern Italy. This served as a pattern. It is said that within the almost incredibly short space of sixty days a



THE PROW OF A ROMAN WAR-SHIP.

(From an ancient relief. The representation shows the arrangement of the tiers of oars in a two-banked ship. In just what way the lines of rowers in triremes and quinqueremes were arranged is unknown.)

growing forest was converted into a fleet of one hundred and twenty war-galleys. While the ships were in process of building, the Roman soldiers were being trained in the duties of sailors by practice in rowing, while sitting in lines on tiers of benches built upon the land. With the shore ringing with the sounds of the hurried work upon the galleys, and crowded with the groups of "make-

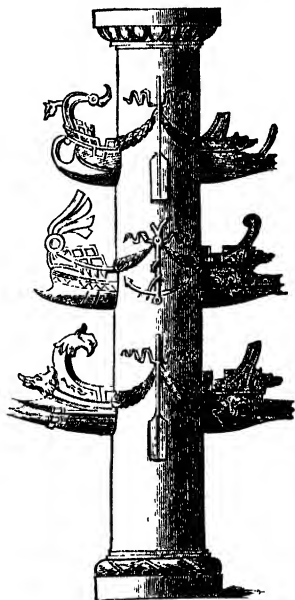
believe rowers," the scene must have been a somewhat animated as well as ludicrous one. Yet it all meant very serious business.

90. The Romans gain their First Naval Victory (260 B.C.).—The consul Gaius Duillius was intrusted with the command of the fleet. He met the Carthaginian squadron near the city and promontory of Myla, on the northern coast of Sicily. A single precaution gave the victory to the Romans. Distrusting their ability to match the skill of their enemies in manœuvring their ships, the Romans had provided each galley with a drawbridge, over thirty feet in length and wide enough for two persons to pass over it abreast. This bridge was raised and lowered by means of pulleys attached to a mast.

The Carthaginians bore down swiftly with their galleys upon the Roman ships, thinking to pierce and sink with their brazen beaks the clumsy-looking structures. The bridges alone saved the Roman fleet from destruction. As soon as a Carthaginian ship came near enough to a Roman vessel, the gangway was allowed to fall upon the approaching galley. The long spike with which the end was armed, piercing the deck, instantly pinned the vessels together. The Roman soldiers, rushing along the bridge, were soon engaged in a hand-to-hand conflict with their enemies, in which species of encounter the former were sure of an easy victory. Fifty of the Carthaginian galleys were captured; the remainder -- there were one hundred and thirty ships in the fleet -- wisely refusing to rush into the terrible and fatal embrace in which they had seen their companions locked, turned their prows in flight.

The Romans had gained their first great naval victory.

The joy at Rome was unbounded. It inspired, in the more sanguine, splendid visions of maritime command and glory. The Mediterranean should speedily become a Roman lake, in which no vessel might float without the consent of Rome. Duillius was honored with a magnificent triumph, and the senate ordained that, in passing through the city to his home at night, he should always be escorted with torches and music. In the forum was raised a splendid memorial column, "adorned with the brazen beaks of the vessels which his wise ignorance and his clumsy skill had enabled him to capture."



THE COLUMN OF DUILLIUS.

(A restoration. The column was decorated with the prows of captured ships.)

91. The Romans carry the War into Africa. — The results of the naval engagement at Mylæ encouraged the Romans to push the war with redoubled energy. They resolved to carry it into Africa. For this purpose they gathered an immense fleet of three hundred and thirty ships, carrying nearly a hundred and forty thousand men.⁴ The Carthaginians disputed the passage of the Romans with a fleet of equal strength, bearing a hundred and fifty thousand men. With Polybius we view with astonishment these enormous armaments, the most power-

⁴ Polybius, i. 26. The historian estimates an average of 420 men to each ship, — 300 rowers and 120 soldiers.

ful certainly that had ever contended for the mastery of the sea.⁵

The hostile fleets met near the Sicilian promontory of Ecnomus. The Carthaginians suffered a severe defeat, near one hundred of their ships being sunk or captured (256 B.C.).

The Romans now continued their voyage to the African coast, and disembarked near Carthage. At first the Romans were successful in all their operations, so much so that the consul, Atilius Regulus, who through the recall of his colleague had been left in sole command of the expedition of invasion, sent word to Rome that he had "sealed up the gates of Carthage with terror."

Finally, however, Regulus suffered a crushing defeat and was made prisoner.⁶ A fleet which was sent to bear away the remnants of the shattered army was wrecked in a terrific storm off the coast of Sicily, and the shores of the island were strewn with the wreckage of between two and three hundred ships and with the bodies of almost a hundred thousand men.

Undismayed at the terrible disaster that had overtaken the transport fleet, the Romans set to work to build another, and made a second descent upon the African coast. The expedition, however, accomplished nothing of importance; and the fleet on its return voyage was almost destroyed, just off the coast of Italy, by a tremendous storm. The visions of naval supremacy awakened among

⁵ Polybius, i. 63.

⁶ The Carthaginians were at this time commanded by an able Spartan general, Xanthippus, who, with a small but well-disciplined band of Greek mercenaries, had entered their service.

the Romans by the splendid victories of Mylæ and Ecnomus were thus suddenly dispelled by these two successive and appalling disasters that had overtaken their armaments.

92. The Battle of Panormus (251 B.C.). — For a few years the Romans refrained from tempting again the hostile powers of the sea. Sicily became the battle-ground where the war was continued, although with but little spirit on either side, until the arrival in the island of the Carthaginian general Hasdrubal (251 B.C.). He brought with him one hundred and forty elephants trained in war. Of all the instruments of death which the Roman soldiers were accustomed to face, none in the history of the legionaries inspired them with such uncontrollable terror as these "wild beasts," as they termed them. The furious rage with which these monsters, themselves almost invulnerable to the darts of the enemy, swept down the opposing ranks with their trunks, and tossed and trampled to pieces the bodies of their victims, was indeed well calculated to inspire a most exaggerated dread.

Beneath the walls of Panormus, the consul Metellus drew Hasdrubal into an engagement. He checked the terrific charge of the elephants by discharges of arrows dipped in flaming pitch, which caused the frightened animals to rush back upon and crush through the disordered ranks of the Carthaginians. The result was a complete victory for the Romans. After the battle the Romans induced the drivers of the elephants, which were roaming over the field in a sort of panic, to capture and quiet the creatures. Once in captivity, they were ferried across the Sicilian straits on huge rafts, and to the number of twenty were caused to grace the triumphal procession of Metellus.

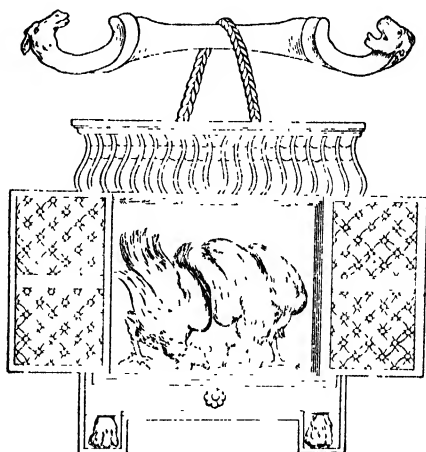
After having been led through the forum and along the Via Sacra, they were conducted to the Circus, and there slain in the presence of the assembled multitudes.

93. Regulus and the Carthaginian Embassy.—The result of the battle of Panormus dispirited the Carthaginians. They sent an embassy to Rome to negotiate for peace, or, if that could not be reached, to effect an exchange of prisoners. Among the commissioners was Regulus, who since his capture, five years before (par. 91), had been held a prisoner in Africa. Before setting out from Carthage he had promised to return if the embassy were unsuccessful. For the sake of his own release, the Carthaginians supposed he would counsel peace, or at least urge an exchange of prisoners. But it is related that, upon arrival at Rome, he counselled war instead of peace, at the same time revealing to the senate the enfeebled condition of Carthage. As to the exchange of prisoners, he said: "Let those who have surrendered when they ought to have died, die in the land which has witnessed their disgrace."

The Roman senate, following his counsel, rejected all the proposals of the embassy; and Regulus, in spite of the tears and entreaties of his wife and friends, turned away from Rome, and set out for Carthage, to meet whatever fate the Carthaginians, in their disappointment and anger, might plan for him.

The tradition goes on to tell how, upon the arrival of Regulus at Carthage, he was confined in a cask driven full of spikes, and then left to die of starvation and pain. This part of the tale has been discredited, and the finest touches of the other portions are supposed to have been added by the story-tellers.

94. Loss of Two More Roman Fleets. — After the failure of the Carthaginian embassy, the war went on for several years by land and by sea with many vicissitudes. At last, on the coast of Sicily, one of the consuls, Claudius, met with an overwhelming defeat.⁷ Almost a hundred vessels of his fleet were lost. The disaster caused the greatest alarm at Rome. Superstition increased the fears of the people. It was reported that just before the battle, when the auspices were being taken and the sacred chickens would not eat, Claudius had given orders to have them thrown into the sea, irreverently remarking, "At any rate, they shall drink." Imagination was free to depict what further evils the offended gods might inflict upon the Roman state.



AUGUR'S BIRDS.

(After a drawing based on an ancient relief. The knowledge sought was gained by observing the birds' manner of taking their food. Their refusal to eat was an unlucky omen.)

The gloomiest forebodings might have found justification in subsequent events. The other consul just now met with a great disaster. He was proceeding along the southern coast of Sicily with a squadron of eight hundred merchantmen and over one hundred war-galleys, the former loaded with grain for the Roman army on the island. A

⁷ In a sea fight at Drepana, 249 B.C.

severe storm arising, the squadron was beaten to pieces upon the rocks. Not a single ship escaped. The coast for miles was strewn with corpses and wreckage, and ridged with vast windrows of grain cast up by the waves.

95. Close of the First Punic War (241 B.C.).—The war had now lasted for fifteen years. Four Roman fleets had been destroyed, three of which had been sunk or broken to pieces by storms. Of the fourteen hundred vessels which had been lost, seven hundred were war-galleys, --- all large and costly quinqueremes.⁸ Only one hundred of these had fallen into the hands of the enemy; the remainder were a sacrifice to the malign and hostile power of the waves. Such successive blows from an invisible hand were enough to blanch the faces even of the sturdy Romans. Neptune manifestly denied to the "Children of Mars" the dominion of the sea.

It was impossible during the six years following the last disaster to infuse any spirit into the struggle. In 247 B.C., Hamilcar Barca, the father of the great Hannibal, assumed the command of the Carthaginian forces, and for several years conducted the war with great ability on the island of Sicily, even making Rome tremble for the safety of her Italian possessions.

Once more the Romans determined to commit their fortune to the element that had been so unfriendly to them. A fleet of two hundred vessels was built and equipped, but entirely by private subscription; for the senate feared that public sentiment would not sustain them in levying a tax for fitting up another costly armament as an offering to the

⁸ Polybius, i. 63. This authority gives the number of quinqueremes lost by the Carthaginians as five hundred.

insatiable Neptune. This people's squadron, as we may call it, was intrusted to the command of the consul Catulus. He met the Carthaginian fleet under the command of the admiral Hanno, near the Ægatian Islands, and inflicted upon it a crushing defeat (241 B.C.).

The Carthaginians now sued for peace. A treaty was at length arranged, the terms of which required that Carthage should give up all claims to the island of Sicily, surrender all her prisoners, and pay an indemnity of 3200 talents (about \$4,000,000), one-third of which was to be paid down, and the balance in ten yearly payments. Thus ended (241 B.C.), after a continuance of twenty-four years, the first great struggle between Carthage and Rome.

One important result of the war was the crippling of the sea-power of the Phœnician race, which from time immemorial had been a most prominent factor in the history of the Mediterranean lands, and the giving practically of the control of the sea into the hands of the Romans.

REFERENCES. — **POLYBIUS (Shuckburgh's translation), i. 10-63. Polybius, partly because he adheres rigidly to the chronological order of events, is in general somewhat confusing to young readers; but since what he says about the First Punic War is in the nature of an introduction to his main work, which begins with the 140th Olympiad (220-217 B.C.), it assumes the form of a continuous narrative and possesses on that account a very special interest. In about sixty pages the historian gives us the very best account of the war that we possess. In the sixth book of Polybius, chaps. 51-56, a comparison is drawn between Rome and Carthage, which should be read in the present connection.

THNE (W.), *History of Rome*, vol. ii. bk. iv. chaps. i.-iii. pp. 3-115. MOMMSEN (T.), *History of Rome*, vol. ii. bk. iii. chaps. i. and ii. pp. 9-76. SMITH (R. B.), *Carthage and the Carthaginians*, and **Rome and Carthage* (Epoch Series). CHURCH (A. J.), *The Story of Carthage* (Story of the Nations).

CHAPTER VIII.

ROME AND CARTHAGE BETWEEN THE FIRST AND THE SECOND PUNIC WAR.

(241-218 B.C.)

SECTION I. -- ROME.

96. The First Roman Province and the Beginning of the Provincial System (241 B.C.). For the twenty-three years that followed the close of the first struggle between Rome and Carthage, the two rivals strained every power and taxed every resource in preparation for a renewal of the contest.

The Romans settled the affairs of Sicily, organizing all of it, save the lands in the eastern part belonging to Syracuse, as a province of the republic. This was the first territory beyond the limits of Italy that Rome had conquered, and the Sicilian the first of Roman provinces. But as the imperial city extended her conquests, her provincial possessions increased in number and size until they formed at last a perfect cordon about the Mediterranean. Each province was governed by a magistrate, at first one of the prætors⁹ (par. 71), sent out from the capital. This officer exercised both civil and military authority. Each province also paid an annual tribute, or tax, to Rome, something that had never been exacted of the Italian allies.

⁹ After the Third Punic War, instead of prætors, proprætors and proconsuls were sent out.

We have here the beginning of the Roman provincial system. It presented a sharp contrast to that liberal system of federation and incorporation that formed the very corner stone of the Roman power in Italy. There Rome had made all, or substantially all, of the conquered peoples either citizens or close confederates. Against the provincials she not only closed the gates of the city, but denied to the most of them, all but the mere name of allies. She made them her subjects, and administered their affairs, not in their interest, but in that of her own. This illiberal imperial policy contributed largely, as we shall learn, to the undoing of the Roman republic.

97. Rome acquires Sardinia and Corsica ; the Second Province. (227 B.C.). — The first acquisition by the Romans of lands beyond the peninsula seems to have created in them an insatiable ambition for foreign conquests. They soon found a pretext for seizing the island of Sardinia, the most ancient, and, after Sicily, the most prized of the possessions of the Carthaginians. An insurrection breaking out upon the island, the Carthaginians were moving to suppress it, when the Romans commanded them not only to desist from their military preparations (pretending that they believed them a threat against Rome), but to surrender Sardinia, and, moreover, to pay a fine of 1200 talents (about \$1,500,000). Carthage, exhausted as she was, could do nothing but comply with these demands, unjust though they were. The ungenerous and dishonorable conduct of the Romans in this matter made more bitter and implacable, if that were possible, the Carthaginian hatred of the Roman race. Sardinia, in connection with Corsica, which was also seized, was formed into

a Roman province (227 B.C.). With her hands upon these islands, the authority of Rome in the Western, or Tyrrhenian Sea was supreme.

98. The Illyrian Corsairs are punished. — In a more legitimate way the Romans extended their influence over the seas that wash the eastern shores of Italy. For a long time the Adriatic and Ionian waters had been infested with Illyrian pirates, who issued from the roadsteads of the northeastern coasts of the former sea. These buccaneers not only scoured the seas for merchantmen, but troubled the towns along the shores of Greece, and were even so bold as to make descents upon the Italian coasts. The Roman fleet chased these corsairs from the Adriatic, and captured several of their strongholds. Rome now assumed a sort of protectorate over the Greek cities of the Adriatic coast.

These cities welcomed Rome as a protector, for they had been greatly troubled by the northern pirates. As a mark of their gratitude they gave the Romans permission to take part in certain of their religious mysteries¹ and to send contestants to the Isthmian games.²

Rome thus acquired a foothold on the eastern shore of the Adriatic. She had taken the first step in the path that was to lead her to absolute supremacy in Greece and throughout all the East.

99. War with the Gauls. — In the north, during this same period, Roman authority was extended from the Apennines and the Rubicon to the foot of the Alps. Alarmed at the advance of the Romans, who were pushing northward their

¹ The Eleusinian mysteries, celebrated at Eleusis near Athens.

² Games celebrated in honor of Poseidon on the isthmus of Corinth.

great military road, called the Flaminian Way, and also settling with discharged soldiers and needy citizens the tracts of frontier land wrested some time before from the Gauls, the Boii, a tribe of that race, stirred up all the Gallic peoples already in Italy, besides their kinsmen who were yet beyond the mountains, for an assault upon Rome.

Intelligence of this movement among the northern tribes threw all Italy into a fever of excitement. At Rome the terror was great; for not yet had died out of memory what the city had once suffered at the hands of the ancestors of these same barbarians that were now again gathering their hordes for sack and pillage (par. 68). An ancient prediction, found in the Sibylline books, declared that a portion of Roman territory must needs be occupied by Gauls. Hoping sufficiently to fulfil the prophecy and satisfy fate, the Roman senate caused two Gauls to be buried alive in one of the public squares of the capital. This was an extraordinary proceeding for the Romans. They must have been in a great panic to have so far yielded to the promptings of what they in their calmer moments regarded as a cruel superstition.

Meanwhile the barbarians had advanced into Etruria, ravaging the country as they moved southward. After gathering a large amount of booty, they were carrying this back to a place of safety, when they were surrounded by the Roman armies at Telamon, and almost annihilated.⁴ Forty thousand are said to have been killed and sixty thousand taken prisoners (225 B.C.). The Romans, taking advantage of this victory, pushed on into the plains of the Po, captured the city which is now known as Milan,

and extended their authority to the foothills of the Alps. To guard the new territory, two military colonies, Placentia and Cremona, were established upon the opposite banks of the Po, while the *Via Flaminia* was carried across the Apennines and extended to Ariminum, on the Adriatic.³

The Gauls, thus reduced to subjection, were of course restless and resentful, and, as we shall see, were very ready to embrace the cause of Hannibal when a few years after this he descended from the Alps and appeared among them as a deliverer (par. 107).

SECTION II. — CARTHAGE.

100. The Truceless War. — Scarcely had peace been concluded with Rome at the end of the First Punic War, before Carthage was plunged into a still deadlier struggle, which for a time threatened her very existence. Her mercenary troops, upon their return from Sicily, revolted, on account of not receiving their pay. Their appeal to the native tribes of Africa was answered by a general uprising throughout the dependencies of Carthage. The extent of the revolt shows how hateful and hated was the rule of the great capital over her subject states.

The war was unspeakably bitter and cruel. It is known in history as "The Truceless War." At one time Carthage was the only city remaining in the hands of the government. But the genius of the great Carthaginian general, Hamilcar Barca, at last triumphed, and the authority of Carthage was everywhere restored.

³ This road, under the name of *Via Æmilia*, was a little later (in 187 B.C.) extended to Placentia, on the Po.

101. The Carthaginians in Spain. — After the disastrous termination of the First Punic War, the Carthaginians determined to repair their losses by new conquests in Spain. Hamilcar Barca was sent over into that country, and for nine years he devoted his commanding genius to organizing the different Iberian tribes into a compact state, and to developing the rich gold and silver mines of the southern part of the peninsula. He fell in battle 228 B.C.

Hamilcar Barca was the greatest general that up to this time the Carthaginian race had produced. As a rule, genius is not transmitted; but in the Barcine family the rule was broken, and the rare genius of Hamilcar reappeared in his sons, whom he himself, it is said, was fond of calling the "lion's brood." Hannibal, the oldest, was only nineteen at the time of his father's death, and being thus too young to assume command, Hasdrubal,⁴ the son-in-law of Hamilcar, was chosen to succeed him. He carried out the unfinished plans of Hamilcar, extended and consolidated the Carthaginian power in Spain, and upon the eastern coast founded New Carthage as the centre and capital of the newly acquired territory. The native tribes were conciliated rather than conquered. The Barcine family knew how to rule as well as how to fight.

102. Hannibal's Vow. — Upon the death of Hasdrubal, which occurred 221 B.C., Hannibal, now twenty-six years of age, was by the unanimous voice of the army called to be their leader. When a child of nine years he had been led by his father to the altar; and there, with his hands upon the sacrifice, the little boy had sworn eternal hatred

⁴ Not to be confounded with Hannibal's own brother, Hasdrubal. See par. 117.

to the Roman race. He was driven on to his gigantic undertakings and to his hard fate, not only by the restless fires of his warlike genius, but, as he himself declared, by the sacred obligations of a vow that could not be broken.

103. Hannibal attacks Saguntum. - In two years Hannibal extended the Carthaginian power to the Ebro. Saguntum, a native city upon the east coast of Spain, alone remained unsubdued. The Romans, who were jealously watching affairs in the peninsula, had entered into an alliance with this city, and taken it, together with some Greek cities at the foot of the Pyrenees, under their protection. Hannibal, although he well knew that an attack upon this place would precipitate hostilities with Rome, laid siege to it in the spring of 219 B.C. He was eager for the renewal of the old contest. The Roman senate sent messengers to him forbidding him to make war upon a city that was an ally of the Roman people: but Hannibal, disregarding their remonstrances, continued the siege, and after an investment of eight months gained possession of the town.

The Romans now sent commissioners to Carthage to demand of the senate that they give up Hannibal to them, and by so doing repudiate the act of their general. The Carthaginians hesitated. Then Quintus Fabius, chief of the embassy, gathering up his toga, said, "I carry here peace and war; choose, men of Carthage, which ye will have." "Give us whichever ye will," was the reply. "War, then," said Fabius, dropping his toga. The "die was now cast; and the arena was cleared for the foremost, perhaps the mightiest, military genius of any race and of any time." ⁵

⁵ Smith's *Carthage and Rome*, p. 114.

REFERENCES. — POLYBIUS, i. 65-88. APPIAN (translated from the Greek by Horace White), vol. i. *Foreign Wars*, bk. x. chaps. i. and ii. * MOMMSEN (T.), *History of Rome*, vol. ii. bk. iii. chaps. ii. and iii. pp. 38-102.

IRNE (W.), *History of Rome*, vol. ii. bk. iv. chaps. iv.-vii. pp. 116-142.

ARNOLD (W. T.), ***The Roman System of Provincial Administration*, chap. i., "What a province was. How acquired. Use of 'client princes.' How secured and organized. Moral aspect of the Roman rule."

CHAPTER IX.

THE SECOND PUNIC WAR.

(218-201 B.C.)

104. Hannibal begins his March.—The Carthaginian empire was now all astir with preparations for the impending struggle. Hannibal was the life and soul of every movement. He planned and executed. The Carthaginian senate tardily confirmed his acts. His bold plan was to cross the Pyrenees and the Alps and descend upon Rome from the north. He secured the provinces in Spain and Africa by placing garrisons of Iberians in Africa and of



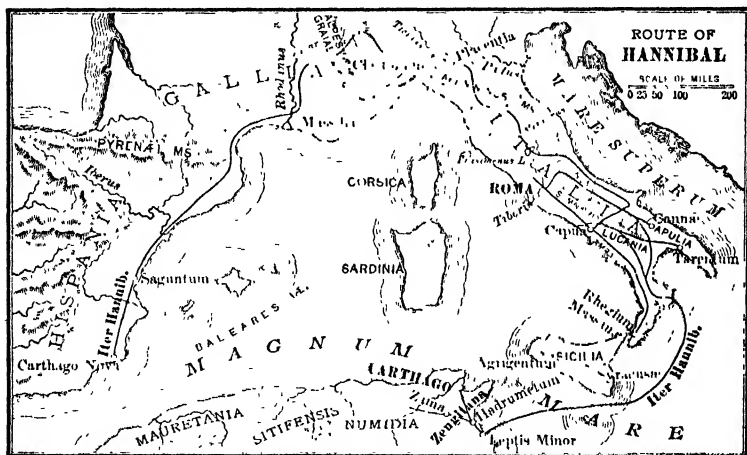
HANNIBAL.

Libyans in the peninsula. Ambassadors were sent among the Gallic tribes on both sides of the Alps, to invite them to be ready to join the army that would soon set out from Spain.

With these preparations completed, Hannibal left New Carthage early in the spring of 218 B.C., with an army numbering about a hundred thousand men, and including thirty-seven war elephants. A hostile country lay between him and the Pyrenees. Through the warlike tribes that resisted his advance he forced his way to the foot of the

mountains that guard the northern frontier of Spain. More than twenty thousand of his soldiers were lost in this part of his march.

105. Passage of the Pyrenees and the Rhone. — Leaving a strong force to garrison the newly conquered lands, and discharging ten thousand more of his men who had begun to murmur because of their hardships, he pushed on with the remainder across the Pyrenees, and led them down into



the valley of the Rhone. The Gauls attempted to dispute the passage of the river, but they were routed, and the army was ferried across the stream in native boats and on rudely constructed rafts.

106. Passage of the Alps. — Hannibal now followed up the course of the Rhone, and then one of its eastern tributaries, the Isère (Isar), until he reached the foothills of the Alps, probably under the pass known to-day as the Little St. Bernard. Nature and man joined to oppose the passage. The season was already far advanced, — it was

October, — and snow was falling upon the higher portions of the trail. Day after day the army toiled painfully up the dangerous path. In places the narrow way had to be cut wider for the monstrous bodies of the elephants. Often avalanches of stone were hurled upon the trains by the hostile bands that held possession of the heights above. At last the summit was gained, and the shivering army looked down into the warm haze of the Italian plains. The sight, together with encouraging words from Hannibal, somewhat revived the drooping spirits of the soldiers. Their descent of the mountains was accomplished only after severe toil and losses. At length the thinned columns issued from the defiles of the foothills upon the plains of the Po. Of the fifty thousand men and more with whom Hannibal had set out, barely twenty thousand had survived the hardships and perils of the march, and these “looked more like phantoms than men.”

Yet this was the pitiable force with which Hannibal proposed to attack the Roman state — a state that at this time had on its levy lists over seven hundred thousand foot soldiers and seventy thousand horse.⁶

107. Battles of the Ticinus, the Trebia, and of Lake Trasimene.—The Romans had not the remotest idea of Hannibal's plans. With war determined upon, the senate had sent one of the consuls, Tiberius Sempronius, with an army into Africa by the way of Sicily; while the other, Publius Cornelius Scipio, they had directed to lead another army into Spain.

While the senate were watching the movements of these expeditions, they were startled by the intelligence that

⁶ Polybius, ii. 24. This enumeration includes of course all the allies of Rome — the “allies of the Latin name” and the Italian confederates.

Hannibal, instead of being in Spain, had crossed the Pyrenees and was among the Gauls upon the Rhone. Sempronius was hastily recalled from his attempt upon Africa, to the defence of Italy. Scipio, on his way to Spain, had touched at Mæssilia, and there learned of the movements of Hannibal. He sent his army on to Spain under the command of his brother, to prevent Hannibal's receiving any reinforcements from that quarter. He himself turned back, hurried into Northern Italy, and took command of the levies there. The cavalry of the two armies met upon the banks of the Ticinus. The Romans were driven from the field by the fierce onset of the Numidian horsemen. Scipio now awaited the arrival of the other consular army, which was hurrying up through Italy by forced marches.

In the battle of the Trebia (218 B.C.) the united armies of the two consuls were drawn into an ambuscade and almost annihilated. The Gauls, who had been waiting to see to which side fortune would incline, now flocked to the standard of Hannibal, and hailed him as their deliverer.

The spring following the victory at the Trebia, Hannibal led his army, now recruited by many Gauls, across the Apennines, and moved southward. At Lake Trasimenus he entrapped the Romans under the consul Gaius Flaminius between the hills and the lake, where, bewildered by a fog, the greater part of the army was slaughtered, and the consul himself was slain (217 B.C.).

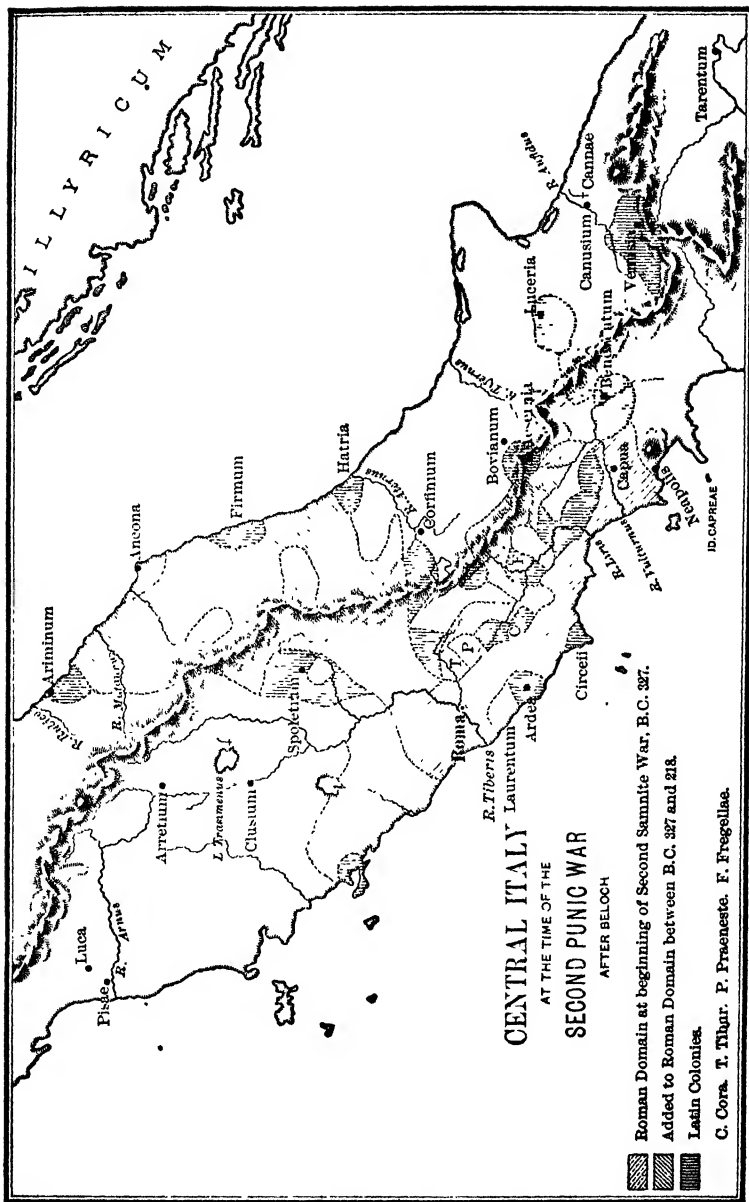
108. Hannibal's Policy. — The way to Rome was now open. Believing that Hannibal would march directly upon the capital, the senate caused the bridges that spanned the Tiber to be destroyed, and appointed Fabius Maximus dictator. But Hannibal did not deem it wise to throw his

troops against the walls of Rome. Crossing the Apennines, he pressed eastward to the Adriatic Sea, whence he sent messages to Carthage of his wonderful achievements. Here he rested his army after a march that has few parallels in the annals of war.

In one respect only had events disappointed Hannibal's expectations. He had thought that the Italian allies, like the Gauls, were ready at the first opportunity to revolt from Rome; and to induce them to do so, he had treated with the greatest consideration those Italians who chanced to fall into his hands as prisoners. But thus far not a single city or tribe of the Umbro-Sabellian folk (par. 5) had proved unfaithful to Rome.

109. Fabius "the Delayer."—The dictator Fabius, at the head of four new legions, started in pursuit of Hannibal, who was again on the move. The fate of Rome was in the hands of Fabius. Should he risk a battle and lose it, everything would be lost. He determined to adopt a more prudent policy -- to follow and annoy the Carthaginian army, but to refuse all proffers of battle. Thus time would be gained for raising a new army and perfecting measures for the public defence.

In every possible way Hannibal endeavored to draw his enemy into an engagement. He ravaged the fields far and wide and fired the homesteads of the Italians, in order to force Fabius to fight in their defence. The soldiers of the dictator began to murmur. They called him *Cunctator*, or "the delayer." They even accused him of treachery to the cause of Rome. But nothing moved him from the steady pursuit of the policy which he clearly saw was the only prudent one to follow.



Hannibal now marched through Samnium, desolating the country as he went, and then descended upon the rich plains of Campania. Fabius followed him closely. From the mountains, which they were not allowed to leave, the Roman soldiers were obliged to watch, with such patience as they might command, the devastations of the enemy going on beneath their very eyes. They besought Fabius to lead them down upon the plain, where they might at least strike a blow in defence of their homes. Fabius was unmoved by their clamor. He planned, however, to entrap Hannibal. Knowing that the enemy could not support themselves in Campania through the approaching winter, but must recross the mountains into Apulia, he placed a strong guard in the pass by which they must retreat, and then quietly awaited their movements.

Hannibal, we are told, resorted to a stratagem to draw the guards away from the mountain path. To the horns of two thousand oxen burning torches one night were fastened, and then these animals were driven up among the hills that overhung the pass. These creatures, frantic with pain and fright, rushed along the ranges that bordered the pass, and led the watchers there to believe that the Carthaginians were forcing their way over the hills in a grand rush. Straightway the guardians of the pass left their position, in order to intercept the fleeing enemy. While they were pursuing the cattle, Hannibal marched quietly with all his booty through the unguarded defile, and escaped into Samnium.

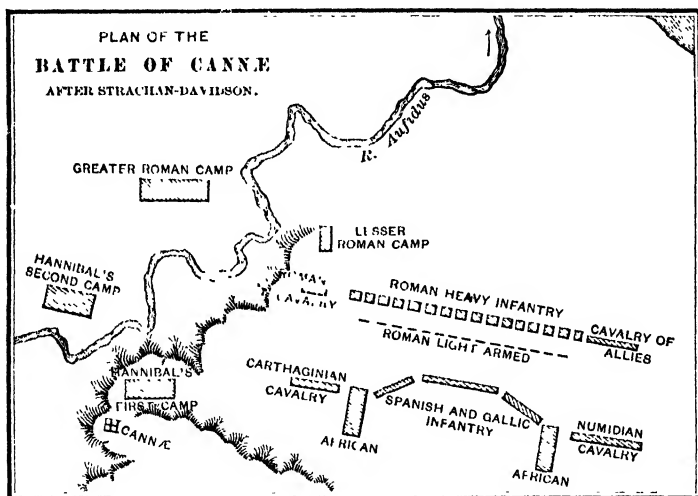
110. The Policy of Fabius vindicated. — The escape of the Carthaginian army caused the smothered discontent with Fabius and his policy to break out into open opposition,

both among the citizens at the capital and the soldiers in the camp.* Minucius, commander of the cavalry, disobeyed the orders of the dictator to refrain from any engagement with the enemy, and was so fortunate as to gain a slight success. This brought matters to a crisis. By a vote of the people Minucius was made co-dictator with Fabius. He now sought an engagement with the Carthaginians. An opportunity soon presented itself. But fortune was against him; and had it not been for the timely assistance of Fabius, his forces would have been cut to pieces. Minucius at once acknowledged the rashness of his policy, and took again his old position as a subordinate; while Fabius, by universal acclamation, was declared the "Savior of Rome."

III. The Battle of Cannæ (216 B.C.).---The time gained by Fabius had enabled the Romans to raise and discipline an army that might hope to engage successfully the Carthaginian forces. Early in the summer of the year 216 B.C., these new levies, numbering eighty thousand men, under the command of the recently chosen consuls Paulus and Varro,⁷ confronted the army of Hannibal, amounting to

⁷The dictatorship of Fabius Maximus had expired. The patrician consul's full name was Lucius Æmilius Paulus; the plebeian's, Gaius Terentius Varro. They were divided in counsel, and it was the rashness of Varro, a man wholly without experience in military affairs, that precipitated the battle. When his day for command came — for according to an absurd custom each consul held the supreme command on alternate days — he imprudently, and against the earnest protest of his colleague, began the battle on ill-chosen ground. The yearly change of their chief magistrates was a source of weakness and loss to the Romans in time of war. The popular vote frequently failed to secure experienced generals. Demagogues often controlled the election, as at Athens in the times of Cleon and Alcibiades.

not more than half that number, at Cannæ, in Apulia. It was the largest army the Romans had ever gathered on any battlefield. But it had been collected only to meet the most overwhelming defeat that ever befell the forces of the republic. Through the skilful manœuvres of Hannibal, the Romans were completely surrounded, and huddled together in a helpless mass upon the field; then they were



cut down by the Numidian cavalry.⁸ From forty to seventy thousand are said to have been slain;⁹ a few thousand were taken prisoners; only the merest handful escaped, including the consul Varro. The slaughter was so great that, according to Livy, when Mago, a brother of Hannibal, carried the news of the victory to Carthage, he, in confirma-

⁸ The Romans were weak in cavalry; they had only 6000, the Carthaginians 10,000.

⁹ Polybius, iii. 117, places the killed at 70,000 and the prisoners at 10,000; Livy, xxii. 49, puts the number of the slain at 42,700.

tion of the intelligence, poured out on the floor of the senate-house nearly a peck of gold rings taken from the fingers of the Roman knights.¹⁰

112. Events after the Battle of Cannæ.—The awful news flew to Rome. Consternation and despair seized the people. The city would have been emptied of its population had not the senate ordered the gates to be closed. Never did the senators display greater calmness, wisdom, prudence, and resolution. They publicly thanked the consul Varro, although he was the bitter enemy of their body, and the one whose incompetency and rashness had caused the terrible disaster, because he had not despaired of the republic.

Little by little the panic was allayed. Measures were concerted for the defence of the capital, as it was expected that Hannibal would immediately march upon the city. Swift horsemen were sent out along the Appian Way to gather information of the conqueror's movements, and to learn, as Livy expresses it, "if the immortal gods, out of pity to the empire, had left any remnant of the Roman name."

The leader of the Numidian cavalry, Maharbal, urged Hannibal to follow up his victory closely. "Let me advance with the horse," he said, "and in five days you shall banquet in Rome." But Hannibal refused to adopt the counsel of his impetuous general. Maharbal turned away, and with mingled reproach and impatience exclaimed, "Alas! you know how to gain a victory, but not how to use one." The great commander, while he knew he was

¹⁰ Among the slain were one consul, two *quæstors*, twenty-one military tribunes, and eighty senators, or persons eligible to seats in the senate. — LIVY, xxii. 49.

invincible in the open field, did not think it prudent to fight the Romans behind their walls.

Hannibal now sent an embassy to Rome to offer terms of peace. The senate, true to the Appian policy never to treat with a victorious enemy (par. 82), would not even permit the ambassadors to enter the gates. Hardly less disappointed was Hannibal in the temper of the Roman confederates. All the allies of the Latin name (par. 163) adhered to the cause of Rome through all these trying times with unshaken loyalty.

Some tribes in the south of Italy, however, among which were the Lucanians, the Apulians, and the Bruttians, now went over to the Carthaginians. The important city of Capua also seceded from Rome and entered into an alliance with Hannibal. A little later Syracuse was lost to Rome; for it so happened that, shortly after the battle of Cannæ, Hiero, the king of the Syracusans, who loved to call himself the friend and ally of the Roman people, had died, and the government had fallen into the hands of a party unfriendly to the republic. This party now entered into an alliance with Carthage, and thus Syracuse, with a large part of Sicily, was carried over to the side of the enemies of Rome.

Furthermore, Philip V. of Macedonia, who, apprehensive of the growing power of Rome, had been watching with friendly interest the successes of Hannibal in Italy, now formed an alliance with him and promised him help. Had Philip acted energetically and brought promptly to Hannibal the relief promised and expected, the war might have taken a very different turn from what it did, and the whole course of the world's history have been changed.

113. Hannibal in Winter Quarters at Capua. — After the battle of Cannæ, Hannibal marched into Campania and quartered his army for the winter in the luxurious city of Capua, which, as we have noticed (par. 112), had opened its gates to him. Here he allowed his soldiers to rest and to recover from the fatigue of the most arduous campaign that any army had endured since the marches and campaigns of Alexander the Great in Asia.

But there is always danger in relaxation after excessive toil. Hannibal's soldiers, according to Livy, were fatally enervated both in body and mind by the influences of this Sybarite capital. The winter was spent by them in a round of feasting, drinking, bathing, and indulgences of all kinds, so that almost every trace of martial vigor and discipline was lost. It is the opinion of persons versed in the art of war, adds the historian, that Hannibal, in taking up his winter quarters in Capua, committed a greater error than when he neglected to march upon Rome after the battle of Cannæ.¹

114. The Fall of Syracuse (212 B.C.). — While Hannibal was resting and awaiting reinforcements, Rome was putting forth every effort and straining every resource in raising and equipping new levies to take the place of the legions lost at Cannæ.

The first task to be undertaken was the chastisement of Syracuse for its desertion of the Roman alliance (par. 112). The distinguished Roman general, Marcus Claudius Marcellus, called "the Sword of Rome," was intrusted with this commission. In the year 214 B.C., he laid siege to the city.

¹ xxiii. 18.

Syracuse was at this time one of the largest and richest cities of the Grecian world. Its walls were strong, and enclosed an area eighteen miles in circuit. For three years it held out against the Roman forces. It is said that Archimedes, the great mathematician, rendered valuable aid to the besieged with curious and powerful engines contrived by his genius. But the city fell at last, and was given over to sack and pillage (212 B.C.). Rome was adorned with the masterpieces of Grecian art that for centuries had been accumulating in the city, one of the oldest and most renowned of the colonies of ancient Hellas. Syracuse never recovered from the blow inflicted upon it at this time by the relentless Romans.

115. The Fall of Capua* (211 B.C.). — Capua² must next be punished for opening its gates and extending its hospitalities to the enemies of Rome. A line of circumvallation was drawn about the city, and two Roman armies held it in close siege. Hannibal, ever faithful to his allies and friends, hastened to the relief of the Capuans. Unable to break the enemy's lines, he marched directly upon Rome, as if to make an attack upon that city, hoping thus to draw off the legions about Capua to the defence of the capital. The "dread Hannibal" himself rode alongside the walls of the hated city, and, tradition says, even hurled a defiant lance against one of the gates. The Romans certainly were trembling with fear; yet Livy tells how they manifested their confidence in their affairs by selling at public auction the land upon which Hannibal was encamped. He in turn, in the same manner, disposed of the shops fronting

² Before its defection, Capua was one of those cities which enjoyed Cæritan rights (par. 73).

the forum. The story is that there were eager purchasers in both cases.

Failing to draw the legions from Capua as he had hoped, Hannibal now retired from before Rome, and, retreating into the southern part of Italy, abandoned Capua to its fate. It soon fell, and paid the penalty that Rome never failed to inflict upon an unfaithful ally. The chief men of the city were put to death, and a large part of the inhabitants sold as slaves (211 B.C.). The privilege of local self-government was taken away from the community, and the whole Capuan district reduced practically to the servile condition of a province beyond the seas.

116. The First Macedonian War (215-206 B.C.).—At the same time that the Romans were meting out punishment to Syracuse and to Capua for their disloyalty, they were carrying on operations against Philip, king of Macedonia, who, after his alliance with Hannibal (par. 112), had attacked the cities either belonging to the Roman state or under its protection on the eastern coast of the Adriatic. They easily persuaded the Ætolians (par. 127) to aid them; but after they had once got them enlisted in the enterprise, they left them to prosecute it with their own resources. The Romans, indeed, were too much engaged in watching Hannibal and in prosecuting their military operations at home to give much attention to outside affairs.



PHILIP V. OF
MACEDONIA.

Consequently, the Ætolians, becoming weary of the struggle, concluded a peace with Philip in the year 206 B.C., and the following year the Roman senate also entered

into a treaty with him. The contest thus ended without any practical results, save that of deterring Philip from openly taking any further part in the Hannibalic war.

117. Hasdrubal in Spain. — During all the years Hannibal was waging war in Italy, his brother Hasdrubal was carrying on a desperate struggle with the Romans in Spain. His plan was to gather and lead an army into Italy to the aid of his brother. This the Romans made every effort to prevent. Hence, even while Hannibal was threatening Rome itself, we find the senate sending its best legions and generals across the sea into Spain.

But Hasdrubal possessed much of the martial genius of his brother, and proved more than a match for the Scipios who commanded the Roman levies. Yet the fortunes of war were more fickle here than in Italy. At one time the Carthaginians were almost driven out of the peninsula; and then the whole was regained by the genius of Hasdrubal, and the two Scipios³ were slain. Another Roman army, under the command of Publius Cornelius Scipio, was sent to retrieve these disasters and to keep Hasdrubal engaged. The war was renewed, but without decisive results on either side, and Hasdrubal determined to leave its conduct to others, and go to the relief of his brother, who was sadly in need of aid, for the calamities of war were constantly thinning his ranks. Like Pyrrhus, he had been brought to realize that even constant victories won by the loss of soldiers that could not be replaced meant final defeat (par. 82).

118. Battle of the Metaurus (207 B.C.). — Hasdrubal fol-

³ Publius and Gnaeus Scipio, brothers. Publius Cornelius Scipio, mentioned just below, was the son of Publius Scipio.

lowed the same route that had been taken by his brother Hannibal, and in the year 207 B.C. descended from the Alps upon the plains of Northern Italy. Thence he advanced southward, while Hannibal moved northward from Bruttium to meet him.

Rome made a last effort to ward off the double danger. One hundred and forty thousand men were put into the field. One of the consuls, ~~Gaius~~ Gaius Claudius Nero, was to obstruct Hannibal's march; while the other, Marcus Livius, was to oppose Hasdrubal in the north. The great effort of the Roman generals was to prevent the junction of the armies of the two brothers.

Hasdrubal pressed on southward and crossed the Metaurus. From here he sent a message to Hannibal, appointing a meeting-place only two days' march from Rome. The messenger fell into the hands of the consul Nero. In a moment Nero's plan was formed. With seven thousand picked soldiers he hastened northward, to join the other consul and, with their united forces, to crush Hasdrubal before his brother should know of the movement. In a few days Nero reached the camp of his colleague Livius, in front of which lay the Carthaginian army.

As the soldiers of Nero entered the camp of his associate in the night, Hasdrubal knew nothing of their arrival until the next morning, when he observed that the trumpet sounded twice from the enemy's camp. Fearing to risk a battle, he attempted to fall back across the Metaurus. Misled by his guides, he was forced to turn and give battle to the pursuing Romans. His army was entirely destroyed, and he himself was slain (207 B.C.).

Nero now hurried back to face Hannibal, bearing with

him the head of Hasdrubal. This bloody trophy he caused to be hurled into the Carthaginian camp. Upon recognizing the features of his brother, Hannibal, it is said, exclaimed sadly, "Carthage, I behold thy doom!"

119. The Romans carry the War into Africa; Battle of Zama (202 B.C.). — The defeat and death of Hasdrubal gave a different aspect to the war. Hannibal now drew back into the rocky peninsula of Bruttium, the southernmost point of Italy. There he faced the Romans like a lion at bay. No one dared attack him. It was resolved to carry the war into Africa, in hopes that the Carthaginians would be forced to call their great commander out of Italy to the defence of Carthage. Publius Cornelius Scipio, who after the departure of Hasdrubal from Spain (par. 117) had quickly brought the peninsula under the power of Rome,⁴ led the army of invasion. He had not been long in Africa before the Carthaginian senate sent for Hannibal to conduct the war. At Zama, not far from Carthage, the hostile armies met. Fortune had deserted Hannibal; he was fighting against fate. He here suffered his first and final defeat. His army, in which were many of the veterans that had served through all his Italian campaigns, was almost annihilated (202 B.C.).

120. The Close of the War (201 B.C.). — Carthage was now completely exhausted, and sued for peace. Even Hannibal himself could no longer counsel war. The terms of the treaty were much severer than those imposed upon the

⁴ A few years later, in 197 B.C., the country was made into two provinces which bore the names of *Hispania Citerior*, or "Nearer Spain," and *Hispania Ulterior*, or "Farther Spain." The number of prætors (par. 71) was at the same time raised to six.

city at the end of the First Punic War (par. 95). She was required to give up all claims to Spain and the islands of the Mediterranean; to surrender her war elephants, and all her ships of war save ten galleys; to pay an indemnity of four thousand talents⁵ at once, and two hundred talents annually for fifty years; and not, under any circumstances, to make war upon an ally of Rome. Five hundred of the costly Phœnician war-galleys were towed out of the harbor of Carthage and burned in full sight of the citizens.

Such was the end of the Hannibalic War, as called by the Romans, the most desperate struggle ever maintained by rival powers for empire. Scipio was accorded

a grand triumph at Rome, and in honor of his achievements given the surname *Africanus*.

121. Effects of the War on Italy. — Italy never entirely recovered from the calamitous effects of the Hannibalic War. During its long continuance the Roman state was almost drained of its young men of military age. Three hundred thousand Roman citizens are said to have been slain in battle, and four hundred towns and hamlets actually swept out of existence. As a punishment for joining



PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO
(AFRICANUS).

(From a bust in the Museum at Naples.)

⁵ About \$5,000,000. Our authorities differ as to the exact amount of this indemnity.

the invaders, Rome herself had destroyed many cities belonging to her allies and turned their territories into waste land. Agriculture in some districts was almost ruined. The peasantry had been torn from the soil and driven within the walled towns. The slave class had increased, and the estates of the great landowners had constantly grown in size, and absorbed the little holdings of the ruined peasants. In thus destroying the Italian peasantry, Hannibal's invasion and long occupancy of the peninsula did very much to aggravate all those economic evils which even before this time were at work undermining the earlier sound industrial life of the Romans, and filling Italy with a numerous and dangerous class of homeless and discontented men.

REFERENCES. — White's APPIAN, vol. i., *Foreign Wars*, bk. vii. chaps. i.-ix., for operations in Italy; bk. viii. chaps. ii.-ix., for operations in Africa; and bk. vi. chaps. ii.-vii., for operations in Spain. PLUTARCH, *Lives of ** Fabius Maximus and ** Marcellus*. LIVY, xxi-xxx. POLYBIUS: the references are numerous; the student should consult Index in Shuckburgh's edition. HINE (W.), *History of Rome*, vol. ii. bk. iv. chaps. viii.-ix. pp. 143-484. MOMMSEN (T.), *History of Rome*, vol. ii. bk. iii. chaps. iv.-vi. pp. 103-229. ARNOLD (T.), *** History of Rome*, chaps. xliii.-xlvii. These chapters are generally regarded as the best account ever written of the Second Punic War. The death of the author broke off the narrative just three years before the battle of Zama. MORRIS (W. O.), *Hannibal* (Heroes of the Nations). DODGE (T. A.), ** Hannibal* (Great Captains), chap. xliii. pp. 613-641, "The Man and the Soldier"; and chap. xlv. pp. 642, 653, "Hannibal and Alexander." SMITH (R. B.), *Carthage and the Carthaginians*, and *Rome and Carthage*. MAHAN (A. T.), *The Influence of Sea Power upon History*, pp. 14-21. CREASY (E. S.), *** Decisive Battles of the World*, chap. iv., "The Battle of the Metaurus, 207 B.C."

CHAPTER X.

EVENTS BETWEEN THE SECOND AND THE THIRD PUNIC WAR: CONQUEST OF THE EAST BY ROME.

(201-146 B.C.)

122. Introductory. — The terms imposed upon Carthage at the end of the Second Punic War left Rome mistress of the Western Mediterranean. During the eventful half century that elapsed between the close of that struggle and the breaking out of the last Punic war, her authority became supreme also in the Eastern seas. In another connection,⁶ while narrating the fortunes of the most important states into which the great empire of Alexander was broken at his death, we followed their several histories until one after another they fell beneath the arms of Rome, and were successively absorbed into her growing dominions. We shall therefore in this place speak of these states only in the briefest manner, simply indicating the connection of their affairs with the series of events which mark the advance of Rome to universal empire.

123. General Condition of the East at the Beginning of the Second Century B.C. — In the year 323 B.C. Alexander the Great, after having, through a series of unparalleled campaigns, established an empire that stretched from the Adriatic Sea to the Indus, died at Babylon at the premature

⁶ *History of Greece*, chap. xxvii. pp. 456-469.

age of thirty-two years, and left his immense dominions to become the prey of rival aspirants for his place.

For our present purpose we need not follow the century and more of wars and intrigues, of divisions and redivisions of territories, that followed. It will be sufficient if we notice what was the situation of things at the period, say about 200 B.C., to which we have now brought our account of the affairs of the Western Mediterranean.

At this time there were in the East three monarchical states, Macedonia, Syria, and Egypt, and three leagues of Greek cities or tribes, whose histories were destined soon to become merged with the history of Rome.

124. Macedonia. --- The first of the monarchical states, Macedonia, had already had relations with Rome (par. 116). It possessed at this period about the limits it had when Alexander the Great came to the throne, and before he had made it the nucleus of a world empire. Its kings claimed and exercised suzerainty over a great part of the cities of continental Greece. Their garrisons held the chief strategic positions in the land. The throne was now filled by Philip V., -- the same who after the battle of Cannæ formed an alliance with Carthage (par. 112), -- an ambitious and able, but unscrupulous, man. The people over whom he ruled still retained that love of war and aptitude for it which had distinguished them in the days of Philip II. and Alexander. So far as their soldierly qualities went, they were the Romans of the East. But neither they nor their rulers had any capacity for civil affairs.

125. Syria or Asia. -- Syria or Asia, the dominion of the Seleucidæ,⁷ was, in the words of the historian Mommsen,

⁷ So called from Seleucus Nicator, one of Alexander's generals, and the founder of the dynasty (312 B.C.).

"nothing but Persia superficially remodelled and Hellenized." Its kings claimed that their dominion represented the Græco-Persian empire of Alexander, and the more energetic and ambitious among them were stirred by the memories and traditions of that empire to put forth efforts for its restoration. This will find illustration in the history of the reign of Antiochus the Great, who at this time held the throne, and whose ambitious plans of conquest it was that brought the monarchy, as we shall see, in fatal collision with Rome.

126. Egypt.—The third monarchical state was Egypt. Its ruler at this time was Ptolemy V. (205-181 B.C.). Its capital, Alexandria, was the intellectual centre of the Hellenistic East. But what made Egypt an important factor in the political complications of the Mediterranean world, and its affairs a matter of serious concern to Rome, was the fact that now, as in the days of the Pharaohs, it was one of the chief corn-producing countries of the East, and the centre as well of great general commercial and trading interests.

127. Leagues of Greek Cities.—The three leagues of Greek tribes and cities which were at this period exercising an important influence upon the Hellenistic East, were the Ætolian, the Achaean, and the Rhodian. These leagues had been called into existence among the Greek cities by the common dangers to which they were all subjected by the monarchical states, particularly Macedonia and Syria, which, hemming them in on every side, cramped their energies and encroached upon their independence.

The Ætolian league was formed about 280 B.C. It was made up for the most part of the half-civilized, predatory

tribes of Central Greece. It was animated by an intense hatred of Macedonia.

The Achaean league had sprung into importance only after the great days of Greece were already past. It was the most promising of all the attempts ever made among the Greek cities to form a true federal union. It came in time to embrace all the cities within the Peloponnesus as well as some outside its limits. It was, at the time which we have now reached, dependent upon Macedonia, and Macedonian garrisons were established in all the chief cities of the confederacy.

The third league, the Rhodian, was formed by a large number of the Greek islands and coast cities of the Propontis and the Aegean, -- a union of cities that Mommsen likens to the Hanseatic league of the Middle Ages. At its head stood Rhodes, whose leadership rested not so much upon her military or naval strength as upon her wealth and her wide commercial relations, for she had in her hands a chief part of the carrying trade of the Eastern Mediterranean. Rhodes was also something more than a great trade emporium. After Alexandria, the city was the most important centre of culture in the Hellenistic world. Her schools of rhetoric and oratory were already celebrated, and the lecture rooms of her teachers were soon to be crowded with the youth of the leading families of Rome.

128. Minor States.— Besides these great states and leagues there were a number of smaller states -- and among them particularly Pergamus, Bithynia, and Pontus -- which had arisen out of the break-up of the Persian-Alexandrian empire, and which were destined to play more or less important parts in the drama now opening ; but respecting

these countries and their rulers it will be best for us to defer notice until the moment when they severally come into contact or definite relations with Rome. What has been said will give the reader some idea at least of the condition, at the beginning of the second century B.C., of that Hellenistic world, on the threshold of which the Roman legions were now standing. It was a fine field for Roman diplomacy and Roman arms.

129. The Second Macedonian War (200-197 B.C.); the Battle of Cynoscephalæ (197 B.C.). --- Rome came first into collision with the Macedonian power. There were various causes which led Rome to renew her earlier war with Philip (par. 116). Chief among these was the alliance which he had formed with Antiochus of Syria, for the partition of the possessions of the king of Egypt. The success of this partitioning enterprise meant the actual possession, or at least the control, by Philip, of all the Greek commercial cities of the Aegean Sea and on the adjacent Asian shore, together with Cyrene, and the substitution of Macedonia for Egypt in the vast trading and mercantile affairs of the Eastern Mediterranean.

But Rome was vitally concerned in the grain trade of Egypt and that of the Black Sea, now largely in the hands of the shippers and merchants of Rhodes, and so could not look on listlessly while Philip was prosecuting schemes the success of which must necessarily injure the Italian trade, and place Italy, as to a large part of her food supply, at the mercy of an enemy. It was the situation thus created which made war between Rome and Macedonia inevitable.

The immediate cause of the war was Philip's attack, in pursuance of the plan formed with Antiochus, upon the

Greek cities. In the course of his aggressions, he found a pretext for attacking Athens. Now Athens was under the protection of Rome. The Romans straightway declared war.⁸ This, in the judgment of the historian Mommsen, was "one of the most righteous wars which the city ever waged."⁹

An army under Flamininus was sent into Greece, and on the plains of Cynoscephala, in Thessaly, the Roman legion demonstrated its superiority over the unwieldy Macedonian phalanx by subjecting Philip to a most disastrous defeat (197 B.C.). The king was forced to give up all his conquests, and the Greek cities that had been brought into subjection to Macedonia were declared free.

Flamininus read the edict of emancipation to the Greeks assembled at Corinth for the celebration of the Isthmian games. The decree was received with the greatest enthusiasm and rejoicing, and Flamininus was called by the grateful Greeks the Restorer of Greek liberties. Unfortunately the Greeks had lost all capacity for freedom and self-government, and the anarchy into which their affairs soon fell afforded the Romans an excuse for extending their rule over all Greece (par. 135).

130. War against Antiochus III. of Syria (192--189 B.C.) ; the Battle of Magnesia (190 B.C.).—Antiochus the Great, of Syria, had at this time not only made important conquests in Asia Minor, but had even carried his arms into Europe.

⁸ The Romans had still other grounds of complaint against Philip. He had attacked Attalus, king of Pergamus, who since the first Macedonian war had stood in the relation of friend and ally to the Roman people. Philip was further believed to have secretly given the Carthaginians aid at the battle of Zama (par. 119).

⁹ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. ii. p. 272.

He was at this moment in Greece. The object of his presence in these regions, he declared, was to give liberty to the Greek cities. But the Greeks, as Plutarch remarks, were in no need of a liberator, since they had just been delivered from the Macedonians by the Romans (par. 129).



COIN OF ANTIOCHUS THE GREAT.

Just as soon as intelligence was carried to Italy that the Syrian king was in Greece, at the head of an army, the legions of the republic were set in motion. Some reverses caused Antiochus to retreat in haste across the Hellespont into Asia, whither he was followed by the Romans, led by Scipio, a brother of Africanus.

At Magnesia, Antiochus was overthrown, and a large part of Asia Minor fell into the hands of the Romans (190 B.C.). Not yet prepared to maintain provinces so remote from the Tiber, the senate conferred the new territory, with the exception of Lycia and Caria, which were given to the Rhodians, upon their friend and ally, Eumenes, king of Pergamus. This "Kingdom of Asia," as it was called, was really nothing more than a dependency of Rome, and its nominal ruler only a puppet king in the hands of the Roman senate.

Scipio enjoyed a magnificent triumph at Rome, and, in

accordance with a custom that had now become popular with successful generals, erected a memorial of his deeds in his name by assuming the title of *Asiaticus*.

131. The Third¹ Macedonian War (171-168 B.C.); the Battle of Pydna (168 B.C.).—In a few years Macedonia, under the leadership of Perseus, son of Philip V., was again in arms and offering defiance to Rome; but in the year 168 B.C. the Roman consul, Æmilius Paulus, crushed the Macedonian power forever upon the memorable field of Pydna. Twenty-two years later (in 146 B.C.), the country was organized as a Roman province.



PERSEUS OF MACEDONIA.

The great part which Macedonia as an independent state had played in history was ended. It became tributary to Rome, and so large was the stream of tribute that now began to pour into the treasury of the city from this and other subjugated countries that the land tax, hitherto paid by Roman citizens, was done away with (167 B.C.), and was not resorted to again until the declining days of the empire.

But the battle of Pydna constitutes a great landmark not simply in the history of Macedonia; it forms a landmark in universal history as well. It was one of the decisive battles fought by the Romans in their struggle for the dominion of the world. The last great power in the East was here broken.² The Roman senate was henceforth

¹ For the Second Macedonian War, see par. 129.

² Mithradates the Great had not yet appeared to dispute with Rome the sovereignty of the Orient (par. 168).

recognized by the whole civilized world as the source and fountain of supreme political wisdom and authority. We shall have yet to record many campaigns of the Roman legions; but these, if we except the campaigns against the Pontic king Mithradates the Great, were efforts to suppress revolt among dependent or semi-vassal states, or were expeditions aimed at barbarian tribes that skirted the Roman dominions.

132. The Fate of Hannibal and of Scipio. — Among the many events that crowded the brief period we are reviewing, we must not fail to notice the fate of the two great actors in the Hannibalic war. Soon after the battle of Zama, and the treaty between Carthage and Rome (par. 119), Hannibal was chosen to the chief magistracy of the former city. In this position he introduced much-needed reform into every department of the government, and secured to the capital a period of prosperity and rapid growth. But his measures stirred up not only enmity at home, but jealousy at Rome. The Roman senate, fearing Hannibal as a statesman as much as they dreaded him as a general, demanded of the Carthaginians his surrender. While they were deliberating whether to give up their great commander, Hannibal fled across the sea, and found an asylum at the court of Antiochus the Great, who gave him a command in his army.

Upon the defeat of Antiochus at Magnesia (par. 130), the Romans demanded that Hannibal should be given up to them. Again the exile fled from his implacable foes, and at last found a refuge with the prince of Bithynia. Yet even there Roman hatred pursued him. It seemed as though there was no spot in all the world where the arm of

Rome did not reach. His new friend could not shield him; and, determined not to fall into the hands of his enemies, Hannibal took his own life by means of poison, and died faithful to his vow of eternal hatred to the Roman race (about 183 B.C.).

Almost equally bitter was the cup which the ungrateful Romans pressed to the lips of the conqueror of Hannibal. After the battle of Zama, Scipio Africanus turned to politics, but soon raised about himself a perfect storm of unmerited abuse and persecution. Leaving Rome, he went into a sort of voluntary exile at his country seat near Liternum, in Campania. He died about the same time that witnessed the death of Hannibal. Upon his tomb was placed this inscription, which he himself had dictated: "Ungrateful country, thou shalt not possess even my ashes."

133. The Achæan War and the Destruction of Corinth (146 B.C.).—During the third war between Rome and Macedonia, which ended with the battle of Pydna (par. 131), the cities of the Achæan league had shown themselves lukewarm in their friendship for Rome. Consequently, after that battle the Romans collected a thousand of the chief citizens of these confederated cities and transported them to Italy, where they were held for seventeen years as hostage prisoners for the good conduct of their countrymen at home. Among these exiles was the celebrated historian Polybius, who wrote an account of all these events which we are now narrating, and which mark the advance of Rome to the sovereignty of the world.

At the end of the period named, the Roman senate, in an indulgent mood, gave the survivors permission to return

home. They went back inflamed by hatred towards Rome, and became active in the cities of the league in stirring up feeling against her. In Corinth particularly the people displayed the most unreasonable and vehement hostility towards the Romans. They refused to listen to the envoys that the senate had sent to reason with them, and in a tumultuous assembly endorsed with assenting plaudits one of their speakers when he declared that the Greeks wanted "the Romans as friends but not as masters." The league even went so far as to make war on Sparta, in spite of the protest of a Roman embassy. There could be but one issue of this foolish conduct, and that was war with Rome.

This came in the year 147 B.C. The management of the campaign soon fell to the consul Lucius Mummius. He inflicted upon the Achaean army a decisive defeat just outside the walls of Corinth. The city fell into his hands without further resistance. In obedience to the commands of the Roman senate, Mummius destroyed the place utterly. The men were killed, and the women and children sold into slavery.

The city was sacked, and the booty, much of it, sold on the spot at public auction. Numerous works of art, invaluable statues and paintings, with which the city was crowded, were laid aside to be transported to Rome. But a large part of the rich art treasures of the city must have been destroyed by the rude and unappreciative soldiers. Polybius, who was an eyewitness of the sack of the city, himself saw groups of soldiers using priceless paintings as boards on which to play their games of dice.³

³ xxxix. 13.

It is further told of Mummius, as illustrating how far behind the Greeks their conquerors were in all matters pertaining to the finer side of life, that in the contracts which he made for the transportation of the statues and paintings to Italy, he inserted a clause to the effect that if any of the pieces were lost at sea, they should be replaced.⁴

The city, emptied of its inhabitants, despoiled of its riches, and denuded of its works of art, was given up to the flames, its walls were levelled, and the very ground on which the city had stood was accursed. Thus fell the brilliant city of Corinth, "the eye of Hellas," as Cicero called it, the "last precious ornament of the Grecian land once so rich in cities."

The consul Mummius enjoyed a splendid triumph. "Never before nor after," says the historian Long, "was such a display of Grecian art carried in triumphal procession through the streets of Rome."

134. Why Corinth was destroyed. -- Corinth was dealt with in this harsh way -- harsh and cruel even for the times in which these things were done -- not simply because the Corinthian mob had insulted a Roman embassy. A new spirit was beginning to rule the Roman senate and to dictate the policies of Rome -- a mercantile spirit, a spirit narrow, selfish, and jealous. The Roman merchants, traders, and speculators were coming to be the power behind the throne at the capital -- as is often the case in modern senates. Corinth was the commercial rival of Rome. It was this that at least contributed to her ruin. Delos in

⁴ Mommsen thinks that this may all be true, but yet that the clause in question was simply the formal contract-provision covering all the articles consigned to the carriers.

the Ægean became the heir of her trade and prosperity and grew into a place of great commercial importance.

135. How "Ruin averted Ruin" from Greece. — After the destruction of Corinth, Greece, under the name of *Achaia*, was reduced to the status of a province and joined to Macedonia. Rome carried out here her usual policy of "divide and rule" (*divide et impera*). The Achæan and other Greek confederacies were dissolved, and the cities were taught to lean upon Rome and not upon each other. Their democratic constitutions were set aside, and councils were appointed which were made up of members chosen from the aristocratic and wealthy class. Each city was required to pay a certain tribute into the Roman treasury.

Under the Roman rule a moderate degree of prosperity seems for a time to have returned to the Grecian land; for before the coming of the Romans the Greeks, through their interminable feuds and wars, had fallen into a most pitiable condition and reduced their country almost to a desert. They had become utterly unfit for self-government. Public and private virtue had almost disappeared. The land was filled with bandits, even the cities, as cities, turned robbers and plundered each other. The population daily grew less, and the land seemed in danger of becoming wholly empty of inhabitants. The historian Polybius seems at a loss to find words to express his indignation at the foolish and wicked conduct of his fellow-countrymen, and evidently is in utter despair of their ever coming to behave in a reasonable manner and to make a rational use of liberty. This will explain what he means by quoting the proverb, "Had we not perished quickly we had not

been saved."⁵ The Romans, he means, had saved his countrymen from themselves.

And yet the salvation which the Romans brought to the Greeks does not seem to have been a very great salvation. Public and private life, which had already sunk so low, declined to a still lower level. Greece never became more than a shadow of her former self. Her great days, like those of Macedonia, had passed away forever. When the celebrated traveller Pausanias, in the second century of our era, made a tour of Greece, he found everywhere unroofed temples, neglected shrines, and the ruins of once large and flourishing cities. Evidently ruin had averted ruin only for a time.

136. The General Effect upon Rome of her Conquest of the East. — In entering Greece the Romans had entered the homeland of Greek culture, with which they had first come in close contact in Magna Græcia a century earlier (par. 82). This culture was, in many respects, vastly superior to their own, and for this reason it exerted a profound influence upon life and thought at Rome. Many among the Romans seemed to have conceived a sudden contempt for everything Roman, as something provincial and old-fashioned, and as suddenly to have become infatuated with everything Greek. Greek manners and customs, Greek modes of education, and Greek literature and philosophy became the fashion at Rome, so that Roman society seemed

⁵ xxxix. 2. This proverb has been attributed to the Athenian Themistocles, who, having been exiled, found life as a Persian courtier so pleasant that he on one occasion felicitated himself and his friends in these words: "How much we should have lost had we not been ruined!"

in a fair way of becoming Hellenized. And to a certain degree this did take place: Greece captive led enthralled her captor. So many and so important were the elements of Greek culture which in the process of time were taken up and absorbed by the Romans, that there ceased to be such a thing in the world as a pure Latin civilization. We recognize this intimate blending of the cultures of the two great peoples of classical antiquity by always speaking of the civilization of the later Roman empire as Græco-Roman.

But along with the many helpful elements of culture which the Romans received from the Hellenized lands of the East which their arms had opened up, they received also many germs of great social and moral evils. Life in Greece and the Orient had become degenerate and corrupt. Close communication with this society, in union with other influences which we shall notice later, corrupted life at Rome. The simplicity and frugality of the earlier times were replaced by oriental extravagance, luxury, and dissoluteness. Evidences of this decline in the moral life of the Romans, the presage of the downfall of the republic, will multiply as we advance in the history of the years following the destruction of Corinth.

137. Cato the Censor. — One of the most noted of all the Romans was Marcus Porcius Cato (232-147 B.C.), surnamed the Censor. His active life covered the whole of the long period the important events of which we have just been narrating, and which makes up the interval between the Second and the Third Punic War. Indeed, Cato as a young man fought in the Hannibalic war, and as an old counsellor did more than any other one to bring on the

third war, which resulted in the destruction of Carthage. His life is a sort of mirror in which is reflected the life of three generations at Rome.

Cato was born the son of a peasant at Tusculum, in Latium. From his father he received as an inheritance a scanty farm in the Sabine country. Near by were the cottage and farm of the celebrated Roman commander Manius Curius Dentatus, one of the popular heroes of the Samnite wars, of whom tradition related that, when the Samnites on one occasion sought to bribe him, they found him cooking turnips, and wanting nothing that they could give him. This worthy old Roman Cato took as his model.

Cato's house was small, with the rooms unwhitewashed. His dress was the plainest possible, his diet was simple, and his expenditures were frugal. He arose before it was light and worked along with his servants in the fields, and afterwards ate with them their slender meal.

This simplicity of the home life of Cato, as in the case of so many other typical Romans of the earlier times, attracts and interests us for the reason that it forms the background of a public life of great force, prominence, and influence. Life at Rome, as in all the other great cities of Italy and Greece, was many-sided. Men were not specialists then as they are now. A great man was almost sure to be great in many fields -- as a soldier, as a statesman, and as a man of letters. Cato was no exception to this rule. His military record was a brilliant one. As a young man of seventeen he served, as we have already noticed, in the Second Punic War; he commanded with ability an army in Spain; and in the war with Antiochus the Great (par. 130) he rendered at the battle of Thermopylæ services

that his superior declared could never be properly rewarded by the Roman people.

In civil life Cato was the most noted of all the Romans of his times. He served the state in the very highest magistracies. He was consul for the year 193 B.C., and in the year 184 the people, notwithstanding the bitter opposition of those who had reason to fear him in the censorship, elected him censor. It was what he did in this capacity that perhaps gave him the best title to the grateful remembrance of his countrymen. Cato came to this office at a time when life at Rome was losing its earlier simplicity, and was becoming effeminate and corrupt. He strove to stem the rising tide of luxury by causing to be taxed heavily carriages, personal ornaments, and furniture which exceeded what he deemed a reasonable value. He watched closely the public contracts for the erection of buildings and the prosecution of other state works. He expelled from the senate Lucius Quintius Flamininus, brother of the famous victor at Cynoscephalæ (par. 129), for having caused a man — one, however, who had forfeited his life — to be beheaded at a banquet, just to please a favorite boy who was lamenting because he had never seen a man killed in the gladiatorial games. He also expelled another senator for kissing his wife in the presence of his daughter.

As we have seen (par. 136), at just this time Greek ideas and customs were being introduced at Rome. Cato set his face like a flint against all these innovations. He did everything in his power to cast discredit and contempt upon everything Greek. He visited Athens and made a speech to the people; but instead of addressing the Athenians in their own language, which he could speak well

enough, he talked to them in Latin, simply in order, Plutarch says, to rebuke those of his countrymen who affected to regard the Greek language as better than the Roman. He told the Romans that Greek education and Greek literature and philosophy would bring their country to ruin. He refused to allow his little son to be taught by a Greek slave, as was coming to be the custom in the leading Roman families, but he himself attended carefully to the education of the boy.

Cato spent much of his time in the courts, for he was a good pleader. Most of the cases in which he was interested were cases that concerned his friends and clients. But Cato had many cases of his own, for he was constantly prosecuting somebody or being prosecuted. He is said to have been brought into court fifty times for alleged misuse of authority or on other charges, suggested usually by personal resentment. In every case he was acquitted.

One of the most unattractive, and, indeed, to us, repellent, sides of Cato's character is revealed in his treatment of his slaves. He looked upon them precisely as so much live stock, raising them and disposing of them just as though they were cattle. When a slave became old or worn-out he sold him, and recommended such a course to others on the ground of its economy.

But notwithstanding all of Cato's faults and shortcomings -- for he was narrow, parsimonious, litigious, irritable, resentful, and in some relations unfeeling -- still his character was, according to Roman ideals, noble and admirable, and his life and services, especially those which he rendered the state as censor, were approved and appreciated by his fellow-citizens, who set up in his honor a statue in the

temple of Health (*Hygeia*) with this inscription: "This statue was erected to Cato because when Censor, finding the state of Rome corrupt and degenerate, he, by introducing wise regulations and virtuous discipline, restored it."⁶

REFERENCES. — White's APPIAN, vol. i., *Foreign Wars*, bk. xi. chaps. i.-vii., for the war with Antiochus the Great. PLUTARCH, *Lives of Titus Flamininus, Æmilius, and Marcus Cato*. IHNE (W.), *History of Rome*, vol. iii. bk. v. chaps. i.-iv. pp. 3-319. POLYBIUS, xxxviii. 3-11; xxxix. 7-17. MOMMSEN (T.), *History of Rome*, vol. ii. chap. viii. pp. 254-265; on the condition of the Hellenistic East at the beginning of the Second Macedonian War. MAHAFFY (J. P.), *The Greek World under Roman Sway*, chap. ii., "The Immediate Effects of the Roman Conquest upon Hellenism." *Ibid.*, *Greek Life and Thought from the Age of Alexander to the Roman Conquest*. Read chap. xxii., "Polybius and his Age." GARDNER (P.), *New Chapters in Greek History*, chap. xv., "The Successors of Alexander and Greek Civilization in the East," for a study of the life and culture of the Hellenistic world that is soon to become a part of the Roman empire. FREEMAN (E. A.), *History of Federal Government* (new edition, 1893), chaps. v.-ix.; for the history of the Achæan and Ætolian Leagues. Also the same author's *Three Chief Periods of European History*, Lec. I. pp. 1-38, "Europe before the Roman Power." MYERS (P. V. N.), *History of Greece*, chap. xxvii. pp. 456-469, "The Græco-Oriental World from the Death of Alexander to the Conquest of Greece by the Romans."

⁶ Plutarch, *Life of Cato*, c. 29.

CHAPTER XI.

THE THIRD PUNIC AND NUMANTINE WARS.

SECTION I. --- THE THIRD PUNIC WAR (149-146 B.C.).

138. "Carthage should be destroyed." — The same year that Rome destroyed Corinth (par. 133), she also blotted her great rival Carthage from the face of the earth. It will be recalled that one of the conditions imposed upon the last-named city at the close of the Second Punic War was that she should, under no circumstances, engage in war with an ally of Rome (par. 120). Taking advantage of the helpless condition of Carthage, Masinissa, king of Numidia and an ally of Rome, began to make depredations upon her territories. Carthage appealed to Rome for protection. The envoys sent to Africa by the senate to settle the dispute, unfairly adjudged every point in favor of the robber Masinissa. In this way Carthage was deprived of her lands and towns.

Chief of one of the embassies sent out was Marcus Cato, the Censor. When he saw the prosperity of Carthage, — her immense trade, which crowded her harbor with ships, and the country for miles back of the city a beautiful landscape of gardens and villas, — he was amazed at the growing power and wealth of the city, and returned home convinced that the safety of Rome demanded the destruction of her rival. At the conclusion of his report to the senate, he is said, as an object lesson to the senators, to

have emptied out on the floor of the chamber a quantity of large and beautiful figs, with these words: "The country where this fruit grows is only three days' sail from Rome." All of his addresses after this --- no matter on what subject - he is said invariably to have closed with the declaration: "Moreover, I am of the opinion that Carthage should be destroyed."⁷

139. Roman Perfidy. — A pretext for the accomplishment of the hateful work was not long wanting. In 150 B.C. the Carthaginians, when Masinissa made another attack upon their territory, instead of calling upon Rome, from which source their experience in the past had convinced them they could hope for neither aid nor justice, gathered an army, with the resolution of defending themselves. Their forces, however, were defeated by the Numidians, and sent beneath the yoke.

In entering upon this war Carthage had broken the conditions of the last treaty. The Carthaginian senate, in great anxiety, now sent an embassy to Italy to offer any reparation the Romans might demand. They were told that if they would give three hundred hostages, members of the noblest Carthaginian families, the independence of their city should be respected. They eagerly complied with this demand. But no sooner were these persons in the hands of the Romans than the consular armies, numbering eighty thousand men and secured against attack by the hostages so perfidiously drawn from the Carthaginians, crossed from Sicily into Africa, and disembarked at Utica, only ten miles from Carthage.

The Carthaginians were now commanded to give up all

⁷ *Præterea censeo Carthaginem esse delendam.*

their arms. Still hoping to win their enemy to clemency, they complied with this demand also. Then the consuls made known the final decree of the Roman senate,—"That Carthage must be destroyed, but that the inhabitants might build a new city, provided it were located ten miles from the coast."

When this resolution of the senate was announced to the Carthaginians, and they realized the baseness and perfidy of their enemy, a cry of indignation and despair burst from the betrayed city.

140. The Carthaginians prepare to defend their City.—It was resolved to resist to the bitter end the execution of the cruel decree. The gates of the city were closed. Men, women, and children set to work and labored day and night manufacturing arms. The entire city was converted into one great workshop. The utensils of the home and the sacred vessels of the temples, statues, and vases were melted down for weapons. Material was torn from the buildings of the city for the construction of military engines. The women cut off their hair and braided it into strings for the catapults. By such labor, and through such sacrifices, the city was soon put in a state to withstand a siege.

When the Romans advanced to take possession of the place, they were astonished to find the people they had just treacherously disarmed, with weapons in their hands, manning the walls of their capital, and ready to bid them defiance.

141. The Destruction of Carthage (146 B.C.).—It is impossible for us here to give the circumstances of the siege of Carthage. For four years the city held out against the

Roman army. At length the consul Scipio Æmilianus⁸ succeeded in taking it by storm. When resistance ceased, only fifty thousand men, women, and children, out of a population of seven hundred thousand, remained to be made prisoners. The city was fired, and for seventeen days the space within the walls was a sea of flames. Every trace of building which fire could not destroy was levelled, a plough was driven over the site, and a dreadful curse invoked upon any one who should dare attempt to rebuild the city.

Such was the hard fate of Carthage. Polybius, who was an eyewitness of the destruction of the city, records the emotions of Scipio in these words: "At the sight of the city utterly perishing amidst the flames, Scipio burst into tears, and stood long reflecting on the inevitable change which awaits cities, nations, and dynasties, one and all, as it does every one of us men. This, he thought, had befallen Ilium, once a powerful city, and the once mighty empires of the Assyrians, Medes, Persians, and that of Macedonia, lately so splendid. And unintentionally or purposely he quoted,—the words perhaps escaping him unconsciously,—

‘The day shall be when holy Troy shall fall
And Priam, lord of spears, and Priam’s folk.’⁹

And on my asking him boldly (for I had been his tutor) what he meant by these words, he did not name Rome distinctly, but was evidently fearing for her, from this sight of the mutability of human affairs.”¹⁰

The Carthaginian territory in Africa was made into a

⁸ Publius Cornelius Scipio Æmilianus, grandson by adoption of Scipio Africanus, the conqueror of Hannibal. After his conquest of Carthage, he was known as *Africanus Minor*.

⁹ Homer, *Il.* vi. 448. ¹⁰ Polybius, xxxix. 5 [Snuckburgh’s Trans.].

Roman province, with Utica as the leading city; and by means of traders and settlers Roman civilization was spread rapidly throughout the regions that lie between the ranges of the Atlas and the sea.

142. The Significance of Rome's Triumph over Carthage. — The triumph of Rome over Carthage may perhaps be rightly given as prominent a place in history as the triumph, more than three centuries before, of Greece over Persia. In each case Europe was saved from the threatened danger of becoming a mere dependency or extension of Asia.

The Semitic Carthaginians had not the political aptitude and moral energy that characterized the Italians and the other Aryan races of Europe. Their civilization was as lacking as the Persian in potential forces of growth and expansion. Had this civilization been spread by conquest throughout Europe, the germs of political, literary, artistic, and religious life among the Aryan races of the continent might have been smothered, and the history of these peoples have been rendered as barren in political and intellectual interests as the history of the races of Eastern lands.

It is these considerations which justify the giving of the battle of the Metaurus (par. 118), which marks the real turning point in the long struggle between Rome and Carthage, a place along with the battle of Marathon in the short list of the really decisive battles of the world — battles which have seemingly decided the fate of races, of continents, and of civilizations.¹

¹ See Creasy's *Decisive Battles*.

SECTION II. — THE NUMANTINE WAR (143-133 B.C.).

143. The Numantine War (143-133 B.C.). — It is fitting that the same chapter which narrates the blotting out of Carthage in Africa should tell also the story of the destruction, at the hands of the Romans, of Numantia in Spain. This was the sequel of the so-called Numantine War.

The expulsion of the Carthaginians from the Spanish peninsula (par. 119) really gave Rome the control of only a small part of that country. The warlike native tribes — the Celtiberians and Lusitanians — of the North and the West were ready stubbornly to dispute with the newcomers the possession of the soil. The treachery of the Roman generals inflamed the natives to a desperate revolt under Viriathus, a Lusitanian chief, who has been compared in his character and deeds to Wallace of Scotland. Finally Scipio *Æmilianus*, the destroyer of Carthage, was given the chief command. He began by reforming the army, which had become shamefully dissolute. The crowds of merchants were driven out of the camps; the wagons in which the effeminate soldiers were accustomed to ride were sold, and once more the Roman legions marched, instead of riding, to battle.

144. The Capture and Destruction of Numantia (133 B.C.). — With the army in proper discipline for service, Scipio reinvested Numantia, which had already withstood nine years of siege. The brave defenders numbered barely eight thousand men, while the lines of circumvallation that hedged them in were kept by sixty thousand soldiers. Famine at last gave the place into the hands of Scipio,

after almost all the inhabitants had met death either in defence of the walls or by deliberate suicide. The miserable remnant which the ravages of battle, famine, pestilence, and despair had left alive were sold into slavery, and the city was levelled to the ground (133 B.C.).

The capture of Numantia was considered quite as great an achievement as the taking of Carthage. Scipio celebrated another triumph at Rome, and to his surname *Africanus* added that of *Numantinus*.

145. Spain becomes Romanized. — Though ever since the Second Punic War Spain had been regarded as forming a part of the Roman empire, still now for the first time it really became a Roman possession.

Roman merchants and traders crowded into the country, and colonies were established in the different parts of the peninsula. As a result of this great influx of Italians, the laws, manners, customs, language, and religion of the conquerors were introduced everywhere, and the peninsula became in time thoroughly Romanized. Thus was laid the basis of two of the Romance nations of modern times — the Spanish and the Portuguese.

REFERENCES. — ** POLYBIUS, xxxviii. 1, 2 ; xxxix. 3-5. It should be remembered that Polybius here writes as an eyewitness of the scenes that he describes. MOMMSEN (T.), *History of Rome*, vol. iii. pp. 39-57. SMITH (R. B.), *Carthage and the Carthaginians* and *Rome and Carthage*. ** HINE (W.), *History of Rome*, vol. iii. bk. v. chap. v. pp. 320-366, for the third war with Carthage ; and chap. vi. pp. 367-407, for the Numantine War.

CHAPTER XII.

THE PERIOD OF THE REVOLUTION.

(133-98 B.C.)

146. Introductory. — We have now traced in broad outlines the development of the government and institutions of republican Rome, and have told briefly the story of that wonderful career of conquest which made the little Palatine city first the mistress of Latium, then of Italy, and finally of the greater part of the Mediterranean world.

It is now our less pleasant task to follow the declining fortunes of the republic through the last century of its existence. This was a period of transition and revolution. During this time many agencies were at work undermining the institutions of the republic and paving the way for the empire. What these agencies were will best be made apparent by a simple narration of the events and transactions that crowd this memorable period of Roman history. This narrative of the failure of popular government at Rome we shall now proceed to give in the three following chapters. It is one of the most melancholy and yet instructive passages in the records of the ancient peoples.

147. The First Servile War in Sicily (134-132 B.C.). — With the opening of this period we find a terrible struggle going on in Sicily between masters and slaves — what is known as “The First Servile War.” The condition of affairs in that island was the legitimate result of the Roman

system of slavery, which was itself a chief cause of the economic and social decline of republican Rome.

The captives that the Romans took in war they usually sold into servitude. The great number of prisoners furnished by their numerous conquests, and particularly by their subjugation of the East, had caused slaves to become a drug in the slave markets of the Mediterranean world. They were so cheap that masters found it more profitable to wear their slaves out by a few years of unmercifully hard labor, and then to buy others, than to preserve their lives for a longer period by more humane treatment. In case of sickness, they were left to die without attention, as the expense of nursing exceeded the cost of new purchases. Some Sicilian estates were worked by as many as twenty thousand slaves. That each owner might know his own, the poor creatures were branded like cattle. What makes all this the more revolting is the fact that many of these slaves were in every way the peers of their owners, and often were their superiors. The fortunes of war alone had made the one servant and the other master.

A considerable portion of the estates in Sicily were simply grazing farms, their proprietors finding the raising of wool for the clothing of the Roman legions more profitable than the cultivation of grain. The slaves that tended the flocks on these farms received from their masters neither pay, food, nor clothing. They were expected to supply their needs from the herds they tended, and by robbing travellers on the highways and plundering the dwellings of the peasants. They were well armed, and were always accompanied by fierce dogs. The magistrates dared not punish them for their misdeeds, through fear of their masters, who were all-powerful at Rome.

The wretched condition of these slaves and the cruelty of their masters at last drove them to revolt. Their leader was a Syrian slave, Eunous by name, who employed gross imposture to persuade his followers of the genuineness of his call to be their deliverer. He held himself out as a prophet, and, after the way of a magician, blew fire from his mouth, and performed a variety of similar wonderful tricks. He styled himself King Antiochus, and surrounded himself with a sort of court, formed upon an oriental model.

The insurrection spread throughout the island, until two hundred thousand slaves were in arms, — if axes, reaping-hooks, staves, and roasting spits may be called arms, — and in possession of many of the strongholds of the country. They defeated four Roman armies sent against them; and for three years defied the power of Rome.

The revolt was finally crushed by the consul P. Rupilius, in the year 132 B.C. The slaves, well knowing that they could expect no mercy at the hands of their masters, held out in their mountain strongholds to the bitter end. Madened by hunger, they killed their women and children for food. At the last extremity many committed suicide. Those that survived to be made prisoners were tortured, flung over precipices, or crucified — crucifixion being a favorite form of punishment meted out by the Romans to rebellious slaves. Twenty thousand of the unhappy slaves are said to have been lifted up on crosses. Eunous himself perished miserably in prison. Sicily was thus pacified, and remained quiet for nearly a generation.

148. The Public Lands. — In Italy itself affairs were in a scarcely less wretched condition than in Sicily. At the bottom of a large part of the social and economic troubles

here, was the public land system, to which we have had occasion already to refer as the cause of unrest and bitter complaint on the part of the poorer classes at the beginning of the first century of the republic (par. 52).

Since that time matters, instead of mending, had constantly grown worse. The wide conquests of the Romans and the accompanying confiscation of large tracts of the lands of the subjugated peoples had increased enormously the public domains of the Roman state. But these fresh acquisitions of land benefited, for the most part, only the rich class at Rome. They alone had the capital necessary to stock with cattle and slaves the new lands, and hence they were the sole "occupiers" of them. The small farmers everywhere, too, were being ruined by the unfair competition of slave labor, as in our Southern States before the Civil War, and their little holdings were passing by purchase, and often by fraud or bare-faced robbery, into the hands of the great proprietors.

The Licinian laws (par. 71) indeed made it illegal for any person to occupy more than a prescribed amount of the public lands; but this law had long since become a dead letter. The greater part of the lands of Italy, about the beginning of the first century B.C., are said to have been held by not more than two thousand persons. These great landowners found stock-raising more profitable than working the soil. Hence Italy had been made into a great sheep pasture. The dispossessed peasants, left without home or employment, crowded into the cities, congregating especially at Rome, where they lived in vicious indolence.

Thus, largely through the workings of the public land system, the Roman people had become divided into two

great classes, which are variously designated as the Rich and the Poor, the Possessors and the Non-Possessors, the Optimates, the "Best," and the Populares, the "People." We hear nothing more of patricians and plebeians. The clan-aristocracy of the earlier state (par. 16) had given place to a wealth-aristocracy, or rather had been absorbed by it. This later aristocracy was, in some respects, particularly in the elements that composed it, like the English aristocracy of the present day.

149. Tiberius Gracchus.—As the wretched condition of the poor in earlier times had called out noble champions of their cause in a Spurius Cassius and a Marcus Manlius,² so now did the same condition of affairs call out two men of like spirit and temper as champions of the cause of the common people. These were the celebrated brothers Tiberius and Gaius Gracchus, sons of Cornelia, the daughter of Scipio Africanus, the conqueror of Hannibal. They were thus of noble birth, as were most of the social reformers that appeared at Rome. They were carefully nurtured by a mother noted not alone for her acquaintance with the new Greek learning, but also for the nobility of the native qualities of her mind and heart.

It was Tiberius, the elder of the brothers, who first undertook the cause of reform. He was an orator of great force and persuasiveness, his manner of speaking being deliberate and impressive. He was a brave soldier, having been one of the first, it was said, to mount the walls of Carthage when that city was taken and destroyed. By the time he had reached his thirtieth year he had held many offices, civil and military, and in them all had acquitted

² See pars. 53 and 70.

himself in such a way as to have acquired great distinction and won general admiration.

The resolution to consecrate his life to the alleviation of the distress among the poor and disinherited citizens of Rome, is said to have been taken by him while travelling through Etruria, where he saw the mischief and distress caused by the usurpation of the soil by the great land-owners, and the displacement of the peasant farmers by swarms of barbarian slaves.

150. Tiberius' Agrarian Law.---The people elected Tiberius to the tribuneship for the year 133 B.C. As tribune he brought forward a proposal in regard to the public lands which was in its essence a reenactment of the Licinian law, for that law, as we have seen, had long been a dead letter (par. 148). This proposal took away from the great proprietors all the public lands they were occupying over and above the amount named in that old enactment. The lands thus resumed by the state were to be allotted in small holdings to poor citizens. To prevent these holdings from passing by any process into the hands of the rich, they were made inalienable, that is, the right to sell the land was taken away from the one who received it.

The aim of Tiberius was to put the people into possession of their own. As the barbarian slaves had displaced the free cultivators of the soil, so now he would displace these slaves by free peasant proprietors, and thus restore the earlier order of things.

Tiberius brought to the support of his proposal all the resources of his eloquence. Plutarch gives us the following as an illustration of the manner in which he addressed the people: "The wild beasts of Italy," he would say, "had

their dens and holes and hiding-places, while the men who fought and died in defence of Italy enjoyed, indeed, the air and the light, but nothing else: houseless and without a spot of ground to rest upon, they wander about with their wives and children, while their commanders, with a lie in their mouth, exhort the soldiers in battle to defend their tombs and temples against the enemy, for out of so many Romans not one has a family altar or ancestral tomb, but they fight to maintain the luxury and wealth of others, and they die with the title of lords of the earth, without possessing a single clod to call their own.”³

As was natural, the senatorial party, who represented the wealthy landowners, bitterly opposed the measures that Tiberius had brought forward. To them these measures appeared very much as Henry George’s proposal that the state shall confiscate all property in land, appears to landholders to-day. They denounced them as downright robbery.

As we have seen, the possessors of these government lands had been left so long in undisturbed enjoyment of them that they had come to look upon them as absolutely their own. In many cases, feeling secure through great lapse of time, - the lands having been handed down through many generations, - the owners had expended large sums in their improvement, and now resisted as very unjust every effort to dispossess them of their hereditary estates. Money-lenders, too, had, in many instances, made loans upon these lands, and they naturally sided with the owners in their opposition to all efforts to disturb the titles.

³ Plutarch, *Life of Tiberius Gracchus*, c. 9.

151. Tiberius carries his Law by Unconstitutional Means ; the Beginning of the End. — The senatorial party in their opposition resorted to an old device for thwarting a tribune whose proposals were obnoxious to them. They persuaded one of the colleagues of Tiberius, the tribune Octavius, to interpose his veto. Octavius did this, and thus prevented the proposals from being brought to a vote in the popular assembly.⁴

Tiberius met these tactics of his enemy by putting a stop, through the exercise of his veto power,⁵ to all public business whatsoever. He forbade the magistrates to exercise any of the functions of their several offices, and even sealed up the doors of the treasury. Thus all business was brought to a standstill.

The deadlock was broken by Tiberius, and in this way. Through the votes of his partisans in an assembly of the people he deposed his colleague Octavius. But Octavius refused to acknowledge the validity of such a vote ; then Tiberius caused him to be dragged by freedmen from the rostra.

Tiberius had acted unconstitutionally. Never before since the first year of the republic had the Romans deposed one of their magistrates in this way from the office to which they had elected him. The sanctity of the constitution, the inviolability of which had been the safeguard of the state for a period of almost four centuries, was destroyed. It was the beginning of the end. "This

⁴ Each member of the board of tribunes had the right thus to veto the act of any or of all of his colleagues, just as one of the consuls could obstruct the act of his colleague (par. 45).

⁵ Compare par. 50, n. 8.

was the first direct step towards the overthrow of the Roman state." ⁶

Tiberius in a speech to the people defended his action in deposing his colleague. As to the charge that he had violated the sacred character of a tribune, he maintained that the person of a tribune was inviolable only so long as he faithfully discharged the duties of his office; that when he used the power given him by the people to wrong them, he by such wrongful act deposed himself and ceased to be a tribune.

Discussing the power and right of the people to depose a magistrate, he exclaimed, "Shall the people have the power to make a magistrate, and not the power to unmake him when he misuses the authority with which they have invested him?" Tarquin, he said, was deposed, and justly, by the people. And the vestal virgin, than whom there was no one more sacred in the Roman state, if unfaithful to her vow, lost her sanctity and was rightly punished.⁷

But Tiberius, with all his arguments, could not persuade even all of his own party that an unconstitutional act had not been committed, and many of his friends and the friends of the republic were filled with forebodings for the future.

After the deposition of Octavius, a client of Tiberius was chosen to fill his place. Tiberius' proposal was now made a law, and a board of commissioners was appointed to carry out its provisions and to prevent the law from becoming a dead letter, as had happened in the case of the earlier law of Licinius. The commissioners chosen were Tiberius

⁶ Long, *Decline of the Roman Republic*, vol. i. p. 186.

⁷ Plutarch, *Life of Tiberius Gracchus*, c. 15.

Gracchus himself, Appius Claudius, his father-in-law, and Gaius Gracchus, his brother.

152. The Violent Death of Tiberius (133 B.C.). — To secure his position for the future against the revenge of the nobility, Tiberius now became a candidate for a second term as tribune. This was unconstitutional, for at this time a tribune could not hold his office for two consecutive years. In order to retain his hold upon the people, Tiberius promised, if again made tribune, to carry various reforms.

Naturally the enemies of Tiberius opposed his reelection. Rome was in a seething tumult. A crowd numbering from three to four thousand is said to have accompanied Tiberius as he moved about the city from place to place. When the election day came, the voting had hardly begun before it was violently interrupted by the senatorial party, who declared that the whole proceeding was unconstitutional. The election was postponed until the following day.

That night the partisans of Tiberius watched before his house, for they feared that an attempt would be made to assassinate their champion. In the meantime there were many unpropitious omens. The sacred fowls would not eat; Tiberius in going out of his house stumbled over the threshold; and on his way to the Capitoline, where the voting was to take place, some crows fighting on a roof caused a loosened tile to fall just at his feet. Disregarding, however, all these sinister omens, Tiberius insisted on going to the voting-place.

It would seem that Tiberius had resolved to meet the violence of his enemies with violence. It is impossible, however, to follow the exact course of events, and to divide the blame for what followed, by any just measure, between

the opposing parties. Suffice it to say that rioting began. The partisans of Tiberius drove his enemies from the voting-place. Word was carried to the senate, which was sitting in a near-by temple, that Tiberius was asking the people to crown him king. He had been seen to move his hand towards his head, which was interpreted to mean that he wished a crown placed there.

The senators, led by one of their number, P. Cornelius Scipio Nasica, rushed out, and arming themselves with sticks and the legs of the benches that had been overturned and broken by the surging crowd, fell upon the followers of Tiberius and drove them from the open space. Tiberius in attempting to escape stumbled over some bodies, and was then set upon by his pursuers and killed, one of his own colleagues striking the first blow. Three hundred of his followers perished with him. The bodies of all, including that of Tiberius, were thrown into the Tiber. Thus perished one of the best beloved and most greatly trusted of all the popular leaders at Rome.

This was the first time since the creation of the plebeian tribunate (par. 50) that the contention of parties in Rome had led to an appeal to open force, the first time that the city had witnessed such a scene of violence and blood. But such scenes were very soon to become common enough.

153. Good Effects of Tiberius' Land Law. — The land law of Tiberius, carried into effect by the commission to which the matter had been intrusted (par. 151), effected a great amelioration of the distress among the poor, great numbers of whom were allotted small farms carved out of the public lands now reclaimed by the state. Districts that had been almost depopulated, again became covered with the cot-

tages of sturdy peasants. Italy seemed in a fair way of being redeemed from the blight that slavery, and the monopolization of the soil by the rich, had brought upon it.

But such a reform as this could not be carried out without many vested interests being interfered with, and many hardships inflicted upon a large class. There was consequently great opposition to the whole movement, and finally it was checked, and the law of Tiberius made practically a dead letter by the transference of the duties of the commission to the consuls. This was the work of the senatorial party, and it meant of course the end of the reform.

154. Gaius Gracchus: his Motives and Aims. -- Gaius Gracchus now came forward to assume the position made vacant by the death of his brother Tiberius. He was actuated by two motives: a burning desire to avenge upon the senatorial party the murder of his brother, and to carry out the reforms that the latter had begun. How he brooded over his brother's fate is shown by the story that tells how he had a dream in which the spirit of Tiberius seemed to address him thus: "Gaius, why do you delay? There is no escape; the same life for both of us, and the same death in defence of the people, is our destiny."

In the year 124 B.C. Gaius was elected tribune. As quæstor in Sardinia he had proved that he was of a different mold from the ordinary Roman magistrate. He had "left Rome," as Plutarch puts it, "with his purse full of money and had brought it back empty; others had taken out jars full of wine and had brought them back full of money."

Once in the tribuneship, Gaius entered straightway with marvellous energy and resourcefulness upon the work of

reform. His aim was to destroy the government of the senate, now hopelessly incapable and corrupt, and to set up in its place a new government with himself at its head. In aims as well as in capacity, Gaius was a Cæsar before Cæsar. But in the lofty disinterestedness of his motives he was infinitely the superior of his more fortunate successor in the rôle of reformer and revolutionist.

155. The Reform Measures of Gaius Gracchus (123-121 B.C.).—If we bear in mind the aims of Gaius, all of his measures become self-explanatory. He first secured the passage of a law by the people which made it constitutional for a tribune to hold his office two years in succession, if such a continuance in office was necessary to enable him to carry into full execution his plans.¹ This meant of course the virtual transformation of the tribuneship into a possible life-tenure office, or, in other words, the revival of the monarchy.

Gaius next won the affection of the poor of the city by carrying a law² which provided that every Roman citizen, on personal application, should be given corn from the public granaries at half or less than half the market price. Gaius could not have foreseen all the evils to which this law, which was in effect what we know as a poor law, was destined to lead. It led eventually to the free distribution of corn to all citizens who made application for it. Very soon a large proportion of the population of Rome was living in vicious indolence and feeding at the public crib (par. 214).

¹ According to a law passed in 180 B.C., no citizen could be reëlected to any magistracy until after an interval of ten years.

² The *lex frumentaria*.

By his next law,³ Gaius won the favor of the equestrian order. At this time the rich class of Roman citizens was divided into two orders:⁴ (1) The senators, whose property was largely in land, and who held almost exactly the position in the Roman state that the peers of the House of Lords hold in the society and government of England; and (2) the knights (*equites*), the rich merchants, bankers, and speculators who possessed property which would in earlier days have qualified them for service in the cavalry. This equestrian order is represented in English society by the wealthy mercantile class. Between the senatorial and the equestrian order there was much jealousy and ill-will.

Now Gaius, by the law just mentioned, provided that in the future the judges constituting the court before which provincial magistrates accused of extortion or other wrongdoing were tried, should be chosen only from the equestrian order. This meant the transference of this branch of the administration of justice from the hands of the senators into the hands of the knights. This was a matter of very grave concern for the senatorial order, for it meant that henceforth the accused of this class were to be tried before judges selected not from their own but from a rival order. Presumably these judges would not be likely to let any guilty man escape.

These two measures of Gaius raised up for him friends and supporters among both the poor and the rich. His next measure was an agrarian law, which was simply a revival of the law of Tiberius, which had been made of no effect by the senatorial party (par. 153).

³ *Lex judiciaria*.

⁴ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. iii. p. 141.

As a further measure of relief for the poor, Gaius established new colonies in Italy, and sent six thousand settlers, comprising Italians as well as Roman citizens, to the site of Carthage, and founded there a colony called Junonia. This was the first citizen-colony⁵ established by the Romans outside of Italy.

Another measure now proposed by Gaius alienated a large section of his followers, and paved the way for his downfall. This proposal was that all the Latins should be made full Roman citizens, and that the Italian allies should be given the rights and privileges then enjoyed by the Latins (par. 163). Gaius was in this matter out of touch with his times. The Romans were unwilling to confer the rights of the city upon those still without them, for the reason that citizenship now, since the whole world was paying tribute in one form or another to the ruling class in the Roman state, was something valuable.⁶ The proposal was defeated, and the popularity of Gaius visibly declined.

The activity of Gaius covered other fields than those we have named. He caused roads to be built and public store-houses for grain to be erected. He further projected reforms in the army, but these were never carried out.

156. The Downfall and Death of Gaius Gracchus (121 B.C.).—The senatorial party now resorted to a very old political device in order to undermine wholly the already waning popularity of Gaius. They sought to detach the people from him by promising to do more for them than Gaius

⁵ For the different types of colonies, consult par. 84.

⁶ The religious scruples of the early times against admitting strangers to the freedom of the city (par. 77) had scarcely any place among the motives of those that now opposed the enfranchisement of aliens (consult par. 163).

himself had done. Their tool in carrying out this scheme was the tribune Marcus Livius Drusus. This man, backed by the senators, outbid Gaius in every matter. The ungrateful and fickle multitude turned from their old and tried friend to the new and untried one. They might well have feared their old enemies the nobles bringing gifts.

The end was now drawing near. When Gaius (in 121 B.C.) stood the third time for reelection as tribune he was defeated. Without the protection of his office (par. 45), his life was in danger. His friends rallied around him. Fighting took place in the streets between the contending factions, and the partisans of Gaius entrenched themselves on the Aventine. Yielding to the importunity of his friends, Gaius made an effort to escape from the city. He fled across the Tiber, and there in a sacred grove a faithful slave killed him with a friendly thrust, and then slew himself.

The consul Lucius Opimius had offered for the head of Gaius and that of one of his partisans their weight in gold. The persons who brought in the heads appear to have received the promised reward. "This is the first instance in Roman history of head money being offered and paid, but it was not the last."⁷

The followers of Gaius were hunted everywhere to the death. Three thousand are said to have been strangled in prison. When the wretched business was over, the consul Opimius, who was largely responsible for the infamy of it

⁷ Long, *Decline of the Roman Republic*, vol. i. p. 286. Some authorities say that in the case of Gaius, the money was never paid, because the man who brought in the head happened to be a person of no distinction.

all, erected in the forum, in commemoration of the triumph of his party, a temple dedicated to Concord.

The common people ever regarded the Gracchi as martyrs to their cause, and their memory was preserved, in later times, by statues in the public square. To Cornelia, their mother, a monument was erected, bearing the simple inscription, "The Mother of the Gracchi."

157. Restoration of the Senatorial Party: Land-Grabbing Act. — The removal of Gaius made the power of the nobles, that is of the senate, supreme. They at once set themselves at work to undo all that Gaius and his brother Tiberius had done which tended to undermine their authority or to interfere with their wealth-getting. The Gracchan agrarian law, which forbade those receiving allotments of land to sell the same (par. 150), was repealed. Straightway the absorption of the land by the rich began anew. The small farms disappeared in the great *latifundia*⁸ "like drops of water in the ocean." Slave-gangs increased, and the free peasantry that had begun to fill the land under the workings of the Gracchan law disappeared. Amidst the rapidly growing wealth of the few, the poverty and misery of the masses increased. Extravagance and luxury grew apace. Thus was the gulf between the rich and the poor, which the Gracchi had died to close, made wider and deeper, and Italy pushed on towards ruin. But the crowning piece of legislation of the selfish aristocrats was a law, a great part of which is still extant, which converted all the public lands in the possession of the rich into the private property of those occupying it, free of rent to the state. This was a measure somewhat like that of the great landowners of England when, after

⁸ Large farms or landed estates.

the Restoration of the Stuart king Charles the Second (in 1660), they, by act of Parliament, relieved their lands of the feudal burdens which up to that time had rested upon them, and thereby converted what were actually semi-public lands into private property, free from all rents, feudal dues, or services to the English crown.

As this measure of the English landlords gave a great part of the soil of England permanently into the hands of a comparatively few families, so did the law of which we speak give vast tracts of Italy for centuries — until the downfall of the empire — into the hands of a few hundred overgrown proprietors. Italy, like our Southern States before the Civil War, was blocked out into immense slave-estates. It required a revolution that overturned society from the very bottom to regain the soil for the people.

The corn law of Gaius was allowed to remain in force, because the nobles could not afford to offend the Roman rabble in an attempt to repeal it. Besides, the annulling of this law would not have advanced in any way the interest of the aristocrats, and that was reason enough why they should let it alone.

158. The War with Jugurtha (111-106 B.C.). — After the death of the Gracchi there seemed no one left to resist the heartless oppressions and to denounce the scandalous extravagances of the aristocratic party. The votes of senators and the decisions of judges, the offices at Rome and the places in the provinces — everything pertaining to the government had its price, and was bought and sold like merchandise. Affairs in Africa at this time illustrate how Roman virtue and integrity had declined since Fabricius indignantly refused the gold of Pyrrhus (par. 82).

Jugurtha, king of Numidia, had seized all that country, having put to death the rightful rulers of different provinces of the same, who had been confirmed in their possessions by the Romans at the close of the Punic wars. Commissioners sent from Rome to look into the matter were bribed by Jugurtha. Finally, the Numidian robber, in carrying out some of his high-handed measures, put to death some Italian merchants. War was immediately declared by the Roman senate, and the consul L. Calpurnius Bestia was sent into Africa with an army to punish the insolent usurper. Bestia sold himself to Jugurtha, and instead of chastising him confirmed him in his stolen possessions. We should naturally suppose that the senate would have meted out proper punishment to the mercenary consul upon his return. But the prudent general had taken along with him the president of that body, and had divided with him the spoils.

The indignation of the people, who had good reason to suspect the real state of affairs, was great. They demanded that Jugurtha, with the promise of immunity to himself, should be invited to Rome, and encouraged to disclose the whole transaction, in order that those who had betrayed the state for money might be punished. Jugurtha came; but the gold of the consul and president bribed one of the tribunes to prohibit the king from giving his testimony.

Now it so happened that there was in Rome at this time a rival claimant of the Numidian throne, who at this very moment was urging his claims before the senate. Jugurtha caused this rival to be assassinated. As he himself was under a safe-conduct, the senate could do nothing to punish the audacious deed and to resent the insult to the state,

save by ordering the king to leave Rome at once. As he passed the gates, it is said that he looked scornfully back upon the capital, and exclaimed, "O venal city! thou wouldst sell thyself if thou couldst find a purchaser!"

Upon the renewal of the war another Roman army was sent into Africa, but was defeated and sent beneath the yoke. Finally, in the year 106 B.C., the war was brought to a close by Gaius Marius, a man who had risen to the consulship from the lowest ranks of the people. Under him fought a young nobleman named Sulla, of whom we shall hear much hereafter. Marius celebrated a grand triumph at Rome. Jugurtha, after having graced the triumphal procession, in which he walked with his hands bound with chains, was thrown into the Mamertine dungeon beneath the Capitoline hill, where he died of starvation.

The war had wholly discredited the government of the senate, by revealing its hopeless incapacity, and by showing into what depths of infamy and corruption the entire oligarchical party -- senators, judges, and generals -- had sunk.

159. Invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones (113-101 B.C.). — The war was not yet ended in Africa before terrible tidings came to Rome from the north. Two mighty nations of "horrible barbarians," three hundred thousand strong in fighting-men, coming whence no one could tell, had invaded and were now desolating the Roman province of Gaul, and might any moment cross the Alps and sweep down into Italy.

The mysterious invaders proved to be two Germanic tribes, the Teutones and Cimbri, the vanguard of that great German migration which was destined to change the face

and history of Europe. These intruders were seeking new homes, and were driven on, it would almost seem, by a blind and instinctive impulse. They carried with them in rude wagons all their property, their wives, and their children. The Celtic tribes of Gaul were no match for the newcomers, and fled before them as they advanced. Several Roman armies beyond the Alps were cut to pieces. In one battle more than one hundred thousand Romans are said to have been slaughtered. The terror at Rome was only equalled by that occasioned by the invasion of the Gauls three centuries before (par. 68). The Gauls were terrible enough ; but now the conquerors of the Gauls were coming.

Marius, the conqueror of Jugurtha, was looked to by all as the only man who could save the state in this crisis. He was reelected to the consulship, and intrusted with the command of the armies. Accompanied by Sulla as one of his most skilful lieutenants, Marius hastened into Northern Italy. The barbarians had divided into two bands. The Cimbri were to cross the Eastern Alps, and join in the valley of the Po the Teutones, who were to force the defiles of the Western, or Maritime, Alps. Marius determined to prevent the union of the barbarians, and to crush each band separately.

Anticipating the march of the Teutones, Marius hurried into Southern Gaul, and, at the junction of the Rhone and the Isar, sat down in a fortified camp to watch the movements of the barbarians. Unable to storm the Roman position, the Teutones resolved to leave their enemy in their rear and push on into Italy. For six days and nights the endless train of men and wagons rolled past the camp of

Marius. The barbarians jeered at the Roman soldiers, and asked them if they had any messages they wished to send to their wives; if so, they would bear them, as they would be in Rome shortly. Marius allowed them to pass by, and then, breaking camp, followed closely after. Falling upon them at a favorable moment, he almost annihilated the entire host.¹ Two hundred thousand barbarians are said to have been slain. Marius heaped together and burned the spoils of the battlefield. While engaged in this work, the news was brought to him of his reelection as consul for the fifth time. This was illegal;² but the people felt that Marius must be kept in the field.

Marius now recrossed the Alps, and, after visiting Rome, hastened to meet the Cimbri, who were entering the north-eastern corner of Italy. He was not a day too soon. Already the barbarians had defeated the Roman army under the patrician Catulus, and were ravaging the rich plains of the Po. The Cimbri, uninformed as to the fate of the Teutones, now sent an embassy to Marius to demand that they and their kinsmen be given lands in Italy. Marius sent back in reply, "The Teutones have got all the land they need on the other side of the Alps." The devoted Cimbri were soon to have all they needed on this side.

A terrible battle almost immediately followed at Vercellæ (101 B.C.). The barbarians were drawn up in an enormous hollow square, the men forming the outer ranks being fastened together with ropes, to prevent their lines from being broken. This proved their ruin. More than one hundred thousand were killed, and sixty thousand taken prisoners to

¹ In the battle of Aquæ Sextiæ, fought 102 B.C.

² Consult par. 155, n. 1.

be sold as slaves in the Roman slave-markets. Marius was hailed as the "Savior of his Country."

The fate of these two nations that were wandering over the face of the earth in search of homes forms one of the most pathetic tales in all history. The almost innumerable host of wanderers, men, women, and children, now "rested beneath the sod, or toiled under the yoke of slavery: the forlorn hope of the German migration had performed its duty; the homeless people of the Cimbri and their comrades were no more."³ Their kinsmen yet behind the Danube and the Rhine were destined to exact a terrible revenge for their slaughter.

We must here notice a certain thing that Marius did after the battle at Vercellæ, since it illustrates admirably that spirit of disregard for the laws which was beginning to manifest itself among the Romans of all classes. When the battle was over, Marius conferred Roman citizenship upon two cohorts of Italian allies as a reward for conspicuous bravery. When taken to task later for this unconstitutional proceeding, Marius replied, by way of excuse, that amidst the din of arms he could not hear the voice of the laws.

160. Changes in the Army. — Unfortunately at just this time there was introduced, by Marius himself, a new practice in the army which made it, in the hands of a deaf commander, a wonderfully effective weapon against the republic. Up to this period, a property qualification had been required of the legionary. Only in times of great public peril had propertyless citizens been called upon for military service. Foreign mercenaries, it is true, had found a place in the army, but not in the legions. Marius now

³ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. iii. p. 235.

gave permission to citizens without property to enlist. From this time on, the ranks of the Roman armies were filled almost entirely, as in the case of our own standing army, by voluntary enlistments.⁴ This tended, of course, to create a class of poor professional soldiers, who became in effect the clients of their general, looked to him to secure them war-booty, and, at the expiration of their term of enlistment, grants of public lands; and who were ready to follow him in all kinds of undertakings, even in undertakings against the commonwealth.

161. Second Servile War in Sicily (103-99 B.C.). — In the earlier part of this chapter we gave an account of an insurrection of the slaves in Sicily, which took place about a generation before the time at which we have now arrived (par. 147). Since the suppression of that outbreak, the condition of things in the island instead of growing better had rather grown worse. The country had become so filled with barbarian slaves that it had reverted almost to a state of savagery. Throughout large sections of the island society had fallen back from the agricultural and commercial stage of culture into the pastoral.

Among the crowd of slaves were many free-born men who had been kidnapped in the various regions of the East that had come under Roman supremacy. When an attempt was made to restore these men to freedom, their owners made a great outcry, and the magistrates before whom their cases had been brought were obliged to give up all efforts in their

⁴ There were introduced about this time, it is thought by Marius himself, changes in the formation of the legion, the equipment of the soldier, and the tactical arrangement of the cohorts. But these matters are of too technical a character to be given a place in the text. See Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. iii. pp. 241-247.

behalf. The government was too weak, too completely under the influence of the men who were profiting by outrage and wrong, to give protection and justice to any class, free or bond, that these inhuman creatures had selected as their victims.

The disappointment created among the slaves by the miscarriage of this movement in their behalf led to an outbreak, which spread until a large part of the bondsmen in the island were in arms against their masters.

The story of the struggle that followed is simply a repetition of that of the first servile war in the island. It took the Roman armies five years to suppress the revolt, which was finally brought to an end by the consul Manius Aquilius. The favorite punishment meted out to the captives in the first war had been crucifixion (par. 147); the prisoners taken at this time were carried to Rome that they "might make a holiday" for the Romans by fighting with wild beasts in the amphitheatre. But the slaves disappointed their captors by committing wholesale suicide before the time for the spectacles arrived.

162. Gaius Marius attempts Revolution (100 B.C.). — Before the slave trouble in Sicily was over there was trouble of a different sort in Rome itself. Marius, so recently hailed by all as the savior of the state (par. 159), and now through the favor of the people enjoying his sixth consulship, — a thing unknown before in the history of Rome, — had entered into an alliance and conspiracy with two demagogues, Glaucia and Saturninus⁵ by name, whose aim was the overthrow of the senatorial government and the establishment of a new order of things.

⁵ C. Servilius Glaucia and L. Appuleius Saturninus.

Marius, by joining the conspiracy, evidently hoped to get in his hands the supreme power. His head had been turned by his military successes and his civic triumphs. He likened his victorious marches in Africa and Europe to the triumphal processions of Bacchus, and had a drinking-cup made for his use like the cup fable represented the



MARIUS.

(From a bust in the Uffizi
Gallery)

jovial god as wont to use. He was not only willing that the people should take him and make him king, but he was ready to aid in his own crowning.

Saturninus, having reached the tribunate through violence and assassination, managed affairs in the interest of the clique. In order to please the mob, a new corn law was carried, which reduced the price of corn to Roman citizens to a merely nominal sum (par. 155). There was also carried a measure which gave the veterans of Marius allotments of land in Sicily, Macedonia, and Greece. These gifts of land were henceforth one of the usual means employed by successful generals to attach their soldiers to their persons and their interests.

These corn and land allotment laws met, of course, with opposition, and were carried in the assemblies only by violence. Indeed, rioting and murder were becoming the usual accompaniment of every assembly of the people, either for the purpose of an election or for legislation.

The spirit and temper in which Saturninus presided as

tribune is shown by the following story. On one occasion the nobles, aiming to break up an assembly of the people, caused word to be conveyed to the tribunes that Jupiter was thundering (par. 24). Saturninus paid no heed to the messenger, save to charge him with a message to the senators to the effect that if Jupiter was really thundering they would do well to look out for themselves, as the thunder might be followed by hail. The story, even though it be a fiction, is truthful. The old faith in the gods—and in their priests—was gone, and irreverence marked the conduct of magistrate and private citizen alike.

The elections of the year 99 B.C. were attended by bribery, violence, and murder. The better class of citizens became frightened, and, fearing a reign of anarchy, rallied to the support of the government. Marius, as consul, was called upon by the senate to suppress the disorder, which he himself was largely responsible for having created. For a moment Marius seemed to waver, and then, betraying his friends, he led an armed force against the followers of Saturninus. A pitched battle took place in the forum. The people's party was defeated, and Saturninus and Glaucia were murdered by the nobles. "Without trial or sentence," in the words of Mommsen, "there died on this day four magistrates of the Roman people—a prætor, a quæstor, and two tribunes."

Marius was ruined—for the time being. He had played a double part, and shown himself an untrustworthy friend and ally. He was despised by both parties. There was no one who thought it worth while to court him or to do him reverence. Under pretence of fulfilling a vow, he went to Asia, and thus got away from Rome for a while. It was

destined that another turn of the wheel of fortune should again bring him to the top.

REFERENCES. — White's APPIAN, vol. ii., *The Civil Wars*, bk. i. chaps. i.-iv. PLUTARCH, Lives of **Tiberius Gracchus*, **Caius Gracchus*, and **Caius Marius*. BEESLY (A. H.), *The Gracchi, Marius and Sulla* (Epoch Series), chaps. i. ii. and iii. pp. 1-65. MERIVALE (C.), **The Fall of the Roman Republic*, chap. i. pp. 1-31, "The Gracchi." FREEMAN (E. A.), *The Story of Sicily* (Story of the Nations), chap. xvi., "Sicily a Roman Province"; first part of the chapter, on the Servile War. LONG (G.), *The Decline of the Roman Republic*, 5 vols.; for consultation and reference. IHNE (W.), *History of Rome*, vol. iv. The greater part of the volume is devoted to an account of "the constitution, laws, religion and magistrates of the Roman people."

CHAPTER XIII.

THE PERIOD OF THE REVOLUTION (*Continued*).

(98-78 B.C.)

163. Roman Citizens, Latins, and Italian Allies.—The next important act in the history of Rome had for its stage, not the Roman forum, but all Italy. The matter to which we refer was a struggle on the part of the Italian allies of Rome for admission to the city as citizens.

At this time all the free inhabitants of Italy were divided into three classes, — *Roman citizens*, *Latins*, and *Italian allies*. The Roman citizens included the inhabitants of the capital, of the towns called *municipia* (par. 73), and of the Roman colonies planted in different parts of the peninsula (par. 84), besides the dwellers on isolated farms and the inhabitants of villages scattered everywhere throughout Italy.⁶ The census for the year 115 B.C. gives the number of citizens capable of bearing arms as 394,336.

The *Latins* comprised the inhabitants of the Latin colonies (par. 84). The name had by this time lost all racial meaning, and denoted merely the political status of those bearing it.⁷ What instalment of the rights of the city this class

⁶ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. i. p. 536. In this enumeration, *prefectures* are included in the *municipia*. See par. 73, n. 5.

⁷ The inhabitants of the ancient towns of Latium were at this time either full Roman citizens or belonged to the class known as Italian allies.

enjoyed we have already learned (par. 84). We need here simply recall to mind that they possessed some of the most valuable of the private rights of the city, and had a special capacity, through meeting certain conditions, of acquiring full Roman citizenship. It should be carefully remembered that they were non-citizens, although their status was preferable to that of the lowest grade of those bearing that coveted title.⁸ They were called allies, — “allies of the Latin name,” — and were not included in the census lists. As individuals they were not liable to service in the legions, but as communities they were obliged to send contingents to the Roman army when called upon.

The third class, the Italian allies,⁹ was made up of those conquered peoples whom Rome had excluded wholly from the rights of the city. The relations to Rome of the different cities and tribes of this class were not exactly the same in all cases, since these were determined by the provisions of the special treaty that Rome had made with each community.

If we should say that these so-called “allies” were the subjects of the Roman burgess body, we should describe in a word very nearly their actual status. They were obliged to furnish contingents to the Roman army whenever called upon to do so; but although thus forced to bear

⁸ These were the inhabitants of the so called prefectures, which were cities or communities from which self-government had been taken away, and whose local affairs were administered by magistrates, commonly bearing the name of prefects, sent out from Rome. Such communities were, in a word, *provinces* within the limits of Italy. Capua was the largest of the cities that the Romans reduced to this condition (par. 115). Many districts in Lucania, Samnium, and Cisalpine Gaul were also treated by them in a similar way.

⁹ *Socii*, or *civitates federatæ*.

a great part of the burden of the wars that Rome saw fit to wage, when there came an allotment of conquered lands they were seldom given any share in the distribution.

But the most hateful and irritating distinctions between the Italian allies and the citizens of Rome were those that concerned what we may call the rights of person. Roman citizenship lent, as it were, a certain inviolability to the person of the citizen. Thus a Roman, in all cases involving the penalty of death or of flogging, had the right of appeal from the sentence of a magistrate to the people (par. 48); an Italian had no such right. Hence the members of the Italian communities, and those of the Latin colonies as well, were liable to be mishandled by Roman officials, or even by private Roman citizens. The following accounts of typical outrages of this sort have been preserved.

The consul Marcus Marius, on a tour through Campania, came to an allied town. His wife, expressing a desire to enter the bath intended for men, the consul ordered the highest magistrate of the place to have it vacated and prepared for her use. The wife complained to her husband that she had been compelled to wait for the bath, and that things had not been put in a proper condition. Thereupon the consul caused the magistrate of the town to be seized, bound to a stake in the forum, and scourged.

A second typical case is this: A young Roman aristocrat, travelling in the territory of the Latin town of Venusia, was being carried along the highway in a litter. A passer-by, an Italian, in jest asked the men who were bearing the litter if they had a corpse inside. The occupant of the litter chanced to overhear the remark. He had the fellow

seized and beaten to death upon the spot with straps taken from the litter.

164. The Italians demand the Rights of the City ; Drusus becomes their Champion. — Naturally the Italians complained bitterly of having to fight for the maintenance of an empire in the management of which they had no voice, and under the laws of which they could find no protection. They now demanded the Roman franchise, and all the immunities and privileges of Roman citizens.

Their demand was stubbornly resisted by both the aristocratical and the popular party at Rome. Roman citizenship had now become a valuable thing, and it was bestowed upon outsiders very grudgingly by those already enjoying it. The liberal policy of earlier times, when entire clans or communities had been admitted to the franchise, had given way to a narrow, selfish policy of exclusion. In the year 126 B.C., and again four years later, the senate had expelled from Rome all non-citizens. In the year 95 B.C. the consuls carried a law which made it a penal offence for any non-burgess to lay claim to the Roman suffrage. It was the passage of this law, revealing as it did to the Italians the hopelessness of their claims even being generously considered by the body of Roman burgesses, that did much to push the state on towards the brink of civil war.

At this juncture of affairs there arose at Rome, from the ranks of the aristocrats themselves, a champion of the Italian cause. This was Marcus Livius Drusus. Though a nobleman by birth and association, still he was open-minded and generous, and was able to recognize the element of justice in the claims of the Italians.

Animated by the motives of the patriot rather than by

those of the partisan, Drusus brought forward, in the year 91 B.C., being then tribune, proposals looking towards the reform of the equestrian law courts,¹ and providing for further distributions of corn, fresh assignments of land, and the founding of new colonies. The aim of Drusus in these proposals was to conciliate the different classes of Roman citizens, and get them to work together harmoniously for the common interests of the state.²

But the plans of Drusus reached beyond the burgess body and embraced the great non-privileged order in Italy, namely, the Italians. In order to avert the civil war which he saw to be impending, he proposed that the full Roman franchise should be bestowed upon all the Italian allies.

This proposal aroused bitter opposition at Rome among all classes of citizens, the popular party being almost or quite as unwilling as the aristocratic party to share any of their privileges with outsiders.³ Drusus was accused of being in treasonable communication with the Italians. One day, while in his own house surrounded by his friends, he

¹ These courts were in the hands of the knights (par. 155), that is, of the mercantile class, and were being corruptly used to favor this class and to injure and undermine the senatorial party. It was impossible for a member of the senatorial party to secure justice in these tribunals.

² These proposals were enacted into a law, but this was declared invalid by the senate, because in conflict with an earlier law which forbade the mingling of different matters in a single proposal.

³ It should be carefully noted that the opposition to the admission of strangers to the rights of the city was no longer based on religious grounds, as was the case in the very earliest days of patrician Rome (par. 77). The opposition now arose simply from the selfish determination of a privileged class in the Roman state to retain its monopoly rights and immunities.

was struck down by an assassin. His dying words were: "When will the republic have another citizen like me?"

Drusus was a very different man from either Saturninus or Glaucia (par. 162). He was the successor of Spurius Cassius and the Gracchi.⁴ He was a statesman and a patriot, a true social reformer. He saw what was fair and just, tried to persuade the Romans to do it, — and died a martyr for the cause of right and justice that he had espoused.

105. The Social or Marsic⁵ War (91-89 B.C.). — The murder of their champion Drusus dashed the last hope of the Italian allies of securing, through an appeal to the Roman sense of justice, a recognition of their claims. Accordingly they now flew to arms. The Marsians and the Samnites, the latter the ancient and stubborn enemies of Rome, were foremost in the revolt.

The confederates determined upon the establishment of a rival state. A town called Corfinium, among the Apennines, was chosen as the capital of the new republic, and its name changed to Italica. The government of the new state was modelled after that at Rome. Two consuls were placed at the head of the republic, and a senate of five hundred members was formed. Thus in a single day a large part of Italy south of the Rubicon was lost to Rome. The Etrurians and the Umbrians continued loyal. The Latin colonies or



COIN OF THE
ITALIAN CON-
FEDERACY.

(The Sabellian Bull
goring the Roman
Wolf.)

⁴ See pars. 53, 149, and 154.

⁵ So called on account of the prominent part taken in the insurrection by the warlike Marsians.

towns, some forty in number,⁶ together with the most of the Greek cities of Southern Italy, also remained faithful.

The greatness of the danger aroused all the old Roman courage and patriotism. Aristocrats and democrats hushed their quarrels; Sulla and Marius forgot rising animosities, and fought bravely side by side for the endangered life of the republic. An army of one hundred thousand men was raised to face a force equal in number and discipline that had been gathered by the new confederacy. The war lasted three years, and was waged in almost every part of Italy, since the towns and communities that had rebelled were scattered throughout the peninsula.

The war was finally brought to an end rather by prudent concessions on the part of Rome than by fighting. In the year 90 B.C., alarmed by signs of disaffection in certain of the communities that up to this time had remained faithful, Rome granted⁷ the franchise of the city to all Italian communities that had not declared war against her or had already laid down their arms. The following year a new law⁸ granted the full rights of the city to all Italians who should within two months appear before a Roman magistrate and express a wish for the franchise. This tardy concession to the just demands of the Italians virtually ended the war. Those states that still persisted in carrying on the struggle, resolved on absolute independence, were soon obliged to yield to the Roman arms.

After the close of the war and as an immediate conse-

⁶ It was these strong places, in connection with the thirty-two Roman colonies scattered throughout Italy and occupying generally strategic points, that saved Rome.

⁷ By the *lex Julia*.

⁸ The *lex Plautia Papiria*, 89 B.C.

quence of it, the rights that had up to this time been enjoyed by the Latin towns were conferred upon all the cities between the Po and the Alps.⁹

166. Comments on the Results of the Social War.—The struggle had been extremely disastrous to the republic. It is estimated that three hundred thousand men in the vigor of life had been slain. Many towns had been destroyed and wide districts made desolate by those ravages that never fail to characterize civil contentions.

The chief political outcome of the war has already been noticed. Practically all the freemen throughout Italy proper were made equal in civil and political rights. This was a matter of great significance. "The enrollment of the Italians among her own citizens deserves to be regarded," declares the historian Merivale, "as the greatest stroke of policy in the whole history of the republic."¹⁰ This wholesale enfranchisement of Latin and Italian allies more than doubled the number of Roman burgesses. The census for the year 70 B.C. gives the number of citizens as 900,000, as against 394,336 about a generation before the war.¹¹

This equalization of the different classes of the Italian peninsula was simply a later phase of that movement in early Rome which resulted in the equalization of the two orders of the patricians and plebeians (chap. v.). But the purely political results of the earlier and those of the later revolution were very different. At the earlier time those who demanded and received the franchise were persons

⁹ By the *lex Pompeia*, 89 B.C.

¹⁰ *Fall of the Roman Empire*, p. 98.

¹¹ Consult *Table* on page 333.

living either in Rome or in its immediate vicinity, and consequently able to exercise the acquired right to vote and to hold office.

But now it was very different. These new-made citizens were living in towns and villages or on farms scattered all over Italy, and of course very few of them could ever go to Rome, either to participate in the elections there, to vote on proposed legislation, or to become candidates for the Roman magistracies. Hence the rights they had acquired were, after all, politically barren. But no one was to blame for this state of things. Rome had simply outgrown her city constitution, and her system of primary assemblies (par. 15). She needed for her widening empire a representative system like ours; but representation was a political device far away from the thoughts of the men of those times.

As a result of the impossibility of the Roman citizens outside of Rome taking part, as a general thing, in the meetings of the popular assemblies at the capital, the offices of the state fell into the hands of those actually living in Rome or settled in its immediate neighborhood. Since the free, or practically free, distribution of corn, and the public shows were drawing to the capital from all quarters crowds of the poor, the idle, and the vicious, these assemblies were rapidly becoming simply mobs, controlled by noisy demagogues and unscrupulous military leaders aiming at the supreme power in the state.

This situation brought about a serious division in the body of Roman citizens. Those of the capital came to regard themselves as the real rulers of the empire, as they actually were, and looked with disdain upon those living in

the other cities and the remoter districts of the peninsula. They alone reaped the fruits of the conquered world. At the same time the mass of outside passive citizens, as we may call them, came to look with jealousy upon this body of pampered aristocrats, rich speculators, and ragged, dissolute clients and hangers-on at Rome. They became quite reconciled to the thought of power passing out of the hands of such a crowd and into the hands of a single man. The feelings of men everywhere were being prepared for the revolution that was to overthrow the republic and bring in the empire.¹²

167. Effects of the Revolution upon the Municipal System. — In earlier paragraphs we explained the origin of the so-called *municipia* and of the municipal system.¹ The incorporation with the Roman state of all the Latin and the Italian allied cities increased vastly the number of *municipia*, for while the free members of these communities were given full Roman citizenship, they were allowed to retain as heretofore

¹² The value of the gift of the Roman franchise to the Italians was still further diminished by all the new citizens being enrolled in only eight or ten of the thirty-five tribes, whose votes were to be taken after the others had voted. Through this arrangement the old citizens were able practically, even though a great occasion brought crowds of the new citizens to Rome, to control the assemblies.

A word respecting the number of tribes. The number had reached thirty-three in 299 B.C. (par. 80). At the close of the First Punic War (241 B.C.), the number had been raised to thirty-five by the creation of two new tribes out of a part of the Sabine lands. This number was probably never afterwards increased, although some of our authorities maintain that the Italians were at first formed into eight or ten new tribes, instead of being distributed among tribes already existing. So far as their voting privileges were concerned it made practically very little difference how they were enrolled.

¹ See pars. 73 and 74.

the management of their own local concerns. This converted them into municipalities of the most favored class. The distinctions between Latin colonies, Italian allied towns, prefectures, and cities with the *Cæritan* franchise, now all disappear in the eye of the law.² All are placed on the same footing, and from this on the term *municipium*³ may be properly applied to each city of any or all of those various classes and grades of civic communities that the prudence or the policy of Roman statesmen had gradually called into existence. Of the extension of this municipal system into the provinces, of its regulation by Julius Cæsar, and of the hard fortune of the municipal towns under the later empire, we shall come to speak in other connections.⁴

168. The Political and Economic Condition of Asia; Mithradates the Great. -- While the Social War was still in progress in Italy a formidable enemy of Rome appeared in the East. Mithradates VI., king of Pontus, taking advantage of the distracted state of the republic, had practically destroyed the Roman power throughout the Orient and made himself master of Asia Minor, Macedonia, and Greece. In order to render intelligible this amazing and swift revolution in the affairs of the East, we must here give a short account

² For the status of Latin colonies, see par. 84; for that of Italian allies, par. 163; for that of prefectures, par. 163, n. 8; for that of communities with the *Cæritan* franchise, par. 73.

³ It should be further noticed that, while up to this time there had been different grades of *municipia*, namely, those whose inhabitants possessed only an imperfect Roman citizenship, and those whose inhabitants enjoyed the full Roman franchise, henceforth there was only one grade made up of towns whose inhabitants possessed in their fulness all the rights of the capital city.

⁴ See pars. 192, n. 3, 200, 239, and 240.

of the condition of things in that part of the Mediterranean world before the appearance upon the stage of Mithradates.

We have already seen how Rome extended her authority over Macedonia and Greece (chap. x.). In the year 133 B.C. King Attalus III. of Pergamus, a state in Western Asia Minor (par. 130), died, having willed his kingdom to the Roman people. The Romans accepted the bequest, and made the territory into a province under the name of Asia.

This province of Asia embraced probably the richest region, as it was certainly one of the oldest in its civilization, that Rome had thus far acquired. The Greek cities of the country had traditions reaching back into prehistoric times. Their tribute had swollen the fabulous wealth of the Lydian Cræsus. This exceptional prosperity of the earlier time had now indeed passed away, but the wealth and trade of the region were still great and important, so that the province presented an attractive field for the operations of Italian traders, speculators, and money-lenders. The country became crowded with these immigrant classes, who plundered the natives,⁵ and carried their ill-gotten booty to Rome to spend it there in gross and ostentatious living.

The Roman magistrates of the province were, as a rule, men who were willing to accept a share of the plunder and

⁵ This plundering went on largely in connection with the collection of the taxes and public rents. The natives paid a tenth in kind of the produce of the tilled land, and a rent for the use of the public pastures. There were also custom duties on imports. Under a law of Gaius Gracchus (*lex Sempronii*, 123 B.C.), the collection of these rents or taxes was farmed out, the censors every five years selling the privileges at public auction.

in return to connive at the wickedness going on all around them. Of course there were among the Italian residents many honorable merchants; but the dishonesty, extortion, and cruelty of the majority were so odious and so galling that they all alike became the objects of the utmost hatred and detestation of the natives.

Bearing in mind this feeling of the natives towards the Italians, we shall understand how it was possible for Mithradates to effect such an overturning of things so quickly as he did.

Mithradates VI. Eupator, surnamed the Great, came to the throne of the little kingdom of Pontus in the year 120 B.C. His extraordinary career impressed deeply the imagination of his times, and his deeds and fame have come down to us disguised and distorted by legend. His bodily frame and strength were immense, and his activity untiring. He could carry on conversation, it is said, in twenty-two of the different languages of his subjects. But Mithradates, notwithstanding the fact that his mother was a Syrian Greek and he himself was familiar with Greek culture, was, in his instincts and impulses, a typical oriental barbarian.



MITHRADATES THE
GREAT.

In the course of a few years, Mithradates by virtue of his resourcefulness and marvellous activity had pushed out, by conquest and negotiations, the boundaries of his little hereditary kingdom until it almost encircled the Euxine, which became practically a Pontic sea. He now audaciously encroached upon the Roman possessions in

Asia Minor, took prisoner a Roman magistrate, and subjected him to the most ignominious treatment. The natives of the Roman province of Asia, including the Greek cities, hailed him as their deliverer.

169. Mithradates orders a General Massacre of Italians in Asia (88 B.C.). -- Aware that a Roman army would soon be in Asia, Mithradates now took the resolve to destroy at a single blow all the Italians in the country, so that the Romans should not have their aid in the struggle that he foresaw to be near at hand. He accordingly sent orders to the magistrates throughout the country that on a certain day all Italians, without distinction of age or sex, should be put to death and their bodies thrown out without burial. Slaves were enjoined and encouraged through promised rewards to kill their masters, and those in debt to slay their creditors.

This savage order was almost everywhere carried out to the letter. Men, women, and children, all of the Italian name, were massacred. The number of victims of the wholesale slaughter is variously estimated at from eighty thousand to a hundred and fifty thousand. The hatred which the oppressions of the Roman magistrates, and the robberies of the Italian publicans and usurers, had inspired in the native population explains, though without extenuating, the awful crime.

170. Mithradates in Europe. -- Mithradates now turned his attention to Europe and sent his army into Greece. Athens, hoping for the revival of her old empire, and the most of the other Greek cities, renounced the authority of Rome and hailed Mithradates as the protector of Hellenism against the barbarian Romans.

Thus in the space of a few months was the power of the Romans destroyed throughout all the East, and the boundaries of their empire pushed back virtually to the Adriatic.

The European Greek cities, in turning as they did to an Asiatic despot as their ally and protector against Rome, showed themselves wholly blind to the real historical significance of the wars, as interpreted by a great modern historian, which were now opening between the Pontic king and the Romans. "They [these wars] formed — after a long truce — a new passage in the huge duel between the West and the East, which has been transmitted from the struggle of Marathon to the present generation, and will, perhaps, reckon its future by thousands of years, as it has reckoned its past."⁶

The Greeks of Europe should have realized, however hard and humiliating might be the position that had been assigned them among the different races and classes of the Roman empire, that they could not hope permanently to ameliorate their situation by opening the gates of the continent to Asiatic barbarians. They should have recalled certain passages in their own noble history, and reflected on the meaning of Marathon and Thermopylæ.

171. Marius and Sulla contend for the Command in the War against Mithradates. — The Roman senate at last bestirred itself. Its preoccupation with affairs in Italy had kept it from giving that attention to the proceedings of Mithradates that the gravity of the situation he was creating demanded.

Every exertion was now made to raise and equip an army for the recovery of the East. But the Marsic struggle

⁶ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. iii. p. 336.

had drained the treasury and impoverished all Italy (par. 165). The money needed for equipping the expedition could be raised only by the extraordinary measure of selling at public auction some land belonging to the state within the city limits.

A contest straightway arose between Marius and Sulla for the command of the forces. The former was now an old man of seventy years, while the latter was but forty-nine. Marius could not endure the thought of being pushed aside by his former lieutenant. The veteran general joined with the young men in the games and exercises of the gymnasium, to show that his frame was still animated by the strength and agility of youth. The senate, however, conferred the command upon Sulla, who at that time was consul.

Marius was furious at the success of his rival. In connection with the tribune Publius Sulpicius Rufus, he succeeded, by means of violence, in carrying a measure in an assembly of the people, whereby the command of the army intended for the East was taken away from Sulla and given to himself.

Two tribunes were sent to demand of Sulla, who was still in Italy, the transfer of the command of the legions to Marius; but the messengers were killed by the soldiers, who were devotedly attached to their commander. Sulla now saw that the sword must settle the dispute. He marched at the head of his legions upon Rome, entered the gates, and "for the first time in the annals of the city a Roman army encamped within the walls." The party of Marius was defeated, and he and ten of his companions were proscribed. Marius escaped and fled to Africa.

Sulla, after making some changes in the constitution in the interest of the oligarchy, among which was a provision which prevented the popular assemblies considering any measure unless it had been first approved by the senate, embarked with the legions to meet Mithradates in the East (88 B.C.).

172. The Wanderings of Marius. — Leaving Sulla to carry on the Mithradatic War, we must first follow the fortunes of the exiled Marius. The ship in which he fled from Italy was driven ashore at Circeii. Here Marius and the companions of his flight wandered about, sustained by the hope inspired by the good omen of the seven eaglets. As the story runs, Marius, when a boy, had captured an eagle's nest with seven young, and the augurs had said that this signified that he should be seven times consul. He had already held the office six times, and he firmly believed that the prophecy would be fulfilled as to the seventh term.

The pursuers of Marius at last found him hiding in a marsh, buried up to his neck in mud and water. He was dragged before the authorities of the town of Minturnæ. The magistrates, in obedience to the commands that had been sent everywhere, determined to put him to death. A Cimbrian slave was sent to despatch him. The cell where Marius lay was dark, and the eyes of the old soldier "seemed to flash fire." As the slave advanced, Marius shouted, "Man, do you dare kill Gaius Marius?" The frightened slave dropped his sword, and fled from the chamber, half dead with fear.

A better feeling now took possession of the men of Minturnæ, and they resolved that the blood of the "Savior of Italy" should not be upon their hands. They put him

aboard a vessel, which bore him and his friends to an island just off the coast of Africa. When he attempted to set foot upon the mainland near Carthage, Sextus, the Roman governor of the province, sent a messenger to forbid him to land. The legend says that the old general, almost choking with indignation, simply replied: "Go, tell your master that you have seen Marius, a fugitive, sitting amidst the ruins of Carthage."

173. The Return of Marius to Italy. — The exile at length found a temporary refuge on the island of Cercina, off the coast of Tunis. Here news was brought to him that his party, under the lead of the consul Lucius Cornelius Cinna, was in successful revolt against the optimates, and that he was needed. He immediately set sail for Italy, and landing in Etruria, joined Cinna. Together they hoped to crush and exterminate the opposing faction. Rome was cut off from her food supplies and starved into submission.

Marius now took a terrible revenge upon his enemies. The consul Gnaeus Octavius, who represented the aristocrats, was assassinated, and his head set up in front of the rostra. Never before had such a thing been seen at Rome—a consul's head exposed to the public gaze. The senators, equestrians, and leaders of the aristocratical party fled from the capital. For five days and nights a merciless slaughter was kept up. The life of every man in the capital was in the hands of the revengeful Marius. If he refused to return the greeting of any citizen, that sealed his fate; he was instantly despatched by the soldiers who awaited their master's nod. The bodies of the victims lay unburied in the streets. Sulla's house was torn down, and he himself declared a public enemy. During the tumult

the slaves had armed themselves, and, imitating the example set before them, were rioting in murder and pillage. Marius, finding it impossible to restrain their maddened fury, turned his soldiers loose upon them, and they were massacred to a man.

As a fitting sequel to all this violence, Marius and Cinna were, in an entirely illegal way, declared consuls. The prophecy of the eaglets was fulfilled (par. 172): Marius was consul for the seventh time. But rumors were now spread about that Sulla, having overthrown Mithradates, was about to set out on his return with his victorious legions. He would surely exact speedy and terrible vengeance. Marius, now old and enfeebled by the hardships of many campaigns, seemed to shrink from facing again his hated rival. He plunged into dissipation to drown his remorse and gloomy forebodings, and died in his seventy-first year (86 B.C.), after having held his seventh consulship only thirteen days. "He had lived too long for his fame."

174. Sulla and the First Mithradatic War (88-84 B.C.). — When Sulla left Italy with his legions for the East he knew very well that his enemies would have their own way in Italy during his absence; but he also knew that, if successful in his campaign against Mithradates, he could easily regain Italy and wrest the government from the hands of the Marian party.

Sulla landed with his army of thirty thousand men in Epirus, and then marched south into Attica, where he laid siege to Athens and the Peiræus, the Athenians having, as we have seen (par. 170), with great enthusiasm and immoderate hopes, joined the general uprising against Rome. To meet the expenses of the protracted sieges

of these places, Sulla robbed the ancient temples at Delphi and Olympia.

After a long siege, Athens at length was taken (86 B.C.). Massacre and pillage followed. To certain Athenians entreating that the city be spared, Sulla, who with the Acropolis before him could not be insensible to the spell of Athens' great past, replied that he would spare the living for the sake of the dead.

After the reduction of Athens, Sulla drove the forces of Mithradates first out of Greece, and then out of Macedonia back into Asia, not, however, without some hard fighting.⁷ In the year 85 B.C. he crossed the Hellespont, and by the following year had forced Mithradates to sue for peace. The king gave up all his conquests and paid a heavy war indemnity (84 B.C.).

Sulla now meted out punishment to those cities that had taken part in the war or had been concerned in the great massacre (par. 169). Some of these cities were destroyed and their inhabitants sold into slavery, and on those remaining Sulla laid an enormous fine of twenty thousand talents (about \$25,000,000). Leaving to his lieutenant, Lucius Licinius Lucullus, the task of collecting this fine, Sulla set out on his return to Italy.

The war had been a most destructive one in lives and in property. Many large cities had been utterly wiped out of existence, and half a million of lives sacrificed.

175. Civil War between Sulla and the Marian Party (84–82 B.C.). — With the Mithradatic War ended, Sulla wrote to the senate, saying that he was now coming to take

⁷ The battles of Charonea (86 B.C.) and Orchomenus (86 B.C.) resulted in decisive victories for the Romans.

vengeance upon the Marian party—his own and the republic's foes.

The terror and consternation produced at Rome by this letter were increased by the accidental burning of the Capitol. The Sibylline books (par. 24), which held the secrets of the fate of Rome, were consumed. This accident awakened the most gloomy apprehensions. Such an event, it was believed, could only foreshadow the most direful calamities to the state.

Sulla landed at Brundisium in Italy (83 B.C.). He was straightway joined by many young volunteers of distinction, among whom was a youth of whom we shall later hear a great deal—Gnæus Pompey. Many engagements between the army of Sulla and the forces of the consul Gnæus Papirius Carbo and the younger Marius now followed. Sulla passed the winter of 82 B.C. in Capua. Later in this year the war was virtually ended by a desperate battle in front of the Colline Gate of the capital, between Sulla's troops and the Samnites, who had thrown themselves into the struggle on the Marian side, but only, of course, to get an opportunity to avenge themselves on Rome. Sulla caused between three and four thousand Samnite prisoners taken here to be slaughtered to a man on the Campus Martius.

176. The Proscriptions of Sulla.—When Sulla entered Rome, he entered the city in a ferocious mood, which boded ill for his enemies. The leaders of the Marian party were proscribed, rewards were offered for their heads, and their property was confiscated. Sulla was implored to make out a list of those he designed to put to death, that those he intended to spare might be relieved of the terrible

suspense in which all were now held. He made out a list of eighty, which was attached to the rostra. The people murmured at the length of the roll. In a few days it was extended to over three hundred, and then grew rapidly until it included the names of thousands of the best citizens of Italy. Hundreds were murdered simply because some favorites of Sulla coveted their estates. A wealthy noble, coming into the forum and reading his own name in the list of the proscribed, exclaimed: "Alas! my villa has proved my ruin." The infamous Catiline (par. 188), by having the name of a brother placed upon the fatal roll, secured his property. Julius Cæsar, at this time a mere boy of eighteen, was proscribed on account of his relationship to Marius; but, upon the intercession of friends, Sulla spared him; as he did so, however, he said warningly, and, as the event proved, prophetically, "There is in that boy many a Marius."

The number of victims of these proscriptions has been handed down as forty-seven hundred. Almost all of these must have been men of wealth or of special distinction on account of their activity in public affairs. Even the dead did not escape. The tomb of Marius was broken open and the ashes thrown into the Anio.

Senators, knights, and wealthy landowners were formally proscribed by their names being placed on the fatal lists; but the poor Italians who had sided with the Marian party were without any such formality simply slaughtered by tens of thousands. Samnium was practically emptied of inhabitants. Nor did the provinces escape. In Sicily, Spain, and Africa, the enemies of Sulla were hunted down and exterminated like noxious animals.

The property of the proscribed was confiscated and sold

at public auction, or virtually given away by Sulla to his friends and favorites. Estates were purchased in some instances for a hundredth and even a thousandth part of their real value. Yet even under these circumstances the proceeds of the sales amounted to nearly \$20,000,000, which is evidence of the sweeping nature of the confiscations. The basis of some of the most colossal fortunes that we hear of a little after this was laid during these times of proscription and robbery (par. 189, n. 7).

Much of the confiscated land of the proscribed, together with the territories taken from numerous cities and communities on account of their having sided with the Marian party, was allotted to the veterans of Sulla. A hundred and twenty thousand such assignments are said to have been made. These settlements were particularly numerous in Samnium, which region, as we have seen, had been swept almost clear of its native inhabitants.

Ten thousand slaves of the proscribed were made full Roman citizens, and became known as the Cornelians.⁸ They could be depended upon to support the new order of things, and to obey the commands of him to whom they owed their civic life.

This reign of terror bequeathed to later times a terrible "legacy of hatred and fear." Its awful scenes haunted the Romans for generations, and at every crisis in the affairs of the commonwealth the public mind was thrown into a state of painful apprehension lest there should be a repetition of these frightful days of Sulla.

Nor did Italy ever recover from the economic blight that this civil war and the mutual proscriptions of the contend-

⁸ So called after Sulla, whose full name was Lucius *Cornelius* Sulla.

ing parties brought upon vast regions of the peninsula. In the wasted districts the great slave farms grew in size, and everywhere brigandage increased. As we proceed in our narrative, we shall have frequent occasion to call attention to the traces, both on the face of the land and in the minds of the people, of the terribly desolating and demoralizing effects of the wild carnival of crime of which we have been the witnesses.

177. Sulla made Dictator, with Power to remodel the Constitution (82 B.C.). -- The senate now passed a decree which approved and confirmed all that Sulla had done, and made him dictator during his own good pleasure. This was the first time a dictator had been appointed since the war with Hannibal, and the first time the dictatorial authority had ever been conferred for a longer period than six months. The decree further gave Sulla the power of life and death without the right of appeal over every person in the state, and further invested him with authority to make laws and to remodel the constitution in any way that might seem to him necessary and best. The power here given Sulla was like that with which the Decemvirs had been clothed nearly four centuries before this time (par. 59).

178. The Sullan Constitution.¹ — The chief political aim of the Gracchan reforms (par. 154) had been the diminishing of the power of the senate and the placing of all authority, legislative and administrative, in the assemblies of the people, led and controlled by the college of tribunes.

The reforms which Sulla, invested with the full power of the state, now effected had for their chief aim the restoration of the authority of the senate, which recent revolutions

¹ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. iii. pp. 431-449.

and circumstances had reduced almost to a nullity; and the lessening of the power of the tribunate, which office during the centuries since its establishment had gradually absorbed one function after another, until it was now the most important of all the magistracies of the state. Among the changes wrought in the constitution by Sulla were the following :

1. The senate, whose ranks had been greatly thinned by the proscriptions of the civil war, was strengthened by the addition of three hundred new members,² taken from the order of knights.

2. In the future, election to the quaestorship was to confer the right upon the person so chosen, at the end of his term of office, to a seat in the senate. As the number of quaestors was raised to twenty,³ and citizens were eligible to this office at the age of thirty, this arrangement qualified a large number of persons for the senatorial dignity. As a matter of fact, the number of senators was about doubled, and the senate from this time on appears to have embraced between five and six hundred members.

3. The number of criminal courts was increased, and that criminal jurisdiction which up to this time had been exercised by the popular assemblies was transferred to these new tribunals. The judges or jurymen of these courts were in the future to be chosen from the senators instead of from the knights. This placed again the administration of criminal justice in the hands of the senatorial party (par. 155).

² Chosen by the *comitia tributa*.

³ At the same time the number of prætors was raised from six to eight.

4. The censorship, which had been such an important office hitherto, and one of the most unique of all the Roman magistracies, was practically abolished. This came about largely through the provision made for the automatic filling of the seats in the senate by ex-quæstors. The roll of the senate had hitherto been made up at the end of every lustrum by the censors (par. 65), and this was one of their most important duties. The taking away from them of this function made it possible to dispense with the office altogether.

5. No measure was to be presented by a tribune to any popular assembly without the approval of the senate having been secured beforehand.⁴ This gave the senate the initiative in all legislation, together with complete control of all administrative affairs, and at the same time stripped the tribunician office of an acquired privilege which had enabled demagogues like Saturninus and Sulpicius (pars. 162, 171) to bring before the popular assemblies all kinds of proposals and policies having to do with purely executive and administrative matters, with which the people ought not to have intermeddled.

6. The power of the college of tribunes was still further diminished by the imposition of a heavy fine for the abuse by a tribune of the right of intercession. Great abuses had grown up, as we have seen, in connection with this intercessory power of the tribune. The veto had been originally given, it will be remembered, simply for the purpose of enabling the tribunes to protect the plebeians against the arbitrary and unjust acts of the patrician mag-

⁴ This was simply a reënactment of the law which Sulla had secured in 88 B.C. (par. 171).

istrates (par. 50); but it had gradually been given a wider and wider application, until the tribunes claimed and exercised the right to bring the whole government to a standstill (par. 151). Worse than all, it had been often perverted into a work-tool of personal ambition and party intrigue. It was high time that restrictions should be placed upon this mischief-making function of the tribune. By another enactment the office of tribune was shorn of all attractiveness to ambitious and able citizens. It was decreed that the acceptance of the tribunate should disqualify a person for ever holding any curule⁵ magistracy.

7. The election of members of the sacred colleges was taken away from the people, and vacancies were in the future to be filled by the colleges themselves.⁶

8. It was decreed that no person should hold the consulship for two successive years, which was designed to prevent such a protracted consulship as Marius'; and further that no one should have the right to stand for the consulship who had not previously held the offices of quæstor and prætor.⁷ This last provision was designed to close the consular office against incapable and inexperienced men. The philosophy of the restriction was embodied in Sulla's remark to the effect that "one should be rower before taking the helm."

These changes and reforms were, almost all of them, wise and reasonable, and this whole work of reconstructing the old clumsy, worn-out, broken-down constitution marks

⁵ See page 110.

⁶ That is, by coöptation.

⁷ These offices could henceforth be entered only in this order—quæstorship, prætorship, consulship.—Mommson, *History of Rome*, vol. iii. p. 437. The ages of eligibility to these several offices was, for the quæstorship, 30; for the prætorship, 40; and for the consulship, 43.

Sulla as a man of great ability and of statesmanlike views and aims. It is difficult for us to believe the Sulla of the days of proscription and the Sulla of these days of constitution-making to be one and the same man.

Yet Sulla's constitution, wisely as it had been conceived, broke down utterly in almost every part within ten years. But the fault was not with the constitution, but with the men intrusted with the working of it. Mr. James Bryce, in his commentary on our institutions, has said of the American people that they would make any sort of a constitution work well. Just the opposite was true of the senatorial oligarchical party at Rome who were intrusted with the working of the Sullan constitution. They were intellectually unable and morally unfit to work any kind of a constitution. We need not then be surprised at the quick breakdown of the constitution which Sulla placed in their hands.

179. The Abdication and Death of Sulla.— After having exercised the unlimited power of his office for three years, Sulla, to the surprise of everybody, suddenly resigned the dictatorship, and retired to his villa at Puteoli. Here, after a few months passed in the society of congenial companions and filled with the grossest dissipations, he died the year following his abdication (78 B.C.). He was in the sixtieth year of his age.

The soldiers who had fought under the old general crowded to his funeral from all parts of Italy. The body was burned upon a huge funeral pyre raised in the Campus Martius. The monument erected to his memory bore this inscription, which he himself had composed: "None of my friends ever did me a kindness, and none of my enemies ever did me a wrong, without being fully requited."

One important result of the reign of Sulla as an absolute dictator was the accustoming of the people to the idea of the rule of a single man. His short dictatorship was the prelude to the reign of the permanent Imperator.

The parts of the old actors in the drama were now all played to the end. But the plot deepens, and new men appear upon the stage to carry on the new, which are really the old, parts.

REFERENCES.—White's APPIAN, vol. ii., *The Civil Wars*, bk. i. chaps. v.–xii., for the Social War and the Civil Wars of Marius and Sulla; bk. xii. chaps. i.–ix., for the First Mithradatic War. PLUTARCH, *Lives of Sulla and Marius*. BEESLY (A. H.), **The Gracchi, Marius and Sulla* (Epoch Series), chaps. iv. pp. 65–81, "The Jugurthine War"; chap. v. pp. 81–95, "The Cimbri and Teutones"; chap. viii. pp. 112–128, "The Social War." MERIVALE (C.), **The Fall of the Roman Republic*, chaps. ii.–v. pp. 32–165. IHNE (W.), *History of Rome*, vol. v.; later chapters. LONG (G.), *The Decline of the Roman Republic*, 5 vols.; general reference work. FREEMAN (E. A.), *Historical Essays* (Second Series), essay entitled "Lucius Cornelius Sulla."

CHAPTER XIV.

THE PERIOD OF THE REVOLUTION (*Concluded*).

(78-31 B.C.)

180. The Insurrection of Lepidus (78-77 B.C.). — It is a difficult thing to establish peace by violence. The wise Samnite counsellor understood this when he advised his son, victor over the Romans at the Caudine Forks, either to allow all his prisoners to return home unharmed, or to kill them to the last man (par. 78). Sulla's proscriptions and murders had created many more enemies of the oligarchy than they had destroyed. The provinces were swarming with exiled Marians, and Italy itself was filled with their friends and sympathizers. Hardly were the embers of the funeral pyre of Sulla quenched, before an insurrection broke out against the government of the reëstablished oligarchy.

The leader of the movement was a deserter from the oligarchical party — Marcus Æmilius Lepidus, a man with neither ability nor character. The aim of the insurrection was "the overthrow of the Sullan constitution, the revival of the distributions of corn, the reinstating of the tribunes of the people in their former position, the recall of those who were banished contrary to law, [and] the restoration of the confiscated lands."⁸

⁸ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. iv. p. 36.

The circumstances under which Lepidus betrayed his party are a valuable commentary upon the situation of affairs at the capital. Lepidus was chosen consul for the year 78 B.C. His colleague was Q. Lutatius Catulus. Just at this time the dispossessed proprietors of Etruria rose in revolt against the new order of things there, and strove by force of arms to regain possession of their lands. The senate sent the consuls into the region to suppress the uprising, inducing them, however, before they set out, to take an oath that they would not quarrel and turn their arms against each other.

While Lepidus was yet in Etruria, the consular year expired, and he, in utter disregard of the Sullan constitution,⁹ demanded his reelection as consul. The demand being refused, Lepidus marched from Etruria upon Rome and seemed about to tread in the footsteps of Sulla. On the Campus Martius, however, his army was met and routed by the forces of the other consul, Catulus. Lepidus escaped to Sardinia, but died soon after landing (77 B.C.). With his death the insurrection fell to pieces. Many who had taken part in it fled to Spain. We shall meet them there directly.

181. Sertorius in Spain ; the War against him (80-72 B.C.).—Spain had become a sort of refuge for the exiled Marians. The situation there now was this. The Lusitanians, the martial people of the province of Farther Spain, had asserted their independence and were in arms against Rome. They had invited the Marian exile, Quintus Sertorius, a soldier whose martial deeds in Africa had excited

⁹ The new constitution made it illegal for one to hold the office of consul for two consecutive years.

their admiration, to come to their help.¹ The invitation had been accepted, and Sertorius was at this moment their leader.

Sertorius was a man of positive genius, one of the few men of great parts that the savage proscriptions of the contending parties at Rome had left alive. The attractive force of a strong personality drew to him the chivalric warriors of Lusitania, and gave him a bodyguard of thousands of devoted and oath-bound companions. He did not hesitate to strengthen his hold upon his wild adherents by taking advantage of their superstitions. He pretended that a tame white fawn, which he kept always by his side, made known to him secret things which were a revelation from Diana.

Sertorius was surrounded by hundreds of Roman refugees, for his camp was a sort of Adullam's cave,² where was collected a great crowd of the outlawed adherents of the Marian party and men dissatisfied with the new order of things at Rome. Out of these Sertorius formed a senate; for, while fighting the armies of the government of the oligarchy, he held himself out as the Roman general and governor of Spain, and the true representative of the Roman state. He further established a school for the children of the native chieftains, and caused them to be taught Latin and Greek and all the studies that formed a part of the instruction to the children of the best families in Rome.

The plans of Sertorius reached beyond Spain. Acting

¹ Sertorius had been sent into the peninsula by the Marian government as *proprætor* of Farther Spain (83 B.C.). He had been driven out of the country to Africa by the lieutenants of Sulla.

² See Old Testament, I. Sam. xxii. 1, 2.

as though he were the real head of the Roman government, he formed an alliance with Mithradates (par. 168) and negotiated with him respecting the Roman client states in the East. He further formed a league with the pirates of the Mediterranean (par. 185) and gave them stations on the Spanish coasts, and stirred up the tribes of Gaul against the authority in the North of the Roman senate. His activity, his talent for military affairs, and the reach of his plans, together with the fact that he had lost an eye in battle, caused him to be called the "new Hannibal."⁸ Indeed, there were those at Rome who feared that he would play the part of the Carthaginian, and leaving Spain, descend from the Alps upon Rome. There probably was at no time any great danger of his attempting this, but the existence of the apprehension shows the panic-stricken state of the public mind since the Sullan reign of terror.

In any event fortune never opened the way for Sertorius to lead his followers to the gates of the capital. The general of the senate, Quintus Metellus Pius, who had been sent into Spain before Sulla's death, having fought without success against Sertorius, in the year 76 B.C. Gnæus Pompey, the rising young general of the oligarchy (par. 175), upon whom the title of "Great" had already been conferred as a reward for crushing the Marian party in Sicily and Africa, was sent out to Spain to perform a similar service there.

For several years the war was carried on with varying

⁸ Hannibal lost an eye from ophthalmia while in Italy. Plutarch calls Philip of Macedon, Antigonus (Alexander's general), Hannibal, and Sertorius "the one-eyed commanders."

fortunes. At times the power of Rome in the peninsula seemed on the verge of utter extinction. Finally the brave Sertorius, a price having been placed on his head by Metellus, was treacherously set upon at a banquet by a number of his Roman officers and stabbed to death. "So ended one of the greatest men, if not the very greatest man, that Rome had hitherto produced, -- a man who under more favorable circumstances would perhaps have become the regenerator of his country, by the treason of the wretched band of emigrants whom he was condemned to lead against his native land. History loves not the C'orionani; ⁴ nor has she made any exception even in the case of this the most magnanimous, most gifted, most deserving to be regretted of them all." ⁵

After the removal of Sertorius the insurrection that he had organized and headed was speedily crushed, and both the Spanish provinces were regained for the government of the oligarchy. Pompey settled the affairs of the country. Throughout the conquered regions he established military colonies and reorganized the local governments, putting in power those who would be not only friends and allies of the Roman state, but also his own personal adherents. How he used these men as instruments of his ambition, we shall learn a little later.

At the very summit of the Pyrenees, where crossed by the trail leading into Gaul, Pompey erected a commemorative column upon which a boastful inscription told how he had forced the gates of more than eight hundred towns in Spain and Southern Gaul.

⁴ See par. 55.

⁵ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. iv. p. 50.

182. Spartacus; War of the Gladiators (73-71 B.C.). — While Pompey was subduing the Marian faction in Spain, a new danger broke out in the midst of Italy. Gladiatorial combats had become at this time the favorite sport of the amphitheatre. At Capua was a sort of training-school, from which skilled fighters were hired out for public or private entertainments. In this seminary was a Thracian slave, known by the name of Spartacus, who incited his companions to revolt. The insurgents fled to the crater of Vesuvius and made that their stronghold. There they were joined by gladiators from other schools, and by slaves and discontented men from every quarter. Some slight successes enabled them to arm themselves with the weapons of their enemies. Their number at length increased to a hundred and fifty thousand men. For three years they defied the power of Rome, and even gained control of the larger part of Southern Italy. Four Roman armies sent against them were cut to pieces.

But Spartacus, who was a man of real ability and discernment, foresaw that a protracted contest with Rome must inevitably issue in the triumph of the government. He therefore counselled his followers to fight their way over the Alps, and then to disperse to their various homes in Gaul, Spain, and Thrace. But, elated with the successes already achieved, they imagined that they could capture Rome and have all Italy for a spoil. Their camp was already filled with plunder, which the insurgents sold to speculators. They took in exchange for these spoils only brass and iron, which their forges quickly converted into weapons.

At length the prætor Marcus Licinius Crassus succeeded

in crowding the insurgents down into Rhegium, where Hannibal had stood so long at bay. Spartacus now resolved to pass over into Sicily and stir up the embers of the old servile wars upon that island (pars. 147, 161). He bargained with the pirates that infested the neighboring seas to convey his forces across the straits; but as soon as they had received the stipulated price they treacherously sailed away and left Spartacus and his followers to their fate. Crassus threw up a wall across the isthmus, to prevent the escape of the insurgents; but Spartacus broke through the Roman line by night and hastened northward with his army. Following in hot pursuit, Crassus overtook the fugitives at the Silarus, and there subjected them to a decisive defeat. Spartacus himself was slain; but five thousand of the insurgents escaped and fled towards the Alps. This flying band was met and annihilated by Pompey, who was returning from Spain.

The slaves that had taken part in the revolt were hunted through the mountains and forests and exterminated like dangerous beasts. The Appian Way was lined with six thousand crosses bearing aloft as many bodies,—a terrible warning of the fate awaiting slaves who should dare to strike for freedom.

183. The Consulship of Pompey and the Overthrow of the Sullan Constitution (70 B.C.). — In recognition of his services in the Spanish and the Gladiatorial war, Pompey was made consul for the year 70 B.C. Crassus, the conqueror of Spartacus, was chosen as his colleague.

Pompey did not owe the consulate to the senatorial party, to which he nominally belonged, for they were jealous of his growing popularity and threw every obstacle

they could in the way of his advance. He owed his election to the popular party, with the leaders of which he had entered into a political bargain, the terms of which were that in return for the consulate, a triumph, and lands for



POMPEY THE GREAT.

(From bust in the Spada Palace.)

his veterans, he should aid the people in repealing the Sullan laws and restoring the essential features of the Gracchan constitution.⁶

The Sullan constitution had been in force now for nine years, but during all this time its enemies had labored to

⁶ For the main proposals embraced by the people's program, see par. 180.

overthrow it by force of arms in the field and by the tactics of the demagogue in the forum. Already the oligarchical party had been forced to yield some ground. At the 'time of the agitation started by Lepidus (par. 180), the largesses of corn, which Sulla had forbidden, were again authorized (78 B.C.).

No sooner was Pompey installed in office than he proceeded to make good his promises to the democrats. He carried first a law which restored to the tribunes the time-honored prerogatives of which Sulla had stripped them.

The Sullan arrangements in regard to the law courts were next swept away. Sulla, it will be recalled, had taken away from the knights the control of the jury courts and placed them in the hands of the senate by decreeing that all jurymen should be chosen from the senators. These courts were now reconstituted⁷ in such a way as to give the knights the virtual control of them. This change in the judicial system was made easy of accomplishment through the exposure at just this time - in connection with the prosecution of the infamous Verres, of whom we shall say something presently (par. 184) - of the scandalous corruption of the senatorial courts.

Sulla had practically abolished the office of censor. This was now restored, and censors were again elected with the old prerogative, of course, of revising the roll of the senate. The first act of the newly elected censors was to

⁷ By the *lex Aurelia*, proposed by the prætor L. Aurelius Cotta, which provided that in the future only one-third of the jurymen should be taken from the senators, and the remaining two-thirds from the equestrian order and the class of citizens rating in property next below them.

purge the senate by casting out of that body sixty-four of the most incapable and corrupt of its members.

The Sullan constitution was thus in all its main parts abolished, and the Gracchan virtually reëstablished.

It would be idle to follow further any changes in the Roman constitution under the republic. From this on to the establishment of the empire, there was in reality no constitutional law at Rome, but only the will or caprice of the successful leader of the legions. Consuls and tribunes alike were henceforth hardly more than work-tools in the hands of ambitious and unscrupulous commanders who were aiming at the supreme power in the state. In the midst of the bargainings and intrigues of the demagogues and the military chieftains, no one paid any attention to the rules of the constitution, save to use them to further personal ambition or to gain some party end.

Chief among those who thus disregarded the forms of the constitution and constantly and arrogantly broke through its restraints, and thereby contributed largely to bring all laws and customs into contempt, was Pompey himself. Thus, for instance, his becoming a candidate for the consulship was a most flagrant violation of every rule and custom, for he had not yet held a single one of the inferior offices through which alone the consulate could at this time legally be entered (par. 178, n. 7).

184. The Abuses and the Prosecution of Verres (70 B.C.).—In the preceding paragraph we said that the taking away from the senate of the control of the jury courts was a reform made necessary and urgent by the shameless corruption of the senatorial juries.

It was in connection with the administration of the

affairs of the provinces that the most flagrant abuses arose. At first the rule of the Roman governors in the provinces, though severe, was honest and prudent. But during the period of profligacy and corruption upon which we have now entered, the administration of these foreign possessions had become shamefully dishonest and incredibly cruel and rapacious. The prosecution of Verres, the proprætor of Sicily, exposed the scandalous rule of the oligarchy, into whose hands the government had fallen. For three years Verres plundered and ravaged that island with impunity. He sold all the offices and all his decisions as judge. He demanded of the farmers the greater part of their crops, which he sold to swell his already enormous fortune. Agriculture was thus ruined, and the farms were abandoned. Verres had a taste for art, and when on his tours through the island confiscated gems, vases, statues, paintings, and other things that struck his fancy, whether in temples or in private dwellings.

Verres could not be called to account while in office; and it was doubtful whether, after the end of his term, he could be convicted, so corrupt and venal had become the members of the senate, before whom all such offenders must be tried. Indeed, Verres himself openly boasted that he intended two-thirds of his gains for his judges and lawyers; the remaining one-third would satisfy himself.

At length, after Sicily had come to look as though it had been ravaged by barbarian conquerors, the infamous robber was impeached. The prosecutor was Marcus Tullius Cicero, the brilliant orator, who was at this time just rising into prominence at Rome. The storm of indignation raised by the developments of the trial caused Verres to flee into

exile to Massilia, whither he took with him much of his ill-gotten wealth.

185. War with the Mediterranean Pirates (78–66 B.C.). — Another most shameful commentary on the utter incapacity of the government of the aristocrats was the growth of piracy in the Mediterranean waters during their rule. It is true that this was an evil which had been growing for a long time. The Romans through their conquest of the countries fringing the Mediterranean had destroyed not only the governments that had maintained order on the land, but at the same time had destroyed the fleets, as in the case of Carthage, which, since the days when the rising Greek cities suppressed piracy in the Aægean Sea, had policed the Mediterranean and kept its ship routes clear of corsairs. In the more vigorous days of the republic the sea had been well watched by Roman fleets, but after the close of the wars with Carthage the Romans had allowed their war navy to fall into decay.

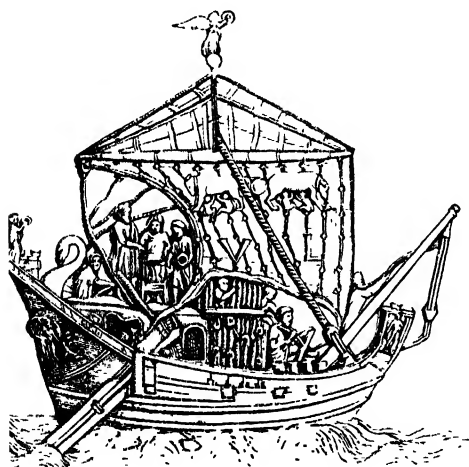
The Mediterranean, thus left practically without patrol, was swarming with pirates; for the Roman conquests in Africa, Spain, and especially in Greece and Asia Minor, had caused thousands of adventurous spirits in those maritime countries to take to their ships, and seek a livelihood by preying upon the commerce of the seas. The cruelty and extortion of the Roman governors in the various provinces, the civil war of Sulla and Marius, the proscriptions and confiscations of the days of terror at Rome, the impoverishment and dispossession of the peasant farmers everywhere through the growth of great slave-estates, — all these things, filling as they did the Mediterranean lands with homeless and desperate men, had also driven large

numbers of hitherto honest and industrious persons to the same course of life.

These "ruined men of all nations," now turned pirates, had banded themselves together in a sort of government. They had as places of refuge numerous strong fortresses — four hundred it is said — among the inaccessible mountains of the coast lands they frequented. They had a fleet of a thousand sails, with dockyards and naval arsenals. "They were," in the words of Mommsen, "no longer a gang of robbers who had flocked together, but a compact soldier-state in which the free-masonry of exile and crime took the

place of nationality."⁸ This state made treaties with the Greek maritime cities, and formed leagues of friendship with the kings and princes of the East.

The history of this pirate-state is as interesting as a pirate's tale. Its swift ships, sailing in fleets and squad-



ROMAN TRADING VESSEL.

rons, scoured the waters of the Mediterranean, so that no merchantman could spread her sails in safety. Nor were these buccaneers content with what spoils the sea might yield them; like the vikings of the Northern seas in later

⁸ Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. iv. p. 57.

times, they made descents upon every coast, plundered villas and towns, and sweeping off the inhabitants sold them openly as slaves in the slave markets of the East. They robbed the venerated temple of Delos, and carried off all the inhabitants of the sacred island into slavery. They exacted from many cities an annual tribute as the price of immunity from their visits. In some regions the inhabitants, as in early times, were compelled to remove for safety from the coast and rebuild their homes farther inland.

The pirates even ravaged the shores of Italy itself. They destroyed a Roman fleet lying in the harbor of Ostia. They carried off merchants and travellers from the Appian Way, among them two prætors with their magisterial fasces, and held them for ransom. At last they began to intercept the grain ships of Sicily and Africa, and thereby threatened Rome with starvation. Corn rose to famine prices.

The Romans now bestirred themselves. In the year 67 B.C., the war against the pirates having now been carried on in an inefficient and intermittent way for ten years or more, the tribune A. Gabinus brought before the people a proposal⁹ that some *consular* person, to be named by the senate,¹⁰ should be invested with dictatorial power for three years over the Mediterranean and all its coasts for fifty miles inland.

The senators knew that if the law passed, Pompey would be the person they must name, and accordingly they threw every obstacle that they dared in the way of the passage of

⁹ The *lex Gabinia*.

¹⁰ It was not proposed to give the senate any real choice in the matter. It was perfectly well understood that Pompey was the man the people wanted appointed, and the only one whom the senate would dare designate.

the measure. But the people were never more in earnest than they were in regard to this Gabinian law. It was finally carried in the assembly of the plebs¹¹ amidst unexampled enthusiasm. While the voting of the tribes was proceeding, "the multitude stood densely packed in the forum; all the buildings, whence the rostra could be seen, were covered even on the roofs with men."¹²

The senators did not venture, after such a demonstration, to attempt to thwart the popular will. The law having been passed, the senators invested Pompey with the extraordinary command. He was given an army of a hundred and twenty thousand men, and an armament of over two hundred ships. All the treasures of the state were put at his disposal, and all magistrates and all the rulers of client states were ordered to give him such aid in men and money as he might demand.

Pompey acted with unwonted energy. Within forty days he had swept the pirates from the Western Mediterranean, and in forty-nine more hunted them from all the waters east of Italy, captured their strongholds in Cilicia, and settled the twenty thousand prisoners that fell into his hands in various colonies in Asia Minor and Greece. Pompey's vigorous and successful conduct of this campaign against the pirates gained him great honor and reputation.

186. Pompey brings to an End the Third¹ Mithradatic War (74-64 B.C.). --- Pompey had not yet ended the war with the

¹¹ The *concilium plebis*.

¹² Mommsen, *History of Rome*, vol. iv. p. 136.

¹ The so-called Second Mithradatic War (83-82 B.C.) was a short conflict between the Romans and Mithradates that arose just after the close of the First (par. 174).

pirates before he was given, by a vote of the people,² charge of the war against Mithradates, who now for several years had been in arms against Rome. This war was simply a continuation of the last contest between Mithradates and the Romans, which, as Plutarch puts it, was not ended but merely "stopped for a time."

The circumstances leading to the present contest were these: Nicomedes III., king of Bithynia, had died 74 B.C., and, in imitation of Attalus III. of Pergamus (par. 168), had willed his kingdom to the Roman people, who had at once made it into a province. Mithradates, whose power in the Euxine region was threatened by the appearance of the Romans there, had straightway invaded the new Roman territory with a large army. Thus the intermitted war was renewed.

The chief conduct of the war on the Roman side was in the hands of Lucius Licinius Lucullus, who had served ably under Sulla in the First Mithradatic War. For eight years Lucullus carried on the war prosperously, even driving Mithradates out of his own kingdom of Pontus. Then the tide of fortune turned against him, and he lost to the enemy almost everything he had gained.

The causes of the reverses of Lucullus are worthy a moment's notice, since they, like the circumstances of the trial of Verres (par. 184), cast a strong light on the scandalous management of the affairs of the provinces. It will be recalled that at the end of the first war against Mithradates, Sulla imposed upon the cities and communities that had taken part in that contest against Rome a heavy fine (par. 174). The payment of this indemnity had impoverished the people and forced them to borrow money at

² By the Manilian law, 66 B.C.

frightfully high rates of interest from the Roman money-lenders. Many poor debtors had been forced to sell their children into slavery, and the cities to strip the temples of their treasures. Plutarch says that after the people had paid twice the amount of the original fine of 20,000 talents, they found themselves still owing, on account of the usurious interest they were paying, 120,000 talents.³

Lucullus tried to put a stop to this robbery. He limited the rate of interest, and instituted other measures of relief. Of course the usurers, speculators, and farmers of the taxes were highly indignant at this interference with their business, and through their friends at Rome began a campaign of misrepresentation and slander against Lucullus with the purpose of bringing about his recall.

The clamor raised at Rome against Lucullus reached the ears of his soldiers and aroused in them a rebellious spirit, which, when news finally came that he had been superseded in his command by Pompey, broke out in open mutiny. It was this state of things that had helped to paralyze the arm of Lucullus, and had robbed him of the fruit of eight years' tedious yet successful campaigning.

Such was the situation of affairs when Pompey, fresh from his triumphs over the pirates, appeared upon the scene. In a great battle in Lesser Armenia, Pompey almost annihilated the army of Mithradates. The king fled from the field and, after seeking in vain for a refuge in Asia Minor, found an asylum beyond the Caucasus Mountains, whose bleak barriers interposed their friendly shield between him and his pursuers. Desisting from the pursuit, Pompey turned south and conquered Syria, Phœnicia, and

³ Plutarch, *Lucullus*, c. 120.

Cœle-Syria, which countries he erected into a Roman province under the name of Syria (64 B.C.). *

Still pushing southward, the conqueror entered Palestine, and after a short siege of Jerusalem, by taking advantage of the scruples of the Jews in regard to fighting on the Sabbath day, captured the city (63 B.C.). It was at this time that Pompey insisted, in spite of the protestations of the high priest, upon entering the Holy of Holies of the Hebrew temple. Pushing aside the curtain in front of the jealously guarded apartment, he was astonished to find nothing but a dark and vacant chamber, without even a statue of the god to whom the shrine was dedicated,—nothing but a little chest (the Ark of the Covenant) containing some sacred relics.

The Romans here for the first time came in direct contact with a people whose ideas of God and of life they were wholly incapable of understanding, but who nevertheless were destined to exert a vast influence upon the empire they were constructing.

While Pompey was thus engaged, Mithradates was straining every energy to raise an army among the Scythian tribes with which to carry out a most daring project. He proposed to cross Europe and fall upon Italy from the north. A revolt on the part of his son Pharnaces ruined all his plans and hopes; and the disappointed monarch, to avoid falling into the hands of the Romans, took his own life⁴ (63 B.C.). His death removed one of the most formidable enemies that Rome had ever encountered. Hamilcar, Hannibal, and Mithradates were the three great names that the Romans always pronounced with respect and dread.

⁴ Some authorities, however, say that he was murdered by his son.

187. Pompey's Triumph. — After regulating the affairs of the different states and provinces in the East;⁵ Pompey set out on his return to Rome, where he enjoyed such a triumph as never before had been seen since Rome became a city. The spoils of all the East were borne in the procession; three hundred and twenty-two princes walked as captives before the triumphal chariot of the conqueror; legends upon the banners proclaimed that he had conquered twenty-one kings, captured one thousand strongholds, nine hundred towns, and eight hundred ships, and subjugated more than twelve millions of people; and that he had put into the treasury more than \$25,000,000, besides doubling the regular revenues of the state. He boasted that three times he had triumphed, and each time for the conquest of a continent, — first for Africa, then for Europe, and now for Asia, which completed the conquest of the world.

188. The Conspiracy of Catiline (64 62 B.C.). — While the legions were absent from Italy with Pompey in the East, a most daring conspiracy against the government was formed at Rome. Lucius Sergius Catilina, a ruined spendthrift, had gathered a large company of profligate young nobles, weighed down with debts and desperate like himself, and had deliberately planned to murder the consuls and the chief men of the state, and to plunder and burn the capital. The offices of the new government were to be divided among the conspirators. They depended upon receiving

⁵ Bithynia, which had been in Roman hands since 74 B.C., was enlarged by the addition of a part of Pontus, and given a permanent provincial constitution (65 B.C.). Cilicia also was extended and its government regularly organized (64 B.C.).

aid from Africa and Spain, and proposed to invite to their standard the gladiators in the various schools of Italy, as well as slaves and criminals. The proscriptions of Sulla (par. 176) were to be renewed, and all debts were to be cancelled.

Fortunately, all the plans of the conspirators were revealed to the consul, Cicero, the great orator. The senate immediately clothed the consuls with dictatorial power with the usual formula, that they "should take care that the republic received no harm."⁶ The gladiators were secured; the city walls were manned; and at every point the capital and state were armed against the "invisible foe." Then in the senate chamber, with Catiline himself present, Cicero exposed the whole conspiracy in a famous philippic, known as "The First Oration against Catiline." The senators shrank from the conspirator, and left the seats about him empty. After a feeble effort to reply to Cicero, overwhelmed by a sense of his guilt, and the cries of "traitor" and "parricide" from the senators, Catiline fled from the chamber and hurried out of the city to the camp of his followers in Etruria. In a desperate battle fought near Pistoria, he was slain with many of his followers (62 B.C.). His head was borne as a trophy to Rome. Cicero was hailed as the "Savior of his Country."

189. Cæsar, Crassus, and Pompey. — Although the conspiracy of Catiline had failed, still it was very easy to foresee that the downfall of the Roman republic was near at hand.

⁶ *Videant consules ne quid respublica detrimenti capiat.* There had been no dictator appointed except Sulla (par. 177) since the Second Punic War, although the power conferred upon Pompey at the time of the war with the pirates (par. 185) amounted practically to making him dictator.

Indeed, from this time on, only the name remained. The basis of the institutions of the republic — the old Roman integrity, patriotism, and faith in the gods — was gone, having been swept away by the tide of luxury, selfishness, and immorality produced by the long series of foreign conquests and robberies in which the Roman people had been engaged. The days of liberty at Rome were over. From this time forward the government was really in the hands of ambitious and popular leaders, or of corrupt combinations and “rings.” Events gather about a few great names, and the annals of the republic become biographical rather than historical.

There were now in the state three men — Cæsar, Crassus, and Pompey — who were destined to shape affairs. Gaius Julius Cæsar was born in the year 100 B.C. Although descended from an old patrician family, still his sympathies, and an early marriage to the daughter of Cinna, one of the adherents, it will be recalled, of Marius (par. 173), had led him to identify himself with the Marian, or democratic party. In every way Cæsar courted public favor. He lavished enormous sums upon public games and tables. His debts are said to have amounted to 25,000,000 sesterces (about \$1,250,000). His popularity was unbounded. A successful campaign in Spain had already made known to himself, as well as to others, his genius as a commander.

Marcus Licinius Crassus belonged to the senatorial, or aristocratic party. He owed his influence to his enormous wealth, being one of the richest men in the Roman world. His property was estimated at 7100 talents (about \$8,875,000).⁷

⁷ “The greatest part of this, if one must tell the truth, though it be a scandalous story, he got together [from war and from fires], making the

With Gnæus Pompey and his achievements we are already familiar. His influence throughout the Roman world was great; for, in settling and reorganizing the many countries he subdued, he had always taken care to reconstruct them in his own interest, as well as in that of the republic. The offices, as we have seen, were filled with his friends and adherents (par. 181). This patronage had secured for him incalculable authority in the provinces. His veteran legionaries, too, were naturally devoted to the general who had led them so often to victory.

190. The First Triumvirate (60 B.C.). — What is known as the First Triumvirate rested on the genius of Cæsar, the wealth of Crassus, and the achievements of Pompey. It was a coalition or private arrangement entered into by these three men for the purpose of securing to themselves the control of public affairs. Each pledged himself to work for the interests of the others. Cæsar was the manager of the “ring.” He skilfully drew away Pompey from the aristocratical party, and effected a reconciliation between him and Crassus, for they had been at enmity.

public misfortunes the source of his wealth; for, when Sulla took the city, and sold the property of those whom he put to death, considering it and calling it spoil, and wishing to attach the infamy of the deed to as many of the most powerful men as he could, Crassus was never tired of receiving or buying [par. 176]. Besides this, observing the accidents that were indigenous and familiar at Rome,—conflagrations, and tumbling down of houses owing to their weight and crowded state,—he bought slaves who were architects and builders. Having got these slaves to the number of more than five hundred, it was his practice to buy up houses on fire; for the owners, owing to fear and uncertainty, would sell them at a low price. [Then the slaves would set to work and extinguish the fire, and Crassus at a small cost would repair the damage.] And thus the greatest part of Rome fell into the hands of Crassus.” — PLUTARCH, *Life of Crassus*, c. 2 [Long’s Trans.].

It was agreed that Crassus and Pompey should aid Cæsar in securing the consulship. In return for this favor Cæsar was to secure for Pompey a confirmation of his acts in the East, and allotments of land for his veterans, concessions which thus far had been jealously withheld by the senatorial party.

Everything fell out as the triumvirs had planned: Cæsar got the consulship, and Pompey received the lands for his soldiers. The two ablest senatorial leaders, Cato⁸ and Cicero, whose incorruptible integrity threatened the plans of the triumvirs, were got out of the way. Cato was given an appointment which sent him into honorable exile to the island of Cyprus; while Cicero, on the charge of having denied Roman citizens the right of trial in the matter of the Catiline conspirators (par. 188), was banished from the capital, his mansion on the Palatine was razed to the ground, and the remainder of his property confiscated.

191. Cæsar's Conquests in Gaul and Britain (58-51 B.C.).—At the end of his consulship, Cæsar had assigned him, as proconsul, the administration of the provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine, or Narbonese, Gaul, together with Illyricum. Already he was revolving in his mind plans for seizing supreme power. Beyond the Alps the Gallic and Germanic tribes were in restless movement. He saw there a grand field for military exploits, which should gain for him such glory and prestige as in other fields had been won and were now enjoyed by Pompey. With this achieved, and with a veteran army devoted to his interests,

⁸ This was Marcus Porcius Cato the Younger, a great-grandson of Marcus Porcius Cato the Censor (par. 137). He has been characterized as "the purest and noblest of all the Romans."

he might hope easily to attain that position at the head of affairs towards which his ambition was urging him.

In the spring of 58 B.C. alarming intelligence from beyond the Alps caused Cæsar to hasten from Rome into Transalpine Gaul. Now began a series of eight brilliant campaigns directed against the various tribes of Gaul, Germany, and Britain. In his admirable *Commentaries* Cæsar himself has left us a faithful and graphic account of all the memorable marches, battles, and sieges that filled the years between 58 and 51 B.C.

Cæsar's first campaign after arriving in Gaul was directed against the Helvetians. These people, finding themselves too much crowded in their narrow territory, hemmed in as they were between the Alps and the Jura ranges, had resolved to seek broader fields in the extreme western part of Gaul. Disregarding the commands of Cæsar, the entire nation, numbering with their allies 368,000 souls, left their old homes and began their westward march. In a great battle Cæsar, with the aid of the Æduans, good allies of the Romans, completely defeated the barbarians, and forced them back into their old home between the mountains, now quite large enough for the survivors, as barely a third of those that had set out returned.

Cæsar next defeated the Suevi, a German tribe that, under their great chieftain Ariovistus, had crossed the Rhine and were seeking settlements in Gaul. These people he forced back over the Rhine into their native forests. The two years following this campaign were consumed in subjugating the different tribes in Northern and Western Gaul, and in composing the affairs of the country. In the war with the Veneti was fought

the first historic naval battle upon the waters of the Atlantic.

The year 55 B.C. marked two great achievements. Early in the spring of this year Cæsar constructed a bridge across the Rhine, and led his legions against the Germans' in their native woods and swamps. In the autumn of the same year he crossed, by means of hastily constructed ships, the channel that separates the mainland from Britain, and after maintaining a foothold upon that island for two weeks withdrew his legions into Gaul for the winter. The following season he made another invasion of Britain, but, after some encounters with the fierce barbarians, recrossed to the mainland, without having established any permanent garrisons in the island. Almost one hundred years passed away before the natives of Britain were again molested by the Romans (par. 219).

In the year 52 B.C., while Cæsar was absent in Italy, a general revolt occurred among the Gallic tribes. It was a last desperate struggle for the recovery of their lost independence. Vercingetorix, chief of the Arverni, was the leader of the insurrection. For a time it seemed as though the Romans would be driven from the country. But Cæsar's despatch and genius saved the province to the republic. Vercingetorix and eighty thousand of his warriors were shut up in Alesia, and were finally starved into submission. All Gaul was now quickly reconquered and pacified.

Great enthusiasm was aroused at Rome by Cæsar's victories over the Gauls. "Let the Alps sink," exclaimed Cicero; "the gods raised them to shelter Italy from the barbarians; they are now no longer needed."

192. Results of the Gallic Wars.—One good result of

Cæsar's conquest of Gaul was the establishment throughout this region of the Roman Peace.¹ Before the Romans entered the country, it was divided among a great number of tribes that were constantly at war with one another. In throwing her authority over them all, Rome caused their intertribal contentions to cease, and thus established a condition of things that first made possible the rapid and steady development among the people of the arts of peace.

A second result of the Gallic wars of Cæsar was the Romanizing of Gaul. The country, which was in time formed into three new provinces,² was opened to Roman traders and settlers, who carried with them the language, customs, and arts of Italy. Honors were conferred upon many of the Gallic chieftains, privileges were bestowed upon the municipalities,³ and the Roman franchise granted to prominent and influential natives.

This Romanization of Gaul meant much both for Roman history and for the general history of Europe. The Roman stock in Italy was failing. It was this new Romanized people that in the times of the empire gave to the Roman state many of its best commanders, statesmen, emperors, orators, poets, and historians. In this way Gaul rendered

¹ *Pax Romana* (par. 83).

² *Aquitania, Lugdunensis, and Belgica.*

³ The native tribes, of which there seem to have been sixty, were recognized as separate communities and were allowed to manage their own local affairs. Thus the settlement of Gaul by the Romans was in some respects like our recent settlement of the affairs of Cuba. We have begun the work of reorganization there by forming municipal governments in the different cities and giving the people as large a measure of local self-government as possible. We should bear in mind that this admirable municipal system is a gift to us from Rome. See par. 74.

the Roman state some such service as Ireland has rendered the British empire.

The Romanization of Gaul meant, further, the adding of another to the number of Latin nations that were to arise from the break-up of the Roman empire. There can be little doubt that if Cæsar had not conquered Gaul it would have been overrun by the Germans, and would ultimately have become simply an extension of Germany. There would then have been no great Latin nation north of the Alps and the Pyrenees. It is difficult to imagine what European history would be like if the French nation, with its semi-Italian temperament, instincts, and traditions, had never come into existence.

A final result of Cæsar's campaigns in Gaul and against the intruding German tribes was the check given to the migratory movements of these peoples.⁴ Had this check not been given, it is possible that what we call the Great Migration of the German peoples (chap. xxi.) might have taken place in the first century before, instead of in the fifth century after, the coming of Christ, and Rome's great work of enriching civilization and establishing it everywhere throughout the Mediterranean world might have been interrupted while yet only fairly begun.

193. Crassus' Campaign in the East against the Parthians (53 B.C.). — In the year 56 B.C., while Cæsar was in the midst of his Gallic wars, he found time to meet Pompey, Crassus, and two hundred senators and magistrates who coöperated with the triumvirs, at Lucca, in Etruria, where in a sort of convention arrangements were made for

⁴ Cæsar's campaigns were, in effect, a continuation of those of Marius (see par. 159).

another term of five years.⁵ It was agreed that Cæsar's command in Gaul should be extended five years, and that Crassus and Pompey should be made consuls. All these measures were carried into effect, the elections at Rome being secured by intimidation and by the votes of soldiers of the Gallic legions, to whom Cæsar granted furloughs for this purpose. The government of the two Spains was given to Pompey, while that of Syria was assigned to Crassus.

The latter hurried to the East, hoping to rival there the brilliant conquests of Cæsar in the West. At this time the great Parthian empire occupied the immense reach of territory stretching from the valley of the Euphrates to that of the Indus. Notwithstanding that the Parthians were at peace with the Roman people, Crassus led his army across the Euphrates and invaded their territory, intent upon a war of conquest and booty. In the midst of the Mesopotamian desert he was treacherously deserted by his guides, and his army, suddenly attacked by the Parthian cavalry, was almost annihilated. Crassus himself was slain, and his head, so it is said, was filled by his captors with molten gold, that he might be sated with the metal which he had so coveted during life.

In the death of Crassus, Cæsar lost his staunchest friend, — one who had never failed him, and whose wealth had been freely used for his advancement. When Cæsar, before his consulship, had received a command in Spain, and the immense sums he owed at Rome were embarrassing him and preventing his departure, Crassus had come forward and generously paid more than a million dollars of his friend's debts.

⁵ A nomination by this "ring" of politicians and generals was equivalent to an election.

194. Rivalry between Cæsar and Pompey.— After the death of Crassus the world belonged to Cæsar and Pompey. That the insatiable ambition of these two rivals should sooner or later bring them into collision was inevitable. Their alliance in the triumvirate was simply one of selfish convenience, not of friendship. While Cæsar was carrying on his brilliant campaigns in Gaul, Pompey was at Rome watching jealously the growing reputation of his great rival. He strove by princely liberality to win the affections of the common people. On the Field of Mars he erected an immense theatre with seats for forty thousand spectators. He gave magnificent games and set public tables; and, when the interest of the people in the sports of the Circus flagged, he entertained them with gladiatorial combats.

In a similar manner Cæsar strengthened himself with the people for the struggle which he plainly foresaw. He sought in every way to ingratiate himself with the Gauls; he increased the pay of his soldiers, conferred the privileges of Roman citizenship upon the inhabitants of different cities, and sent to Rome enormous sums of gold to be expended in the erection of temples, theatres, and other public structures, and in the celebration of games and shows that should rival in magnificence those given by Pompey.

The terrible condition of affairs at the capital favored the ambition of Pompey. So selfish and corrupt were the members of the senate, so dead to all virtue and to every sentiment of patriotism were the people, that even such patriots as Cato and Cicero saw no hope for the maintenance of the republic. Pompey was appointed as sole con-

sul for one year, which was about the same thing as making him dictator. "It is better," said Cato, "to choose a master than to wait for the tyrant whom anarchy will impose upon us." The "tyrant" in his and in everybody's mind was Cæsar.

Pompey now broke with Cæsar, and attached himself again to the old aristocratical party, which he had deserted for the alliance and promises of the triumvirate. The death, at this time, of his wife Julia, the daughter of Cæsar, severed the bonds of relationship at the same moment that those of ostensible friendship were broken.

195. Cæsar crosses the Rubicon (49 B.C.). — Cæsar now demanded the consulship. He knew that his life would not be safe in Rome from the jealousy and hatred of his enemies without the security from impeachment and trial which that office would give. The senate, acting under the instigation of these same enemies, issued a decree that he should resign his office and disband his Gallic legions by a stated day. The crisis had now come. Cæsar ordered his legions to hasten from Gaul into Italy. Without waiting for their arrival, at the head of a small body of veterans that he had with him at Ravenna, he crossed the Rubicon, a little stream that marked the boundary of his province. This was a declaration of war. As he plunged into the river, he exclaimed: "The die is cast!"

196. The Civil War between Cæsar and Pompey (49-48 B.C.). — The bold movement of Cæsar produced great consternation at Rome. Realizing the danger of delay, Cæsar, without waiting for the Gallic legions to join him, marched southward. One city after another threw open its gates to him; legion after legion went over to his standard. Pompey

and a great part of the senators hastened from Rome to Brundisium, and thence, with about twenty-five thousand soldiers, fled across the Adriatic into Greece. The exiled senators reconvened at Thessalonica in Macedonia, and made that city the seat of the government. Within sixty days Cæsar made himself undisputed master of all Italy.

Pompey and Cæsar now controlled the Roman world. It was large, but not large enough for both these ambitious men. As to which was likely to become sole master it were difficult for one watching events at that time to foresee. Cæsar held Italy, Illyricum, and Gaul, with the resources of his own genius and the idolatrous attachment of his soldiers; Pompey controlled Spain, Africa, Sicily, Sardinia, Greece, and the provinces of Asia, with the prestige of his great name and the enormous resources of the East.

Cæsar's first care was to pacify Italy. His moderation and prudence won all classes to his side. Many had looked to see the terrible scenes of the days of Marius and Sulla reënacted. Cæsar, however, soon gave assurance that life and property should be held sacred. He needed money; but to avoid laying a tax upon the people, he asked for the treasure kept beneath the Capitol. Legend declared that this gold was the actual ransom money which Brennus had demanded of the Romans and which Camillus had saved by his timely appearance (par. 68). It was esteemed sacred, and was never to be used save in case of another Gallic invasion. When Cæsar attempted to get possession of the treasure, the tribune Metellus prevented him; but Cæsar impatiently brushed him aside, saying, "The fear of a Gallic invasion is over; I have subdued the Gauls."

With order restored in Italy, Cæsar's next movement was

to gain control of the wheat-fields of Sicily, Sardinia, and Africa. A single legion brought over Sardinia without resistance to the side of Cæsar. Cato, the lieutenant of Pompey, fled from before Cæsar's legate, Curio,⁶ out of Sicily. In Africa, however, Curio sustained a severe defeat, and the Pompeians held their ground there until the close of the war. Cæsar, meanwhile, had subjugated Spain. The entire peninsula was brought under his authority in forty days. Massilia had ventured to close her gates against the conqueror; but a brief siege forced the city to capitulate. Cæsar was now free to turn his forces against Pompey in the East.

197. The Battle of Pharsalus (48 B.C.). — From Brundisium Cæsar embarked his legions for Epirus. The passage was an enterprise attended with great danger, for Bibulus, Pompey's admiral, swept the sea with his fleets. It was not without having sustained severe losses that Cæsar effected a landing upon the shores of Greece. His legions mustered barely twenty thousand men. Pompey's forces were double this number. Cæsar having failed in an attempt to capture the camp of his rival at Dyrrachium, he slowly retired into Thessaly, and drew up his army upon the plains of Pharsalus. Hither he was followed by Pompey. The adherents of the latter were so confident of an easy victory that they were already disputing about the offices at Rome, and were renting the most eligible houses fronting the public squares of the capital. The battle was at length joined. Pompey's army was cut to pieces. He himself fled from the field and escaped to Egypt. Just as he was landing, he was stabbed by one of his former lieutenants,

⁶ G. Scribonius Curio.

now an officer at the Egyptian court. The reigning Ptolemy had ordered Pompey's assassination in hopes of pleasing Cæsar. "If we receive him," he said, "we shall make Cæsar our enemy and Pompey our master."

The head of the great general was severed from his body ; and when Cæsar, who was pressing after Pompey in hot pursuit, landed in Egypt, the bloody trophy was brought to him. But it was no longer the head of his rival, but of his old associate and son-in-law. Turning from the sight with generous tears, he ordered that the assassins be executed, and that fitting obsequies be performed over the mutilated body.

198. Close of the Civil War ; Battle of Thapsus (46 B.C.).—Cæsar was detained at Alexandria nine months in settling a dispute respecting the throne of Egypt. After a severe contest he overthrew the reigning Ptolemy, and secured the kingdom to the celebrated Cleopatra and a younger brother. Intelligence was now brought from Asia Minor that Pharnaces, son of Mithradates the Great, was inciting a revolt among the peoples of that region. Cæsar met the Pontic king at Zela, defeated him, and in five days put an end to the war (47 B.C.). His laconic message to the senate, announcing his victory, is famous. It ran thus : "*Veni, vidi, vici*," — "I came, I saw, I conquered."

Cæsar now hurried back to Italy, and thence proceeded to Africa, which the friends of the old republic had made their last chief rallying place. At the great battle of Thapsus (46 B.C.) they were crushed. Fifty thousand lay dead upon the field. Cato, who had been the very life and soul of the army, refusing to outlive the republic, took his own life.

199. Cæsar as an Uncrowned King ; his Triumph. — Cæsar was now virtually lord of the Roman world.⁷ He refrained from taking the title of king, but he assumed the purple robe, the insignia of royalty, and caused his effigy to be stamped, after the manner of sovereigns, on the public coins. His statue was significantly given a place along with those of the seven kings of early Rome. He was invested with all the offices and dignities of the state. The senate made him perpetual dictator (44 B.C.), and conferred upon him the powers of censor, consul, and tribune, with the titles of pontifex maximus and imperator. Thus, though not a king in name, Cæsar's actual position at the head of the state was that of an absolute ruler. No oriental monarch was ever possessed of fuller authority, nor surrounded by more abject flatterers and sycophants.

Cæsar's triumph celebrating his many victories far eclipsed in magnificence anything that Rome had before witnessed.⁸ In the procession were led captive princes from all parts of the world. Beneath his standards marched soldiers gathered out of almost every country under the heavens. Seventy-five million dollars of treasure were displayed. Splendid games and tables attested the liberality of the conqueror. Sixty thousand couches were set for the multitudes. The shows of the theatre and the combats of the arena followed one another in an endless round. "Above

⁷ The sons of Pompey — Gnæus and Sextus — had headed a revolt in Spain. Cæsar crushed the movement a little later in the decisive battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

⁸ The triumph was only for his victories over foreign enemies, not for those over his rivals in the civil war. It was not yet thought fitting for one citizen to triumph over another. Later, these scruples of patriotism were lost.

the combats of the amphitheatre floated for the first time the awning of silk, the immense velarium of a thousand colors, woven from the rarest and richest products of the East, to protect the people from the sun" (Gibbon).

200. Cæsar as a Statesman. — Cæsar was great as a general, yet greater, if possible, as a statesman.⁹ He had great plans which embraced the whole world that Rome had conquered. A chief aim of his was to establish between the different classes of the empire equality of rights, to place Italy and the provinces on the same footing, to blend the various races and peoples into a real nationality with community of interests and sympathies; in a word, to carry to completion that great work of making all the world Roman

⁹ "From early youth, accordingly, Cæsar was a statesman in the deepest sense of the term, and his aim was the highest which man is allowed to propose to himself—the political, military, intellectual, and moral regeneration of his own deeply decayed nation, and of the still more deeply decayed Hellenic nation intimately akin to his own. . . . He was, no doubt, a great orator, author, and general, but he became each of these merely because he was a consummate statesman. The soldier more especially played in him altogether an accessory part, and it is one of the principal peculiarities by which he is distinguished from Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon, that he began his political activity not as an officer, but as a demagogue. According to his original plan he had purposed to reach his object, like Pericles and Gaius Gracchus, without force of arms, and throughout eighteen years he had as leader of the popular party moved exclusively amid political plans and intrigues, until, reluctantly convinced of the necessity for a military support, he, when already forty years of age, headed an army. It was natural that he should ever afterwards remain still more statesman than general—just like Cromwell, who also transformed himself into a military chief and democratic king, and who in general, little as the Puritan hero seems to resemble the dissolute Roman, is yet in his development as well as in the objects which he aimed at and the results which he achieved of all statesmen perhaps the most akin to Cæsar."—MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*, vol. iv. pp. 541–543.

which had been begun in the earliest times (par. 30). To this end he established numerous colonies in the provinces, and settled in them one hundred thousand of the poorer citizens of the capital. With a liberality that astonished and offended many, he admitted to the senate sons of freedmen, and particularly representative men from among the Gauls, and conferred upon individual provincials, and upon entire classes and communities in the provinces, the partial or full rights of the city.¹⁰ His action here marks an epoch in the history of Rome. The immunities and privileges of the city had never hitherto been con-



JULIUS CÆSAR.

(From a bust in the Museum at Naples.)

ferred, save in exceptional cases, upon any peoples other than those of the Italian race. Cæsar threw the gates of the city wide open to the non-Italian peoples of the provinces. Thus was foreshadowed the day when all free men throughout the whole empire should be Roman in name and privilege (par. 233).

One of the most important of all Cæsar's laws was that known as the *Lex Julia Municipalis* (45 B.C.), whose aim

¹⁰ Cæsar's most sweeping measure of enfranchisement was the grant of Roman citizenship to the communities of Transpadane Gaul.

was to bring order and uniformity into the municipal system (par. 167), and to develop a more vigorous civic life in the municipal towns of Italy. The law draws a distinct line between the matters that shall be left in the hands of the local authorities and those that shall be retained by the general government. All the municipal governments organized after this, whether in towns in Italy or in the provinces, conformed to the principles embodied in this important constitutional measure.

As pontifex maximus, Cæsar reformed the calendar so as to bring the festivals once more in their proper seasons, and provided against further confusion by making the year consist of 365 days, with an added day for every fourth or leap year. This is what is called the Julian Calendar.¹¹

Besides these achievements, Cæsar projected many vast undertakings which the abrupt termination of his life prevented his carrying into execution. He ordered a survey of the enormous domains of the state; he proposed to make a code or digest of the Roman laws — which work was left to be performed by the Emperor Justinian six centuries later (par. 310); he also planned many public works and improvements at Rome, among which were schemes for draining the Pontine marshes and for changing the course of the Tiber. He further proposed to cut a canal across the Isthmus of Corinth, to construct roads over the Apennines, and to form a library to take the place of the great

¹¹ This calendar was in general use in Europe until the year 1582, when it was reformed by Pope Gregory XIII., and became what is known as the Gregorian Calendar. This in time came in vogue in all Christian countries, save Russia, where the Julian Calendar is still followed.

Alexandrian collection, which had been partly destroyed during his campaign in Egypt. But all his plans were brought to a sudden end by the daggers of assassins.

201. The Death of Cæsar (44 B.C.).—Cæsar had his bitter personal enemies, who never ceased to plot his downfall. There were, too, sincere lovers of the old republic who longed to see restored the liberty which the conqueror had overthrown. The impression began to prevail that Cæsar was aiming to make himself king. A crown was several times offered him in public by the consul Mark Antony;¹ but seeing the manifest displeasure of the people, he each time pushed it aside. Yet there is no doubt that secretly he desired it. It was reported that he proposed to rebuild the walls of Troy, the fabled cradle of the Roman race (par. 40), and make that ancient capital the seat of the new Roman empire. Others professed to believe that the arts and charms of the Egyptian Cleopatra, who had borne him a son at Rome, would entice him to make Alexandria the centre of the proposed kingdom. So, many, out of love for Rome and the old republic, were led to enter into a conspiracy against the life of Cæsar with those who sought to rid themselves of the dictator for other and personal reasons.

The Ides (the 15th day) of March, 44 B.C., upon which day the senate convened, witnessed the assassination. Seventy or eighty conspirators, headed by Gaius Cassius and Marcus Brutus, were concerned in the plot. The soothsayers must have had some knowledge of the plans of the conspirators, for they had warned Cæsar to “beware

¹ Marcus Antonius, the grandson of the celebrated orator of the same name (par. 306).

of the Ides of March." On his way to the senate meeting that day, which was held in a hall forming part of Pompey's great stone theatre (par. 291), a paper warning him of his



MARCUS BRUTUS.

danger was thrust into his hand; but, not surmising its urgent nature, he did not open it. As he entered the assembly chamber he observed the astrologer Spurinna, and remarked carelessly to him, referring to his prediction: "The Ides of March have come." "Yes," replied Spurinna, "but not gone."

No sooner had Cæsar taken his seat than the conspirators crowded about him as if to pre-

sent a petition. Upon a signal from one of their number their daggers were drawn. For a moment Cæsar defended himself; but seeing Brutus, upon whom he had lavished gifts and favors, among the conspirators, he is said to have exclaimed reproachfully, "*Et tu, Brute!*"—"Thou, too, Brutus!" then to have drawn his mantle over his face, and to have received unresistingly their further thrusts. Pierced with twenty-three wounds, he sank dead at the foot of Pompey's statue.

The Romans had killed many of their best men and cut short their work; but never had they killed such a man as

Cæsar. He was the greatest man their race had yet produced or was destined ever to produce.

Cæsar's work was left all incomplete. What lends to it such great historical importance is the fact that in his reforms and policies Cæsar drew the broad lines which his successors followed, and indicated the principles on which the government of the future must be based.

202. Funeral Oration by Mark Antony.—The conspirators, or "liberators," as they called themselves, had thought that the senate would confirm, and the people applaud, their act. But both people and senators, struck with consternation, were silent. Men's faces grew pale as they recalled the proscriptions of Sulla (par. 176), and saw in the assassination of Cæsar the first act in a similar reign of terror. As the conspirators issued from the assembly hall, and entered the forum, holding aloft their bloody daggers, instead of being received, as they expected, with acclamations they were met by an ominous silence. The



MARK ANTONY.

liberators hastened for safety to the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus, going thither ostensibly for the purpose of giving thanks for the death of the tyrant.

Upon the day set for the funeral ceremonies, Mark Antony, the trusted friend and secretary of Cæsar, mounted the rostra in the forum to deliver the usual funeral oration. He recounted the great deeds of Cæsar, the glory he had conferred upon the Roman name, dwelt upon his liberality and his munificent bequests to the people—even to some who were now his murderers; and when he had wrought the feelings of the multitude to the highest tension, he held up the robe of Cæsar, and showed the rents made by the daggers of the assassins.

Cæsar had always been beloved by the people and idolized by his soldiers. They were now driven almost to frenzy with grief and indignation. Seizing weapons and torches, they rushed through the streets, vowing vengeance upon the conspirators. The liberators, however, escaped from the fury of the mob and fled from Rome, Brutus and Cassius seeking refuge in Greece.

203. The Second Triumvirate (43 B.C.).—Antony had gained possession of the will and papers of Cæsar, and now, under color of carrying out the testament of the dictator, according to a decree of the senate, entered upon a course of high-handed usurpation. He was aided in his designs by Marcus Æmilius Lepidus, one of Cæsar's old lieutenants. Very soon he was exercising all the powers of a real dictator. "The tyrant is dead," said Cicero, "but the tyranny still lives." This was a bitter commentary upon the words of Brutus, who, as he drew his dagger from the body of Cæsar, turned to Cicero and exclaimed: "Rejoice, O Father of your Country, for Rome is free.' Rome could not be free, the republic could not be reëstablished, because the virtues of the ancient Romans had died

out from among their descendants — had been overwhelmed by the rising tide of vice, selfishness, sensuality, and irreligion that had set in upon the capital.

To what lengths Antony would have gone in his career of usurpation it is difficult to say, had he not been opposed at this point by Gaius Octavius, the young grandnephew of Julius Caesar, and the one whom he had named in his will as his heir and adopted as his son. Upon the senate declaring in favor of Octavius, civil war immediately broke out between him and Antony and Lepidus. After several indecisive battles between the forces of the rival competitors, Octavius proposed to Antony and Lepidus a reconciliation. The



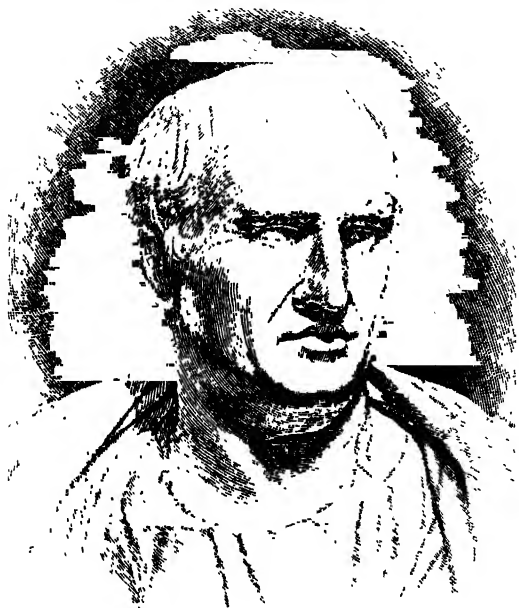
OCTAVIUS AS A YOUTH.

(From a bust in the Vatican Museum.)

three met on a small island in the Rhenus, a little stream in Northern Etruria, and there formed a league known as the Second Triumvirate (43 B.C.).

The plans of the triumvirs were infamous. They first

divided the world among themselves: Octavius was to have the government of the West; Antony, that of the East; while to Lepidus fell the control of Africa.' A general proscription, such as had marked the coming to



CICERO.

(From the bust in the Capitoline Museum.)

power of Sulla, was then resolved upon. It was agreed that each should give up to the assassin such friends of his as had incurred the ill-will of either of the other triumvirs. Under this arrangement Octavius gave up his friend Cicero, — who had incurred the hatred of Antony by

opposing his schemes, — and allowed his name to be put at the head of the list of the proscribed.

The friends of the orator urged him to flee the country. "Let me die," said he, "in my fatherland, which I have so often saved!" His attendants were hurrying him, half unwilling, towards the coast, when his pursuers came up and despatched him in the litter in which he was being carried. His head was taken to Rome, and set up in front of the rostra, "from which he had so often addressed the people with his eloquent appeals for liberty." It is told that Fulvia, the wife of Antony, ran her gold bodkin through the tongue, in revenge for the bitter philippics it had uttered against her husband. The right hand of the victim — the hand that had penned the eloquent orations — was nailed to the rostra.

Cicero was but one victim among many hundreds. All the dreadful scenes of the days of Sulla were reënacted. Three hundred senators and two thousand knights were murdered. The estates of the wealthy were confiscated, and conferred by the triumvirs upon their friends and favorites.

204. Last Struggle of the Republic at Philippi (42 B.C.). — The friends of the old republic, and the enemies of the triumvirs, were meanwhile rallying in the East. Brutus and Cassius were the animating spirits. The Asiatic provinces were plundered to raise money for the soldiers of the liberators. Octavius and Antony, as soon as they had disposed of their enemies in Italy, crossed the Adriatic into Greece, to disperse the forces of the republicans there. The liberators, advancing to meet them, passed over the Hellespont into Thrace.

Legend tells us how one night a spectre appeared to Brutus and seemed to say, "I am thy evil genius; we shall meet again at Philippi." At Philippi, in Thrace, the hostile armies met (42 B.C.). In two successive engagements the new levies of the liberators were cut to pieces, and both Brutus and Cassius, believing the cause of the republic forever lost, committed suicide. It was, indeed, the last effort of the republic. The history of the events that lie between the action at Philippi and the establishment of the empire is simply a record of the struggles among the triumvirs for the possession of the prize of supreme power. After various redistributions of provinces, Lepidus was at length expelled from the triumvirate, and then again the Roman world, as in the times of Cæsar and Pompey, was in the hands of two masters,—Antony in the East and Octavius in the West.

205. Antony and Cleopatra. — After the battle of Philippi, Antony went into Asia for the purpose of settling the affairs of the provinces and vassal states there. He summoned Cleopatra, the fair queen of Egypt, to meet him at Tarsus, in Cilicia, there to give account to him for the aid she had rendered the liberators. She obeyed the summons, relying upon the power of her charms to appease the anger of the triumvir. She ascended the Cydnus in a gilded barge, with oars of silver and sails of purple silk. Beneath awnings wrought of the richest manufactures of the East, the beautiful queen, attired to personate Venus, reclined amidst lovely attendants dressed to represent cupids and nereids. Antony was completely fascinated, as had been the great Cæsar before him, by the dazzling beauty of the "Serpent of the Nile." Enslaved by her

enchantments, and charmed by her brilliant wit, in the pleasure of her company he forgot all else, — ambition and honor and country.

The days and nights were spent in one round of banquets, games, and revelries. It is said that the queen, at the close of a banquet, in order to win a wager that she could consume ten million sesterces at one meal, dissolved in a cup of vinegar a pearl of fabulous worth, and then carelessly swallowed the costly draught. In ingenious ways she amused the Roman voluptuary, arraying herself now as Venus and then as Isis, while he personated Bacchus and Osiris. Upon their fishing excursions she employed divers to fasten enormous fishes to the hook of her lover.

Once, indeed, Antony did rouse himself and break away from his enslavement, to lead the Roman legions against the Parthians. With an army of a hundred thousand men he crossed the Euphrates and the Tigris, and with reckless daring plunged amidst the defiles and snowy passes of the mountains beyond. But the storms of approaching winter and the incessant attacks of the Parthian cavalry at length forced him to make a hurried and disastrous retreat. The loss, the suffering, and the disgrace attending this ill-fated expedition rivalled the calamities and dishonor of the memorable defeat of Crassus (par. 193). Antony hastened back to Egypt, and sought to forget his shame and disappointment amidst the revels of the Egyptian court.

5 206. ✓ **The Battle of Actium** (31 B.C.). — Affairs could not long continue in their present course. Antony had put away his faithful wife Octavia for the beautiful Cleopatra. It was whispered at Rome, and not without truth, that

he proposed to make Alexandria the capital of the Roman world, and announce Cæsarion, son of Julius Cæsar and Cleopatra, as the heir of the empire. All Rome was stirred. It was evident that a struggle was at hand in which the question for decision would be whether the West should rule the East, or the East rule the West. All eyes were instinctively turned to Octavius as the defender of Italy and the supporter of the sovereignty of the Eternal City.

Both parties made the most gigantic preparations for the inevitable conflict. Octavius met the combined fleets of Antony and Cleopatra just off the promontory of Actium, on the Grecian coast. While the issue of the battle that there took place was yet undecided, Cleopatra turned her galley in flight. The Egyptian ships, to the number of fifty, followed her example. Antony, as soon as he perceived the withdrawal of Cleopatra, forgot all else, and followed in her track with a swift galley. Overtaking the fleeing queen, the infatuated man was received aboard her vessel, and became her partner in the disgraceful flight.

The abandoned fleet and army surrendered to Octavius. The conqueror was now sole master of the civilized world. From this decisive battle (31 B.C.) are usually dated the end of the republic and the beginning of the empire. Some, however, make the establishment of the empire date from the year 27 B.C., as it was not until then that Octavius was formally invested with imperial powers.

207. Death of Antony and of Cleopatra; Egypt becomes a Roman Province. — Octavius pursued Antony to Egypt, where the latter, deserted by his army and informed by a messenger from the false queen that she was dead, committed suicide. This was exactly what Cleopatra antici-

pated he would do, and hoped thus to rid herself of a now burdensome lover. When, however, the dying Antony, in accordance with his wish, was borne to her, the old love returned and he expired in her arms.

Cleopatra then sought to enslave Octavius with her charms; but failing in this, and becoming convinced that he proposed to take her to Rome that she might there grace his triumph, she took her own life, being in the thirty-eighth year of her age. Tradition says that she effected her purpose by applying a poisonous asp to her arm. But it is really unknown in what way she killed herself. It is only certain that, when the chamber of the mausoleum in which she had shut herself up was one day entered by the officers of Octavius, she was found lying dead among her attendants, with no mark of injury upon her body.

With the death of Cleopatra the noted dynasty of the Ptolemies came to an end. Egypt was henceforth a province of the Roman state.

REFERENCES. — White's *APPIAN*, vol. i., *Foreign Wars*, bk. xii. chaps. x.—xvii., deals with the Second and Third Mithradatic Wars and Pompey's exploits. *Ibid.*, vol. ii., *The Civil Wars*, bk. i. chaps. xiii. and xiv.; and bk. ii. chaps. i.—xxi. *PLUTARCH*, *Lives of Lucullus, Sertorius, Pompeius, Crassus, C. Julius Cæsar, Antonius, Cicero, and Brutus*. MOMMSEN (T.), *** History of Rome*, vol. iv.; read particularly chap. xi. entitled, "The Old Republic and the New Monarchy." FREEMAN (E. A.), *The Three Chief Periods of European History*, Lec. II., "Rome at the Head of Europe." STRACHAN-DAVIDSON, *** Cicero and the Fall of the Roman Republic* (Heroes of the Nations). BOISSIER (G.), *** Cicero and his Friends* (from the French). TROLLOPE (A.), ** The Life of Cicero*, 2 vols. FROUDE (J. A.), ** Cæsar*. CHURCH (A. J.), *Roman Life in the Days of Cicero*; for young readers: also same author's *Two Thousand Years Ago*. DODGE (T. A.), *Cæsar* (Great Captains). MERIVALE (C.), *The Fall of the Roman Republic*, chaps. vi.—xvii. pp. 166—

553; and the same author's *The Roman Triumvirate* (Epoch Series). SEELEY (J. R.), ** *Roman Imperialism*, I. ec. I. pp. 5-36, "The Great Roman Revolution." WALLON (H.), *Histoire de l'Esclavage dans l'Antiquité*, vol. ii. pp. 279-384. LONG (G.), *The Decline of the Roman Republic*, 5 vols. For general reference. MONTESQUIEU, *Causes of the Grandeur and Decadence of the Romans* (from the French), chap. ix. MAHAFFY (J. P.), *The Greek World under Roman Sway*, chap. iv., "The Hellenism of Cicero and his Friends."

CHRONOLOGICAL REVIEW OF THE ROMAN REPUBLIC.

	B. C.
Republic established and first consuls elected	509
Right of appeal secured by the Lex Valeria	509
First secession of plebeians and first tribunes of the people . . .	494
Spurius Cassius carries the first agrarian law	486
Cincinnatus made dictator	458
Election of first decemvirs	451
Passage of the Valerio-Horatian laws	449
First censors elected	444?
Capture of Veii	396
Sack of Rome by Gauls under Brennus	390
Passage of the Licinian laws	367
Samnite wars	343-290
War with Pyrrhus	282-272
First Punic War	264-241
Creation of the first province	241
Second Punic War	218-201
Battle of Pydna	168
Third Punic War	149-146
Destruction of Corinth	146
Destruction of Numantia	133
First Servile War	134-132
Tiberius and Gaius Gracchus	133-121
Jugurthine War	111-104
Marius defeats the Teutones and Cimbri	102-101
Social or Marsic War	91-89
First Mithradatic War	88-84

Civil war between Sulla and the Marian party	84-82
Pompey defeats Mediterranean pirates	66
Conspiracy of Catiline	64-62
First triumvirate formed	60
Conquests of Cæsar in Gaul and Britain	58-51
Battle of Pharsalus; Pompey flees to Egypt and is murdered	48
Battle of Thapsus; Cæsar sole master of Roman world	46
Murder of Cæsar	44
Second triumvirate	43
Battle of Philippi; deaths of Brutus and Cassius	42
Republic ends with battle of Actium between Octavius and Antony	31

LIST OF ROMAN PROVINCES CHRONOLOGICALLY ARRANGED.¹

I. — PROVINCES ORGANIZED UNDER THE REPUBLIC.

	B.C.
1. Sicilia (par. 96) *	241
2. Sardinia and Corsica (par. 97)	231
3. Hispania Citerior (par. 119, n. 4)	} 197
4. Hispania Ulterior (par. 119, n. 1)	
5. Illyricum (Dalmatia)	167-45
6. Macedonia and Achaia (pars. 131 and 135)	146
7. Africa (par. 141)	146
8. Asia (par. 168)	133
9. Gallia Narbonensis	120
10. Gallia Cisalpina	81 ?
11. Bithynia (par. 187, n. 5)	74
12. { Cyrene	74
{ Creta	67
13. { Cilicia (par. 187, n. 5)	64
{ Cyprus	58
14. Syria (par. 186)	64

¹ From A. Bouché-Leclercq's *Manuel des Institutions Romaines*, p. 208. This table represents the grouping of the provinces during the first two centuries of the empire. Where the circumstances under which a province was created are explained in the present text, reference is made to the proper paragraph. W. T. Arnold's *The Roman System of Provincial Administration* will be found the very best short account of the provinces under both the republic and the empire.

II. — PROVINCES ORGANIZED UNDER THE EMPIRE.

	B.C.
15. Ægyptus (par. 207)	30
16. Mœsia (par. 210)	29?
17. [Lusitania] ¹ (par. 210, n. 8)	27?
18. [Achaia] (par. 135)	27
19. Galatia	25
20. [Cyprus]	22
21. Aquitania (par. 192, n. 2)	} 16?
22. Lugdunensis (par. 192, n. 2)	
23. Belgica (par. 210, n. 10)	
24. Rætia (par. 210)	} 15
25. Noricum (par. 210)	
26. Alpes Maritimæ	14
	A.D.
27. Pannonia (par. 210)	10
28. Cappadocia	17
29. Germania Superior	} 17
30. Germania Inferior	
31. Mauretania Tingitana	} 40
32. Mauretania Caesariensis	
33. Pamphylia and Lycia	43
34. Britannia (par. 210)	43
35. Thracia	46
36. Alpes Cottivæ	under Nero
37. [Epirus]	under Vespasian
38. Arabia (par. 221)	105
39. Dacia (par. 226)	107
40. Armenia (par. 226)	} 115
41. Mesopotamia (par. 226)	
42. Assyria (par. 226)	
43. [Alpes Penninæ]	in the second century
44. [Numidia]	between 193 and 211

¹ The names placed between brackets indicate provinces formed by subdivision of older provinces.

PART III.—ROME AS AN EMPIRE

(31 B.C. A.D. 476.)

CHAPTER XV.

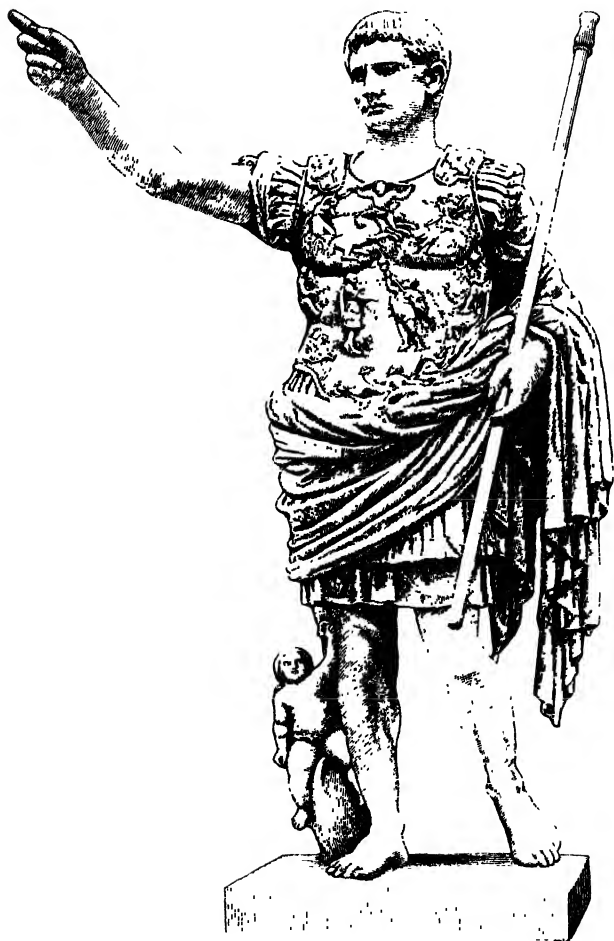
THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE AND THE REIGN OF AUGUSTUS CÆSAR

(31 B.C.-A.D. 14.)

208. **The Character of the Imperial Government.**—The hundred years of strife which ended with the battle of Actium left the Roman republic, exhausted and helpless, in the hands of one wise enough and strong enough to remold its crumbling fragments in such a manner that the state, which seemed ready to fall to pieces, might prolong its existence for another five hundred years. It was a great work thus to create anew, as it were, out of anarchy and chaos, a political fabric that should exhibit such elements of perpetuity and strength. "The establishment of the Roman empire," says Merivale, "was, after all, the greatest political work that any human being ever wrought. The achievements of Alexander, of Cæsar, of Charlemagne, of Napoleon are not to be compared with it for a moment."

The government which Octavius established was a monarchy in fact, but a republic in form. Mindful of the fate of Julius Cæsar, Octavius carefully veiled his really absolute power under the forms of the old republican state. He did not take the title of king. He knew how hateful

to the people that name had been since the expulsion of the Tarquins, and was mindful how many of the best men



AUGUSTUS. (Vatican Museum).

of Rome, including the great Julius, had perished because they gave the people reason to think that they were aiming

at the regal power. Nor did he take the title of dictator, a name that since the time of Sulla had been almost as intolerable to the people as that of king. But he adopted the title of *Imperator*,—whence the name *Emperor*,—a title which, although it carried with it the absolute authority of the commander of the legions, still had clinging to it no odious memories. He also received from the senate the honorary surname of *Augustus*, a title that hitherto had been sacred to the gods, and hence was free from all sinister associations. A monument of this act was erected in the calendar. It was decreed by the senate that the sixth month of the Roman year should be called Augustus (whence our August) in commemoration of the imperator, an act in imitation of that by which the preceding month had been given the name Julius (whence our July) in honor of Julius Cæsar. Common usage also bestowed upon Octavius the further title of *Princeps*, which was only a designation of courtesy and dignity and simply pointed out him who bore it as the “first citizen” of a free republic.

And as Octavius was careful not to wound the sensibilities of the lovers of the old republic by assuming any title that in any way suggested regal authority and prerogative, so was he careful not to arouse their opposition by abolishing any of the republican offices or assemblies. He allowed all the old magistracies to exist as heretofore; but he himself absorbed and exercised the most important part of their powers and functions.² All the republican magistrates were

² These prerogatives were conferred upon Octavius at different times and for different periods. The powers of the pontifex maximus were granted last, in 12 B.C.

elected as usual;³ but they were simply the nominees and creatures of the emperor. They were the effigies and figure-heads which deluded the people into believing that the republic still existed. Never did a people seem more content with the shadow after the loss of the substance.

Likewise all the popular assemblies remained, and were convened as usual to hold elections and to vote on measures laid before them. But Octavius, having been invested with both the consular and the tribunician power, had the right to summon them, to place in nomination persons for the various offices, and to initiate legislation. The titular consuls and tribunes also, it is true, had this right; but after the new order of things had become firmly established, they dared not exercise this right without the concurrence of the new master of the state. Consequently the deliberations of all these bodies were idle forms.

The senate still existed, but it was shorn of all real independence, since Augustus had been armed with the censorial power for the purpose of revising its lists. This power Octavius exercised by reducing the number of senators, which had been raised by Antony to one thousand, to six hundred¹ and by striking from the rolls the names of unworthy members and of obstinate republicans. He wounded, too, its old aristocratic pride by introducing new men into the body, and thereby laying the basis of a new senatorial aristocracy.

The body being thus made up largely of persons who

³ The consuls were generally nominated by Augustus, and in order that a large number of his friends and favorites might be amused with the dignity, the term of office was reduced to a shorter period. At a later time, the length of the consulate was shortened to two or three months.

owed their place and dignity to Octavius, it was of course ready to obey his every behest.

We may summarize all these changes by saying that the monarchy abolished five hundred years before this was now rising again amidst the old forms of the republic. This is what was actually taking place; for a great part of the powers and prerogatives of the ancient king, which during the republican period had been gradually broken up and lodged in the hands of a great number of magistrates, colleges, and assemblies, were now being once more gathered up in the hands of a single man.

209. The Government of the Provinces. — We have seen how corrupt and oppressive was the government of the provinces under the rule of the senatorial oligarchy of the later republic.⁴ The revolution that brought in the empire effected a great improvement in the condition of the provincials.

The government of all those provinces that were in an unsettled state and that needed the presence of a large military force, Augustus⁵ withdrew from the senate, and took the management of their affairs in his own hands. These were known as the *provinces of Caesar*. Instead of these countries being ruled by practically irresponsible proconsuls and proprators, they were henceforth ruled by legates of the emperor, who were removable at his will and answerable to him for the faithful and honest discharge of the duties of their offices. Salaries were attached to their positions, and thus the scandalous abuses which had grown up in connection with the earlier system of self-payment

⁴ See pars. 168 and 184.

⁵ From this on we shall refer to Octavius by this his honorary surname.

through fees, requisitions, and like devices were swept away. These provinces were given, as we should say, a pure and able civil service.

The more tranquil provinces were still left under the control of the senate, and were known as *public provinces*. These also profited by the change, since the emperor extended his care and watch to them, and, as the judge of last appeal, righted wrongs and punished flagrant offenders against right and justice.

It was not the aim of Augustus in these measures to place the inhabitants of Italy and those of the provinces on the same footing; yet the tendency of all he did was in that direction, and the outcome of the imperial régime which he established was, as we shall see, to bring about an equalization in all respects of Italians and provincials, such an equalization in duties and privileges as in the time of the early republic had been effected between patricians and plebeians. In the course of time all the provinces, together with Italy, came under the direct rule of the emperor, and all the free inhabitants of the empire were at last reduced to the same condition; they became subject-citizens — subjects of the emperor and citizens of Rome.

210. Augustus rounds out the Empire. — Augustus was one of the first to try to moderate the ambition of the Romans, and to counsel them not to attempt to conquer any more of the world, but rather to devote their energies to the work of consolidating the domains already acquired. He saw the dangers that would attend any further extension of the boundaries of the state. Yet he saw with equal clearness the need of finding for the empire what we should call scientific frontiers, that is, easily defended marches.

On the south, the sands of the great African desert were the boundaries set by nature to Roman domination in that direction. The rounding out of the empire on this side required the absorption of the dependent state of Mauretania.⁶ But the addition of this to the dominions of Rome was secured, not by Augustus, but by one of his successors.⁷

On the east, the wastes of Arabia and the Upper Euphrates gave the empire its natural boundaries. Between the Upper Euphrates and the Euxine there was debatable land. The fixing of the frontiers of the Roman dominions in this region was also left by Augustus to a later time.

Towards the west there was still lacking to the actual rounding out of the empire the acquisition of the north-western part of the Iberian peninsula, for the native tribes of these regions were still maintaining their independence. Augustus forced these hardy mountaineers to bow their necks to the yoke of Rome,⁸ and made the coast of the ocean the boundary of the Roman dominions from the Pillars of Hercules to the mouth of the Elbe.⁹ The conquest of Britain he did not attempt.

On the north, the frontiers of the state at the beginning of Augustus' reign were wholly unsettled. In the valleys of the Alps, on their northern slopes, and in the long reach of lands lying between these mountain ranges and the Upper Rhine and the Danube, there were many still hostile

⁶ See map after p. 320.

⁷ Consult table of provinces, p. 314.

⁸ The Spanish possessions were at this time reorganized. Instead of the two provinces of *Hither and Farther Spain*, we have now three provinces, bearing the following names: *Tarraconensis*, *Lusitania*, and *Bætica*.

⁹ Mommsen, *Provinces of the Roman Empire*, vol. i. p. 71.

tribes which were a constant threat to the peace of Italy. Augustus reduced to submission all the hitherto unsubdued tribes in these regions, and, as a bulwark of Italian civilization on this side, erected a line of well-organized provinces, — Rætia, Noricum, Pannonia, and Mœsia, — which, in connection with the province of Belgica, stretched entirely across the continent from the North Sea to the Euxine.¹⁰ Backed by the broad streams of the Rhine and the Danube, these provinces constituted a strong line of defence for the empire against the northern barbarians.

211. The Defeat of Varus by the Germans under Arminius (A.D. 9).—The adoption of the Rhine as a permanent frontier was forced upon Augustus by one of the most terrible disasters that ever befell the Roman legions. It was at first the purpose of Augustus to make the Elbe, and not the Rhine, the division line between civilization and barbarism. The security of Italy as well as that of Gaul seemed to require the subjugation of the warlike tribes between these streams.

Consequently, during a large part of the reign of Augustus his stepsons Drusus and Tiberius were campaigning in this region. The Roman eagles were carried to the Elbe, and for a time it looked as though that stream would become a frontier river.

But suddenly the whole aspect of affairs in this region was changed. The Roman general Quintilius Varus, who had made the mistake of supposing that he could rule the

¹⁰ See map opposite p. 320. Belgica was not created by Augustus, but simply enlarged and its affairs readjusted and regulated. Before this it had been only an administrative division of the empire, and not a regularly organized province.

freedom-loving Germans just as he had governed the servile Asiatics of the Eastern provinces, and had thereby stirred them to determined revolt against the Roman authority, while leading an army of three legions, numbering altogether about twenty thousand men, through the almost pathless depths of the Teutoburg Wood, was surprised by the barbarians, led by their brave chieftain, Hermann, — called Arminius by the Romans, — and his army destroyed (A.D. 9). Only a few escaped. Thousands of the legionaries lay dead and unburied where they fell in the impassable woods and morasses. “The captives, especially the officers and the advocates, were fastened to the cross, or buried alive, or bled under the sacrificial knife of the German priests. The heads cut off were nailed as a token of victory to the trees of the sacred grove.”¹

The disaster caused great consternation at Rome; for it was feared that the German tribes would now cross the Rhine, effect an alliance with the Gauls, and then that these united hordes would pour over the Alps into Italy. Augustus, wearied and worn already with advancing age, the cares of empire, and domestic affliction, was inconsolable. He paced his palace in agony, and kept exclaiming, “O Varus! Varus! give me back my legions! give me back my legions!” But Tiberius so carefully guarded the Rhine that the Germans did not attempt the passage, and Italy was saved from the threatened invasion.

The victory of Arminius over the Roman legions was an

¹ Mommsen, *Provinces of the Roman Empire*, vol. i. p. 53. The exact locality of the battle is not known. The great number of Roman coins dug up in the district of Venne, between the Weser and the Rhine, seems, however, to indicate that as the place where the legionaries perished.

event of the greatest significance in the history of European civilization. Germany was almost overrun by the Roman army. The Teutonic tribes were on the point of being completely subjugated and put in the way of being Romanized, as the Celts of Gaul had already been. Had this occurred, the entire history of Europe would have been changed; for the Germanic element is the one that has given shape and color to the important events of the last fifteen hundred years. Among these barbarians, too, were our ancestors. Had Rome succeeded in exterminating or enslaving them, Britain, as Creasy says, might never have received the name of England, and the great English nation might never have had an existence.²

212. The Extent and the Resources of the Empire.—The wide reach of the domains over which Augustus held sway has been revealed in what we have just said respecting his efforts to fix the frontier lines of the state. The empire stretched from east to west about three thousand miles. Its average width from north to south was equal to one-third its length.

The army that defended the long frontier lines of the empire against outside barbarians and maintained order in the many provinces numbered three hundred and forty thousand men, a mere fraction of the number that is required to secure the domestic and international peace of the same lands to-day.

² "We stand here at a turning-point in national destinies. History, too, has its flow and its ebb; here, after the tide of Roman sway over the world has attained its height, the ebb sets in. Northward of Italy the Roman rule had for a few years reached as far as the Elbe; after the battle of Varus its bounds were the Rhine and the Danube."—MOMMSEN, *Provinces of the Roman Empire*, vol. i. p. 65.

The wealth and the trade of this Roman world are roughly indicated by the revenues of the state. These are estimated to have amounted to a sum equivalent to between \$80,000,000 and \$100,000,000 in our money. This sum was made up from the tribute of the provinces, from custom duties, from tolls on roads and bridges, and taxes on legacies, windows, porch pillars, and various other things that modern assessors generally overlook.

This vast revenue was practically at the disposal of the emperor. Hence the way in which it was expended was determined, in many reigns, not so much by the necessities of the state as by the caprice of the ruling Cæsar. The better emperors used it with prudence and wisdom in the maintenance of the army, the navy, and the civil service; in the construction and the repair of the great military roads of the empire; in the building of bridges, the adornment of the capital and other cities with temples, theatres, baths, porticoes, and other public buildings; and in providing free corn and shows for the Roman populace, — for these last were regarded, even by the best emperors, as legitimate and necessary objects of public expenditure.

213. Literature and the Arts under Augustus. — The reign of Augustus lasted forty-four years, from 31 B.C. to A.D. 14. Although the government of Augustus, as we have learned, was disturbed by some troubles upon the frontiers, still never before, perhaps, had the civilized world enjoyed so long a period of general rest from the turmoil of war. Three times during this auspicious reign the gates of the Temple of Janus at Rome (*par. 22*), which were open in time of war and closed in time of peace, were shut. Only twice before during the entire history of the city had they

been closed, so constantly had the Roman people been engaged in war.

This long repose from the strife that had filled all the preceding centuries was favorable to the upspringing of literature and art. Under the patronage of the emperor, and that of his favorite minister, Mæcenas, poets and



MÆCENAS.

writers flourished and made this the "golden age" of Latin literature. During this reign Vergil composed his immortal epic of the *Aeneid*, and Horace his famous odes, while Livy wrote his inimitable history, and Ovid his fancy-inspiring *Metamorphoses*.³ Many who lamented the fall of the republic

sought solace in the pursuit of letters; and in this they were encouraged by Augustus, as it gave occupation to many restless spirits that would otherwise have been engaged in political intrigues against his government.

Augustus was also a munificent patron of architecture and art. He adorned the capital with many splendid structures, including temples, theatres, porticoes, baths, and

³ For further notice of the works of these writers, see pars. 304 and 307.

aqueducts. He said proudly, "I found Rome a city of brick ; I left it a city of marble." The population of the city at this time was probably about one million.⁴ Two other cities of the empire, Antioch and Alexandria, are thought to have had each about this same number of citizens. These cities, too, were made magnificent with architectural and art embellishments.

214. Social Life at Rome under Augustus.—One of the most remarkable features of life at the capital during the reign of Augustus was the vast number of Roman citizens who were recipients of the state doles of corn. There were at least two hundred thousand male beneficiaries of this public charity,⁵ which means that upwards of half a million of persons in the capital were unable or unwilling to earn their daily bread. The purchase of the immense quantities of corn needed for these free distributions was one of the heaviest drains upon the imperial treasury.

Another striking feature of life at Rome at this time was the growing infatuation of the people for the bloody spectacles of the amphitheatre. Prudent as Augustus generally was in the matter of public expenditures, in the providing of these shows he lavished money without measure or stint. The emperor himself gives the following account of the spectacles that he presented :

"Three times in my own name, and five times in that

⁴ Merivale estimates the population in the time of Augustus of the city proper and its suburbs at 700,000 (*History of the Romans under the Empire*, vol. v. chap. xl. p. 53). Gibbon, apparently also including the suburbs, places it in the reign of Honorius at 1,200,000 (*Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chap. xxxi).

⁵ The number had risen as high as 320,000, but Augustus purged the lists of unworthy claimants.

of my sons or grandsons, I have given gladiatorial exhibitions; in these exhibitions about ten thousand men have fought. Twice in my own name; and three times in that of my grandsons, I have offered the people the spectacles of athletes gathered from all quarters. . . . Twenty-six times in my own name, or in that of my sons or grandsons, I have given hunts of African wild beasts in the circus, the forum, the amphitheatres, and about thirty-five hundred beasts have been killed.

"I gave the people the spectacle of a naval battle beyond the Tiber, where now is the grove of the Cæsars. For this purpose an excavation was made eighteen hundred feet long and twelve hundred wide. In this contest thirty beaked ships, triremes or biremes, were engaged, besides more of smaller size. About three thousand men fought in these vessels in addition to the rowers."⁶

Still another phase of social life at Rome which arrests our attention was the loosening of the family ties. Divorces had multiplied, and the family seemed about to be dissolved, as had been the larger groups of the tribe and the gens. Augustus strove to arrest this downward tendency by edicts and laws in encouragement of marriage and in restraint of divorces. But the trouble was too deep-seated in the failing moral and religious life of the times to be reached and remedied by any measures of state.⁷

215. The Religious Life.—The decay of religious faith

⁶ *Monumentum Ancyranum*, cc. 22, 23, edited by William Fairley, Ph.D.: Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History, published by the Department of History of the University of Pennsylvania. See "References," p. 331.

⁷ For other phases of social life at Rome under the Cæsars, see chap. xxv.

had been going on for a long time. Augustus did all in his power to arrest the process. He restored the temples and shrines that had fallen into decay, renewed the ancient sacrifices,⁸ and erected new temples, not only at Rome, but in every part of the empire. The unauthorized foreign cults, particularly those from the Orient, which had been introduced at the capital, he drove out, and strove to awaken in the people a fresh veneration for the ancestral deities of Rome.

The Greek Apollo, however, was excepted from the list of proscribed alien gods. In honor of this great deity, who Augustus believed

had secured him the victory at Actium (par. 206), the emperor erected a splendid temple at Rome, and caused to be transported from Egypt and set up in the capital an immense obelisk, the emblem in Egyptian theology of the sun-god.



THE PANTHEON, BUILT AT ROME DURING
THE REIGN OF AUGUSTUS.

(Present condition.)

⁸ The sacrificial victims became so numerous that an epigram came into existence which represents the cattle as saluting the emperor in these words: "Long live Cæsar: yet long life to Cæsar means that we must perish."

216. The Death and Apotheosis of Augustus. — The domestic life of Augustus was clouded by trouble and bereavement. His daughter Julia brought grief to 'him through her immoral conduct, and he was finally forced to banish her from Rome. His beloved nephew Marcellus (par. 304), and his two grandsons Gaius and Lucius, whom he purposed to make his heirs, were all removed by death. After the death of these favorites Augustus made his adopted stepson Tiberius (par. 211) his successor.

In the year A.D. 14, Augustus died, having reached the seventy-sixth year of his age. His last words to the friends gathered about his bedside were, "If I have acted well my part in life's drama, greet my departure with your applause." It was believed that the soul of Augustus ascended visibly amidst the flames of his funeral pyre. By decree of the senate divine worship was accorded to him, and temples were erected in his honor.

At first blush this worship of the dead Cæsar seems to us strange and impious. But it will not seem so if we put ourselves at the point of view of the old Roman. It was the natural and logical outcome of ancestor worship, which, as we have learned, was a favorite cult among the Romans (par. 22). The sentiment and belief which prompted the offerings of gifts and prayers to the guardian spirits of the family, would naturally lead to similar offerings to the spirit of the departed Cæsar, father of the Roman state.

But ancestor worship was not the only root which nourished this cult of the emperor. In the Orient the king was very generally regarded as partaking, in some degree at least, of the divine nature. Thus in Egypt the Pharaoh was believed to be of the race of the gods. It was natural,

then, that the subjects of Rome in the eastern provinces should look upon the head of the empire as one lifted above ordinary mortals and possessed of divine qualities. This way of thinking caused the provincials of the Orient to become sincere and zealous worshippers in the temples and before the altars of the "divine Cæsar."

This cult of the emperor — it developed into a cult of the living as well as of the dead Cæsar — became a favorite worship of the masses everywhere. Its establishment had far-reaching consequences, as we shall see; since at the very time that the polytheistic religion of the Græco-Roman world was taking on this form, there was springing up in a remote corner of the empire a new yet old religion with which this imperial cult must necessarily come into violent conflict.

For it was in the midst of the happy reign of Augustus, when profound peace prevailed throughout the civilized world, — the doors of the temple of Janus having been closed (par. 22), — that Christ was born in Bethlehem of Judæa. The event was unheralded at Rome; yet it was, as we have intimated, filled with profound significance not only for the Roman empire but for the world. Of the relation of Christianity to paganism, and particularly to the new cult of the Roman emperor, we shall speak later (par. 228).

REFERENCES. — ***Monumentum Ancyranum* (Res Gestæ Divi Augusti — "The Deeds of Augustus"), vol. v., No. 7, of the Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History, published by the Department of History of the University of Pennsylvania. This forms one of the most important of the original sources for the reign of Augustus. It is a long bilingual inscription (Latin and Greek) discovered in 1595 on the walls of a ruined temple at Ancyra (whence

the name), in Asia Minor. The inscription is a copy of a tablet which was set up in front of the Mausoleum of Augustus at Rome (par. 297).

INGE (W. R.), **Society in Rome under the Cæsars*, chap. i., "Religion," deals with the decay of Roman religion and the establishment at the capital of oriental cults. CREASY (E. S.), ** *Decisive Battles of the World*, chap. v., "Victory of Arminius over the Roman Legions under Varus, A.D. 9." CAPES (W. W.), *The Early Empire* (Epoch Series), chap. i. pp. 1-44, "Augustus." THIERRY (AMÉDÉE), ** *Tableau de l'Empire Romain*. Teachers and mature students will find this work very suggestive. The book might be entitled Rome's Place in Universal History. MILMAN (H. H.), *The History of Christianity*, vol. i. (first part). MERIVALE (C.), *History of the Romans under the Empire*, 7 vols. This work covers the first two centuries of the imperial period. For the reign of Augustus, see vol. iii. chaps. xxx. and xxxi. and vol. iv.

TABLE SHOWING THE NUMBER OF ROMAN CITIZENS AT DIFFERENT PERIODS OF THE REPUBLIC AND THE EMPIRE.

[These figures embody what is perhaps the most important matter in Roman history, namely, the gradual admission of aliens to the rights of the city until every freeman in the civilized world had become a citizen of Rome. This movement we have endeavored to trace in the text. Consult particularly pars. 29, 30, 35, 38, 50, 67, 71, 72, 73, 77, 80, 165, 166, 200, 219, and 233.]

	NUMBER OF CITIZENS OF MILITARY AGE.
Under the later kings (Mommsen's estimate)	20,000
338 B.C.	165,000 ¹
293 "	262,322
251 "	279,797
220 "	270,213
204 "	214,000 ²
164 "	327,022
115 "	394,336
70 "	900,000 ?
27 "	4,063,000 ³
8 "	4,233,000
13 A.D.	4,937,000
47 A.D. (under Claudius)	6,944,000

¹ These figures do not include the inhabitants of the Latin colonies nor of the allied states, but probably do embrace those of the prefectures (par. 163, n. 8) and of the towns enjoying *Cæritan* rights (par. 73).

² The falling off from the number of the preceding census of 220 B.C. was a result of the Hannibalian War.

³ These figures and those of the enumerations for A.D. 8 and 13 are from the *Monumentum Ancyranum* (par. 214, n. 6). The increased number given by the census of 70 B.C. over that of 115 B.C. registers the result of the admission to the city of the Italians, at the end of the Social War (par. 165). The tremendous leap upwards of the figures between 69 and 27 B.C. is probably to be explained not wholly by the admission during this period of aliens to the franchise, but also, possibly, by the failure of the censors of the republican period to include in their enumerations the Roman citizens living in places remote from the capital.

CHAPTER XVI.

FROM TIBERIUS TO MARCUS AURELIUS.

(A.D. 14 180.)

217. Reign of Tiberius (A.D. 14-37). --- Tiberius succeeded to an unlimited sovereignty. The senate conferred upon him



TIBERIUS.

(From a bust in the Capitoline Museum.)

all the titles that had been worn by Augustus. One of the first acts of Tiberius was to take away from the popular assemblies the right which they still nominally possessed of electing the yearly magistrates, and to bestow the same upon the senate, which, however, as a rule elected

candidates presented by the emperor. As the senate was practically the creation of the emperor through virtue of

his power to name new members, he was now of course the source and fountain of all patronage. During the first years of his reign, Tiberius used his practically unrestrained authority with moderation and justice, being seemingly desirous of promoting the best interests of all classes in his vast empire.

The beginning of Tiberius' rule was marked by revolts among the legions, the most serious discontent manifesting itself among those guarding the Rhine, who wished to raise to the throne their favorite general Germanicus, nephew of Tiberius. But Germanicus sternly refused to take part in such an act of treachery, reproved his soldiers, and then drew their attention from such thoughts of disloyalty by leading them across the Rhine to recover the lost standards of Varus (par. 211). He was so far successful in this bold enterprise as to retake the lost eagles, and capture the wife of Arminius.¹ But at this moment, when Germanicus seemed on the point of laying the Roman yoke upon the tribes of Germany, Tiberius, moved, it is conjectured, by jealousy,² recalled him from the Rhenish frontier, and sent him into the Eastern provinces, where he soon after died, having been poisoned, as was charged, by an agent of the jealous emperor.

Despotic power is a dangerous possession, likely to prove

¹ These campaigns of Germanicus against the German tribes cover the years A.D. 14-16.

² Other motives doubtless concurred. "They [Augustus and Tiberius] recognized the plans pursued by them for twenty years for the changing of the boundary to the north as incapable of execution, and the subjugation and mastery of the region between the Rhine and the Elbe appeared to them to transcend the resources of the empire."—MOMMSEN, *Provinces of the Roman Empire*, vol. i. p. 62.

terribly harmful to him who wields it, as well as to those over whom it is exercised. Very few natures can withstand the seductive temptations, the corrupting influences, of unlimited and irresponsible authority.³ Hence the long series of excesses and crimes which we shall now find making up a large part of the annals of the Roman emperors.

Whatever may have been the intentions with which Tiberius began his reign, he soon yielded to the promptings of a naturally morose, suspicious, and jealous nature, and entered upon a course of the most high-handed tyranny. He enforced oppressively an old law, known as the *Law of Majestas*, which made it a capital offence for any one to speak a careless word, or even to entertain an unfriendly thought, respecting the emperor. "It was dangerous to speak, and equally dangerous to keep silent," says Leighton, "for silence even might be construed into discontent." Rewards were offered to informers, and hence sprang up a class of persons called "delators" (*delatores*), who acted as spies upon society. Often false charges were made, to gratify personal enmity; and many, especially of the wealthy class, were accused and put to death that their property might be confiscated.

³ "Tiberius, Caligula, Claudius, and Nero," writes the historian Hodgkin, "[were] men whose names burnt themselves forever into the memory of the race. All these men, in different ways, illustrated the terrible efficacy of absolute world-dominion to poison the character and even to unhinge the intellect of him who wielded it. Standing as it were on the Mount of Temptation, and seeing all the kingdoms of the world and all the glory of them stretched at an immeasurable distance below their feet, they were seized with a dizziness of soul, and, professing themselves to be gods, did deeds at the instigation of their wild hearts and whirling brains such as men still shudder to think of."

Tiberius appointed, as his chief minister and as commander of the prætorian guard,⁴ one Sejanus, a man of the lowest and most corrupt life. Then, full of disdain for the servile world, he retired to Capreæ, an island in the Bay of Naples, and left to him the management of affairs at Rome (A.D. 27). The emperor built several villas in different parts of the beautiful islet, and having gathered about him a band of congenial companions, passed in this pleasant retreat the later years of his reign. Both Tacitus the historian and Suetonius the biographer tell many stories of the scandalous profligacy of the emperor's life on the island.⁵

Meanwhile, Sejanus was ruling at Rome very much according to his own will. He murdered some of the best citizens, and caused first Drusus, the son of Tiberius, and then other possible heirs to the throne to be put out of the way, in order that Tiberius might be constrained to name him as his successor. He even grew so bold as to plan the assassination of the emperor himself. His designs, however, became known to Tiberius; and the infamous and disloyal minister was arrested and put to death.

After the execution of his minister, Tiberius ruled more despotically than before. Multitudes sought refuge from

⁴ This was a corps of chosen soldiers which had been created by Augustus, and which was designed for a sort of bodyguard to the emperor. It numbered about ten thousand men, and was given a permanent camp alongside the city walls and near one of the gates. It soon became a formidable power in the state, and made and unmade emperors at will.

⁵ It should be borne in mind that these tales of the orgies of Tiberius were given currency by the bitter enemies of the emperor, and that they were probably colored and exaggerated by dislike and hatred. There must, however, be in them a large element of truth.

his tyranny in suicide. "I care not that the people hate me," he is represented as saying, "if they approve my deeds."

In addition to this distress caused the people by the conduct of their emperor, there was during this reign a great deal of misery produced by a series of calamities for which Tiberius was in no way responsible. In Asia earthquakes destroyed several large cities. At Fidenæ, not far from Rome, an immense wooden amphitheatre, which had been flimsily constructed by an unfaithful or incompetent contractor, fell beneath the weight of spectators who had crowded its benches, and buried in its ruins a vast number of persons variously estimated from twenty to fifty thousand. In Rome itself there occurred a conflagration that destroyed a considerable part of the city.

It is worthy of note that all these public calamities awakened at Rome widespread sympathy and called forth generous contributions of money and service for the unfortunate sufferers. (Even Tiberius himself, though naturally parsimonious, dealt most generously with the stricken communities.) Ancient society—even the very society that delighted in the gladiatorial spectacles, paradoxical as it may seem—was not incapable of being touched by human suffering, and was at times moved by genuine sentiments of sympathy and compassion.

Tiberius died in the year A.D. 37. His end was probably hastened by his attendants, who are believed to have smothered him in his bed, as he lay dying.

It was in the midst of the reign of Tiberius that, in a remote province of the Roman empire, the Saviour was crucified. Animated by an unparalleled missionary spirit, his followers traversed the length and breadth of the

empire, preaching everywhere the "glad tidings." Men's loss of faith in the gods of the old mythologies, the softening and liberalizing influence of Greek culture, the unification of the whole civilized world under a single government, the widespread suffering and the inexpressible weariness of the oppressed and servile classes, — all these things had prepared the soil for the seed of the new doctrines. In less than three centuries the pagan empire had become Christian not only in name, but also very largely in fact. This conversion of Rome is one of the most important events in all history. A new element is here introduced into civilization, an element which has given color and character to the history of all the succeeding centuries.

218. Reign of Caligula (A.D. 37-41). — Gaius Cæsar, better known as Caligula, son of the commander Germanicus, was only twenty-five years of age when the death of Tiberius called him to the throne. His surname Caligula was given him by the German legions, because, when a little boy, he was kept by his father in the camp, and to please the men, dressed like a little soldier with military buskins (*caligæ*).

Caligula's reign was, in the main, a tissue of follies. After a few months spent in arduous application to the affairs of the empire, during which time his many acts of kindness and piety won for him the affection of all classes, the mind of the young emperor became unsettled. His rest was feverish; and often he paced the halls of his palace the night through with wild and incoherent ravings. He soon gave himself up to the most detestable dissipations. The cruel sports of the amphitheatre possessed for him a strange fascination. When animals failed, he ordered spectators

to be seized indiscriminately and thrown to the beasts. He even entered the lists himself, and fought as a gladiator upon the arena.

Stories without number are told illustrating his insanities and extravagances. He is said to have caused persons to be tortured at his banquets, that their cries and groans might add to the enjoyment of the meal. He lamented that no great calamity marked his reign, such as that which had occurred in the reign of Tiberius, when twenty thousand or more persons lost their lives in the fall of the amphitheatre at Fidenæ (par. 217). In a sanguinary mood, he wished "that the people of Rome had but one neck." He built a bridge from his palace on the Palatine to the temple on the Capitoline hill, that he might be "next neighbor" to Jupiter. In order to rival the Hellespontine bridges of Xerxes, he constructed a bridge over the bay at Baiæ. The structure broke beneath the triumphal procession on the day of dedication; and Caligula, delighted with the spectacle of the struggling victims, forbade any one to attempt to save the drowning.

It is said that he emulated the example of Cleopatra by dissolving costly gems and drinking them at a draught. A single dinner cost \$400,000. As an insult to the official aristocracy he gave out that he proposed to make his favorite horse, Incitatus, consul, and frequently invited the steed from his ivory stable to eat gilded grain at the imperial board. He personated in turn all the gods and goddesses, arraying himself at one time as Hercules or Bacchus, and again as Juno or Venus. He declared himself divine, set up his statue for worship, and even removed the heads of Jupiter's statues and put his own in their place.

During his reign he set out on an expedition against Britain; but on reaching the sea he set his soldiers to work collecting shells along the beach, which "spoils of the ocean" he then sent back to Rome as the trophies of his enterprise. A campaign against the Germans ended at the Rhenish frontier with not captives enough in his hands for a triumph; accordingly, he hired, so the story runs, a great number of Gauls to personate German prisoners, and thus supplied the embarrassing deficiency.

After four years the insane career of Caligula was brought to a close by some of the officers of the prætorian guard, whom he had wantonly insulted.

219. Reign of Claudius (A.D. 41-54). — Claudius, who succeeded Caligula, made his reign a sort of landmark in the constitutional history of Rome, by the admission of the Gallic nobles to the Roman senate and the magistracies of the city. Tacitus has given us a paraphrase of a speech which the emperor made before the senate, in answer to the objections which were urged against such a course. The emperor touched first upon the fact that his own most ancient ancestor, although of Sabine origin, had been received into the city and made a member of the patrician order. This liberal policy of the fathers ought, he thought, to be followed by himself in his conduct of public affairs. Men of special talent, wherever found, should be transferred to Rome. "Nor am I unmindful of the fact," he continued, "that the Julii came to Rome from Alba, the Coruncanii from Camerium, the Porcii from Tusculum; and, not to lay too much stress upon very ancient matters, that from Etruria and Lucania and all Italy, persons have been received into the Roman senate. Finally, the city was

extended to the Alps, so that not single individuals, but entire provinces and tribes were given the Roman name. Is it a matter of regret to us that the Balbi came to us from Spain? That men not less distinguished migrated to Rome from Gallia Narbonensis? The descendants of these immigrants remain among us, nor do they yield to us in their devotion to the fatherland. What other cause was there of the downfall of Sparta and of Athens, states once powerful in arms, save this—that they closed their gates against the conquered as aliens? Our founder Romulus, however, following a wiser policy, saw many people on one and the same day his enemies and citizens of Rome.⁶ . . . But it is said that the Senones⁷ waged war against us. And did the Volscians and the Æquians never turn their swords against our state? I admit, the Gauls once captured our city; but were we not obliged to give hostages to the Etruscans, and was not our army once sent by the Samnites beneath the yoke? . . . All those institutions, conscript fathers, which now are held as sacred because they are old, were once new. The plebeian magistrates came after the patricians, the Latin magistrates after the plebeian, and those of the other peoples of Italy after the Latin. This innovation [the admission of the Gauls into the senate] will also grow old; and a measure which to-day we defend by precedents, will in the future come to be a precedent.”⁸

The generous policy here defended was acted upon, at least as to a part of the Gallic nobility.

⁶ See par. 41.

⁷ The Gallic tribe that under the lead of Brennus sacked Rome (par. 68).

⁸ Tacitus, *Annals*, xi. 23. Compare this speech of Claudius with that of Titus Manlius (par. 77).

In the field of military enterprise the reign of Claudius was signalized by the conquest of Britain. Nearly a century had now passed since the invasion of the island by Julius Cæsar, who, as has been seen, simply made a reconnaissance of the island and then withdrew (par. 191). Claudius, through his generals Plautius and Vespasian, subjugated the southern part of the island and made it into a Roman province under the name of *Britannia* (43 B.C.). Many towns soon sprang up here, which in time became important centres of Roman trade and culture, and some of which were the beginnings of great English towns of to-day. The leader of the Britons was Caractacus. He was taken captive and carried to Rome. Gazing in astonishment upon the magnificence of the imperial city, he exclaimed, "How can people possessed of such splendor at home envy Caractacus his humble cottage in Britain?"

The present reign was further distinguished by the execution of many important works of a utilitarian character. At the mouth of the Tiber, Claudius constructed a magnificent harbor, called the *Portus Romanus*. The Claudian Aqueduct, which he completed, was a stupendous work, bringing water to the city from a distance of forty-five miles.

The delight of the people in gladiatorial shows had at this time become almost an insane frenzy. Claudius determined to give an entertainment that should render insignificant all similar efforts. Upon a large lake, whose sloping banks afforded seats for the vast multitude of spectators, he exhibited a naval battle, in which two opposing fleets, bearing nineteen thousand gladiators, fought as

though in real battle, till the water was reddened with blood and littered with the wreckage of the broken ships.

Throughout his life Claudius was ruled by intriguing favorites and unworthy wives. For his fourth wife he married the "wicked Agrippina," who secured his death by means of a dish of poisoned mushrooms, in order to make place for the succession of her son Nero.

220. Reign of Nero (A.D. 54-68). — Nero was fortunate in having for his preceptor the great philosopher and moralist Seneca; but never was teacher more unfortunate in his pupil. For five years Nero, under the influence of Seneca and Burrhus, the latter the commander of the prætorians, ruled with moderation and equity. But his own mother, Agrippina, intrigued against him; and Nero, after failing in an attempt to drown her while she was crossing the bay at Baia, secured her death by the hand of an assassin.

He now slowly broke away from the guidance of his tutor Seneca, and entered upon a career filled with crimes of almost incredible enormity. The dagger and poison were in constant demand. The use of the latter had become a "fine art" in the hands of a regular profession. Like Caligula, Nero degraded the imperial purple by contending in the gladiatorial combats of the arena and in the games of the circus, appearing at one time as a charioteer, and then again as an actor and a singer of his own verses.

It was in the tenth year of his reign (A.D. 64) that the so-called Great Fire laid more than half of Rome in ashes. Temples, monuments, and buildings of every description were swept away by the flames that for six days and nights surged like a sea through the valleys and about the

base of the hills covered by the city. The people, in the dismay of the moment, were ready to catch up any rumor respecting the origin of the fire. It was reported that Nero had ordered the conflagration to be lighted in order to clear the ground so that he could rebuild the city on a more magnificent plan, and that from the roof of his palace he had enjoyed the spectacle and amused himself by singing a poem of his own composition, entitled the "Sack of Troy."

Nero did everything in his power to discredit the rumor. He went in person amidst the sufferers and distributed money with his own hand. To further turn attention from himself, he accused the Christians of having conspired to destroy the city, in order to help out their prophecies. The doctrine which was taught by some of the new sect respecting the second coming of Christ and the destruction of the world by fire, lent color to the charge. The persecution that followed was one of the most cruel recorded in the history of the Church. Many victims were covered with pitch and burned at night, to serve as torches in the imperial gardens. Tradition preserves the names of the apostles Peter and Paul as victims of this Neronian persecution.

As to Rome, the conflagration was a blessing in disguise. Requisitions of money and material were made upon all the Roman world for the rebuilding of the burnt districts. The city rose from its ashes as quickly as Athens from her ruins at the close of the Persian wars. The new buildings were made fireproof; and the narrow, crooked streets⁹ reappeared as broad and beautiful ave-

⁹ The lack of regularity in the streets is said to have been due to the hasty rebuilding of the city after its sack by the Gauls. See par. 68.

nues. A large part of the burnt region was appropriated by Nero for the buildings and grounds of an immense palace, called the Golden House. As the emperor ensconced himself in its luxurious apartments, he is said to have remarked, "Now I am housed as a man ought to be."

The emperor secured money for his enormous expenditures by fresh murders and confiscations. No one of

wealth knew but that his turn might come next. A conspiracy was formed to relieve the state of the monster. The plot was discovered, and again "the city was filled with funerals." Lucan the poet, and Seneca, the preceptor of Nero, both fell victims to the tyrant's rage.

Nero now made a tour through the East, and there plunged deeper and deeper into sensuality and crime.

The tyranny and the disgrace were no longer endurable. The legions in several of the provinces revolted. The senate declared the emperor a public enemy, and condemned him to death by scourging, to avoid which, aided by a servant, he took his own life. His last words were, "What an artist the world loses in my death!"

Nero was the sixth and last of the Julian line. The family of the great Cæsar was now extinct; but the name remained, and was adopted by all the succeeding emperors.



GALBA.

221. Galba, Otho, and Vitellius (A.D. 68-69). — These three names are usually grouped together, as their reigns were all short and uneventful. The succession, upon the death of Nero and the extinction in him of the Julian line, was in dispute, and the legions in different quarters supported the claims of their favorite leaders. One after another the three aspirants named were killed in bloody struggles for the imperial purple. The last, Vitellius, was hurled from the throne by the soldiers of Vespasian, the old and beloved commander of the legions in Palestine, which were at this time engaged in war with the Jews.

222. Reign of Vespasian (A.D. 69-79). — The accession of Flavius Vespasian marks the beginning of a period, embracing three reigns, known as the Flavian Age (A.D. 69-96). Vespasian's reign was signalized both by important military achievements abroad and by stupendous public works undertaken at Rome.

After one of the most harassing sieges recorded in history, Jerusalem was taken by Titus, son of Vespasian. The Temple was destroyed, and more than a million Jews that were crowded in the city are believed



VESPASIAN.

(From a bust in the Museum at Naples.)

to have perished. Great multitudes suffered death by crucifixion. The miserable remnants of the nation were scattered everywhere over the world. Josephus, the great historian, accompanied the conqueror to Rome. In imi-

tation of Nebuchadnezzar, Titus robbed the Temple of its sacred utensils, and bore them away as trophies. Upon the triumphal arch at Rome that bears his name, may be



"JUDAEA CAPTA."

(Coin of Vespasian.)

seen at the present day the sculptured representation of the golden candlestick, which was one of the memorials of the war.

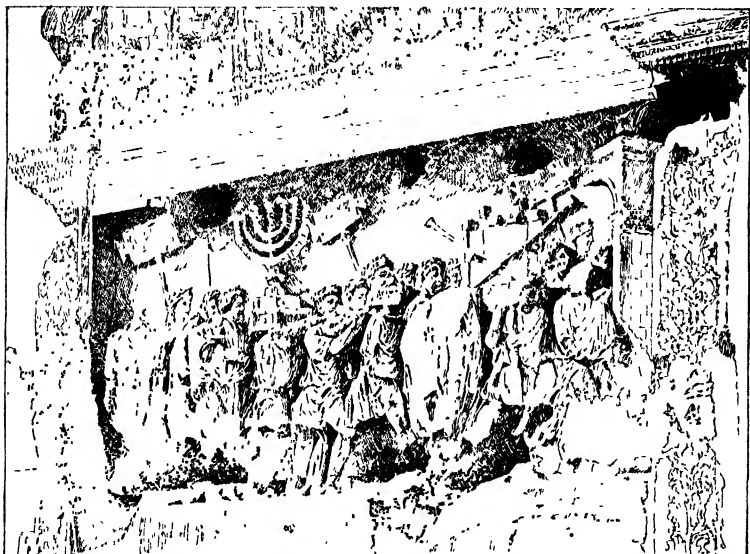
At this same time, in the opposite corner of the empire, there broke out a dangerous revolt of the Batavians under their celebrated leader Claudius Civilis. The Batavians were joined by many Germans

beyond the Rhine, and by a large part of the Gallic tribes, who were moved by the hope of regaining their freedom. Fortune for a time attended Civilis; the Roman armies were repeatedly defeated, and the authority of Rome destroyed in the whole Rhenish region and throughout a great part of Gaul. It looked for a moment as though a Gallo-German empire was to be raised on the ruins of the Roman power north of the Alps. But dissension arose among the confederates, which weakened the movement and aided Vespasian's general Cerialis in crushing the insurrection and restoring the Roman authority.

Vespasian rebuilt the Capitoline temple, which had been burned during the struggle between his soldiers and the adherents of Vitellius; he constructed a new forum, which bore his own name; and also began the erection of the celebrated Flavian amphitheatre, which was completed by his successor. After a most prosperous reign of ten years, Vespasian died A.D. 79, the first emperor after Augustus

who had not met with a violent death. At the last moment he requested his attendants to raise him upon his feet that he might "die standing," as befitted a Roman emperor.

223. **Reign of Titus** (A.D. 79-81).—In a short reign of two years Titus won the title of "the Friend and the Delight



TRIUMPHAL PROCESSION FROM THE ARCH OF TITUS.

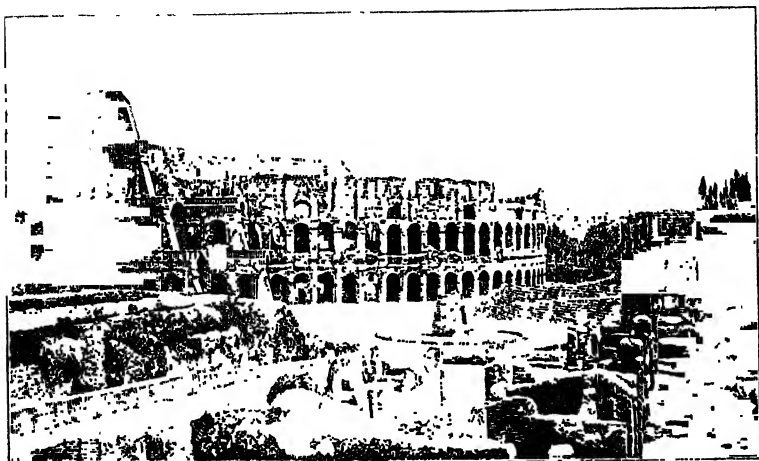
(Showing the Seven-branched Candlestick and other trophies from the Temple at Jerusalem. From a photograph)

of Mankind." He was unwearied in acts of benevolence and in bestowal of favors. Having let a day slip by without some act of kindness performed, he is said to have exclaimed reproachfully, "I have lost a day."

Titus completed and dedicated the great Flavian amphitheatre begun by his father, Vespasian. This vast structure, which accommodated more than forty thousand

spectators, is better known as the Colosseum—a name given it either because of its gigantic proportions, or on account of a colossal statue of Nero which happened to stand near it (par. 291).

The reign of Titus, though so short, was signaled by two great disasters. The first was a conflagration at Rome, which was almost as calamitous as the Great Fire in the



THE COLOSSEUM.

(From a photograph.)

reign of Nero (par. 220). The second was the destruction, by an eruption of Vesuvius, of the Campanian cities of Pompeii and Herculaneum. The cities were buried beneath showers of cinders, ashes, and streams of volcanic mud. Pliny the Elder, the great naturalist, venturing too near the mountain, to investigate the phenomenon, lost his life.¹

¹ In the year 1713, sixteen centuries after the destruction of the cities, the ruins were discovered by some persons engaged in digging a well, and since then extensive excavations have been made, which have

224. Domitian — Last of the Twelve Cæsars (A.D. 81–96).
 —Domitian, the brother of Titus, was the last of the line of emperors known as “the Twelve Cæsars.” The title, however, was assumed by, and is applied to, all the succeeding emperors; the sole reason that the first twelve



A STREET IN POMPEII.

(From a photograph)

princes are grouped together is because the Roman biographer Suetonius completed the lives of that number only.

The greater part of Domitian's reign was an exact contrast to that of his brother Titus. It was, after the first

uncovered a large part of Pompeii, and revealed to us the streets, homes, theatres, baths, shops, temples, and various monuments of the ancient city—all of which presents to us a very vivid picture of Roman life during the imperial period, eighteen hundred years ago.

few years, one succession of extravagances, tyrannies, confiscations, murders, and persecutions.

During the reign, however, transactions of interest and importance were taking place on the northern frontier-lines. In Britain the able commander Agricola, the father-in-law of the historian Tacitus, pushed the conquests of Rome to the utmost limits that they ever reached. He either subjected or crowded back the warlike tribes until he had extended the frontiers of the empire far into what is now Scotland. Then, as a protection against the incursions of the Caledonians, the ancestors of the Scottish highlanders, he constructed a line of fortresses from the Frith of Forth to the Frith of Clyde (par. 227). Behind this shelter Roman civilization developed securely and rapidly in the new-formed province.

On the Danubian frontier the Roman arms were less successful than in Britain. Here the Dacians, dwelling north of the Danube, were distressing the province of Mæsia by plundering raids across the river. Unable to reduce the marauding tribes to submission, Domitian negotiated a peace with them by the terms of which the Romans were to pay them a yearly tribute on condition that they refrain from invading the territory of Rome. This was the first time that Rome purchased peace of an enemy with gold instead of with steel. The practice became common enough later.

Under this emperor took place what is known in church history as "the second persecution of the Christians." This class, as well as the Jews, were the special objects of Domitian's hatred, because they refused to burn incense before the statues of himself which he had set up (par.



216). The name of his niece Domitilla has been preserved as one of the victims of this persecution. This is significant, since it shows that the new faith was thus early finding adherents among the higher classes, even in the royal household itself.

The last of the Twelve Cæsars perished in his own palace, and by the hands of members of his own household. The senate ordered his infamous name to be erased from the public monuments and to be blotted from the records of the Roman state.

225. The Five Good Emperors ; Reign of Nerva (A.D. 96-98). — The five emperors — Nerva, Trajan, Hadrian, and the two Antonines — who succeeded Domitian were elected by the senate, which during this period assumed something of its former weight and influence in the affairs of the empire. The wise and beneficent administration of the government by these rulers secured for them the enviable distinction of being called “the five good emperors.”

Nerva, who was an aged senator and an ex-consul, ruled paternally. He lightened the taxes, which had grown oppressive ; abolished the infamous law of treason (par. 217) under which so many innocent persons of prominence, influence, and wealth had become the victims of imperial suspicion, jealousy, and cupidity ; and brought back those citizens whom former emperors had sent into exile. Nerva died after a short reign of sixteen months, and the sceptre passed into the stronger hands of the able commander Trajan, whom Nerva had previously made his associate in the government.

226. Reign of Trajan (A.D. 98-117). — Trajan was a native of Spain, and a soldier by profession and talent.

He was the first provincial to sit in the seat of the Cæsars. From this time forward provincials were to play a part of ever-increasing importance in the affairs of the empire.

Trajan's ambition to achieve military renown led him to undertake distant and important conquests. It was the policy of Augustus --- a policy adopted by most of his successors --- to make the Danube in Europe and the Euphrates in Asia the limits of the Roman empire in those respective quarters. But Trajan determined to push the frontiers of his dominions beyond both these rivers, scorning to permit Nature by these barriers to mark out the confines of Roman sovereignty.

In the early part of his reign Trajan was busied in wars against the Dacians, tribes that, as we have seen, had often disturbed the peace of the Mæsan province. The trouble at this time was caused by Trajan



TRAJAN.

(From a statue in the Museum at Naples.)

refusing to make good the agreement of Domitian with these tribes to pay them tribute (par. 224).

In his second campaign Trajan facilitated his operations by constructing across the Danube a bridge, some of the piers of which may still be seen. This expedition resulted in the complete subjugation of the troublesome enemy. Dacia was now made into a province. Roman emigrants poured in crowds into the region, great cities sprang up,



BRIDGE OVER THE DANUBE, BUILT BY TRAJAN.

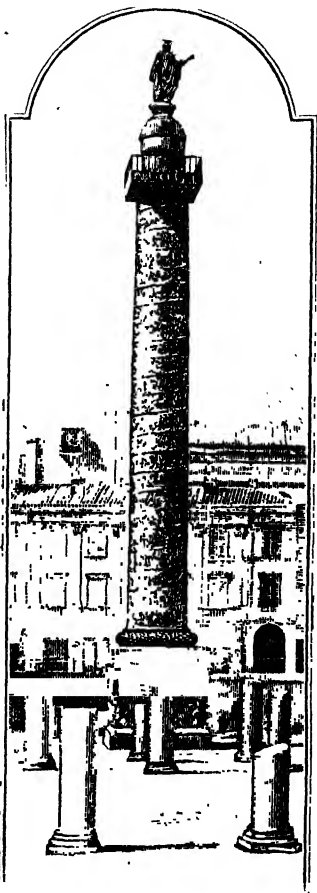
(From relief on Trajan's Column)

and the arts and culture of Rome took deep and permanent root. The modern name Roumania is a monument of this Roman conquest and colonization beyond the Danube. The Roumanians to-day speak a language that in its main elements is largely of Latin origin.²

² The Romanic-speaking peoples of Roumania and the neighboring regions number about ten millions. It seems probable that during mediæval times there was a large immigration into the present Roumania of Latin-speaking people from the districts south of the Danube, — Thrace, Macedonia, and Epirus, — which had been pretty thoroughly Romanized during the imperial period.

As a permanent memorial of his achievements, the emperor erected, in what came to be known as Trajan's Forum, a splendid marble shaft called Trajan's Column. The great pillar is almost as perfect to-day as when reared, eighteen centuries ago. It is one hundred and forty-seven feet high, and is wound from base to summit with a spiral band of sculptures, containing more than twenty-five thousand human figures. Its pictured sides are the best, and almost the only, record we now possess of the Dacian wars of the emperor.

In the latter years of his reign (A.D. 114-116) Trajan led his legions to the East, crossed the Euphrates, reduced Armenia, and wrested from the Parthians most of the territory which once formed the heart of the Assyrian monarchy. Constructing an immense flotilla of boats on the Upper Euphrates, he floated with his army down that stream to where it draws near the Tigris, opposite the city of Ctesiphon. At this point the boats were pulled from the water, dragged overland to the Tigris, and relaunched. From

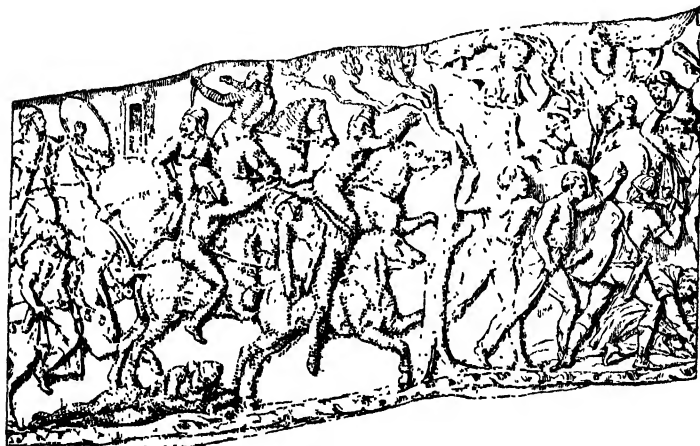


TRAJAN'S COLUMN.

(From a photograph.)

Ctesiphon the fleet floated down the Tigris and on into the Persian Gulf. Here the sight of an Indian merchantman is said to have awakened in Trajan ambitious longings to emulate the achievements of Alexander the Great. "Were I yet young," he exclaimed, "I would not stop till I had reached the limits of the Macedonian conquest."

Out of the territories he had conquered, Trajan made



BATTLE SCENE FROM TRAJAN'S COLUMN.

(On the left, Parthian horsemen in armor, fleeing before Roman riders.)

three new provinces, which bore the ancient names of Armenia, Mesopotamia, and Assyria.

To Trajan belongs the distinction of having extended the boundaries of the empire to the most distant points to which Roman ambition and prowess were ever able to push them. But in passing beyond the line of the Euphrates, Trajan had overstepped the limits of moderation, and unwisely disregarded the maxim of Augustus. His conquests in these regions were prudently abandoned by his

successor. A more permanent acquisition made by Trajan in these eastern regions was Arabia-Petræa, which was made a province in the year A.D. 106.

But Trajan was something more than a mere soldier; he had a taste for literature. Juvenal, Plutarch, and the younger Pliny wrote under his patronage, and under his direction was founded the so-called Ulpian Library, which grew into one of the most valuable collections of books in



BESIEGING A DACIAN CITY.

(From Trajan's Column.)

Rome. Moreover, as is true of almost all great conquerors, Trajan had a perfect passion for building. We have already mentioned the forum which he laid out and embellished, and which bore his name, and noticed also the wonderful marble column commemorating his Dacian victories. And not alone in the capital but also in various other cities of the empire were to be seen many monuments of his munificence.

Respecting the rapid spread of Christianity at this time, the character of the early professors of the new faith, and

the light in which they were viewed by the rulers of the Roman world, we have very important evidence in a certain letter written by Pliny the Younger to the emperor in regard to the Christians of Pontus, in Asia Minor, of which remote province Pliny was governor. Pliny speaks of the new creed as a "contagious superstition, that had seized not cities only, but the lesser towns also, and the open country." Yet he could find no fault in the converts to the new doctrines. Notwithstanding this, however, because the Christians steadily refused to sacrifice to the Roman gods, he ordered many to be put to death for their "inflexible obstinacy."

Trajan died A.D. 117, after a reign of nineteen years, one of the most prosperous and fortunate that had yet befallen the lot of the Roman people.

227. Reign of Hadrian (A.D. 117-138). --- Hadrian, a kinsman of Trajan, succeeded him in the imperial office. He possessed great ability, and displayed admirable moderation and prudence in the administration of the government. He abandoned the three provinces, Armenia, Assyria, and Mesopotamia, that had been acquired by Trajan beyond the Euphrates, and made that stream once more the eastern boundary of the empire. He saw plainly that Rome could not safely extend any farther, in that direction, the frontiers of her dominions.

More than fifteen years of his reign were spent by Hadrian in making tours of inspection through all the different provinces of the empire. He visited Britain, and secured the Roman possessions there against the Picts and Scots by erecting a continuous wall across the island from the Tyne to the Solway Firth. This rampart was con-

structed some distance to the south of the line of fortified stations that had been established by Agricola (par. 224). But the guards were not withdrawn from the more northern wall, and the strip of territory between the two walls was not abandoned by the Roman colonists who had already



THE ROMAN WALL IN NORTHERN BRITAIN

(From Gudimer's *Student's History of England*)

settled there. Either during Hadrian's reign or at a later time the southern wall was strengthened by an earthen wall or vallum constructed a little to the south of it, and running parallel with it all the way across the island.³

³ The best work on the rampart is J. C. Bruce's *The Roman Wall* (London, 1851). *Handbook to the Roman Wall*, by the same author, is an abridgment of his larger work. One of the best preserved sections of the wall can be easily reached from the Haltwhistle station on the railroad between Newcastle upon Tyne and Carlisle. The

The Hadrian wall, in places well preserved and broken at intervals by the ruins of old watch-towers and stations, can still be traced over the low hills of the English moorlands almost from sea to sea. There exists nowhere in the lands that once formed the provinces of the empire of Rome any more impressive memorial of her world-wide dominion than these ramparts, along which for three hundred years and more her sentinels kept watch and ward for civilization against the barbarian marauders of Caledonia.⁴

After his visit to Britain Hadrian returned to Gaul, and then inspected in different tours all the remaining provinces of the empire. Many of the cities which he visited he adorned with temples, theatres, and other buildings. Upon Athens, particularly, he lavished large sums in art embellishments, reviving in a measure the fading glories of the Periclean Age.

In the year 132 the Jews in Palestine, who had in a measure recovered from the blow Titus had given their nation

student-traveller in those parts should not fail to examine these interesting memorials of the Roman occupation of Britain.

⁴ "We know from written records that the troops by which these strongholds were occupied represented from twenty to thirty distinct nations. Along this line of mutual communication Gauls and Germans, Thracians and Iberians, Moors and Syrians held the frontiers of the Roman empire against the Caledonian Britons. Here some thirty languages resounded from as many camps; but the sonorous speech of Latium, not much degraded from the tone still preserved on its native soil, ever maintained its supremacy as the language of command and of every official and public document. On this narrow strip of land we may read an epitome of the history of the Romans under the empire; for myself, I feel that all I have read and written on this wide and varied subject is condensed, as it were, in the picture I realize, from a few stones and earthworks, of their occupation of our northern marches."

— MERIVALE, *History of the Romans under the Empire*, vol. iii. p. 210.

(par. 222), broke out in desperate revolt, because of the planting of a Roman colony⁵ upon the almost desolate site of Jerusalem, and the placing of the statue of Jupiter in the Holy Temple. More than half a million of Jews are said to have perished in the hopeless struggle, and the most of the survivors were driven into exile — the last dispersion of the race (A.D. 135).

The latter years of his reign Hadrian passed at Rome. It was here that this princely builder erected his most splendid structures. Among these were a magnificent temple consecrated to the goddesses Venus and



HADRIAN.

(From a bust in the Capitoline Museum.)

Roma, and a vast mausoleum erected on the banks of the Tiber, and designed as a tomb for himself (par. 297).⁶

With all his virtues, Hadrian was foolishly vain of his accomplishments, impatient of contradiction, and often most unreasonable and imperious. It is related that he put to death the architect Apollodorus for venturing to criticise the royal taste in some architectural matter. Favorinus, the rhetorician, was evidently more judicious, for when asked "why he suffered the emperor to silence

⁵ *Ælia Capitolina*.

⁶ For a description of the celebrated villa which Hadrian constructed at Tibur, the modern Tivoli, see par. 295.

him in an argument on a point of grammar, he replied, 'It is ill disputing with the master of thirty legions.' "

228. The Antonines (A.D. 138-180).—Aurelius Antoninus, surnamed Pius, the adopted son of Hadrian, and his successor, gave the Roman empire an administration singularly pure and parental. Of him it has been said that "he was the first, and, saving his colleague and successor Aurelius, the only one of the emperors who devoted himself to the task of government with a single view to the happiness of his people." Throughout his long reign of twenty-three years, the empire was in a state of profound peace. The attention of the historian is attracted by no striking events, which fact, as many have not failed to observe, illustrates admirably the oft-repeated epigram, "Happy is that people whose annals are brief."

Antoninus, early in his reign, had united with himself in the government his adopted son Marcus Aurelius, and upon the death of the former (A.D. 161) the latter succeeded quietly to his place and work. Aurelius' studious habits won for him the title of "Philosopher." He belonged to the school of the Stoics, and was a most thoughtful writer. His *Meditation* breathe the tenderest sentiments of devotion and benevolence, and make the nearest approach to the spirit of Christianity of all the writings of pagan antiquity. He established an institution or home for orphan girls, and, finding the poorer classes throughout Italy burdened by their taxes and greatly in arrears in paying them, he caused all the tax claims to be heaped in the forum and burned.

The tastes and sympathies of Aurelius would have led him to choose a life passed in retirement and study at the

capital ; but hostile movements of the Parthians, and especially invasions of the barbarians along the Rhenish and Danubian frontiers, called him from his books, and forced him to spend most of the latter years of his reign in the camp. The Parthians, who had violated their treaty with Rome, were chastised by the lieutenants of the emperor, and a part of Mesopotamia again fell under Roman authority (A.D. 165).

This war drew after it a series of terrible calamities. The returning soldiers brought with them the Asiatic plague, which swept off vast numbers, especially in Italy, where entire cities and districts were depopulated. The empire never wholly recovered from the effects of this pestilence. In the general distress and panic, the superstitious people were led to believe that it was the new sect of Christians that had called down upon the nation the anger of the gods. Aurelius permitted a fearful persecution to be instituted against them, during which the celebrated Christian fathers, Justin Martyr at Rome and the aged Polycarp at Smyrna, suffered death. The latter, when urged to save his life by reviling Christ, made this memorable reply: "Eighty and six years have I served him, and he never did me wrong ; and how can I now blaspheme my king who has saved me ?"

It should be noted that the persecution of the Christians under the pagan emperors sprung from political and social rather than religious motives, and that this is why we find the names of the best emperors, as well as those of the worst, in the list of persecutors. It was believed that the welfare of the state was bound up with the careful performance of the rites of the national worship ; and hence, while the Roman rulers were usually very tolerant, allowing all forms

of worship among their subjects, still they required that men of every faith should at least recognize the Roman gods, and burn incense before their statues. This the Christians steadily refused to do. Their neglect of the services of the temple, it was believed, angered the gods and endangered the safety of the state, bringing upon it drought, pestilence, and every disaster. This was a main reason of their persecution by the pagan emperors.

But there was also what we may call the social motive of persecution. The Christians were accused of being unsocial, and, from the Roman point of view, not without reason; for the conscience of the Christians stood in the way of their performing many of the duties required of citizens, since these acts were often connected in some way with the pagan sacrifices or worship. Again, the teachings of their religion would not allow them to be spectators at the inhuman gladiatorial games, nor frequenters of the theatre, because of the immorality of the stage. Now, to the Romans who did not share the beliefs and convictions of the Christians their conduct appeared unreasonable as well as unsocial and unpatriotic. Hence the term "obstinacy" which was applied to them, and the vehemence of the popular hatred of the new sect.

But pestilence and persecution were both forgotten amidst the imperative calls for immediate help that now came from the north. The barbarians were pushing in the Roman outposts, and pouring over the frontiers. A tribe known as the Marcomani even crossed the Alps and laid siege to Aquileia. Not since the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones (par. 159) had the inhabitants of any city of Italy seen the barbarians before their gates.

To the panic of the plague was added this new terror. Aurelius placed himself at the head of his legions, and hurried beyond the Alps. For many years, amidst the snows of winter and the heats of summer, he strove to beat back the assailants of the empire.

Once the Roman army was completely surrounded, and the soldiers were dying of thirst, when a violent thunder-



ROMAN SOLDIERS ATTACKING A GERMAN FORTRESS.

(From the Column of Trajan)

storm not only relieved their sufferings, but also struck such terror into the barbarians as to scatter them in flight. The Christians that made up the twelfth legion maintained that God had sent the rain in answer to their prayers ; but the pagan Romans interpreted the event as an intervention by Jupiter Tonans on their behalf. Upon the column of

Aurelius at Rome — where it may still be seen — was carved the scene, in which Olympian Jove the Thunderer is represented “raining and lightening out of heaven.”

Aurelius checked the inroads of the barbarians, but he could not subdue them, so weakened was the empire by the ravages of the pestilence, and so exhausted was the treasury from the heavy and constant drains upon it. At last his weak body gave way beneath the hardships of his numerous campaigns, and he died in his camp at Vindobona (now Vienna), in the nineteenth year of his reign (A.D. 180).

The united voice of the senate and people pronounced him a god, and divine worship was accorded to his statue. Never was Monarchy so justified of her children as in the lives and works of Antoninus Pius and Marcus Aurelius. As Merivale, in dwelling upon their virtues, very justly remarks, “The blameless career of these illustrious princes has furnished the best excuse for Cæsarism in all after-ages.”

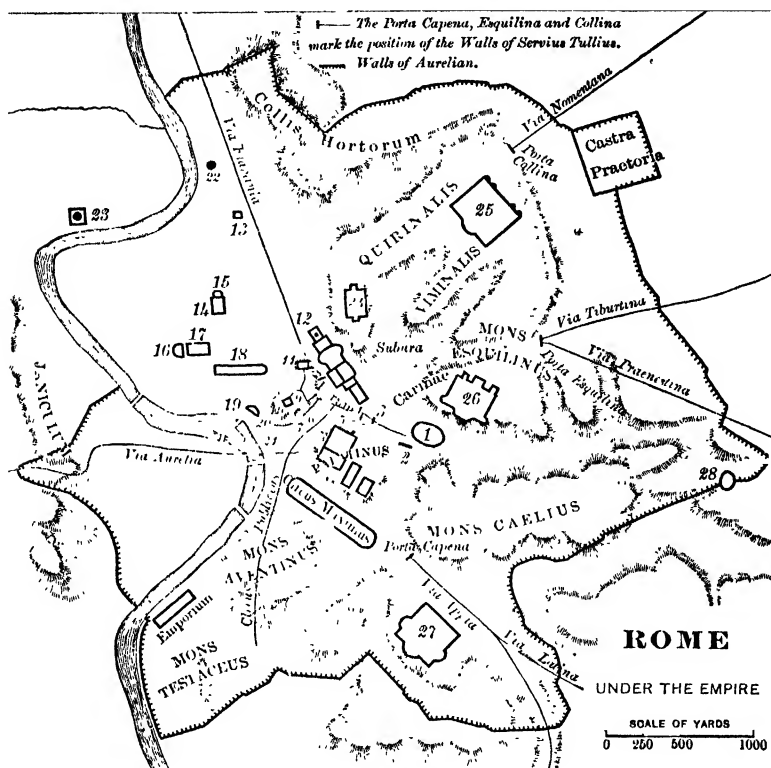
ROMAN EMPERORS FROM AUGUSTUS TO MARCUS AURELIUS.

(From 31 B.C. to A.D. 180.)

Augustus reigns 31 B.C. to A.D. 14	Titus A.D. 79-81
Tiberius A.D. 14-37	Domitian 81-96
Caligula 37-41	Nerva 96-98
Claudius 41-54	Trajan 98-117
Nero 54-68	Hadrian 117-138
Galba 68-69	Antoninus Pius . . . 138-161
Otho 69	{ Marcus Aurelius . . 161-180
Vitellius 69	{ Verus associated with
Vespasian 69-79	{ Aurelius 161-169

The first eleven, in connection with Julius Cæsar, are called the Twelve Cæsars. The last five (excluding Verus) are known as the Five Good Emperors.

REFERENCES. — TACITUS, *Annals*; *History*; and ***Life of Agricola*. PLUTARCH, *Lives of Galba and Otho*. GIBBON (E.), *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chap. ii., "Of the Union and Internal Prosperity of the Roman Empire in the Age of the Antonines"; and chap. iii., "Of the Constitution of the Empire in the Age of the Antonines." MERIVALE (C.), *History of the Romans under the Empire*, 7 vols. For general reference. MILMAN (H. II.), *The History of Christianity*, vol. ii. bk. ii. chaps. iv.-vii. RAMSAY (W. M.), **The Church in the Roman Empire before A. D. 170*, chap. x. pp. 196-225, "Pliny's Report and Trajan's Rescript"; chap. xi., "The Action of Nero towards the Christians"; chap. xv., "Causes and Extent of Persecutions." FREEMAN (E. A.), *Historical Essays* (Second Series), "The Flavian Emperors." BOISSIER (G.), *Rome and Pompeii*, chap. vi. pp. 335-435, "Pompeii." DYER (T. II.), *Pompeii, its History, Building and Antiquity*. MAU (A.), **Pompeii: its Life and Art*. Translated into English by F. W. Kelsey. WATSON (P. B.), *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*, chap. vii. pp. 257-308, "The Attitude of Aurelius towards Christianity." CAPES (W. W.), *The Age of the Antonines*, and **The Early Empire* (Epoch Series). In this latter work read chap. xii., "The Position of the Emperor"; chap. xviii., "The Moral Standard of the Age"; chap. xix., "The Revival of Religious Sentiment." The survey in these chapters embraces the first century only of the empire. HARDY (E. G.), *Christianity and the Roman Government*. A valuable study of the relations of the Christians to the imperial government during the first two centuries of the empire. MORRISON (W. D.), *The Jews under Roman Rule* (Story of the Nations), chap. vii., "The Final Conflicts." RENAN (E.), *Lectures on the Influence of the Institutions, Thought and Culture of Rome on Christianity and the Development of the Catholic Church* (Hilbert Lectures, 1880), Lec. II. pp. 70-100; on the Neronian persecution. ***The Early Christian Persecutions*. (Translations and Reprints, University of Pennsylvania, vol. iv., No. 1). Read Pliny's letter to Trajan and Trajan's reply. LANCIANI (R.), *Pagan and Christian Rome*, chap. vii., "Christian Cemeteries"; for the story of the Catacombs. THOMAS (E.), **Roman Life under the Cæsars* (from the French), chap. i., "At Pompeii"; chap. iii. § 2, pp. 70-86, "The Imperial Régime."



- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Colosseum. | 15. Pantheon. |
| 2. Arch of Constantine. | 16. Theatre of Pompey. |
| 3. Arch of Titus. | 17. Portico of Pompey. |
| 4. Via Sacra. | 18. Circus Flaminius. |
| 5. Via Nova. | 19. Theatre of Marcellus. |
| 6. Vicus Tuscus. | 20. Forum Holitorium. |
| 7. Vicus Jugarius. | 21. Forum Boarium. |
| 8. Arch of Septimius Severus. | 22. Mausoleum of Augustus. |
| 9. Clivus Capitolinus. | 23. Mausoleum of Hadrian. |
| 10. Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. | 24. Baths of Constantine. |
| 11. Arx. | 25. Baths of Diocletian. |
| 12. Column of Trajan. | 26. Baths of Titus. |
| 13. Column of Antonine. | 27. Baths of Caracalla. |
| 14. Baths of Agrippa. | 28. Amphitheatrum Castrense. |

CHAPTER XVII.

THE EMPIRE UNDER COMMODUS AND "THE BARRACK EMPERORS."

(A.D. 180-284.)

229. Reign of Commodus (A.D. 180-192).—Under the wise and able administration of the preceding five good emperors, the Roman empire had reached its culmination in power and prosperity; now, under the enfeebling influences of vice and corruption within, and the heavy blows of the barbarians without, it begins to decline rapidly to its fall.

Commodus, son of Marcus Aurelius, and the last of the Antonines, was a most unworthy successor of his illustrious father. For three years, however,

surrounded by the able generals and wise counsellors that the prudent administration of the preceding emperors had drawn to the head of affairs, Commodus ruled with fairness and lenity,



COMMODUS (as Hercules).

(From bust found in the Horti Lamiani, Rome.)

when an unsuccessful conspiracy against his life seemed suddenly to kindle all the slumbering passions of a Nero. He secured the favor of the rabble with the shows of the amphitheatre, and purchased the support of the prætorians with bribes and flatteries. Thus he was enabled for ten years to retain the throne, while perpetrating all manner of cruelties, and staining the imperial purple with the most detestable debaucheries and crimes.

Commodus had a passion for gladiatorial combats. He even descended into the arena himself. Attired in a lion's skin, and armed with the club of Hercules, he valiantly set upon and slew antagonists arrayed to represent mythological monsters, and armed with great sponges for rocks. The senate, so obsequiously servile had that body become, conferred upon him the title of the Roman Hercules, voted him the additional surnames of Pius and Felix, and even proposed to change the name of Rome and call it Colonia Commodiana.

The empire was finally relieved of the insane tyrant by some members of the royal household, who anticipated his designs against themselves by putting him to death.

230. "The Barrack Emperors."—For nearly a century after the death of Commodus (from A.D. 192 to 284), the emperors were elected by the army, and hence the rulers for this period have been called "the Barrack Emperors." The character of the period is revealed by the fact that of the twenty-five emperors who mounted the throne during this time, all except four came to their deaths by violence. To internal disorders were added the terror of barbarian invasions. On every side savage hordes were breaking into the empire to rob, to murder, and to burn.

231. The Public Sale of the Empire (A.D. 193). — The beginning of these troublous times was marked by a shameful proceeding on the part of the prætorians. Upon the death of Commodus, Pertinax, a distinguished senator, was placed on the throne; but his efforts to enforce discipline among the prætorians aroused their anger, and he was slain by them after a short reign of only three months. These soldiers then gave out notice that they would sell the empire to the highest bidder. It was accordingly set up for sale at the prætorian camp, and struck off to Didius Julianus, a wealthy senator, who promised twenty-five thousand sesterces to each of the twelve thousand soldiers at this time composing the guard. So the price of the empire was about three hundred million sesterces.⁸

But these turbulent and insolent soldiers at the capital of the empire were not to have things entirely their own way. As soon as the news of the disgraceful transaction reached the legions on the frontiers, they rose as a single man in indignant revolt. Each of the three armies that held the Euphrates, the Rhine, and the Danube proclaimed its favorite commander emperor. The leader of the Danubian troops was Septimius Severus, a man of great energy and force of character. He knew that there were other competitors for the throne, and that the prize would be his who first seized it. Instantly he set his veterans in motion and was soon at Rome. The prætorians were no match for the trained legionaries of the frontiers, and did not even attempt to defend their emperor, who was taken prisoner and put to death after a reign of sixty-five days.

232. Reign of Septimius Severus (A.D. 193-211). — One

⁸ About \$12,000,000.

of the first acts of Severus was to organize a new body-guard of fifty thousand legionaries, to take the place of the unworthy prætorians, whom, as a punishment for the insult they had offered to the Roman state, he disbanded, and banished from the capital, and forbade to approach within a hundred miles of its walls. He next crushed his two rival competitors, and was then undisputed master of the empire. He put to death forty senators for having favored his late rivals, and completely destroyed the power of that body.

Committing to the prefect of the new prætorian guard the management of affairs at the capital, Severus passed the greater part of his long and prosperous reign upon the frontiers. At one time he was chastising the Parthians beyond the Euphrates, and at another, pushing back the Caledonian tribes from the Hadrian wall in the opposite corner of his dominions. Finally, in Britain, in his camp at York, death overtook him.

233. Reign of Caracalla (A.D. 211-217).---Severus conferred the empire upon his two sons, Caracalla and Geta. Caracalla murdered his brother, and then ordered Papinian, the celebrated jurist, to make a public argument in vindication of the fratricide. When that great lawyer refused, saying that "it was easier to commit such a crime than to justify it," he put him to death. Thousands fell victims to the tyrant's senseless rage. Driven by remorse and fear, he fled from the capital and wandered about the most distant provinces. At Alexandria, on account of some uncomplimentary remarks made by the citizens upon his personal appearance, he ordered a general massacre of the inhabitants. Finally, after a reign of six years, the monster was slain in a remote corner of Syria.

Caracalla's sole political act of real importance was the bestowal of citizenship upon all the free inhabitants of the empire ; and this he did, not to give them a just privilege, but that he might collect from them certain special taxes which only Roman citizens had to pay. Before the reign of Caracalla it was only particular classes of the provincials, or the inhabitants of some particular city or province,



CARACALLA.

(From bust in the Museum at Naples.)

that, as a mark of special favor, had from time to time been admitted to the rights of citizenship. But by this wholesale act of Caracalla, the entire free population of the empire outside of Italy that did not already possess the rights of the city, was made Roman, at least in name and nominal privilege. In the words of Merivale, "The city had become the world, or, viewed from the other side, the world had become the city." That vast work, the

beginnings of which we saw in the dawn of Roman history (par. 30), was now completed.

It must not be supposed, however, that the edict* of Caracalla did much more than register an already accomplished fact. It seems probable that by this time a great part of the freemen of the empire were already enjoying the Roman franchise. It will be recalled that Julius Caesar was a zealous champion of a liberal policy as regards the granting of Roman citizenship to the provincials (par. 200). He freely bestowed the Roman franchise upon individuals and communities outside of Italy. This liberal policy had been resumed by the emperors after Caligula. The emperor Claudius, as we have seen, even threw open the sacred precincts of the Roman senate to the Gallic nobles as a class (par. 219). Vespasian granted Latin rights to all those cities of Spain that did not already possess the Roman franchise, and Hadrian is thought to have given these same communities the full rights of the city. And thus for two centuries and more the great work had gone on steadily in the provinces of the empire, so that when Caracalla issued his edict it is probable, as we have said, that a great part of the provincials already possessed the coveted prize of Roman citizenship.⁹

234. Reign of Elagabalus (A.D. 218-222).— Upon the death of Caracalla the purple was assumed by Macrinus, the officer who had instigated the murder of the emperor. He remained in the East, where the severity of his discipline caused the soldiers who had raised him to power to

⁹ A census taken by Claudius in the year A.D. 47 gave the number of citizens of military age, thus early in the imperial period, as 6,944,000. Consult census table, p. 333.

revolt. The garrison at Emesa set up as emperor Elagabalus, a beautiful boy who in that place officiated as high priest in the temple of the Syrian sun-god, and who the soldiers were led to believe was the son of the murdered Caracalla. The legions that adhered to Macrinus were quickly crushed, and he himself was slain.

So un-Roman had the Romans become that this oriental priest, thus thrust forward by the Syrian legions, was at once recognized at Rome by both senate and people as their emperor. He carried to Italy all his Eastern notions and manners, and there entered upon a short reign of four years, characterized by all those extravagances and cruelties that are so apt to mark the rule of an Asiatic despot. His palace was the scene of the most profligate dissipation. He even created a senate of women whose duty it was to attend to matters of dress, calls, amusements, and etiquette.

The prætorians, at length tiring of their priest-emperor, put him to death, threw his body into the Tiber, and set up in his place Alexander Severus, a kinsman of the murdered prince.

235. Reign of Alexander Severus (A.D. 222--235).—Severus restored the virtues of the Age of the Antonines. His administration was pure and energetic; but he strove in vain to resist the corrupt and downward tendencies of the times. He was assassinated, after a reign of fourteen years, by his seditious soldiers, who were angered by his efforts to reduce them to discipline. They invested with the imperial purple an obscure officer named Maximin, a Thracian peasant, whose sole recommendation for this dignity was his gigantic stature and great strength of

limbs. Rome had now sunk to the lowest possible degradation. We may pass rapidly over the next fifty years of the empire.

236. The Thirty Tyrants (A.D. 251–268). — Maximin was followed swiftly by Gordian, Philip, and Decius, and then came what is called the “Age of the Thirty Tyrants.” The imperial sceptre being held by weak Emperors, there sprung up, in every part of the empire, competitors for the



TRIUMPH OF SAPOR OVER VALERIAN.¹

throne — several rivals frequently appearing in the field at the same time. The barbarians pressed upon all the frontiers, and thrust themselves into all the provinces. The empire seemed on the point of falling to pieces.¹ But a

¹ It was during this period that the emperor Valerian (A.D. 253–260), in a battle with the Persians before Edessa, in Mesopotamia, was defeated and taken prisoner by Sapor, the Persian king. A large rock tablet (see cut above), still to be seen near the Persian town of Shiraz, is believed to commemorate the triumph of Sapor over the unfortunate emperor.

fortunate succession of five good emperors — Claudius, Aurelian, Tacitus, Probus, and Carus (A.D. 268-284) — restored for a time the ancient boundaries and again forced together into some sort of union the fragments of the shattered state.

237. The Fall of Palmyra (A.D. 273). — The most noted of the usurpers of authority in the provinces during the period of anarchy of which we have spoken was Odenatus, prince of Palmyra, a city occupying an oasis in the midst of the Syrian desert, midway between the Mediterranean and the Euphrates. In gratitude for the aid he had rendered the Romans against the Parthians, the senate had bestowed upon him titles and honors. When the empire began to show signs of weakness and approaching dissolution, Odenatus conceived the ambitious project of erecting upon its ruins in the East a great Palmyrian kingdom.

Upon the death of Odenatus, his wife Zenobia succeeded to his authority and to his ambitions. This famous princess claimed descent from Cleopatra, and it is certain that in the charms of personal beauty she was the rival of the Egyptian queen. Boldly assuming the title of "Queen of the East," she bade defiance to the emperors of Rome. Aurelian marched against her, and defeating her armies in the open field, drove them within the walls of Palmyra. After a long siege the city was taken, and, in punishment for a second uprising, given to the flames. The adviser of the queen, the celebrated rhetorician Longinus, was put to death; but Zenobia was spared, and carried a captive to Rome. After having been led in golden chains in the triumphal procession of Aurelian, the queen was given a beautiful villa in the vicinity of Tibur, where, sur-

rounded by her children, she passed the remainder of her checkered life.²

The ruins of Palmyra are among the most interesting remains of Roman or Grecian civilization in the East. For a long time even the site of the city was lost to the civilized world. The Bedouins, however, knew the spot, and told strange stories of a ruined city with splendid temples and long colonnades far away in the Syrian desert. Their accounts awakened an interest in the wonderful city, and towards the close of the seventeenth century some explorers reached the spot. The sketches they brought back of the ruins of the long-lost city produced almost as much astonishment as did the discoveries at a later time of Botta and Layard at Nineveh. The principal features of the ruins are the remains of the great Temple of the Sun, and of the colonnade, which was almost a mile in length. Many of the marble columns that flanked this magnificent avenue are still erect, stretching in a long line over the desert.³

REFERENCES. — MOMMSEN (T.), *The Provinces of the Roman Empire from Caesar to Diocletian*, 2 vols. FREEMAN (E. A.), *Historical Essays* (Third Series), "The Illyrian Emperors and their Lands." GIBBON (E.), *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chaps. iv-xii. WRIGHT (W.), *An Account of Palmyra and Zenobia*.

² Read Ware's *Zenobia and Aurelian*.

³ Hadrian, the Antonines, and other Roman emperors had aided the ambitious Palmyrians in the architectural adornment of their capital.

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE REIGN OF DIOCLETIAN.

(A.D. 284 305.)

238. General Statement. — The accession of Diocletian marks an important era in the history of the Roman empire. The two matters of chief importance connected with his reign are the changes he effected in the government and his persecutions of the Christians.

Diocletian's governmental reforms, though radical, were salutary, and infused such fresh vitality into the frame of the dying state as to give it a new lease of life for another term of nearly two hundred years.

239. The Empire becomes an Undisguised Oriental Monarchy.

— There are two chief and sharply contrasted types of government in the world. Under the one type public affairs are carried on through discussions, ballotings, and elections in assemblies of the people; under the other type all public matters are in the hands of one man, and his will



DIOCLETIAN.

(From a bust in Capitoline Museum.)

is law. The first type gives us the free republic, the second the absolute monarchy. The Asiatic peoples from the earliest times have lived under governments of the monarchical type; the cities of ancient Greece and Italy early developed republican constitutions. It was the adoption by them of popular government which we think was one chief cause of their superiority to the Asiatic peoples.

We have followed the career of the Romans through the four centuries and more when they were a self-governing people; and we have watched the transformation of their republican government into one of the Asiatic type. But we have also noticed how up to the time we have now reached the really monarchical character of the government was more or less carefully concealed under the forms and names of the old republic. This, as we already have said, was a concession made by the emperors to the feelings and sentiments of the Roman people (par. 208); for a people who have once governed themselves cling very tenaciously to the forms, at least, of their free institutions.

But nearly three centuries of imperial rule had accustomed the Roman people to monarchical forms of government; while the intolerable anarchy and distress of the last century had prepared all to welcome any change that seemed to guarantee peace and order and security.

Diocletian acted in accordance with the real facts. Realizing that republican government among the Romans had passed away forever, and that its forms were now absolutely meaningless, he cast aside all the masks with which Augustus had concealed his actually unlimited power and which fear or policy had led his successors, with greater or less consistency, to retain, and let the government stand

forth naked in its true character as an absolute Asiatic monarchy.

In contrasting the policy of Augustus with that of Diocletian, Gibbon says: "It was the aim of the one to disguise, and the object of the other to display, the unbounded powers which the emperors possessed over the Roman world."

So now the forms of the old classical type of government, which symbolized free popular debates, elections, votings, decisions by majorities, — all these things with all that they represented were swept away forever in the Græco-Roman world, and the governmental principles and ideals of Asia became dominant in that empire which the opposite principles and ideals had called into existence.

The significant change effected in the character of the government was marked by Diocletian's assumption of the titles of Asiatic royalty, and his adoption of the court ceremonials and etiquette of the East. He took the title of *Dominus*, "Lord," which now for the first time became the designation of a ruler of the Roman people. That this could be safely done, that it in fact strengthened Diocletian's position, shows what a vast change had come over the Roman people since the time when the prudent Augustus insisted that he should be regarded only as the "first citizen" of the commonwealth (par. 208).

Diocletian also placed upon his head the diadem of the East. Neither did this call forth any popular protest, which further illustrates the inner revolution that had found place in the populace since the time when the great Julius, through fear, pushed aside the crown offered him by Mark Antony (par. 201).

Along with the adoption of these symbols of Asiatic monarchy, Diocletian introduced the court etiquette of the East. He clothed himself in magnificent robes of silk and gold. All who approached him, whether of low or of high rank, were required to prostrate themselves to the ground, a form of oriental and servile adoration which the free races of the West had hitherto, with manly disdain, refused to render to their magistrates and rulers.

The imperial household, also, now assumed a distinctively oriental character. Ostentation and extravagance marked all the appointments of the palace. Its apartments were crowded with retinues of servants and officers of every rank, and the person of the emperor was hedged around with all the "pomp and majesty of oriental monarchy."

The incoming of the absolute monarchy meant, of course, the last blow to local, municipal freedom (par. 167). The little liberty that still survived in the cities or municipalities of the empire was virtually swept away. There was no place under the new government for any degree of genuine local independence and self-direction. Italy was now also reduced to a level in servitude with the provinces, and was taxed and ruled like the other parts of the empire.

240. Changes in the Administrative System. -- The century of anarchy which preceded the accession of Diocletian, and the death, during this period, by assassination, of ten of the twenty-five wearers of the imperial purple,⁵ had made manifest the need of a system which would discourage assassination, and provide a regular mode of succession to the throne. Diocletian devised a system, the aim of which

⁵ This enumeration does not include the so-called "Thirty Tyrants," of whom many met death by violence.

was to compass both these ends. First, he chose as a colleague a companion ruler, Maximian, who, like himself, bore the title of Augustus. Then each of the co-emperors associated with himself an assistant, who took the title of Cæsar, and was considered the son and heir of the emperor. There were thus two Augusti and two Cæsars.⁶ Milan, in Italy, became the capital and residence of Maximian; while Nicomedia, in Asia Minor, became the seat of the court of Diocletian. The Augusti took charge of the countries near their respective capitals, while the younger and more active Cæsars, Galerius and Constantius, were assigned the government of the more distant and turbulent provinces.⁷ The vigorous administration of the government in every quarter of the empire was thus secured.

A most serious drawback to this system was the heavy expense involved in the maintenance of four courts with their endless retinues of officers and dependents. It was complained that the number of those who received the revenues of the state was greater than that of those who contributed to them. The burden of taxation grew unendurable. Husbandry in some regions ceased, and great numbers were reduced to beggary or driven into brigandage. The magistrates of the cities⁸ and towns were made responsible for the payment of the taxes due the government from their respective communities, and hence office-

⁶ From the number of rulers, this government has received the name of *tetrarchy*.

⁷ The division of the provinces among the co-rulers was as follows: Diocletian administered the affairs of Thrace, Asia, and Egypt; Maximian ruled Italy and Africa; Constantius held Gaul, Spain, and Britain; and Galerius governed Illyricum, Macedonia, and Greece.

⁸ The *decuriones* and *duumviri*.

holding became not an honor to be coveted, but a burden to be evaded. It was this vicious system of taxation which more than any other one cause, after slavery, contributed to the depopulation, impoverishment, and final downfall of the empire.

241. The Revolt of the Peasants in Gaul. — The misery caused by the crushing burden of taxes and rents led to an insurrection of the peasants (*Bagaudæ*) in Gaul. We should notice that this was not an uprising of slaves, such as that in Sicily towards the end of the republic (par. 147), but a revolt of semi-servile peasants. What it is important to notice is that already Roman slavery was passing into serfdom, a system of servitude which characterized the mediæval centuries of European history. This insurrection of the Gallic peasantry we may thus look upon as the first of those endless revolts which characterize the history of the serfs of the Middle Ages.

The uprising was finally suppressed, but the cause of the wretchedness of the peasants was not removed, and their unrest and dissatisfaction was one thing which made easy the seizure of the Gallic provinces by the German invaders a century and a half later. The poor semi-serfs looked upon the barbarians as deliverers.

242. Persecution of the Christians. — Some writers have supposed that the *Bagaudæ* were Christians and that they were stirred to revolt, not only by fiscal oppression, but also by the persecution to which they were subjected by the government because of their religion. There is no certain evidence that this was so; but it is nevertheless true that towards the end of his reign Diocletian inaugurated against the Christians a persecution which contin-

ued long after his abdication, and which was the severest, as it was, the last, waged against the church by the pagan emperors.¹

We have already mentioned some of the main causes of these constantly recurring persecutions of the Christians (par. 228). To these various grounds of dislike and hatred of the new converts on the part of the Roman rulers there was added in the case of Diocletian another of a somewhat different nature. It was the aim and ambition of this emperor, as we have seen, to restore the unity of the empire, and, in place of the prevailing anarchy, division, and discord, to establish order, union, and harmony.

To Diocletian it seemed that this end could be attained only by the restoration of the ancient cults; for like many statesmen of to-day, he was convinced that religion must form the basis of any permanent system of government. Accordingly Diocletian labored to revive in the masses faith in their ancestral gods, and to lead them to renew, in reverent spirit, the neglected sacrifices of the altar and the services of the temple.

Now the Christians obstinately refused to take any part in this revival movement. They would not sacrifice to the national gods, or burn incense before the statues of the emperor. Furthermore, they had now come to form a compact, well-organized society, that was animated by a wonderful spirit of unity and brotherhood. This Christian society thus assumed the appearance of "a state within the state," and rendered impossible of attainment that unity of ideas, customs, and spirit which was the aim

¹ This Diocletian persecution is known as the "Tenth" persecution of the Christians.

of Diocletian's measures of political and religious reform.² But Diocletian was averse to using force to secure the unity at which he aimed, and it is not probable that he would have resorted to persecution in order to attain it had he not been urged to this course by the fanatical Galerius, and particularly by the priests of the pagan cults, who perceived that their influence was being undermined through the spread of the new religion, and by those craftsmen who, like the silversmiths of Ephesus in the time of the Apostles,³ saw their gains endangered. Instigated by these partisans of the ancient worship, Diocletian in the year A.D. 303 issued the first of a series of edicts against the Christian sect.

The Christians at this time were not numerous. It is estimated that they did not include more than one-twelfth of the population in the eastern provinces of the empire, and one-fifteenth of that in the western.⁴ But because of their close association, and because of the spirit which animated them, they formed by far the most influential party in the Roman state.

The imperial decrees ordered that the churches of the Christians should be torn down; that the property of the new societies should be confiscated; that the sacred writings of the sect should be burned; and that the Christians

² "With the organization of the Catholic Church began the real struggle between the empire and Christianity, which could have only one of two issues — the suppression of the religious organization, or its acceptance by and incorporation in the empire." — HARDY, *Christianity and the Roman Government*, p. 165.

³ Acts, xix. 24-28.

⁴ Uhlhorn, *Conflict of Heathenism and Christianity*, p. 402. The estimate is probably too low.

themselves, unless they should join in the sacrifices to the gods of the state, should be pursued to death as outlaws.

For ten years, which, however, were broken by short periods of respite, the Christians were subjected to the fierce flames of persecution.⁵ They were cast into dungeons, thrown to the wild beasts in the amphitheatre, burned over a slow fire, and put to death by every other mode of torture that ingenious cruelty could devise. But nothing could shake their constancy. They courted the death that secured them, as they firmly believed, immediate entrance upon an existence of unending happiness. The exhibition of devotion and steadfastness shown by the martyrs won multitudes to the persecuted faith.

The persecution, as we have already said, continued after the abdication of Diocletian. It was finally brought to an end in the year A.D. 311 by an edict issued by Galerius. He was then on his deathbed, and in his decree asked the Christians to beseech their god in prayer on his behalf. This decree marks the beginning of the end of the persecution of the Church by the pagan government of Rome.

It was during this and the various other persecutions that vexed the Church in the second and third centuries that the Christians sought refuge in the Catacombs, those vast subterranean galleries and chambers under the city of Rome. Here the Christians lived and buried their dead, and on the walls of the chambers sketched rude symbols of their hope and faith. It was in the darkness of these subterranean abodes that Christian art had its beginnings.

243. The Abdication of Diocletian (A.D. 304).—After a

⁵ Constantius refused to join in the persecution, and, accordingly, the Christians of Gaul remained unmolested.

prosperous reign of twenty years, becoming weary of the cares of state, Diocletian abdicated the throne, — the first recorded instance, it is affirmed, of a monarch voluntarily stepping down from the seat of authority,⁶ — and forced or induced his colleague Maximian also to lay down his authority on the same day. Galerius and Constantius were, by this act, advanced to the purple and made Augusti; and two new associates were appointed as Cæsars.

Diocletian, having thus enjoyed the extreme satisfaction of seeing the imperial authority quietly and successfully transmitted by his system, without the dictation of the insolent prætorians or the interference of the turbulent legionaries, now retired to his country seat at Salona, on the eastern shore of the Adriatic, and there devoted himself to rural pursuits. It is related that, when Maximian wrote him urging him to endeavor, with him, to regain the power they had laid aside, he replied, "Were you but to come to Salona and see the cabbages which I raise in my garden with my own hands, you would no longer talk to me of empire."

REFERENCES. — ** *Translations and Reprints*, vol. iv., No. 1. (University of Pennsylvania). Read "Edicts of Diocletian" and "Edict of Toleration by Galerius." MASON (A. J.), *The Persecution of Diocletian*, chap. iii., "Motives of the Persecution." MILMAN (H. H.), *The History of Christianity*, vol. ii. bk. ii. chap. ix., "The Persecution under Diocletian." GIBBON (E.), *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chap. xiii. UHLHORN (G.), ** *Conflict of Christianity with Heathenism* (translated from the German by E. C. Smyth and C. J. H. Ropes), bk. iii. chap. i. pp. 385-419. BOISSIER (G.), *Rome and Pompeii*, chap. iii. pp. 139-213, "The Catacombs."

⁶ "Diocletian acquired the glory of giving to the world the first example of a resignation, which has not been very frequently imitated by succeeding monarchs." — GIBBON, *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, vol. i. p. 471.

CHAPTER XIX.

REIGN OF CONSTANTINE THE GREAT AND ESTABLISHMENT OF CHRISTIANITY AS THE FAVORED RELIGION OF THE EMPIRE.

(A.D. 306-337.)

244. Renewal of Troubles respecting the Succession. — As we have just seen, Diocletian's device of the tetrarchy did secure for once the orderly transfer of the reins of government from the hands of one set of rulers to those of another (par. 243). But the system was too complicated to be worked by any hand less strong and skilful than that of the one who devised it. As the historian Gibbon says, "It required such a fortunate mixture of different tempers and abilities as could scarcely be found or even expected a second time; two emperors without jealousy, two Cæsars without ambition, and the same general interests invariably pursued by four independent princes."⁷

Galerius and Constantius, who, it will be remembered, had become Augusti on the abdication of Diocletian and Maximian, had reigned together only one year when the latter died at York, in Britain. His soldiers, disregarding the rule of succession as determined by the system of Diocletian, proclaimed his son Constantine emperor. Six competitors for the throne arose in different quarters. For eighteen years Constantine fought to gain the supremacy.

⁷ *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, vol. i. p. 451.

245. The Battle of the Milvian Bridge (A.D. 312): "In this Sign conquer."⁸—One of the most important of the battles that took place between the contending rivals for the imperial purple was the battle of the Milvian Bridge, in which Maxentius, who was holding Italy and Africa, was defeated by Constantine. The circumstances attending this historic battle were these. Constantine, who was in the North, venturously crossed the Alps with an army of forty thousand men. Defeating the forces of Maxentius in the battle of Turin, he marched southward, and finally engaged his rival in a decisive combat at the Milvian Bridge on the Tiber, about two miles from Rome.

Constantine's standard on this celebrated battlefield was the Christian Cross. He had been led to adopt this emblem through the appearance, as once he prayed to the sun-god, of a cross above the setting sun, with this inscription upon it: "By this sign conquer."⁹ Obedient unto the celestial vision, Constantine had at once made the Cross his banner,¹⁰ and it was beneath this emblem that his soldiers marched to victory at the battle of the Milvian Bridge.

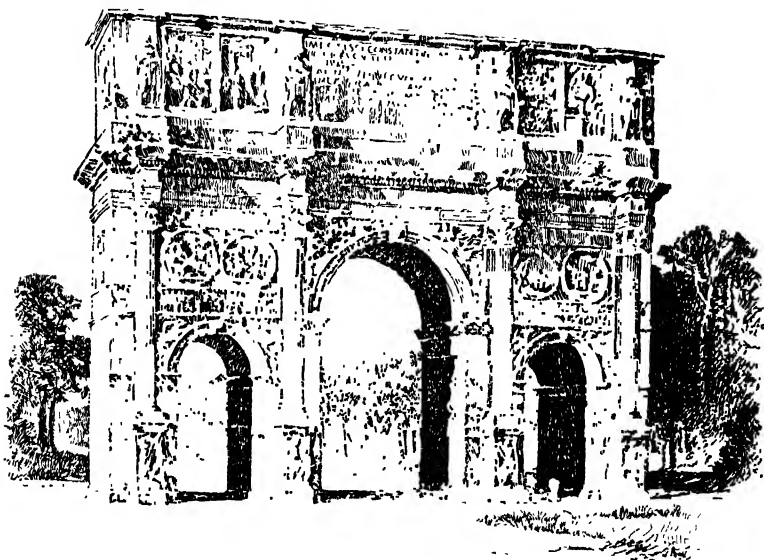
Whatever may have been the circumstances or the motives which led Constantine to make the Cross his standard, this act of his constitutes a turning point in the history of the Roman empire, and especially in that of the Christian Church. Christianity had come into the world

⁸ *In hoc signo vinces.*

⁹ In Greek, *ἐν τούτῳ νικᾷ.*

¹⁰ The new standard was called the *Labarum* (from the Celtic *lavar*, meaning *command*). It consisted of a banner inscribed with the Greek letters XP, the first being a symbol of the Cross, and both forming a monogram of the word *Christ*. The letters are the initials of the Greek *Christos*.

as a religion of peace and good will. The Master had commanded his disciples to put up the sword, and had forbidden its use by them either in the spread or in the defence of the new faith. For three centuries now his followers had obeyed literally this injunction of the Founder



ARCH OF CONSTANTINE, AS IT APPEARS TO-DAY.

(Erected by the Roman Senate in commemoration of Constantine's victory over Maxentius at the Milvian Bridge)

of the Church, so that a Quaker, non-military spirit had up to this time characterized the new sect. By many of the early Christians the profession of arms had been declared to be incompatible with the Christian life.

Now in a moment all this was changed. The most sacred emblem of the new faith was made a battle-standard,

and into the new religion was infused the military spirit of the imperial government that had made that emblem the ensign of the state. From the day of the battle at the Milvian Bridge, a martial spirit has animated the religion of the Prince of Peace. Since then, Christian warriors have often made the Cross their battle-standard. This infusion into the Church of the military spirit of Rome was one of the most important consequences of the espousal of the Christian cause by the emperor Constantine.

246. The Battles of Adrianople and Chalcedon (A.D. 323). — The defeat of Maxentius left Constantine but one remaining rival — Licinius, who was holding the East. The ten years immediately following the battle at the Milvian Bridge witnessed two wars between the co-regents of the empire. The last great battles of the rivals were fought at Adrianople and Chalcedon (A.D. 323). On the first field Constantine with an army of a hundred and fifty thousand men met his adversary with a force of a hundred and sixty-five thousand. The battle-cry of the soldiers of Constantine was, "God our Saviour," that of the enemy, "On our side are many gods, on theirs only one."

Licinius was defeated, with a loss in killed of thirty-four thousand men. He himself escaped from the field, raised another army in Asia Minor, and tried once more the fortunes of battle at Chalcedon. Here he suffered another crushing defeat, and soon afterwards was captured and put to death. Constantine was now the sole ruler of the Roman world.

247. Constantine makes Christianity the Religion of the Court. — By a decree issued at Milan in A.D. 313, the year after the battle at the Milvian Bridge, Constantine placed

Christianity on an equal footing with the other religions of the empire. The language of this famous edict of toleration, the Magna Charta, as it has been called, of the Church, was as follows: "We grant to Christians and to all others full liberty of following that religion which each may choose."¹

But by subsequent edicts Constantine made Christianity in effect the state religion and extended to it a patronage which he withheld from the old pagan worship. By the year A.D. 321 he had granted the Christian societies the right to receive gifts and legacies, and he himself enriched the Church with donations of money and grants of land. This marks the beginning of the great possessions of the Church, and with these the entrance into it of a worldly spirit. From this moment can be traced the decay of its primitive simplicity, and a decline from its early high moral standard.

It is these deplorable results of the imperial patronage that Dante laments in his well-known lines:

Ah, Constantine! of how much ill wail'st thou,
Not thy conversion, but that marriage dower
Which the first wealthy Father took from thee!²

Another of Constantine's acts touching the new religion is of special historical interest and importance. He recognized the Christian Sunday, "the day of the sun," as a day of rest, forbidding ordinary work on that day, and ordering that Christian soldiers be then permitted to attend the services of their church. This recognition by the civil

¹ *Daremus et Christianis et omnibus liberam potestatem sequendi religionem quam quisque voluisset.*

² *Inferno*, xix. 115-117 [Longfellow's Trans.].

authority of the Christian Sabbath meant much for the slave. Now, for the first time in the history of the Aryan peoples,³ the slave had one day of rest in each week. It was a good augury of the happier time coming when all the days should be his own.

248. The Church Council of Nicæa (A.D. 325). — With the view of harmonizing the different sects that had sprung up among the Christians, and to settle the controversy between the Arians and the Athanasians⁴ respecting the nature of Christ, — the former denied his equality with God the Father, — Constantine called the first (Ecumenical, or General Council of the Church, at Nicæa, a town of Asia Minor, A.D. 325. Arianism was denounced, and a formula of Christian faith adopted, which is known as the Nicene Creed.

249. Constantine founds Constantinople, the New Rome, on the Bosphorus (A.D. 330). — After the recognition of Christianity, the most important act of Constantine was the selection of Byzantium, on the Bosphorus, as the new capital of the empire. Constantine was not the first to entertain the idea of seeking in the East a new centre for the Roman world. The anger of the Italians was stirred against the first Cæsar by the mere report that he intended to restore ancient Ilium, the fabled cradle of the Roman race, and make that the capital of the empire (par. 201).

³ In the Semitic world we meet with the institution of a rest-day among the early Babylonians. Among the ancient Hebrews, this rest-day acquired a prominent place in the religious system, and was by them bequeathed to Christianity.

⁴ The Arians were the followers of Arius, a presbyter of Alexandria, in Egypt; the Athanasians, of Athanasius, archdeacon and later bishop of the same city.

Mark Antony was also believed to have had in mind the transfer of the seat of government from the West to the East (par. 206).

There were no sufficient grounds, however, at the time of the establishment of the empire for shifting the location of the capital; but since then the situation of things had wholly changed, and now there were many and weighty reasons urging Constantine to establish a new capital in the East.⁵

There were urgent military reasons for making the change. The most dangerous enemies of the empire now were the barbarians behind the Danube, and the kings of the recently restored Persian monarchy (par. 253, n. 2). This condition of things rendered almost necessary the establishment in the East of a new and permanent basis for military operations, and pointed to Byzantium, with its admirable strategic position, as the site, above all others, adapted to the needs of the imperilled empire.

There were also commercial reasons for the transfer of the capital. Rome had long before this ceased to be in any sense the commercial centre of the state, as it was in early times. Through the Roman conquest of Greece and Asia, the centre of the population, wealth, and commerce of the empire had shifted eastward. Now, of all the cities in the East, Byzantium was the one most favorably situated to become the commercial metropolis of the enlarged state. The trade advantages offered by the site had been recog-

⁵ It should be borne in mind that the Old Rome had already been in a measure deposed from its imperial position by Diocletian, and Milan made the residence of the subordinate emperor. But Constantine, by the founding of the new capital in the East, made the deposition politically and socially complete and final.

nized by the early Greeks, and in their age of colonization they had established a colony there. The popular designation, *Golden Horn*, applied to the harbor, is significant; the curving shore of the bay suggested the term "Horn," while "the epithet 'Golden' was expressive of the riches which every wind wafted into the secure and capacious harbor."⁶

Added to these military and commercial reasons for the removal of the capital from the Tiber to the Bosphorus, were religious motives. Constantine had resolved to make Christianity the basis of his government. But the religious associations clinging to the temples, and attached to every spot of the consecrated soil of the old capital, stood as rooted obstacles in the way of his carrying out this resolve, so long as Rome remained the seat of the imperial court. The priests of the pagan shrines particularly resented the action of Constantine in espousing the new and hated religion, and regarded him as an apostate. It was the existence of these sentiments and feelings among the inhabitants of Rome, which, for one thing, led Constantine to seek elsewhere a new centre and seat for his court and government.

But far outweighing all these military, commercial, and religious reasons for the removal of the capital were the political motives. Constantine, like Diocletian, wished to establish a system of government modelled upon the despotic monarchy of the East. Now, the traditions, the feelings, the temper of the population of Rome constituted the very worst basis conceivable for such a political system. The Romans could not forget — never did forget — that

⁶ Gibbon, *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chap. xvii.

they had once been masters and rulers of the world. Even after they had become wholly unfit to rule themselves, let alone the ruling of others, they still retained the temper and used the language of masters. Constantine wisely determined to seek in the submissive and servile populations of the East, always accustomed to the rendering of obsequious homage to their rulers, a firm basis for the structure of that absolute monarchy, the foundations of which had been laid by his predecessor Diocletian.

The site for the new capital having been determined upon, the artistic and material resources of the whole Græco-Roman world were called into requisition to create upon the spot a city worthy its predestined fortunes. Outer walls of vast compass were constructed. The city itself reproduced all the characteristic features of Old Rome. Even like the city of the Tiber, it was built on seven hills. On every side arose theatres, baths, porticoes, aqueducts, fountains, and monumental columns. An immense hippodrome constructed within the walls represented the Circus Maximus at Rome. A new senate was organized, and the people, as in Old Rome, were divided into curies and tribes. For the embellishment of the new capital, the cities of Greece and of Asia were despoiled of their art treasures, many of which were memorials of the great age of Pheidias.

The imperial invitation, and the attractions of the court, induced multitudes to crowd into the new capital, so that almost in a day the old Byzantium grew into a great city. In honor of the emperor the name was changed to Constantinople, the "City of Constantine." The Old Rome on the Tiber, emptied of its leading inhabitants, soon sank to the obscure position of a provincial municipality.

250. The Reorganization of the Government. — Another of Constantine's important acts was the reorganization of the government. In this great reform he seems to have followed, in the main, the broad lines drawn by Diocletian, so that his work may be regarded as a continuation of that of his predecessor.

To aid in the administration of the government, Constantine laid out the empire into four great divisions, called prefectures,⁷ which were subdivided into thirteen dioceses, and these again into one hundred and sixteen provinces.

The purpose that Constantine had in view in laying the empire out in so many and such small provinces was to diminish the power of the provincial governors, and thus make it impossible for them to raise successfully the standard of revolt.⁸ The records of the empire show that during the one hundred and fifty years immediately preceding the accession of Constantine, almost one hundred governors of provinces had ventured to rebel against the imperial authority.

With an aim similar to that which he had in view in subdividing the provinces, Constantine also reduced the size of the legion (par. 36) to fifteen hundred men, and distributed the legionaries in such a way throughout the provinces and along the frontiers as to lessen the chances of successful conspiracy and revolt.

To give still further security to the throne, Constantine divided the civil and military powers, appointing two

⁷ See accompanying map. These prefectural divisions were essentially a perpetuation of the fourfold division of the empire that had been made by Diocletian (par. 240, n. 7).

⁸ This policy had been initiated by Diocletian. Under him the number of provinces was about one hundred.

different sets of persons in each of the larger and smaller divisions of the state, the one set to represent the civil and the other the military authority.⁹ At the head of each prefecture was placed a prætorian prefect; at the head of each diocese a vicar or vice-prefect; and at the head of each province a magistrate bearing usually the title of president. These were civil officers, who were charged with the collection of the revenues and the administration of justice in their respective districts.

Alongside these civil magistrates, and forming a similar carefully graded hierarchy, were placed military officers, charged of course simply with the management and control of military affairs.

This separation of the civil and the military authority greatly strengthened the position of the sovereign, since the division of power between the two orders, and their resulting mutual jealousies, reduced to a minimum the danger of treachery and revolution.

But this dual administrative system had its drawbacks. In the first place, this division of authority and responsibility was not conducive to the prompt, energetic, and harmonious conduct of the public business; and in the second place, the great number of officials needed to man and work the complicated system increased greatly the expenses of the government, and made necessary the laying of still heavier burdens of taxation upon the already overburdened people. From the introduction of this system on to the end, the chief function of the ever-needy government seemed to be to devise ways and means of wringing money from the impoverished taxpayers.

⁹ Some authorities attribute this reform to Diocletian.

251. The Imperial Court. — Perhaps we cannot better indicate the new relation to the empire into which the head of the Roman state was brought by the innovations of Diocletian and Constantine, than by saying that the empire now became the private estate of the sovereign and was managed just as any great Roman proprietor managed his domain. The imperial household and the entire civil service of the government were simply such a proprietor's domestic establishment drawn on a large scale, and given an oriental cast through the influence of the courts of Asia.

This imperial court or establishment was, next after the body of the Roman law and the municipal system, the most important historical product that the old Roman world transmitted to the later nations of Europe. It became the model of the court of Charlemagne and the later emperors of the so-called Holy Roman Empire; and in the form that it reappeared here was copied by all the sovereigns of modern Europe. The court of Louis XIV. of France, and indeed his whole scheme of government, were a reproduction of this court and government of Constantinople.¹

¹ "We have thus almost complete in the system of government perfected by Constantine that machinery of household officers, military counts, and provincial lieutenants which was to serve as a model throughout the Middle Ages wherever empire should arise and need organization. The 'Companions' (*comites*) of the Teutonic leaders held a much more honorable position than did the domestic servants of the Roman Emperor, and their dignity they transmitted to the household officers of the Teutonic kingdoms; but the organization effected by Constantine anticipated that system of government which has given us our provincial governors and our administrative cabinets." — WOODROW WILSON, *The State*, p. 136, new ed., 1898.

252. The Character of Constantine. — Constantine was greatly eulogized by contemporary Christian writers, while the partisans of the old pagan religion that he had renounced attributed to him every personal vice and the worst of motives for almost every act of his life. Because of these different portraitures it is very difficult to form an unbiased estimate of his character and to judge how sincere were the motives under which he acted. But probably we shall not be far wrong if we conclude that he was not always the same. During all the earlier, strenuous years of his life, up to the time when he became undisputed lord of the Roman world, he exhibited, for the most part, only qualities of character calculated to win affection and to stir admiration. After that turn in his affairs, his character appears to have undergone a change for the worse, such a change as we have observed in many another wearer of the imperial purple.

Respecting his conversion to Christianity, it is probable that he embraced the new religion not entirely from conviction, but partly at least from political motives. As the historian Hodgkin puts it, "He was half convinced of the truth of Christianity, and wholly convinced of the policy of embracing it." If his course was dictated by considerations of policy, events abundantly justified his forecast. Christianity was the most vital element in the empire, and the government, through the alliance formed with the Church, had imparted to it new vitality and strength.

In any event Constantine's personal religion was a strange mixture of the old and the new. On his medals the Christian Cross is upheld by the pagan deity Victory; and on the head of the great statue of the sun-god

Apollo, which he set up in his new capital, and which was probably intended to represent himself, there rested a crown the rays of which were formed of the nails of the sacred Cross. Bearing these things in mind, it need not seem strange to us that Constantine should have desired that he should be worshipped after death, nor incongruous that succeeding Christian emperors should have gratified his wish in allowing the people to offer sacrifices to his statue along with those of the pagan emperors.

REFERENCES. — FINLAY (G.), *History of Greece*, vol. i. chap. ii., "From the Conquest of Greece to the Establishment of Constantinople as Capital of the Roman Empire (B.C. 146-A.D. 330)." GIBBON (E.), *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chap. xv., "The Progress of the Christian Religion, and the Sentiments, Numbers, and Condition of the Primitive Christians"; and chap. xvii. on the founding of Constantinople and the form of the government. MILMAN (H. H.), *The History of Christianity*, vol. ii. bk. iii. chaps. i.-iv. STANLEY (A. P.), **Lectures on the History of the Eastern Church*, Lects. II., III., IV., and V., for the history of the Council of Nicæa, 325 B.C.; and Lec. VI., for events concerning the Church during the reign of the Emperor Constantine. SEELEY (J. R.), ***Roman Imperialism*, Lec. III. pp. 65-95, "The Later Empire." OMAN (C. W. C.), *The Story of the Byzantine Empire* (Story of the Nations), pp. 13-30, "The Foundation of Constantinople." CARR (A.), *The Church and the Roman Empire* (Epochs of Church History), chap. iv. pp. 27-40, "Constantine"; and chap. v. pp. 40-47, "The Council of Nicæa — Athanasius." LANCIANI (R.), *Pagan and Christian Rome*, chap. i. NEWMAN (J. H.), *The Arians of the Fourth Century*, chap. iii. pp. 236-270, "The Ecumenical Council of Nicæa."

CHAPTER XX.

JULIAN THE APOSTATE AND THE PAGAN RESTORATION.

(A.D. 361-363.)

253. Events between the Death of Constantine and the Accession of Julian (A.D. 337-361).—Constantine transmitted his authority to his three sons, Constans, Constantius, and Constantine. This parcelling out of the empire led to strife and wars, which at the end of sixteen years left Constantius master of the whole. He reigned as sole emperor for about eight years, engaged in ceaseless warfare with German tribes in the West and with the Persians² in the East. Constantius was followed by his cousin Julian, called the Apostate, because he abandoned Christianity and labored to restore the pagan faith.

254. The State of the Church at Julian's Accession.—When Julian came to the throne, in the year A.D. 361, Christianity had enjoyed for about half a century the favor of the imperial court, while during the same time the practice of the heathen cults had been discouraged, and towards the end of the period positively prohibited. In many districts

² The great Parthian empire which had been such a formidable antagonist of Rome was, after an existence of five centuries, overthrown by a revolt of the Persians (A.D. 226), and the New Persian or Sassanian monarchy established. This empire lasted till the country was overrun by the Saracens in the seventh century A.D.

the temples had been abandoned and had fallen into decay, or had been turned into Christian churches.

But the imperial patronage, to which without doubt must be attributed, in part at least, this quick religious revolution, had not been an unmixed blessing to the Church. The moment the mere profession of the new faith became a passport to the emperor's favor and to office, that moment hypocrisy and selfishness took the place of that sincerity and self-devotion which had marked the primitive and persecuted Christians, and which had made them so powerful a factor in the society of the earlier centuries of the empire.

Consequently, beneath the surface of the apparently Christianized society of the empire, there was a great unchanged mass of heathenism. Multitudes who called themselves Christians were heathen at heart. The change in name had had no effect whatever upon their disposition or conduct. The imperial court, in everything save its professed creed, was in no way different from the immemorially licentious courts of Asia after which it had modelled itself. Throughout the West, the majority of the people still clung to their old pagan cults. The Roman senate was still a stronghold of the ancestral religion. Very few of the senators were even professed followers of the new faith.

The Church was also at this time greatly weakened by internal troubles. Heresy and schism had destroyed the primitive unity of the body of believers, and in all the great cities of the empire the various sectaries were persecuting one another with incredible and disgraceful rancor. Such was the religious condition of the empire when the death of Constantius left his rival Julian sole ruler of the Roman world.

255. Julian's Religion. — In his earlier years Julian was carefully nurtured in the doctrines of the new religion; but later, in the schools of Athens and of other cities where he pursued his studies, he came under the influence of pagan teachers and his faith in Christian doctrines was undermined, while at the same time he conceived a great enthusiasm for the teachings of the Neoplatonists, and an unbounded admiration for the culture of ancient Hellas. For ten years, however, he dissembled his real religious feelings and opinions, and in his outer and public conduct conformed himself unto all the requirements of the Church.

But we must not make the mistake of supposing that the religion which the young prince professed to himself at this time was the old official Roman religion. It was the renovated religion of Greece, in the attractive form which it had assumed in the hands of the Neoplatonists.



JULIAN THE APOSTATE.

At the head of this renovated pagan system there was placed a supreme god, the source and fountain of all things. Beneath this supreme being was a hierarchy of intelligences — the lesser gods, dæmons, heroes, and men. It was the spirits intermediate between the supreme god and the race of men with whom these came into relation through sacrifices and the various rites of the temple. The bright forms of these gods, Julian believed, often appeared to him in his dreams.

This religious system seemed to Julian to afford a much

more reasonable view of the world of spirits than that presented by Christian theology. Besides, this whole system rooted itself deep in the past, and was vitally connected with the literature, the philosophy, and the art of the great days of Greece. Christianity had broken with this brilliant past, and had created a vast rift in the life of the Græco-Roman world. It had destroyed the historic unity of the empire as well as the unity of existing society. It was this last unity which Julian labored to restore, by leading the people back to the purified religion of their ancestors.³

256. The Means adopted by Julian to effect the Pagan Restoration. — Julian, in his efforts to restore paganism, did not resort to direct persecution. Several things stood in the way of his doing this. First, his own philosophic and humane disposition forbade him in such a controversy to employ force as a means of persuasion. Second, the number of the Christians was now so great that measures of coercion could not be employed without creating dangerous disorder and disaffection. Third, resort could not be had to the old means of persuasion, — “the sword, the fire, the lions,” — for the reason that, under the softening influences of the very faith Julian sought to extirpate, the Roman world had already become imbued with a gentleness and humanity that rendered morally impossible the renewal of the Neronian and Diocletian persecutions.

Julian’s first act in the pursuit of his plans was to annul all laws which prohibited, or which placed at a disadvan-

³ Although it was the Hellenic and not the Roman religion that Julian endeavored to revive, still the Roman worship was to find a place in the system, which in its essential elements was the religion of the whole pagan world.

tage, the old cults, and to publish an edict granting equal toleration to all religions. This restored the situation that existed under Constantine, save that now paganism instead of Christianity was the religion of the emperor, and consequently the favored worship of the empire. The people were enjoined to restore the temples that had been violently destroyed, turned into places of Christian worship, or allowed through neglect to fall into decay.

Christians had been given precedence in the filling of the various magistracies and offices. Pagans were now preferred in all the imperial appointments. The soldiers were not required to apostatize, but they must now march beneath the restored pagan standards in place of the Labarum (par. 245); and in order to qualify themselves for receiving the customary imperial gratuities, they were required to cast a grain of incense into the fire on the altar. Most did this, but some refused to purchase the donation by such an act of disloyalty to their faith.

Julian further discriminated against the Christians in connection with the schools. At this time throughout the empire the higher education of the youth was a matter of public concern, and was in the hands of teachers who were appointed and maintained at least in part by the state, and who constituted a privileged class in the community (par. 311). Julian forbade Christians to give instruction in these public schools.

The reason assigned for this prohibition was that it was unseemly that men who derided the divinities of Greece should be the commentators of the works of the poets and thinkers who under the inspiration of these very gods had made the past of Hellas so great. The Christians, instead

of insisting upon wrongly interpreting to the youth the masterpieces of paganism, should confine themselves to their own writings,—the Hebrew Bible and the gospels.

Julian's real purpose in excluding the Christians as instructors from the schools—the Christian youth might still, if they desired, attend the classes of the pagan teachers—was, by depriving them of the means of culture afforded by classical studies, to render them narrow, provincial, and inefficient as teachers; for Julian well knew that the great and powerful advocates of the Church in the past were men whose minds had been broadened, and whose logical skill and acumen had been acquired by the study of this very philosophy and literature which they condemned as pagan and immoral. Julian was resolved that the champions of the Church should no longer draw their weapons from the armory of paganism itself.

As a last means of effecting the revival of paganism, Julian labored for the moral renovation of the ancient religion. He endeavored to make it what no pagan cult had ever been before, namely, a means of instruction and of moral quickening to the people. He here borrowed openly from Christianity. He enjoined the pagan priests to imitate the Christian clergy, to become preachers and pastors. They were to teach the people the existence of the gods, the reality of their superintending providence, and the great truth of immortality. They were further, in their own lives, to set before the people patterns of pure and devout and holy living. They should not attend the theatre or the circus, nor frequent the taverns. They should have no immoral books in their libraries. They were not only to teach but to practise charity and benevolence. They were,

like the Christians, to found hospitals and to care for the needy and to succor the distressed. The Christians were not to be allowed to boast a monopoly of these virtues.

As we have just intimated, what Julian here attempted to do, to effect a union of the temple cult and morality, had never been achieved by paganism. The business of the heathen priest had been to see that all the temple rites and ceremonies were observed in accordance with the traditional and sacred formulas. He had never been the instructor of the people in sacred things, nor the preacher of individual and social righteousness. Julian, in endeavoring to make him such, was trying to effect a revolution opposed not only to all the traditions of paganism, but opposed also to the very genius of the most of heathen cults. These had little or nothing to do with right conduct. And so this part of Julian's reform was foredoomed to failure.

257. Julian's Relations to the Jews : Attempt to rebuild the Temple at Jerusalem. — Julian's hostility to Christianity did not include the Jews. On the contrary, he was kindly disposed towards this sect, and favored them in every way. One bond of union between the emperor and the Jews was a common hatred of Christianity. But the real ground of Julian's favorable disposition towards this people was the fact that their religion, as he understood it, was simply a national religion, and hence stood on the same footing as the other cults of the empire. Consequently he was as ready to restore the temple of the Jews at Jerusalem as that of any other local or national god.

But Julian had one very special reason for rebuilding, at Jerusalem, the temple that his pagan predecessors had destroyed (par. 227). He wished to cast discredit upon the

predictions of the Scriptures ; for the Christians contended that the temple could never be restored because of the prophecies against it. Julian invited the Jews dispersed throughout the empire to return to Jerusalem and to aid in rebuilding the ancient shrine. They responded to the invitation with great enthusiasm. The emperor furthered the enterprise by gifts of money from the public treasury. Excavations were actually begun, but the workmen were driven in great panic from the spot by terrific explosions and bursts of flame. The Christians regarded the occurrence as miraculous ; and Julian himself, it is certain, was so dismayed by it that he desisted from the undertaking.⁴

258. Julian's Campaigns against the Persians. — At the same time that Julian was busied with his religious reforms, he was engaged in making extensive preparations for a campaign against the Persians. He was ambitious of the honor of inflicting upon this formidable enemy a crushing blow, and thereby relieving the empire of the constant threat of attack on its eastern frontier. He was, furthermore, prompted to this undertaking by a burning desire to emulate the deeds of Alexander the Great, and perhaps to rival his achievements in the lands of the remote East.

Antioch was made the place of the emperor's residence while the preparations for the Persian expedition were in progress. It was in this city that the followers of the new faith had first been called Christians.⁵ At the time of

⁴ The explosions which so terrified the workmen of Julian are supposed to have been caused by accumulations of gases—similar to those that so frequently occasion accidents in mines—in the subterranean chambers of the Temple foundations.

⁵ Acts, xi. 26.

Julian's visit, there seem to have been remaining only a very few zealous adherents of the pagan worship. On the occasion of a certain heathen festival at one of the most famous of the ancient temples, Julian was shocked to find that the sacrifices, which formerly embraced hecatombs of victims, had dwindled to the offering of a single goose.

The inhabitants of Antioch treated their emperor, on account of his opposition to Christianity, with great rudeness. Julian, forgetting the dignity of the imperial office, avenged himself upon the Antiochians by writing a satire entitled the *Misopogon*,⁶ in which he ridiculed their habits and their odious vices.

The winter having been spent in these literary diversions and military preparations, with the opening of the spring of the year 363, Julian set out at the head of a large army on his memorable Persian expedition. A long march through Mesopotamia brought him to the well-defended Persian capital of Ctesiphon, on the Tigris. Julian seems to have been minded, leaving this strong place in the hands of the enemy, to push on eastward; but his soldiers, like those of Alexander in India, became mutinous, and he was forced to lead them in retreat towards the north.

259. The Death of Julian and the Restoration of the Christian Worship. — The Roman troops were now daily harassed by the pursuing enemy. In an encounter with the Persian cavalry, Julian received a fatal wound in his side from a flying javelin. His last hours he spent, after the example of Socrates, in edifying and philosophic conversation with his friends (A.D. 363).

⁶ "The beard-hater." The people had made contemptuous remarks about Julian's unkempt beard.

Thus deprived of their commander and sovereign, the army at once elected one of their generals, Jovian by name, as emperor. Jovian, after several hard-fought battles with the enemy, concluded with the Persian king Sapor an humiliating treaty, by the terms of which the Romans gave up their possessions east of the Tigris.

Jovian was a Christian, and his short reign (A.D. 363-364) was marked by the removal of many of the disabilities under which Julian had placed the professors of the new worship. In the army the old pagan standards were replaced by the Labarum, and Christianity was again made the religion of the imperial court.

REFERENCES. — *GARDNER (A.), *Julian the Philosopher, and the Last Struggle of Paganism against Christianity* (Heroes of the Nations). MILMAN (H. H.), *The History of Christianity*, vol. ii. bk. iii. chap. vi., and vol. iii. bk. iii. chap. vi. (continued). GIBBON (E.), *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chaps. xix. and xxii.-xxiv. UHLHORN (G.), ***Conflict of Christianity with Heathenism*, pp. 445-447. MERIVALE (C.), *General History of Rome*, chap. lxxiii. pp. 600-609. ALLARD (P.), ***Le Christianisme et l'Empire Romain*. The best short account of the pagan reaction.

CHAPTER XXI.

THE LAST CENTURY OF THE EMPIRE IN THE WEST.

(A.D. 376-476.)

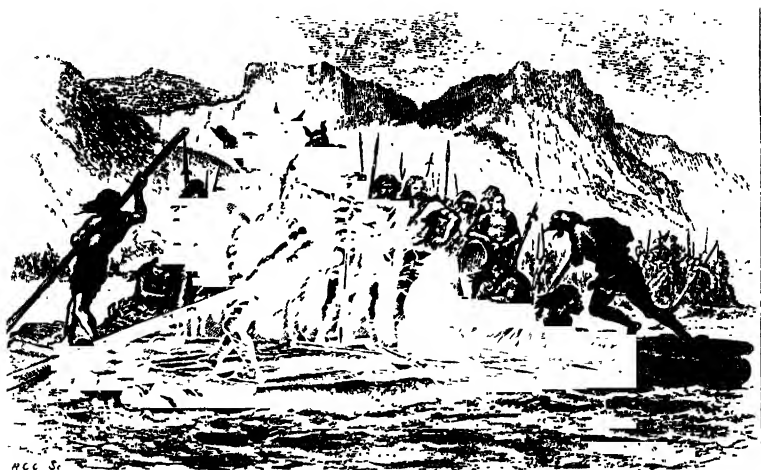
260. Introductory. — Thus far in the history of the empire we have made, for the most part, the reigns of the emperors the framework of our narrative. We shall no longer follow this plan, for during the last century of the imperial period very few of the occupants of the throne were men of sufficient character or force to exert any influence upon the movement of events. To subdivide the period according to the length of their reigns would be an arbitrary and meaningless proceeding.

It will be more instructive for us to turn our eyes away from the imperial throne, and to notice what were the actual forces that were giving the events of the period their shape and course. These were the German barbarians and Christianity. These were the two most vital elements in the Græco-Roman world of the fifth century. They had, centuries before this, as we have seen, come into certain relations to the Roman government and to Roman life; but during the period lying immediately before us they assumed an altogether new historical interest and importance.

The two main matters, then, which will claim our attention during the century yet remaining for our study, will be (1) the struggle between the dying empire and the young German races of the North and the gradual overrunning of the

Roman provinces by these barbarians; and (2) the final triumph of Christianity, through the aid of the temporal power, over expiring paganism.

261. The Movements of the Barbarians. — The reigns of the co-emperors Valentinian I. and Valens⁷ were signalized



GERMANS CROSSING THE RHINE.

(After a drawing by Alphonse de Neuville)

by threatening movements of the barbarian tribes, that now, almost at the same moment, began to press with redoubled energy against all the barriers of the empire.

⁷ Upon the death of Jovian (A.D. 364), Valentinian, the commander of the imperial guard, was elected emperor by a council of the generals of the army and the ministers of the court. He appointed his brother Valens (A.D. 364–378) as his associate in office, and assigned to him the Eastern provinces, while reserving for himself the Western. He set up his own court at Milan, while his brother established his residence at Constantinople.

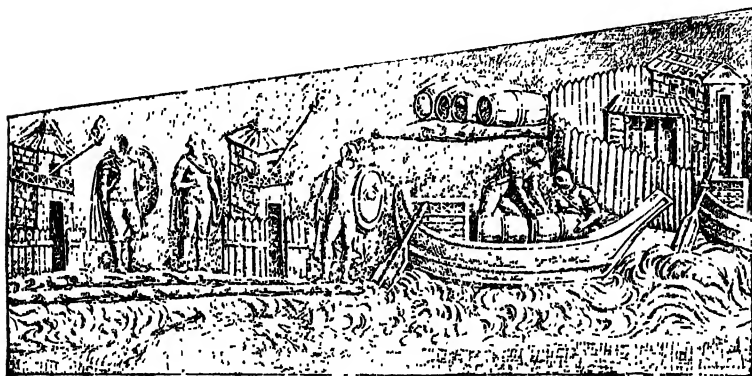
The Alemanni (Germans) made forays across the Rhine into the Gallic provinces, — sometimes swarming over the river on the winter ice, — and, before pursuit could be made, recrossed the river and escaped with their booty into the depths of the German forests. The Saxons, pirates of the northern seas, who issued from the mouth of the Elbe, ravaged the coasts of Gaul and Britain, even pushing their light skiffs far up the rivers and creeks of those countries, and carrying away spoils from the inland cities. In Britain, the Picts broke through the Hadrian Wall, and wrested almost the entire island from the hands of the Romans. In Africa, the Moorish and other tribes, issuing from the ravines of the Atlas Mountains and swarming from the deserts of the south, threatened to obliterate the last trace of Roman civilization occupying the narrow belt of fertile territory skirting the sea.⁸

The barbarian tide of invasion seemed thus on the point of overwhelming the empire in the West; but for twelve years Valentinian defended with signal ability and energy, not only his own territories, but aided with arms and counsel his weaker brother Valens in the defence of his. Upon the death of Valentinian, his son Gratian succeeded to his authority (A.D. 375).

262. The Goths cross the Danube (A.D. 376). — The year

⁸ The frequent inroads of the barbarians into the provinces caused the Roman towns to assume a new aspect. In the time of the Antonines (par. 228) they were in many cases without walls, and presented a straggling and country-like appearance; now they are surrounded with strong walls, and the houses necessarily are crowded together on narrow, ill-ventilated streets. These are the prototypes of the mediæval towns. See Dill, *Roman Society in the Last Century of the Western Empire*, p. 147.

following the death of Valentinian, an event of the greatest importance occurred in the East. The Visigoths, (Western Goths) dwelling north of the Lower Danube, who had often in hostile bands crossed that river to war against the Roman emperors, now appeared as suppliants in vast multitudes upon its banks. They said that a terrible race, whom they were powerless to withstand, had invaded their territories, and spared neither their homes nor their lives. They begged



ROMAN SIGNAL-TOWERS, SENTRIES AND STOREHOUSE ON
THE DANUBE.

(Relief on Trajan's Column)

permission of the Romans to cross the river and settle in Thrace, and promised, should this request be granted, ever to remain the grateful and firm allies of the Roman state.

Valens, it is said, consented to grant their petition on condition that they should surrender their arms, give up their children as hostages, and all be baptized in the Christian faith.¹ Their terror and despair led them to

¹ It is somewhat doubtful whether this last condition was really a part of the agreement.

assent to these conditions. So the entire nation, numbering about one million souls, — counting men, women, and children, — were allowed to cross the river. Several days and nights were consumed in the transport of the vast multitudes. The writers of the times liken the passage to that of the Hellespont by the hosts of Xerxes.

The enemy that had so terrified the Goths were the Huns, a monstrous race of fierce nomadic horsemen, that two centuries and more before the Christian era were roving the deserts north of the Great Wall of China.² Migrating from that region, they moved slowly to the West, across the great plains of Central Asia, and, after wandering several centuries, appeared in Europe. They belonged to a different race (the Turanian) from that of the European tribes with which we have been so far concerned. Their features were hideous, their noses being flattened, and their cheeks gashed, to render their appearance more frightful as well as to prevent the growth of a beard. Even the barbarous Goths called them “barbarians.”

Scarcely had the fugitive Visigoths been received within the limits of the empire before a large company of their kinsmen, the Ostrogoths (Eastern Goths), also driven from their homes by the same terrible Huns, crowded to the banks of the Danube, and pleaded that they might be allowed, as their countrymen had been, to place the river between themselves and their dreaded enemies. But Valens, becoming alarmed at the presence of so many barbarians within his dominions, refused their request; whereupon

² A great rampart extending for about fifteen hundred miles along the northern frontier of China. It was built by the Chinese towards the end of the third century B.C. as a barrier against the forays of the Huns and other nomadic tribes.

they, dreading the fierce and implacable foe behind more than the wrath of the Roman emperor in front, crossed the river with arms in their hands.

It now came to light that the cupidity of the Roman officials had prevented the carrying out of the stipulations of the agreement between the emperor and the Visigoths respecting the relinquishment of their arms. The barbarians had bribed those intrusted with the duty of transporting them across the river, and purchased the privilege of retaining their weapons. The persons, too, detailed to provide the multitude with food till they could be assigned lands, traded on the hunger of their wards, and doled out the vilest provisions at the most extortionate prices. (We seem here to be listening to a recital of the unscrupulous conduct of our own Indian agents.)

As was natural, the injured nation rose in indignant revolt. Joining their kinsmen that were just now forcing the passage of the Danube, they commenced, under the lead of the great Fritigern, to overrun and ravage the Danubian provinces. Valens despatched swift messengers to Gratian in the West, asking for assistance against the foe he had so unfortunately admitted within the limits of the empire. Meanwhile, he rallied all his forces, and, without awaiting the arrival of the Western legions, imprudently risked a battle with the barbarians near Adrianople. The Roman army was almost annihilated. Valens himself, being wounded, sought refuge in the cabin of a peasant; but the building was fired by the savages, and the emperor was burned alive (A.D. 378). The Goths now rapidly overran Thessaly, Macedonia, and Thrace, ravaging the country to the very walls of Constantinople.

Gratian was hurrying to the help of his colleague Valens when news of his defeat and death at the hands of the barbarians was brought to him. He at once appointed as his associate Theodosius (A.D. 379-395), known afterwards as the Great, and intrusted him with the government of the Eastern provinces. Theodosius, by wise and vigorous measures, quickly reduced the Goths to submission. Vast multitudes of the Visigoths were settled upon the waste lands of Thrace, while the Ostrogoths were scattered in various colonies in different regions of Asia Minor. The Goths became allies of the emperor of the East, and more than forty thousand of these warlike barbarians, who were destined to be the subverters of the empire, were enlisted in the imperial legions.

263. The Removal of the Statue of Victory from the Senate Chamber (A.D. 382).—The conflict between the empire and the German barbarians, which marked the reigns of Gratian and Theodosius, was a matter of great significance in the history not only of the Roman empire but also of civilization. Of even greater import, if not for Rome itself, yet certainly for the general progress of mankind, was the struggle going on during this same period between the now Christian government of the empire and paganism.

Both Gratian and Theodosius were zealous champions of the orthodox Church, and a large portion of the edicts issued during their joint reign had for aim the uprooting of heresy or the suppression of the pagan worship. Gratian's first act upon his succession (A.D. 375) was significant. He refused—being the first of the emperors to do so—to receive the vestments and insignia of the office of pontifex maximus, saying that it was not becoming in a Christian ruler to have anything to do with these symbols of paganism.

An act of greater importance was Gratian's removal (A.D. 382) from the chamber of the Roman senate of the statue and altar of the pagan goddess Victory.³ This statue, since the struggle between Christianity and the heathen cults had become serious, had been looked upon as the symbol of the pagan empire and as a sort of palladium of the ancient religion, and hence had naturally become a special object of pagan veneration and patriotism.

The majority of the senate were probably still adherents of the pagan faith; and a little while after the removal of the statue — Gratian having fallen in battle — they petitioned the ruling emperor (Valentinian II.) for the restoration of the sacred memorial. The leader of the pagan party was the celebrated Symmachus, and he became their spokesman before the emperor. His address is noteworthy as being "the last formal and public protest" made by the votaries of the ancient cults against the restriction of their worship. "Each nation," so the address runs, "has its own gods and peculiar rites. The Great Mystery cannot be approached by one avenue alone. But use and wont count for much in giving authority to a religion. Leave us the symbol on which our oaths of allegiance have been sworn for so many generations. Leave us the system which has so long given prosperity to the state. A religion should be judged by its utility to the men who hold it. Years of famine have been the punishment of sacrilege. The treasury should not be replenished by the wealth of the sacred colleges, but by the spoils of the enemy."⁴

³ They had been removed before this by the emperor Constantine, but had been replaced by Julian.

⁴ Dill, *Roman Society in the Last Century of the Western Empire*, p. 26.

264. The Disestablishment of the Sacred Colleges ; the Separation of State and Temple. — The allusion at the end of the foregoing speech is to the act of Gratian whereby at his accession he had taken away from the sacred colleges at Rome (par. 24) their endowments and caused to cease the payment of salaries to the members of these bodies. As places in these associations were held by the senators, the confiscation of the property of the colleges dealt paganism a heavy blow by bringing it about that the pagan party in the senate should no longer have a personal and material interest in maintaining the ancient religion.

This disestablishment of these ancient colleges marked the separation of State and Temple, which from the very first had been united at Rome, as everywhere else in antiquity. The twelve centuries that had passed since the founding of Rome under the auspices of the gods had witnessed a vast revolution in the feelings and beliefs of men to render possible such a separation of the things of Cæsar and the things of God.

265. The Prohibition of the Pagan Cults. — Speaking generally, from the accession of Constantine down to the time which we have now reached, the pagans had been allowed full toleration of worship. There was, during this period, what we call religious liberty, but not perfect religious equality; for some of the Christian emperors favored their own faith in their legislation and in their appointments to office. Occasionally, however, there were laws issued against the practice of pagan rites. Thus, in the year A.D. 341, the sons of Constantine — Constans and Constantius — had promulgated an edict which declared that “the heathen superstition must cease, the madness of offering

sacrifices must be extirpated.”⁵ But such laws were certainly not long in force. Although placed at a disadvantage in the state, still the pagans were generally protected in the right of the public exercise of their religion. But before the end of the reign of Theodosius, their position in the state was wholly changed. Paganism, from being a tolerated, became a proscribed, religion.

It was Theodosius the Great who, by his effective measures against heathenism, earned the title of “the Destroyer of Paganism.” At first he simply placed the pagans under many disabilities; then he forbade them to practise the art of divining through the examination of the entrails of sacrificial victims (par. 23); and, finally, he prohibited sacrifices altogether, and made it a crime for any one to practise any pagan cult, or even to enter a temple. In the year A.D. 392 even the private worship of the Lares and Penates was prohibited. Interdiction of the heathen worship was accompanied by the destruction or the confiscation of the ancient temples and their endowments.

Paganism did not yield without a struggle. The pagan party set up as emperor Eugenius, and attempted to restore the old faith. Theodosius defeated Eugenius in the battle of Aquileia (A.D. 394) and then secured the official abolishment of the pagan worship by a vote of the Roman senate itself.⁶ The struggle between Christianity and heathenism was now virtually ended.⁷ And the “Galilean” had conquered.

⁵ Uhlhorn, *Conflict of Christianity with Heathenism*, p. 452.

⁶ Allard, *Le Christianisme et l'Empire Romain*, p. 277.

⁷ The debate between the Christian Fathers and the pagan philosophers as to the respective claims of the rival religions still went on. See par. 274.

A quarter of a century later (in A.D. 423) Theodosius II. in one of his edicts says that he believes there are no longer any pagans. But "there were pagans still, although there was no paganism."⁸ The pagan rites were practised secretly long after this. Especially did the old home cults of the Lares and Penates linger on in the country districts, from which circumstances the term "pagan" (from *paganus*, the dweller in a *pagus* or "village") came to indicate a follower of the ancient idolatry.

266. Theodosius the Great and Bishop Ambrose of Milan (A.D. 390-391). — A memorable incident, illustrative of the influence of the new religion that was now fast taking the place of paganism, marks the reign of Theodosius the Great. In a sedition caused by the arrest and imprisonment of a favorite charioteer, the people of Thessalonica, in Macedonia, had murdered the general and several officers of the imperial garrison in that place (A.D. 390). When intelligence of the event reached Theodosius, who was at Milan, his hasty temper broke through all restraint, and, moved by a spirit of savage vengeance, he ordered an indiscriminate slaughter of the inhabitants of Thessalonica. In obedience to the imperial commands, the people were unsuspectingly summoned, as though to attend the usual games, to the great circus, and there were set upon by the barbarian Gothic soldiers and cut down without regard to age or sex. At least seven thousand persons perished.

Shortly after the massacre, the emperor, as he was entering the door of the cathedral at Milan, where he was wont to worship, was met at the threshold by the pious bishop Ambrose, who, in the name of the God of justice

⁸ Allard, *Le Christianisme et l'Empire Romain*, p. 286.

and mercy, forbade him to enter the sacred place until he had done public penance for his awful crime. The commander of all the Roman legions was constrained to obey the unarmed pastor. In penitential garb and attitude Theodosius made public confession of his sin and humbly underwent the penance imposed by the Church.

This passage of history is noteworthy as marking a stadium in the moral progress of humanity. It made manifest how with Christianity a new moral force had entered the world, how a sort of new and universal tribunician authority had arisen in society to interpose, in the name of justice and humanity, between the weak and the defenceless and their self-willed and arbitrary rulers.

267. Final Division of the Empire (A.D. 395). — The Roman world was practically united for the last time under Theodosius the Great. From A.D. 392 to 395 he ruled as sole emperor.⁹ Just before his death, Theodosius divided the empire between his two sons, Arcadius and Honorius, assigning the former, who was only eighteen years of age, the government of the East, and giving the latter, a mere child of eleven, the sovereignty of the West. This division was not to affect the unity of the empire. There was to be but one empire, although there were to be two emperors. But as a matter of fact so different was the course of events in the two halves of the old empire, that from this on we shall find it convenient to trace the history of each division separately.

The story of the fortunes of the Empire in the East need not detain us long at this point of our history. The line

⁹ The insurrection under Eugenius (par. 265) can hardly be regarded as effecting a division of the imperial authority.

of Eastern emperors lasted over a thousand years — until the capture of Constantinople by the Turks, A.D. 1453. It will thus be seen that the greater part of its history belongs to the mediæval period. Up to the time of the overthrow of the Empire in the West, the sovereigns of the East were engaged almost incessantly in suppressing uprisings of their Gothic allies or mercenaries, or in repelling invasions of different barbarian tribes. Frequently during this period, in order to save their own territories, they, by dishonorable inducements, persuaded the barbarians to direct their ravaging expeditions against the provinces of the West.

268. First Invasion of Italy by Alaric. — Only a few years had elapsed after the death of the great Theodosius, before the barbarians were trooping in vast hordes through all parts of the empire. First, from Thrace and Mœsia came the Visigoths, led by the great Alaric. They poured through the Pass of Thermopylæ, and devastated almost the entire peninsula of Greece; but being driven from that country by Stilicho, the renowned Vandal general¹ of Honorius, they crossed the Julian Alps, and spread terror throughout all Italy. Stilicho followed the barbarians cautiously, and, attacking them at a favorable moment, inflicted a terrible and double defeat upon them at Pollentia and Verona (A.D. 402–403). The captured camp was found filled with the spoils of Thebes, Corinth, and Sparta. Gathering the remnants of his shattered army, Alaric forced his way with difficulty through the defiles of the Alps, and escaped.

¹ Hodgkin makes the following suggestive comparison: "Stilicho [and others like him] were the prototypes of the German and English officers who in our own day have reorganized the armies or commanded the fleets of the Sultan, and led the expeditions of the Khedive."

269. Last Triumph at Rome (A.D. 404). — A terrible danger had been averted. All Italy burst forth in expressions of gratitude and joy. The days of the Cimbri and Teutones were recalled, and the name of Stilicho was pronounced along with that of Marius (par. 159). A magnificent triumph at Rome celebrated the victory and the deliverance. The youthful Honorius and his faithful general Stilicho rode side by side in the imperial chariot. It was the last triumph that Rome ever saw. Three hundred times — such is asserted to be the number — the Imperial City had witnessed the triumphal procession of her victorious generals, celebrating conquests in all quarters of the world.

270. Last Gladiatorial Combat of the Amphitheatre. — The same year that marks the last military triumph at Rome also signalizes the last gladiatorial combat in the Roman amphitheatre. It is to Christianity that the credit of the suppression of the inhuman exhibitions of the amphitheatre is entirely, or almost entirely, due. The pagan philosophers usually regarded them with indifference, often with favor. Thus Pliny commends a friend for giving a gladiatorial entertainment at the funeral of his wife. And when the pagan moralists did condemn the spectacles, it was rather for other reasons than that they regarded them as inhuman and absolutely contrary to the rules of ethics. They were defended on the ground that they fostered a martial spirit among the people and inured the soldiers to the sights of the battlefield. Hence gladiatorial games were sometimes actually exhibited to the legions before they set out on their campaigns. Indeed, all classes appear to have viewed the matter in much the same light,

and with exactly the same absence of moral disapprobation, that we ourselves regard the slaughter of animals for food.

But the Christian Fathers denounced the combats as absolutely immoral, and labored in every possible way to create a public opinion against them. The members of their own body who attended the spectacles were excommunicated. At length, in A.D. 325, the first imperial edict against them was issued by Constantine. This decree appears to have been very little regarded; nevertheless, from this time forward the exhibitions were under something of a ban, until their final abolition was brought about by an incident of the games that closed the triumph of Honorius. In the midst of the exhibition a Christian monk, named Telemachus, descending into the arena, rushed between the combatants, but was instantly killed by a shower of missiles thrown by the people, who were angered by his interruption of their sports. The people, however, soon repented of their act; and Honorius himself, who was present, was moved by the scene. Christianity had awakened the conscience and touched the heart of Rome. The martyrdom of the monk led to an imperial edict "which abolished forever the human sacrifices of the amphitheatre."

271. Invasion of Italy by Various German Tribes under Radagaisus (A.D. 405-406).—While Italy was celebrating her triumph over the Goths, another and more formidable invasion was preparing in the North. The tribes beyond the Rhine, — the Vandals, the Suevi, the Burgundians, and other peoples, — driven onward by some unknown cause, poured in impetuous streams from the forests and morasses of Germany, and, breaking through the barriers of the Alps, overspread the plains of Italy. The alarm caused by them

among the Italians was even greater than that inspired by the Gothic invasion ; for Alaric was a Christian, while Rada-gaisus, the leader of the new hordes, was a superstitious savage, who paid worship to gods that required the bloody sacrifice of captive enemies.

By such efforts as Rome put forth in the younger and more vigorous days of the republic when Hannibal was at her gates, an army was now equipped and placed under the command of Stilicho. Meanwhile the barbarians had advanced as far as Florence, and were now besieging that place. Stilicho here surrounded the vast host — variously estimated from two hundred to four hundred thousand men — and starved them into a surrender. Their chief, Rada-gaisus, was put to death, and great numbers of the barbarians that the sword and famine had spared were sold as slaves (A.D. 406).

272. The Ransom of Rome (A.D. 409). — Shortly after the victory of Stilicho over the German barbarians, he came under the suspicion of the weak and jealous Honorius, and was executed. Thus fell the great general whose sword and counsel had twice saved Rome from the barbarians, and who might again have averted similar dangers that were now at hand. Listening to the rash counsel of his unworthy advisers, Honorius provoked to revolt the thirty thousand Gothic mercenaries in the Roman legions by a massacre of their wives and children, who were held as hostages in the different cities of Italy. The Goths beyond the Alps joined with their kinsmen to avenge the perfidious act. Alaric again crossed the mountains, and pillaging the cities in his way, led his hosts to the very gates of Rome. Not since the time of the dread Hannibal (par. 115) — more than six

hundred years before this — had Rome been insulted by the presence of a foreign foe beneath her walls.

The barbarians by their vast number were enabled to completely surround the city, and thus cut it off from its supplies of food. Famine soon forced the Romans to sue for terms of surrender. The ambassadors of the senate, when they came before Alaric, began, in lofty and unbecoming language, to warn him not to render the Romans desperate by hard or dishonorable terms: their fury when driven to despair, they represented, was terrible, and their number enormous. "The thicker the grass, the easier to mow it," was Alaric's derisive reply. The barbarian chieftain at length named the ransom that he would accept and spare the city: "All the gold and silver in the city, whether it were the property of individuals or of the state; all the rich and precious movables; and all the slaves that could prove their title to the name of barbarian." The amazed commissioners, in deprecating tones, asked: "If such, O king, are your demands, what do you intend to leave us?" "Your lives," responded the conqueror.

The ransom was afterwards considerably modified and reduced. It was fixed at "five thousand pounds of gold, thirty thousand of silver, four thousand silken robes, three thousand pieces of scarlet cloth, and three thousand pounds of pepper." The last-named article was much used in Roman cookery, and was very expensive, being imported from India. Merivale, in contrasting the condition of Rome at this time with her ancient wealth and grandeur, estimates that the gilding of the roof of the Capitoline temple far exceeded the entire ransom, and that it was four hundred times less than that (five milliards of francs) demanded of

France by the Prussians in 1871. Small as it comparatively was, the Romans were able to raise it only by the most extraordinary measures. The images of the gods were first stripped of their ornaments of gold and precious stones, and finally the statues themselves were melted down.

273. Sack of Rome by Alaric (A.D. 410). — Upon retiring from Rome, Alaric established his camp in ~~En~~uria. Here he was joined by great numbers of fugitive slaves, and by fresh accessions of barbarians from beyond the Alps. The chieftain now demanded for his followers lands of Honorius, who, with his court, was safe behind the marshes of Ravenna; but the emperor treated all the proposals of the barbarian with foolish insolence.

Rome paid the penalty. Alaric turned upon the city, resolved upon its sack and plunder. The barbarians broke into the capital by night, "and the inhabitants were awakened by the tremendous sound of the Gothic trumpet." Precisely eight hundred years had passed since its sack by the Gauls (par. 68). During that time the Imperial City had carried its victorious standards over three continents, and had gathered within the temples of its gods and the palaces of its nobles the plunder of the world. Now it was given over for a spoil to the fierce tribes from beyond the Danube.

Alaric commanded his soldiers to respect the lives of the people, and to leave untouched the treasures of the Christian churches; but the wealth of the citizens he permitted them to make their own. For six days and nights the rough barbarians trooped through the streets of the city on their mission of pillage. Their wagons were heaped with the costly furniture, the rich plate, and the silken garments

stripped from the palace of the Cæsars and the residences of the wealthy patricians. Amidst the license of the sack, the barbarian instincts of the robbers broke loose from all restraint, and the streets of the city were wet with blood, while the nights were lighted by burning buildings.

274. Effects of the Disaster upon Paganism. — The overwhelming disaster that had befallen the Imperial City produced a profound impression upon both pagans and Christians throughout the Roman world. The pagans asserted that these unutterable calamities had overtaken the Roman people because of their abandonment of the worship of the gods of their forefathers, under whose protection and favor Rome had become the mistress of the world.

The Christians, on the other hand, saw in the fall of the Eternal City the fulfilment of the prophecies of their Scriptures against the Babylon of the Apocalypse. It was this interpretation of the appalling calamity that gained credit amidst the panic and despair of the times. "Henceforth," says the historian Merivale, "the power of paganism was entirely broken, and the indications which occasionally meet us of its continued existence are rare and trifling. Christianity stepped into its deserted inheritance."

275. The Death of Alaric. — After withdrawing his warriors from Rome, Alaric led them southward. As they moved slowly on, they piled still higher the wagons of their long trains with the rich spoils of the cities and villas of Campania and other districts of Southern Italy. In the villas of the Roman nobles the barbarians spread rare banquets from the stores of their well-filled cellars, and drank from jewelled cups the famed Falernian wine.

Alaric led his soldiers to the extreme southern point of

Italy, intending to cross the straits of Messina into Sicily, and, after subduing that island, to carry his conquests into the provinces of Africa. His designs were frustrated by his death, which occurred A.D. 410. With religious care his followers secured the body of their hero against molestation by his enemies. The little river Busentinus, in Northern Bruttium, was turned from its course with great labor, and in the bed of the stream was constructed a tomb, in which was placed the body of the king, with his jewels and trophies. The river was then restored to its old channel, and, that the exact spot might never be known, the prisoners who had been forced to do the work were all put to death.²

276. The Disintegration of the Empire and the Beginnings of the Barbarian Kingdoms (A.D. 410-451).³—We must now turn our eyes from Rome and Italy in order to watch the movement of events in the western provinces of the empire. During the forty years following the sack of Rome by Alaric, the German tribes seized the greater part of these provinces and established in them what are known as the "Barbarian Kingdoms."

The Goths who had pillaged Rome and Italy, after the death of their great chieftain Alaric (par. 275), under the lead of his successors, Ataulf⁴ and Wallia, recrossed the Alps, and establishing their camps in the south of Gaul and the north of Spain, set up finally in those regions what is known as the Kingdom of the Visigoths or West Goths (see accompanying map).

² For later movements of the Visigoths, see par. 276.

³ We choose these dates for the reason that they set off the interval between two great events, namely, the sack of Rome by Alaric (par. 273) and the battle of Châlons (par. 277).

⁴ *Adolf*, *Adolphus*, are other forms of the name.

While the Goths were making these migrations and settlements, a kindred but less civilized tribe, the Vandals, moving from their seat in Pannonia, traversed Gaul, crossed the Pyrenees into Spain, and there occupied for a time a large tract of country, which in its present name of Andalusia preserves the memory of its barbarian settlers. Through the treachery of Count Boniface, the Roman governor of Africa, that land was opened to their conquests. They crossed the straits of Gibraltar, overthrew the Roman authority in all Northern Africa, and made Carthage the seat of a short-lived but dreaded corsair empire⁵ (A.D. 439).

About this same time the Burgundians, who, like the Vandals, were close kin of the Goths, partly by negotiations with the Romans and partly by force of arms, established themselves in Southeastern Gaul and laid there the basis of what is called the Kingdom of the Burgundians.⁶ A portion of the region occupied by these German settlers still retains from them the name of *Burgundy*.

Meanwhile the Franks, who about a century before the sack of Rome by Alaric had made their first settlement in Roman territory west of the Rhine, were increasing in numbers and in authority, and were laying the basis of what after the fall of Rome was to become known as the Kingdom of the Franks — the beginning of the French nation of to-day.⁷

But the most important of all the settlements of the barbarians was being made in the remote province of Britain.

⁵ See par. 279.

⁶ They began their settlements within the empire about A.D. 443.

⁷ The first great king of the Franks was Clovis, or Chlodwig (A.D. 486-511).

In his efforts to defend Italy against her barbarian invaders, Stilicho (par. 271) had withdrawn the last legion from Britain, and had thus left unguarded the Hadrian Wall in the North (par. 227) and the long coast-line facing the continent. The Picts of Caledonia, taking advantage of the withdrawal of the guardians of the province, swarmed over the unsentinelled rampart and pillaged the fields and towns of the South. The half-Romanized and effeminate provincials — no match for their hardy kinsmen who had never bowed their necks to the yoke of Rome — were driven to despair by the ravages of their relentless enemies, and, in their helplessness, invited to their aid the Angles and Saxons from the shores of the North Sea. These people came in their rude boats, drove back the invaders, and, being pleased with the soil and climate of the island, took possession of the country for themselves and became the ancestors of the English people.

277. Invasion of the Huns; Battle of Châlons (A.D. 451). — The barbarians that were thus overrunning and parcelling out the inheritance of the dying empire were now, in turn, pressed upon and terrified by a foe more hideous and dreadful in their eyes than were they in the sight of the peoples among whom they had thrust themselves. These were the non-Aryan Huns, of whom we have already caught a glimpse as they drove the panic-stricken Goths across the Danube (par. 262). At this time their leader was Attila, whom the affrighted inhabitants of Europe called the “Scourge of God.” It was declared that the grass never grew again where once the hoof of Attila’s horse had trod.

Attila defeated the armies of the Eastern emperor, and exacted tribute from the court of Constantinople. Finally he turned westward, and, at the head of a host numbering,

it is asserted, seven hundred thousand warriors, crossed the Rhine into Gaul, purposing first to ravage that province, and then to traverse Italy with fire and sword, in order to destroy the last vestige of the Roman power.

The Romans and their German conquerors laid aside their mutual animosities, and made common cause against a common enemy. The Visigoths were rallied by their king, Theodoric; the Italians, the Franks, the Burgundians flocked to the standard of the able Roman general Aëtius.⁸ Attila drew up his mighty hosts upon the plain of Châlons, in the north of Gaul, and there awaited the onset of the Romans and their allies. The conflict was long and terrible. Theodoric was slain; but at last fortune turned against the barbarians. The loss of the Huns is variously estimated at from one hundred to three hundred thousand warriors. Attila succeeded in escaping from the field, and retreated with his shattered hosts across the Rhine (A.D. 451).

This great victory is placed among the significant events of history; for it decided that the Christian German folk, and not the pagan Scythic Huns, should inherit the dominions of the expiring Roman empire and control the destinies of Europe.

278. The Death of Attila (A.D. 453?). — The year after his defeat at Châlons, Attila crossed the Alps, and burned or plundered all the important cities of Northern Italy. The Veneti fled for safety to the morasses at the head of the Adriatic (A.D. 452). Upon the islets where they built their

⁸ Aëtius has been called "the last of the Romans." For twenty years previous to this time he had been the upholder of the imperial authority in Gaul.

rude dwellings, there grew up in time the city of Venice, the "eldest daughter of the Roman empire," the "Carthage of the Middle Ages."

The Conqueror threatened Rome; but Leo the Great, bishop of the capital, went with an embassy to the camp of Attila and pleaded for the city. He recalled to the mind of Attila how death had overtaken the impious Alaric soon after he had given the Imperial City as a spoil to his warriors, and warned him not to call down upon himself the like judgment of Heaven (par. 275). To these admonitions of the Christian bishop was added the persuasion of a golden bribe from the emperor, Valentinian; and Attila was induced to spare Southern Italy, and to lead his warriors back beyond the Alps. Shortly after he had crossed the Danube, he died suddenly in his camp, and, like Alaric, was buried secretly. His followers gradually withdrew from Europe into the wilds of their native Scythia, or were absorbed by the peoples they had conquered.⁹

279. Sack of Rome by the Vandals (A.D. 455). — Rome had been saved a visitation from the spoiler of the North,

⁹ There is much uncertainty respecting the part which the warriors of Attila may have taken in the formation of the later Hungarian state in Europe. That appears to have owed its origin to another invading band of the same people, that entered Europe several centuries later. "It is at least certain," says Creasy, "that the Magyars of Arpad, who are the immediate ancestors of the bulk of the modern Hungarians, and who conquered the country which bears the name of Hungary in A.D. 889, were of the same stock of mankind as the Huns of Attila, if they did not belong to the same subdivision of that stock. Nor is there any improbability in the tradition that after Attila's death many of his warriors remained in Hungary, and that their descendants afterwards joined the Huns of Arpad in their career of conquest. It is certain that Attila made Hungary the seat of his empire." — *Decisive Battles*.

but a new destruction was about to burst upon it by way of the sea from the South. Africa sent out another enemy whose greed for plunder proved more fatal to Rome than the eternal hate of Hannibal. The kings of the Vandal empire in Northern Africa (par. 276) had acquired as perfect a supremacy in the Western Mediterranean as Carthage ever enjoyed in the days of her commercial pride. Vandal corsairs swept the seas and harassed the coasts of Sicily and Italy, and even plundered the maritime towns of the provinces of the Roman empire in the East. In the year 455 a Vandal fleet, led by the dread Geiseric (Genseric), sailed up the Tiber.

These barbarians had been exhorted by the Roman empress Eudoxia to come and avenge the murder of her husband Valentinian and her forced alliance with a senator named Maximus, who, being invested with the purple, had forced the widowed queen to accept the hand stained, as many believed, with the blood of her own husband.

Panic seized the people, for the name Vandal was pronounced with terror throughout the world. Again the great Leo, who had once before saved his flock from the fury of an Attila (par. 278), went forth to intercede in the name of Christ for the Imperial City. Geiseric granted to the pious bishop the lives of the citizens, but said that the movable property of the capital belonged to his warriors. For fourteen days and nights the city was given over to the ruthless barbarians. The ships of the Vandals, which almost hid with their number the waters of the Tiber, were piled, as had been the wagons of the Goths before them (par. 273), with the rich and weighty spoils of the capital. Palaces were stripped of their ornaments and furniture, and the

walls of the temples denuded of the trophies of a hundred Roman victories.¹ From the Capitoline sanctuary were borne off the golden candlestick and other sacred articles 'that Titus had stolen from the Temple at Jerusalem (par. 222).

The greed of the barbarians was sated at last, and they were ready to withdraw. The Vandal fleet sailed for Carthage,² bearing, besides the plunder of the city, more than thirty thousand of the inhabitants as slaves. Carthage, through her own barbarian conquerors, was at last avenged upon her hated rival. The mournful presentiment of Scipio had fallen true (par. 141). The cruel fate of Carthage might have been read again in the pillaged city that the Vandals left behind them.

280. Fall of the Roman Empire in the West (A.D. 476). — Only the shadow of the Empire in the West now remained. All the provinces — Illyricum, Gaul, Britain, Spain, and Africa — were in the hands of the Goths, the Vandals, the Franks, the Burgundians, the Angles and Saxons, and various other intruding tribes. Italy, as well as Rome herself, had become again and again the spoil of the barbarians. The story of the twenty years following the sack of the capital by Geiseric affords only a repetition of the events we have been narrating.

¹ It would seem that, in some instances at least, after the closing of the temples to the pagan worship, many of the sacred things, such as war trophies, were left undisturbed in the edifices where they had been placed during pagan times.

² The fleet was overtaken by a storm and suffered some damage, but the most precious of the relics it bore escaped harm. "The golden candlestick reached the African capital, was recovered a century later, and lodged in Constantinople by Justinian, and by him replaced, from superstitious motives, in Jerusalem. From that time its history is lost."

— MERIVALE.

During the years from A.D. 456 to 472, the real ruler in Italy was a Sueve, called Count Ricimer. He set up four emperors. Upon his death a Pannonian by the name of Orestes deposed the emperor then on the throne and placed the imperial crown upon the head of his own son, a child of only six years.

By what has been called a freak of fortune this boy-sovereign bore the name of Romulus Augustus, thus uniting in the name of the last Roman emperor of the West the names of the founder of Rome and the establisher of the empire. Not so much on account of his youth as from contempt excited by the imperial farce he was forced to play, this emperor became known as Augustulus — “the little Augustus.” He reigned only one year, when Odovakar (Odoacer), the leader of the Heruli, a small but formidable German tribe, having demanded one-third of the lands of Italy to divide among his followers for services rendered the empire, and having been refused, put Orestes to death and dethroned the child-emperor.

The Roman senate now sent an embassy to Constantinople, with the royal vestments and the insignia of the imperial office, to represent to the Eastern emperor Zeno that the West was willing to give up its claims to an emperor of its own, and to request that the German chief, with the title of “patrician,” might rule Italy as his viceroy. This was granted; and Italy now became in effect a province of the Empire in the East (A.D. 476).

281. The Import of the Fall of Rome. — The destruction of the Roman empire in the West by the German barbarians is one of the most momentous events in history. It marks a turning point in the fortunes of mankind.

The revolution brought it about that for a long time the lamp of culture burned with lessened light. It brought in the so-called Dark Ages. During this period the new race were slowly lifting themselves to the level of culture that the Greeks and Romans had attained.

But the revolution meant much besides, disaster and loss. It meant the enrichment of civilization through the incoming of a new and splendidly endowed race. Within the empire during several centuries three of the most vital elements of civilization, the Greek, the Roman, and the Hebrew-Christian, had been gradually blending. Now was added a fourth factor, the Germanic. It is this element which has had very much to do in making modern civilization richer, more myriad-sided, and more progressive than any preceding one.

The downfall of the Roman imperial government in the West was, further, an event of immense significance in the political world, for the reason that it rendered possible the growth in Western Europe of several nations or states in place of the single empire. This was a revolution of as great import for the history of Europe as the impending break-up of the Chinese empire and the distribution of its territories among the European powers promises to be for the history of Eastern Asia.

Another consequence of the fall of the Roman power in the West was the development of the Papacy. In Dante's phrase—used in connection with the removal by Constantine of the imperial government to the Bosphorus—it "gave the Pastor³ room." In the absence of an emperor in the West the popes rapidly gained influence and power, and

³ The Roman bishop.

soon built up an ecclesiastical empire that in some respects took the place of the old empire and carried on its civilizing work.

REFERENCES.—TACITUS, ** *Germania*: the most valuable original account that we possess of the life and manners of our German ancestors about the first century of our era. HODGKIN (T.), *Italy and her Invaders*, vols. i and ii.; on the Visigothic, the Hunnish, and the Vandal invasions. MILMAN (H. H.), *The History of Christianity*, vol. iii. DILL (S.), ** *Roman Society in the Last Century of the Western Empire*. A book recently published (1898) and of unsurpassed value. The student of the history of the Fall of Rome should not fail to read bk. i. chap. ii. pp. 23-49, "The Last Conflicts of Paganism with the Christian Empire"; chap. iii. pp. 50-61, "S. Augustine and Orosius on the Capture of Rome"; bk. iii. pp. 189-234, "The Failure of Administration and the Ruin of the Middle Class as revealed by the Theodosian Code"; and bk. iv. pp. 237-318, "The Barbarians and the Future of the Empire." CURTEIS (A. M.), *History of the Roman Empire from the Death of Theodosius the Great to the Coronation of Charles the Great, A. D. 395-800*, chaps. vi.-ix. pp. 95-171. GIBBON (E.), *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chap. ix., "The State of Germany till the Invasion of the Barbarians in the Time of the Emperor Decius." FINLAY (G.), *History of Greece*, vol. i. chap. i. § 7, "Effect of the Separation of the Eastern and Western Empires on the Greek Nation." CHURCH (R. W.), *The Beginnings of the Middle Ages* (Epoch Series). Read the "Introduction" and chap. i. CUTTS (E. L.), *Saint Augustine* (Fathers for English Readers). CARR (A.), *The Church and the Roman Empire* (Epochs of Church History), chap. xiii. pp. 107-121, "The Fall of Paganism"; chap. xviii. pp. 146-164, "Alaric and the Goths." FREEMAN (E. A.), *The Three Chief Periods of European History*, Lec. III., "Rome and the New Nations." KINGSLEY (C.), * *The Roman and the Teuton*, Lects. I., II., and III. CREASY (E. S.), ** *Decisive Battles of the World*, chap. vi., "The Battle of Châlons, A.D. 451." ALLARD (P.), *Le Christianisme et l'Empire Romain*, chaps. vii. and viii. pp. 237-287. EMERTON (E.), ** *An Introduction to the Study of the Middle Ages*, chaps. ii. and iii. pp. 11-47. These chapters cover in an admirable way the following subjects: "The Two Races," "The Breaking of the Frontier by the Visigoths," and "The Invasion of the Huns."

ROMAN EMPERORS FROM COMMODUS TO ROMULUS AUGUSTUS.

(A.D. 180-476.)

A.D.	A.D.
Commodus 180-192	{ Diocletian 284-305
Pertinax 193	{ Maximian 286-305
Didius Julianus 193	{ Constantius I. 305-306
Septimius Severus 193-211	{ Galerius 305-311
{ Caracalla 211-217	Constantine the Great 306-337
{ Geta 211-212	Reigns as sole ruler 323-337
Macrinus 217-218	Constantine II. 337-340
Elagabalus 218-222	Constans I. 337-350
Alexander Severus 222-235	Constantius II. 337-361
Maximin 235-238	Reigns as sole ruler 350-361
Gordian III. 238-244	Julian the Apostate 361-363
Philip 244-249	Jovian 363-364
Decius 249-251	{ Valentinian I. 364-375
Period of the Thirty	{ Valens (in the East) 364-378
Tyrants 251-268	Gratian 375-383
Claudius 268-270	Maximus 383-388
Aurelian 270-275	Valentinian II. 375-392
Tacitus 275-276	Eugenius 392-394
Probus 276-282	Theodosius the Great 379-395
Carus 282-283	Reigns as sole emperor 394-395
{ Carinus 283-284	
{ Numerian 283-284	

FINAL PARTITION OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

(A.D. 395.)

EMPERORS IN THE EAST.

(From A.D. 395 to Fall of Rome)

A.D.
Arcadius 395-408
Theodosius II. 408-450
Marcian 450-457
Leo I. 457-474
Zeno 474-491

EMPERORS IN THE WEST.

A.D.
Honorius 395-423
Valentinian III. 425-455
Maximus 455
Avitus 455-456
Count Ricimer creates and deposes emperors, 456-472
Romulus Augustus 475-476

CHAPTER XXII.

SUMMARY OF THE CAUSES OF THE FALL OF THE EMPIRE.

282. Introductory. — The preceding narrative of the history of the Roman empire during the last two centuries of its existence cannot have failed to reveal to the reader at least the main causes of its decline and fall; but a review and summary of these agencies will serve to impress more deeply upon the mind the essential phases of this memorable revolution.

The agencies actively concerned in effecting the dissolution of the society and government of imperial Rome may be conveniently enumerated as economic, military, political or social, religious and moral.

283. Economic Causes. — Among the various economic causes of the fall of Rome must be placed the institution of slavery. It is indeed true that before the end of the empire the hard lot of the slave had been greatly bettered by the influences of the stoical philosophy and of Christianity, and that in wide districts of the empire the system had been transformed, or was being transformed, into the milder servitude of serfdom. But notwithstanding these changes in the system, it was still, as in the later days of the republic, the source of many of the evils that afflicted society. It prevented the normal increase of population. It degraded labor, and thus made impossible the development of a

healthy industrial life. It also reacted disastrously upon the morals of both master and slave, indurating the feelings of the one, and destroying the manhood of the other. In all these ways the slave system tended to undermine the very foundations of the state.

A second economic cause of the decline of Roman society was the monopolization of the land by a comparatively few persons. All the efforts that had been made by the statesmen of the later republic and by the emperors to remedy this evil and to create in the various provinces of the empire a body of free peasant proprietors, had effected very little. In the fifth century after Christ, as in the time of the Gracchi (par. 148), the great masses who turned the soil had not a clod that they could call their own. This condition of things foreboded disaster to the state. Any society in which the soil, nature's free and equal gift to all, is allowed to become the possession of a few and thereby the means of enslaving the many, must inevitably decay and perish.

A third economic cause of the failure of the empire was fiscal oppression. We have seen what a crushing burden the imperial taxes laid upon the people (par. 240). The condition of France just before the Revolution of 1789, or that of the Turkish empire at the present time, affords an illustration of the wretched condition to which the Roman world had been reduced by the exactions and the oppression of the imperial government.

Still another economic cause of the fall of the empire was the decline in population. The historian Seeley says that the empire perished for lack of men.⁴ This failure in popu-

⁴ *Roman Imperialism*, p. 54.

lation resulted in part from slavery, crushing taxation, and the practice of celibacy, and in part from the waste of life caused by constant wars, by plagues, and by the mere contact of civilization with barbarism.⁵

No other industrial system depletes population so rapidly as does slavery. It undermines the family, and at the same time wears out men with a rapidity and ruthlessness not exceeded even by the military system in times of war. In these direct, and in many other indirect ways, slavery helped to thin the population of the empire, and to lay it open to the invasions of the barbarians.

After slavery, the intolerable burden of imperial taxation was perhaps the most prominent cause of the depopulation of the empire. Thousands of the oppressed provincials fled across the frontiers and sought an asylum among the barbarians. Life outside the pale of civilization had become preferable to life within.

Another cause of the decline in population was the singular aversion that the better class of the Romans evinced to marriage. We meet during the period of the empire with a crowd of imperial edicts dealing with this subject. Penalties and bounties, deprivations and privileges, entreaties and expostulations are in turn resorted to by the perplexed emperors, in order to discourage celibacy and to foster a pure and healthy family life. But all was in vain. The marriage state continued to be held in great disesteem (par. 313). And Christianity instead of correcting the evil, rather made matters worse; for just now the teachings of the monks were persuading vast multitudes of the superior sanctity of the solitary or the monastic life, and thereby

⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 58.

filling the deserts of Egypt and the monasteries of all lands with men who believed that they could best live the higher life by freeing themselves of all family and social cares and duties.

To these various agencies of depopulation must be added that of domestic and foreign wars. The many bloody struggles between the numerous aspirants for the imperial dignity, and the constant fighting of the legions in the defence of the frontiers, had an exhausting effect upon the empire. The flower of the Roman race was swept away by the accidents of war, and the gaps in the ranks of the legions could be filled only by recruits from among the barbarians.

Furthermore, during the later centuries of the empire, plagues of extraordinary virulence desolated its provinces. These visitations can be compared to nothing in the following centuries save the terrible pestilence of the Black Death, which in the fourteenth century destroyed from a third to a half of the population of Europe. What made these earlier visitations so much more fatal to society was the fact that the springs of recuperation had then been fatally impaired.

What part in this process of depopulation may be assigned to the last of the causes we have enumerated, namely, the contact of civilization with barbarism, it would be difficult to say. It is a fact that there are races to-day, like the American Indians and the South Sea Islanders, that are melting away from mere contact with a civilization which they cannot or will not assimilate. In the same way, Seeley maintains, in Spain, in Gaul, in Britain, and in the Danubian provinces of the empire, the barbarian races

wasted away in the presence of the superior Roman culture which they could not at once make their own.

The signs of the growing depopulation of the empire were to be seen on every side in the ruin-strewn sites of once populous and flourishing cities like Carthage, Corinth, Megalopolis, the Bæotian Thebes and Palmyra. Vast territories formerly astir with life and carefully tilled had reverted to a condition of primitive wildness.

The policies of the emperors, such as bounties on marriage, gifts of land in waste districts to men of families, the wholesale settlement of barbarian tribes in the empty provinces, and similar measures, bear pathetic testimony to the alarming condition of the empire and the unrelenting efforts of the emperors to arrest the downward movement of society.

284. Military Causes.—An empire acquired by the sword must be maintained by the sword. But even before the frontiers of the Roman empire had been pushed out to their greatest extent, the military spirit that animated the early Romans had become extinct, and all enthusiasm for the military life and the military virtues had been lost. Under the later empire, service in the army grew so unpopular and even odious that many cut off the fingers of the right hand in order to escape military duty. The government was forced to impose severe penalties for such acts. In some cases it even punished such conduct by the infliction of death by burning. Christianity with its Quaker teachings coming in at just this time contributed also to render more general the disesteem in which the military life was coming to be held. In the earlier period of the empire, any Christian who voluntarily entered the army was cut off

from the Church. If any were compelled to enter the legions, such were enjoined to "fight backwardly."⁶

The result of this decline in the military spirit among the Romans was, as we have seen, that the recruiting ground of the legions became the barbarian lands outside the empire. The ranks of the army were filled with barbarians; and able men from among them, like Stilicho and Ricimer,⁷ usurped as commanders the places once held by the Fabii and the Scipios.

This loss of the military spirit in a military age, and this transformation in the armies of Rome could of course have no other outcome than such as we have seen to be the issue of it all — the entrance into the army of a non-Roman spirit, and the final overthrow of the imperial government by the revolt of the mutinous legions.

285. Political or Social Causes. — Chief among the causes contributory to the fall of the empire that may be gathered under this head, is the lack of unity in the state. Modern statesmen predict the dissolution of the Austro-Hungarian monarchy for the reason that it is formed of such a mixture of races. Now the old Roman empire was in this respect like this modern state.

There was one very distinct line of cleavage which divided the empire into an Eastern and a Western half. We may very properly characterize the empire as Græco-Roman. Rome had Romanized the West, and a large part of it remains Latin to this day; but she could not Romanize the East. It remained essentially Greek to the last. The building of

⁶ The government generally allowed the Christians to provide substitutes or to pay a sum of money in lieu of personal service.

⁷ See pars. 268 and 280.

the new Rome by Constantine on the Bosphorus, and the final division of the empire by Theodosius the Great (par. 267), were, viewed from one side, simply formal recognitions of the fact that the two halves of the empire could not be made alike.

Besides this great rift in the empire separating the Latin West from the Hellenic East, there were other lines of cleavage which followed, in the main, the old boundaries of the tribes or nations that Rome had subjugated. It was the still unsubdued national spirit in Spain and Gaul and Britain, and among the Germans and the Jews, that, for one thing, made necessary the change of the republic into the military empire. This national spirit was not so strong in the later days of the empire as it was in the earlier; yet it was by no means everywhere dead. Even where it had practically died out, there had not yet sprung up to take its place a feeling of attachment for the empire. Thus, for instance, as the historian Stephens says, "Gaul ceased to be a nation without becoming in sentiment or spirit an integral member of the empire. . . . Gaul therefore fell an easy prey to her German invaders."⁸

As it was with the larger territorial divisions of the empire, so was it with the cities. The empire was made up of hundreds of cities; but the citizens of these towns, with very few exceptions, took neither pride nor interest in imperial affairs. We may say that Rome destroyed city patriotism in antiquity, but without calling into existence any broader sentiment or feeling. Men were no longer willing to die or to live either for their city or for the empire. It was this lack of spiritual ties, binding in a vital

⁸ *Lectures on the History of France*, p. 686.

union the cities and communities of the empire, that the statesman-historian Guizot maintains was a chief cause of its dissolution.⁹ With the first blows of the barbarians it fell to pieces.

Besides all these divisions in the empire, resulting from the great number of different races and primitive city-states which, during centuries of conquest, Rome had brought under her dominion, there were those divisions of the population into orders or classes, — the rich and the poor, the free and the bond, the titled and the untitled, — which destroyed the homogeneity of society, and rendered impossible the establishment of a strong unified state. The great majority of the people living under the Roman government had no interest whatsoever in helping to defend and uphold it. The oppressed classes in the provinces everywhere welcomed the barbarians as deliverers.

Finally, among the political causes of the fall of Rome must be named the lack of a rule or principle of succession to the throne. The imperial crown, during the five centuries with which we have had to do, never became hereditary or regularly elective. Almost from first to last, as we have seen, the emperor generally reached the throne by irregular and violent means. The strength of the empire was wasted in constantly recurring wars of succession. Could a dynasty have been established in the first century, and had there grown up among the people a feeling of loyalty towards the imperial family, like that, for instance, of the Scotch to the House of Stuart, this sentiment would have given security and stability to the throne, and the history of the empire might have been wholly different from what it was.

⁹ *History of Civilization in Europe*, Lec. II.

286. Religious and Moral Causes. — No state has ever yet existed without religion as a basis. The decay of the old Roman religion, then, on which the ancient city constitution rested, must be assigned as one of the causes of the failure and fall of the Roman empire. Diocletian and Julian, as we have seen, both recognized the necessity of basing the government on religion, and both strove to bring about a pagan revival. But it was impossible to reawaken a real, vital faith in the ancestral gods and the ancient worship. There was promise in Stoicism, for the Stoics gave a prominent place to the civic virtues, and exalted patriotism; but their doctrines were too cold and abstract to become the creed of the multitude.

Christianity did not at once fill the place made vacant by the decay of polytheism, for the reason that it at first drew the attention of men away from earthly matters, and caused an undue absorption of their thoughts in the concerns of the unseen world. "Nothing is more foreign to us," declared Tertullian, speaking for the Christians, "than public affairs." We have already seen how the early Christians refused to serve in the legions (par. 284). Monasticism, moreover, drew away into the desert, or within the doors of the cloisters, a considerable part of the talent and the moral earnestness of the times. And thus Christianity, as has been truly observed, hastened, though at the same time it softened, the fall of the empire.

Especially did religious discord and the persecution of one sect of Christians by another, after the time of Constantine, paralyze the energies of the state, waste its strength, and open the gates of the empire to the invasions of the

northern barbarians, just as the same causes, two centuries later, facilitated the conquests of the Mohammedan Arabs.

How greatly the decay of the old Roman virtues and the general decline in the standard of morality in the later empire contributed to the final catastrophe has been made plain by our narrative of the transactions and revolutions of the imperial period. As in the time of the later republic, so now, the universal moral decadence formed a sort of quicksand that refused support to social institutions of every kind, and rendered futile all efforts to stay the downward tendency of things.

287. The Advance of the German Tribes in Political Organization and Military Discipline. — The real causes of the failure of the Roman empire must of course be sought within the empire itself. The saying of Emerson is ever true, that a thing cannot be crushed by a blow from without until ready to perish from decay within. Though we may not, therefore, look for the primary causes of the fall of Rome anywhere outside the empire, still we may look for secondary causes of the disaster in the condition of the German barbarian world.

Notwithstanding the fact that the failing civilization of the Mediterranean world was surrounded on all sides by barbarian enemies, still, as the event proved, the only really dangerous area of barbarism in the fifth century lay on the northern frontiers of the empire. Here were the German folk.

Since the campaigns of Julius Cæsar (par. 191), these people had gained much in political experience, and had formed powerful confederacies. By the Romans, too, they

had been taught the art of war. Thus ancient civilization armed barbarism against itself.¹

What part these northern tribes played in the closing scenes of the drama of the fall of the empire, we have already seen. They were the immediate or proximate cause of the break-up of the imperial government in the West.

REFERENCES. — HODGKIN (T.), *Italy and her Invaders*, vol. ii. pp. 532-613, "Causes of the Fall of the Western Empire." SEELEY (J. R.), ** *Roman Imperialism*, Lec. II. pp. 37-64, "The Proximate Causes of the Fall of the Roman Empire." BURY (J. B.), ** *A History of the Later Roman Empire*, vol. i. chap. iii. pp. 25-36, "Elements of Disintegration in the Roman Empire." The author makes slavery, oppressive taxation, the importation of barbarians, and Christianity the four chief causes of the weakness and failure of the empire. FOWLER (W. W.), * *The City-State*, chap. xi. pp. 306-332, "Dissolution of the City-State: the Roman Empire." MERIVALE (C.), *History of the Romans under the Empire*, vol. vii., last few pages. MONTESQUIEU, *The Grandeur and Decadence of the Romans*, chap. xix. ANDREWS (E. B.), *Institutes of General History*, pp. 99-111. SHEPPARD (J. G.), *The Fall of Rome and the Rise of the New Nationalities*, Lec. II. pp. 61-106. FINLAY (G.), *History of Greece*, vol. i. chap. ii. § 10, on "Declining Condition of the Greek Population in the European Provinces of the Eastern Empire."

¹ Modern civilization has done the same thing; but fortunately not any of the really barbarian and war-loving races that we have armed and taught the art of modern warfare are formidable in numbers.

PART IV.—ARCHITECTURE, LITERATURE, LAW, AND SOCIAL LIFE.

CHAPTER XXIII.

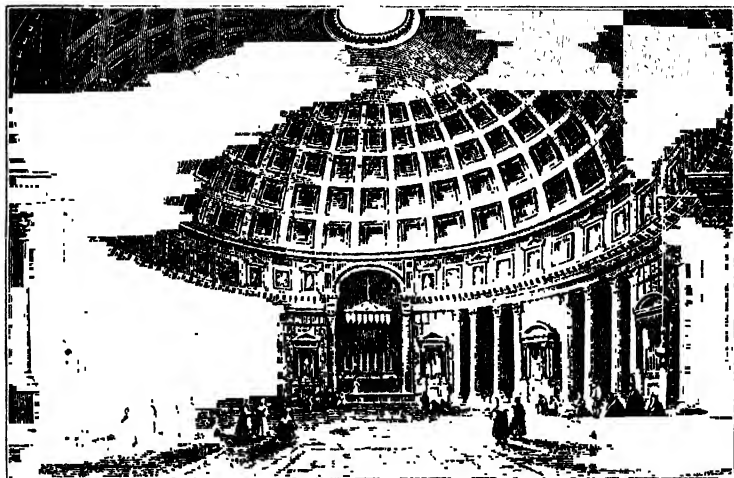
ARCHITECTURE.

288. Introductory. — We purpose in the present chapter to say something further respecting the great architectural works of the ancient Romans, any extended description of which before this time would have broken the continuity of our narrative. An examination of these as they stood before time and violence laid defacing hands upon them, or as they appear now after the decay and spoliation of many centuries, will tend to render more real, and to impress more deeply upon our minds, the story we have been following (see *Frontispiece*).

289. Greek Origin of Roman Architecture; the Arch. — The architecture of the Romans was, in the main, an imitation of Greek models. But the Romans were not mere servile imitators. They not only modified the architectural forms they borrowed, but they gave their structures a distinct character by the prominent use of the arch, which the Greek and the oriental builders seldom employed, though they were acquainted with its properties. By means of it the Roman builders vaulted the roofs of the largest buildings, carried stupendous aqueducts across the deepest val-

leys, and spanned the broadest streams with bridges that have resisted all the assaults of time and flood to the present day.

290. Sacred Edifices. — The temples of the Romans were in general so like those of the Greeks that we need not here take time and space to enter into a particular descrip-



THE PANTHEON, INTERIOR.

(From an old engraving)

tion of them.² Mention, however, should be made of their circular vaulted temples, as this was a style of building

² The most celebrated of Roman temples was the Capitoline, which crowned the Capitoline hill at Rome. At the close of the Punic wars the roof of the central portion of the building was covered with gilded tiles at an almost fabulous expense — \$20,000,000 according to some authorities. The brazen doors of the temple were also adorned with solid plates of gold. The interior decorations were of marble and silver. The walls were crowded with the trophies of war. We have already learned of the fate of the treasures of the sanctuary at the hands of the barbarian Vandals (par. 279).

almost exclusively Italian. The best representative of this class of sacred edifices is the Pantheon³ at Rome, which has come down to our own times in a state of wonderful preservation. This structure is about one hundred and forty feet in diameter. The immense concrete dome which vaults the building is one of the boldest pieces of masonry executed by the master-builders of the world. The temple is fronted by a splendid portico, forming a thick grove of columns, through which entrance is given to the shrine (par. 215). The doors were of bronze, and still remain in place. The original building was erected about 25 B.C. by M. Agrippa, son-in-law of Augustus. Having been damaged by fire, it was rebuilt by Hadrian.

291. Circuses, Theatres, and Amphitheatres. — The circuses of the Romans were what we should call race courses. There were several at Rome, the most celebrated being the *Circus Maximus*, which was first laid out in the time of the Tarquins (par. 34), and afterwards enlarged as the population of the capital increased, until finally, at the time of Constantine the Great, who made the last extension, it was capable of holding probably two or three hundred thousand spectators.⁴ It was oblong in shape, being about eighteen hundred feet long and six hundred feet wide. From the course, or track, the seats rose in tiers, the same as in a theatre. From the uppermost row of seats rose high buildings with several stories of balconies, like the boxes overhanging the modern stage. The sloping sides of a convenient valley were taken advantage of in the forma-

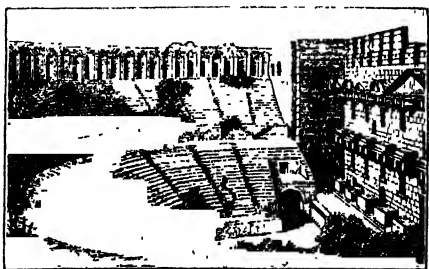
³ From two Greeks words, *pan*, all, and *theion*, divine (or *theos*, a god).

⁴ Authorities differ, ranging from 150,000 to 380,000. Pliny says 250,000.

tion of the seats. The only remaining trace of this stupendous structure is the terraced appearance of the low encircling hills.

The Romans borrowed the plan of their theatres from the Greeks. The form was that of a semicircle, with rising tiers of seats. The Greeks, in the construction of their theatres, usually took advantage of some hillside; but the Romans, when they set themselves to theatre-building, erected the entire structure upon level ground, raising a great supporting wall

or framework in place of the hill with its favoring slopes. All of the theatres built at Rome previous to the year 55 B.C. were of wood. In that year Pompey the Great returned from his cam-



RUINS OF THEATRE AT ASPENDOS.

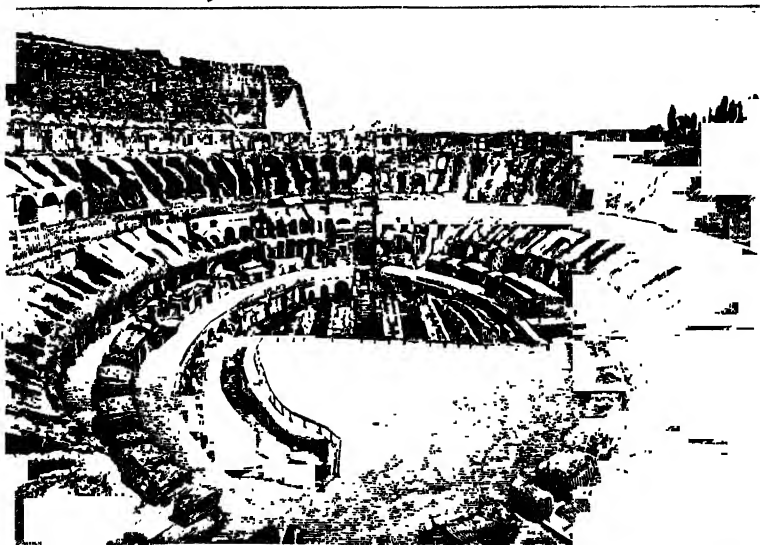
paigns in the East, where he had seen the Greek theatre at Mitylene, and immediately set to work to erect, in imitation of it, a stone theatre at Rome that should seat forty thousand spectators. This structure and two others, one of which was built by Augustus, were the only theatres at the capital.

The first Roman amphitheatre seems to have been the outgrowth of the rivalry between Pompey and Cæsar (par. 194). The liberality of the former in the erection of his stone theatre had so won for him the affections of the people that the latter saw he must do something to surpass his rival, or see himself entirely distanced in the race for popular favor. Cæsar was at this time away in Gaul,

whence he sent immense sums of money, gained by his successful wars, to his friend Curio, then tribune at Rome, who was enjoined to erect, with the means thus put in his hands, a structure that should cast Pompey's into the shade. Pliny tells us that Curio built two wooden theatres side by side, in which two separate audiences might be entertained at the same time. With things thus arranged, and with the people in good-humor from the farcical representations that had been given, all was ready for the master-stroke that was to win the applause of the giddy multitude. At a given signal, one of the theatres, which had been constructed so as to admit of such a movement, was swung round and brought face to face with the other, in such a way as to form a vast amphitheatre, where, from a central space called the arena and designed for the exhibitions, the seats rose in receding tiers on every side.

The first stone amphitheatre was erected during the reign of Augustus. But the one which threw all other edifices of this kind far into the background, and which in some respects surpasses any other monument ever reared by man, was the structure commenced by Flavius Vespasian, and often called, after him, the Flavian Amphitheatre, but better known as the Colosseum. The edifice is five hundred and seventy-four feet in its greatest diameter, and was capable of seating over forty thousand spectators. The encircling wall rises in four stories to the height of one hundred and fifty-six feet. Within, the seats rose from the arena in retreating steps to the magnificent portico that crowned the upper circle. Beneath the arena and seats were large chambers which served as dens for the wild animals needed in the shows. Sockets in the upper stone-

work held pillars to which were fastened the ropes by means of which an immense awning was stretched over the heads of the spectators to keep out the sun and rain. Fountain jets filled the air with perfumed spray; pieces of statuary, placed at advantageous points, relieved the



THE COLOSSEUM.

(From a photograph)

monotony of the endless circle of seats; and bright-colored silken decorations lent a festive appearance to the vast auditorium.

The enormous proportions of the Colosseum have enabled it to resist all the agencies of destruction which have been at work upon it through so many centuries. The crowning colonnade was destroyed by fire; the immense walls were made a quarry by the builders of Rome for a thousand

years, and from them was taken material for the building of a multitude of castles, towers, and palaces erected in the capital during the Middle Ages; and for seventeen hundred years the tooth of time has been busy upon every part of the gigantic structure. Yet, notwithstanding all these concurring agencies of ruin, the Colosseum still stands grand and impressive as at first, even more impressive because of these marks that it bears of violence and of age. It rises before us as "the embodiment of the power and splendor of the empire."

Many of the most important cities of Italy and of the provinces were provided with amphitheatres, similar in all essential respects to the Colosseum at the capital, only much inferior in size, save the one at Capua, which was nearly as large as the Flavian structure.

292. Military Roads.—Foremost among the works of utility executed by the Romans, and the most expressive of the practical genius of the people, were their military roads. Radiating from the capital, they lengthened with the growing empire, until all the countries about the Mediterranean and beyond the Alps were united to Rome and to one another by a perfect network of highways of such admirable construction that even now, in their ruined state, they excite the wonder of modern engineers.

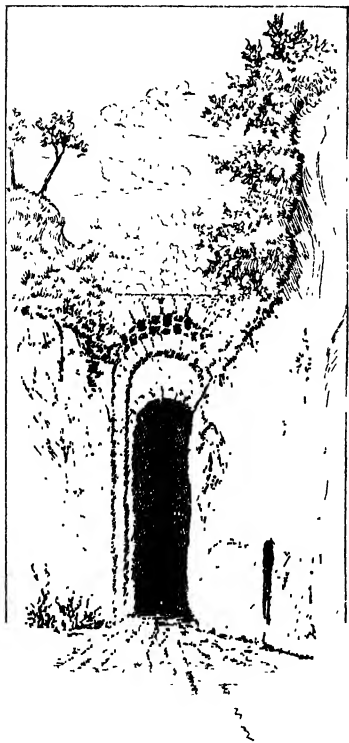
The most noted of all the Roman roads was the *Via Appia*, called by the ancients themselves the "Queen of Roads," which connected Rome with Capua. As we have already seen (par. 78), it was built by Appius Claudius at the close of the second Samnite war (312 B.C.). Afterwards it was carried from Capua across the peninsula to Brundisium, an important seaport on the coast of Calabria, whence

expeditions were embarked for operations in the East. The great Flaminian Way ran from the capital to Ariminum on the Adriatic, and thence was extended, under another name, northward into the valley of the Po (par. 99, n. 3). Several other roads, reaching out from Rome in different directions, completed the communication of the capital with the various cities and regions of the peninsula. As the limits of the Roman authority extended, new roads were built in the conquered provinces — in Sicily, in Northern Africa, in Spain, over the Alps, along the Rhine and the Danube, throughout Gaul, Britain, Greece, and all the East.

These military roads, with characteristic Roman energy and disregard of obstacles, were carried forward, as nearly as possible, in straight lines and on a level, mountains being pierced with tunnels,⁵ and valleys crossed by means

⁵ In boring tunnels, the Roman engineers worked simultaneously from both sides of the mountain, in the same way that modern engineers do. In 1860 an inscription was discovered which contains a curious report of an engineer who had in charge the construction of an aqueduct tunnel for the town of Saldæ, in Algeria. During his absence the boring went awry, and the ends of the sections could not be brought together. The engineer was sent for. His report says: "I found everybody sad and despondent; they had given up all hopes that the two opposite sections of the tunnel would meet, because each section had already been excavated beyond the middle of the mountain, and the junction had not yet been effected. As always happens in these cases, the fault was attributed to the engineer, as though he had not taken all precautions to insure the success of the work. What could I have done better? I began by surveying and taking the levels of the mountain; I marked most carefully the axis of the tunnel across the ridge; I drew plans and sections of the whole work, which plans I handed over to Petronius Celer, then governor of Mauritania; and to take extra precaution, I summoned the contractor and his workmen, and began the excavation in their presence. . . . Well, during the four

of massive viaducts. Near Naples may be seen one of these old tunnels still in use, called the Grotto of Posilipo, which is nearly half a mile in length. It leads the ancient Appian Way through a promontory that at this point opposes an obstacle to its course.



GROTTO OF POSILIPO.

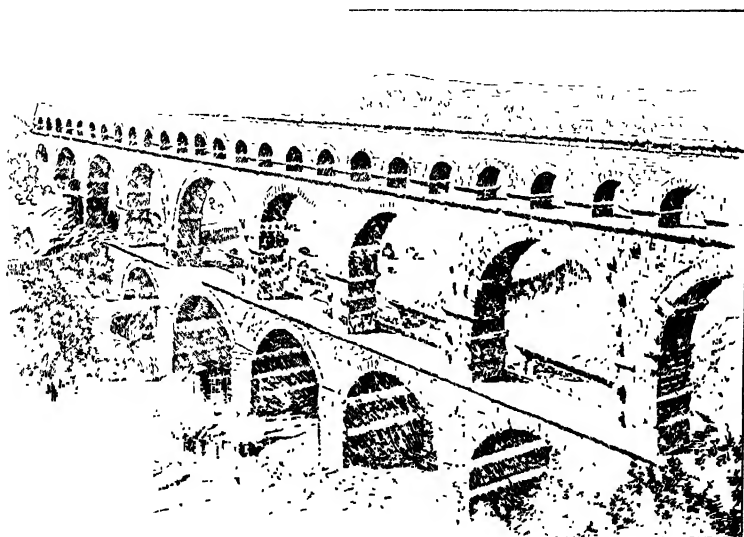
(Drawn from an old engraving.)

The usual width of the roadway was from four to five yards, though in some instances this breadth was greatly exceeded. The bed was formed of cement and broken rock, upon which was sometimes laid, as in the case of the *Via Appia*, a solid pavement of stone. Foot-paths often ran along the sides of the main roadway; mileposts told the distance from the capital; and upon the best appointed roads seats were found disposed at proper intervals for the convenience

years I was absent at Lambæse, expecting every day to hear the good tidings of the arrival of the waters at Saldæ, the contractor and the assistant had committed blunder upon blunder; in each section of the tunnel they had diverged from the straight line, each towards his right, and, had I waited a little longer before coming, Saldæ would have possessed two tunnels instead of one."—LANCIANI'S *Ancient Rome in the Light of Recent Discoveries*, p. 61.

of travellers. In the great forum at Rome was a gilded post, from which distances on all the roads of the peninsula were measured.

293. **Aqueducts.** — To secure for a great city an abundant supply of wholesome water is a matter of no less difficulty than importance. The waterworks of the great cities of modern times are among the most expensive of their under-



THE PONT DU GARD, NEAR NÎMES.⁶

(Present condition.)

⁶ From Schreiber's *Atlas of Classical Antiquities*, which gives the following description of the structure: "A bridge which carries the aqueduct of Nîmes across the river Gardon. The height above the water of the lowest row of arches is 65 feet, of the middle row 130, and of the top 158 feet. The middle one has been repaired to carry a carriage road. The channel (*specus*) of the aqueduct was in the top row. It brought the water a distance of twenty-one miles." This aqueduct was built by the emperor Antoninus Pius.

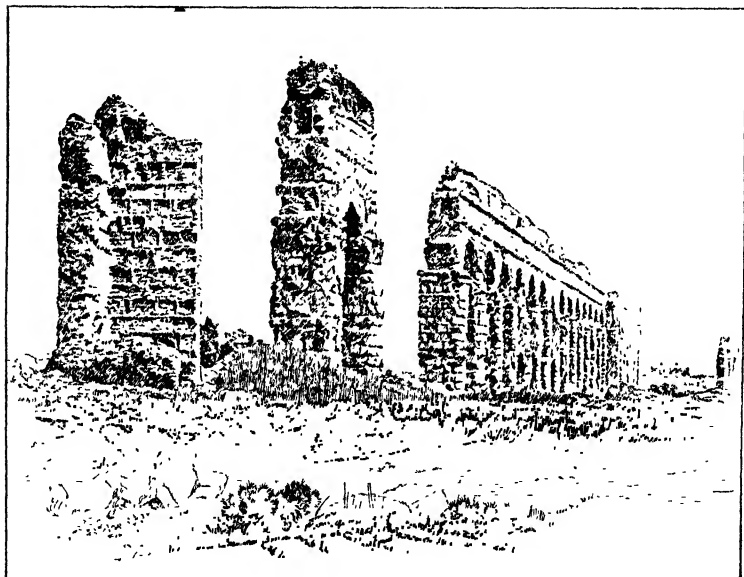
takings. The aqueducts of Rome must be placed among the most stupendous constructions of the Roman builders.

The water system of Rome was commenced by Appius Claudius (about 313 B.C.), who secured the building of an aqueduct which led water into the city from the Sabine hills, through a subterranean channel eleven miles in length. From the spoils obtained in the war with Pyrrhus (par. 82) was built the Anio Aqueduct, so named because it brought water from the Anio River. A second aqueduct running from the same stream, and called the *Anio Nova*, to distinguish it from the older conduit, was about fifty-six miles in length. It ran beneath the ground until within about six miles of the city, when it was taken up on arches and thus carried over the depressions of the Campagna into the capital. In places this aqueduct was held up more than a hundred feet above the plain. During the republic four aqueducts were completed; under the emperors the number was increased to fourteen. Several of these are in use at the present day.

The Romans carried their aqueducts across depressions and valleys on high arches of masonry, not because they were ignorant of the principle that water seeks a level, but for the reason that they could not make large pipes strong enough to resist the very great pressure to which they would be subjected.⁷ In some instances the principle of the inverted siphon was put in practice, and pipes (usually lead or

⁷ "As to the main aqueducts, which supplied Rome with a daily volume of 54,000,000 cubic feet of water, it would have been impossible to substitute metal pipes for channels of masonry, because the Romans did not know cast-iron, and no pipe except of cast-iron could have supported such enormous pressure."—LANCIANI'S *Ancient Rome in the Light of Recent Discoveries*, p. 60.

earthen) were laid down one side of a valley and up the opposite slope. But their liability to accident, when the pressure was heavy, as we have intimated, led usually to the adoption of the other method. The lofty arches of the ruined aqueducts that run in long broken lines over the



THE CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT.

(Drawn from a photograph.)

plains beyond the walls of Rome are described by all visitors to the old capital as the most striking feature of the desolate Campagna.

294. Thermæ, or Baths.—The greatest demand upon the streams of water poured into Rome by the aqueducts was made by the thermæ, or baths.⁸ Among the ancient

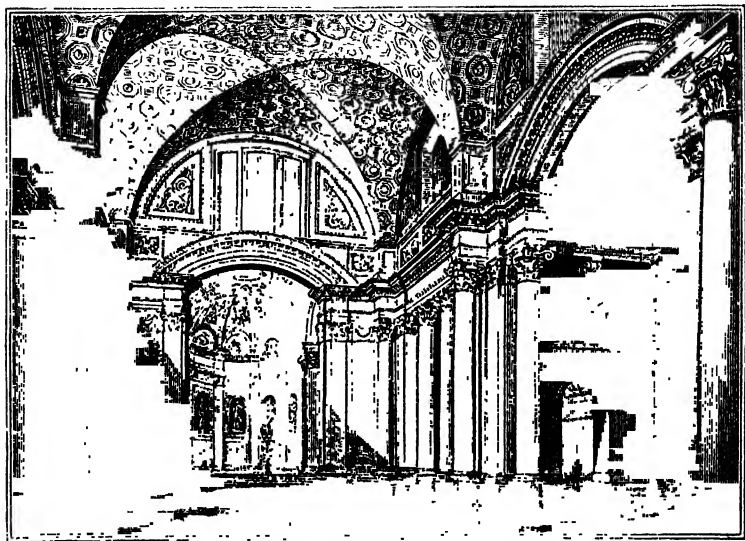
⁸ Vast quantities of water were also absorbed by the fountains, of which Rome is said to have had a larger number than any other city

Romans, bathing, regarded at first simply as a troublesome necessity, became in time a luxurious art. During the republic, bathing-houses were erected in considerable numbers, the use of which could be purchased by a small entrance fee equivalent to about one cent of our money. Towards the end of the republic, when bathing had already come to be regarded as a luxury, ambitious politicians, anxious to gain the favor of the masses, would secure a free day for them at the baths.

But it was during the imperial period that those magnificent structures to which the name *Thermæ* properly attaches were erected. Nero, Titus, Trajan, Commodus, Caracalla, Decius, Constantine, and Diocletian all erected splendid *thermæ*, which, as they were intended to exhibit the liberality of their builders, were thrown open to the public free of charge. These edifices were very different affairs from the bathing-houses of the republican era. Those raised by the emperors were among the most elaborate and expensive of the imperial works. They contained chambers for cold, tepid, hot, sudatory, and swimming baths; dressing-rooms and gymnasia; museums and libraries; covered colonnades for loitering and conversation; extensive grounds filled with statues and traversed by pleasant walks; and every other adjunct that could add to the sense of luxury and relaxation." The pavements were frequently set with the richest mosaics. The "*Thermæ* of the world in any age. M. Agrippa, the builder of the Pantheon, is credited with having set up one hundred and five, and his example found many imitators.

⁹ Lanciani calls these imperial *thermæ* "gigantic clubhouses, whither the voluptuary and the elegant youth repaired for pastime and enjoyment."

Diocletian " contained over three thousand of these stone pictures.. "Caracalla's Baths " had over sixteen hundred marble seats ; granite pillars from Egypt decorated the colonnades ; green marble panellings, cut in Numidia, lined many of the chambers ; the fixtures of the baths were plated, and in some of the rooms were of solid silver.



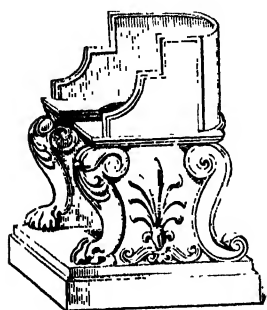
GREAT HALL OF THE BATHS OF DIOCLETIAN. (Now used as a church.)

(From an old engraving.)

Some conception of the stupendous size of this structure may be gained from the fact that the entrance hall, or rotunda, of the building was almost as large as the celebrated Pantheon, which it resembled in form.

It was not the inhabitants of the capital alone that had converted bathing into a luxury and an art. There was no town of any considerable size anywhere within the limits

of the empire that was not provided with its thermæ; and wherever springs possessing medicinal qualities broke from the ground, there arose magnificent baths, and such spots became the favorite watering-places of the Romans. Thus Baden-Baden was a noted and luxurious resort of the wealthy Romans centuries before it became the great summer haunt of the Germans. Baia, near Naples, on account of its warm sulphur springs and the beauty of its sur-



BATHING CHAIR.

(Louvre.)

roundings, became crowded with the pleasure-seekers of the capital. These bathing-towns, as was almost inevitable, acquired an unenviable reputation as hotbeds of vice and shameless indulgence.

The Roman thermæ, after suffering repeated spoliation at the hands of successive robbers, have, for the most part, sunk into heaps of rubbish. Many of their beautiful marbles

were carried off by different Greek emperors to Constantinople. Charlemagne decorated his palace at Aix-la-Chapelle with columns torn from these imperial structures, which were then falling into dilapidation. The popes built others into St. Peter's Cathedral; and the masons of Rome, like the brick-hunters of Babylon and Nineveh, for centuries mined amidst the vast heaps of the ruined structures for marble blocks and statues to be burned into lime for making cement. Modern excavators have recovered from the mounds of rubbish some of the most famous of the sculptures that enrich the museums of Europe.

295. Palaces and Villas. — The residences of the wealthy Romans, when built within the city walls were called mansions or palaces, but when located in the country were usually designated as villas. The Palatine was the aristocratic quarter of Rome, being occupied by the homes of the wealthy class. After the Great Fire, Nero erected here

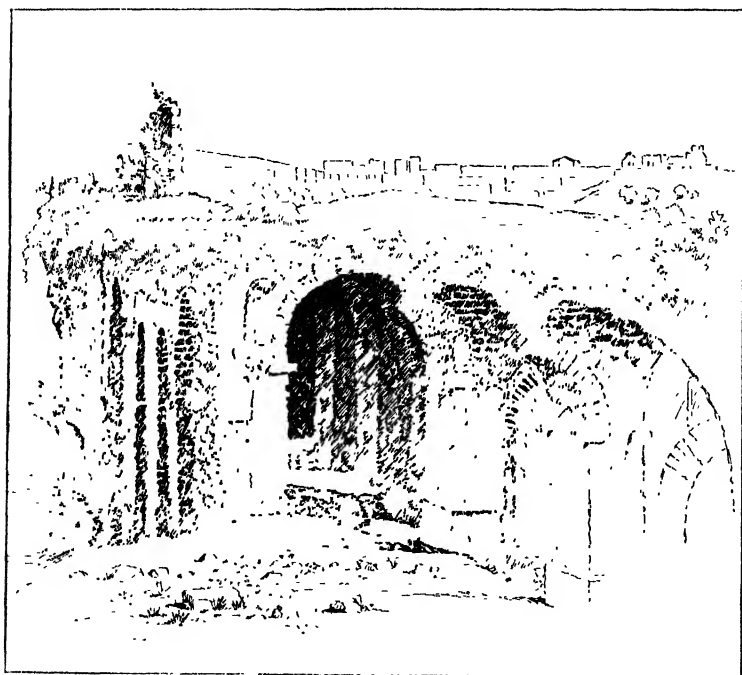


PERISTYLE OF A POMPEIAN HOUSE.

(From a photograph.)

his Golden House (par. 220), whose various buildings, courts, gardens, vineyards, fish ponds, and other innumerable appendages spread over much of the burnt district. It was "the most stupendous dwelling-place ever built for a mortal man." The central building upon the Palatine, shorn of its extensive grounds and useless adjuncts, became the residence of most of the emperors who held the

throne after the death of Nero. The palaces of the wealthy citizens vied in costly magnificence with those of the Cæsars. "Never, perhaps," says the historian Inge, "except in the palaces of the Incas, has gold been so freely



RUINS OF THE PALACE OF THE CÆSARS.

(From an old drawing.)

used in the decoration of walls and ceilings as at Rome; never, certainly, have marbles and ivory been so lavishly employed.”¹

Among the sumptuous villas mentioned by the old writers are those of Metellus, Lucullus, Cicero, Hortensius, Pliny

¹ *Society in Rome under the Cæsars*, p. 253.

the Younger, Horace, Vergil, Hadrian, and Diocletian. But to attempt enumeration would be misleading. Every wealthy Roman possessed his villa, and many affected to keep up several in different parts of Italy. These country residences, while retaining all the conveniences of the city palace, such as baths, museums, and libraries, added to these such adjuncts as were denied a place by the restricted room of the capital, — extensive gardens, aviaries, fish ponds, vineyards, olive orchards, shaded walks, and well-kept drives.

Perhaps the most noted of Roman villas was that of Hadrian at Tibur, now Tivoli. It was intended to be a miniature representation of the world—both the upper and the lower. In one part of the grounds were reproduced the Thessalian Vale of Tempe and other celebrated bits of scenery. Subterranean labyrinths enabled the visitor to descend into Hades and to behold the fabled scenes of that dolorous region.²

The ruined enclosure of the villa of Diocletian—the emperor who gave up imperial cares to raise vegetables at Salona, on the Adriatic (par. 243)—affords space for the buildings of the modern village of Spalato.

296. Triumphal Columns and Arches.—The first historical commemorative column raised by the Romans was erected in the year 260 B.C. as a memorial of their first naval victory, gained by Duillius over the Carthaginian fleet. Of this monument, as well as of Trajan's Column, built to commemorate the Dacian victories of the emperor whose name it bears, we have already spoken (pars. 90, 226).

The triumphal arches of the Romans were modelled after

² Guhl and Koner, *Life of the Greeks and Romans*, p. 372.

the city gates, being constructed with single and with triple archways. Two of the most noted monuments of this character, and the most interesting because of their historical connections, are the Arch of Titus and the Arch of Constantine, both of which are still standing. Upon the former are represented the articles brought from Jerusalem by Titus as the spoils of the war against the Jews (par. 222). The Arch of Constantine was intended to commemorate the victory of that emperor over Maxentius, which event established Christianity as the favored religion of the empire (par. 245).

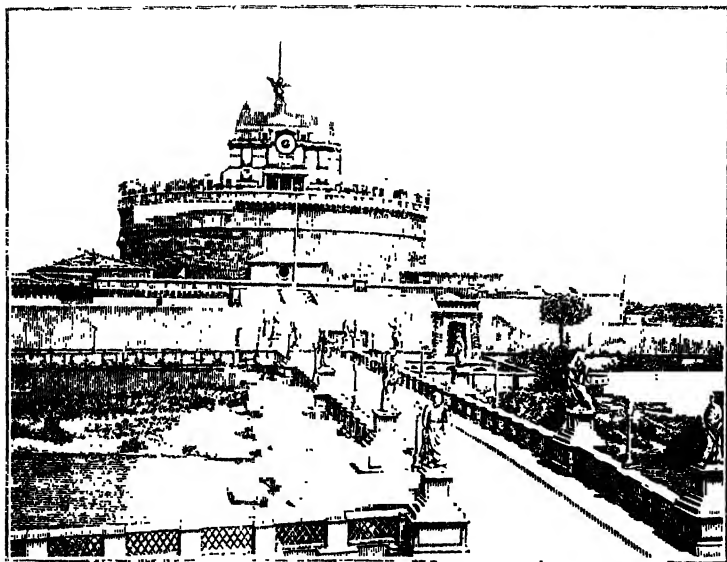
297. Sepulchral Monuments. — The Romans in the earliest times seem usually to have disposed of their dead by burial; but towards the close of the republican period cremation, or burning, became common. When Christianity took possession of the empire, the doctrine which it taught of the resurrection of the body caused inhumation, or burying, again to become the prevalent mode.

The favorite burying place among the Romans was along the highways; "for the dead were thought of as ever turning towards this life. . . . It was the custom for those who went by a grave to say: 'The earth be light upon thee.'"³ The Appian Way, for a distance of several miles from the gates of the capital, was lined with sepulchral monuments. Many of these are still standing. These memorial structures were as varied in design as are the monuments in our modern cemeteries. Shafts, broken columns, altars, pyramids, and chapels were favorite forms.

Two sepulchral edifices of the imperial era deserve special notice. One of these was raised by Augustus as a tomb

³ Uhlhorn, *Conflict of Christianity with Heathenism*, p. 67.

and monument for himself and his successors. It stood close to the banks of the Tiber, and consisted of an enormous circular tower raised upon a massive square substructure. A century later, this sepulchre having become filled, Hadrian constructed a similar monument, which was richer, however, in marbles and sculptures, upon the opposite bank



MAUSOLEUM OF HADRIAN, BUILT BY HIMSELF AT ROME.

(Now the Castle of St. Angelo. From a photograph.)

of the Tiber. This structure was called, after the emperor, the Mole, or Mausoleum, of Hadrian (par. 227). It is now used as a military fortress under the name of the Castle of St. Angelo. The massive structure, battered by many sieges and assaults and decayed through lapse of time, presents, next after the Colosseum, the most imposing appearance of any of the monuments of ancient Rome.

REFERENCES. — FERGUSSON (J.), *History of Ancient and Modern Architecture* and *Handbook of Architecture*. Consult Indexes. BOISSIER (G.), * *Rome and Pompeii*, chap. i., on the Forum; chap. ii., on the Palatine; and chap. iv., on Hadrian's Villa. LANCIANI (R.), ** *Ancient Rome in the Light of Recent Discoveries*, ** *The Ruins and Excavations of Ancient Rome*, and *The Destruction of Ancient Rome*, earlier chapters. INGE (W. R.), ** *Social Life in Rome under the Cæsars*, chap. v. pp. 105–118. THOMAS (E.), *Roman Life under the Cæsars*, chap. iii. § 1, pp. 63–69, “The Palatine”; § 3, “Country-houses.” GÜHL (E.) and KONER (W.), *The Life of the Greeks and Romans*. (Translated from the German.) Consult Index. On the military roads of the Romans, the student will find in *The Nation* for September 14, 1899, p. 204 (vol. lxix. No. 1785), a fresh and scholarly article entitled “Roman Roads and Milestones in Asia Minor,” by J. R. S. Sterrett.

CHAPTER XXIV.

LITERATURE, PHILOSOPHY, AND LAW.

298. Literature among the Romans.—The literary or purely intellectual life of the Romans was in every way far inferior to that of the Greeks. The old conquerors of the world were too practical a race, were too much absorbed in the business of war and government, to find much time to pay devotion to the Muses, or to pursue with much earnestness those philosophical speculations which were so congenial to the Attic intellect. Their very amusements tended to the same end as did their more serious employments. The real tragedies of the amphitheatre rendered tame the mock tragedies of the stage. The inspiration and encouragement of popular appreciation and applause, which helped to raise the tragic drama to such lofty excellence at Athens, were almost wholly wanting at Rome.

Therefore, in the brief examination which we now purpose to make of Latin literature, we must not expect to discover such worth and genius as distinguish the intellectual productions of the Hellenic race; still we shall find the literary memorials of the Roman people possessing so much merit that we shall acknowledge they are justly assigned a prominent, though not the foremost, place among the literary treasures of the world.

299. The Period of Literary Activity.—It was only the last two centuries of the republic and the first of the empire

that were marked by the literary activity and productiveness of the Latin intellect. The first five centuries of Roman history are almost barren of literary monuments. But in the third century B.C., under the fostering influences of the republic, literature began to spring up and to flourish, and, by the time of the establishment of the empire, had reached its fullest development; then, upon the fall of the republic, it soon began to languish, and survived the death of freedom barely a single century. The last four hundred years of the imperial era produced very few writers of vigor and originality.

We here learn how depressing and withering are the influences of a capricious and irresponsible despotism, which forbids all freedom and truthfulness, upon the intellectual and literary life of a people. Literature is a plant that thrives best in the free air of a republic. It is true, indeed, that some of the choicest fruit of the Latin intellect ripened during the first years of the empire; but this had been long maturing under the influences of the republican period, and should properly be credited to that era.

300. Relation of Roman to Greek Literature.— Latin literature was almost wholly imitative or borrowed, being a reproduction of Greek models; still it performed a most important service for civilization; it was the medium for the dissemination throughout the world of the rich literary treasures of Greece.

In order to realize the greatness of its work and influence, we must bear in mind that the spread of the Latin speech, as a literary language, was coextensive with the conquests of Rome. In those countries where the subjected peoples were inferior in civilization to the Romans, — which was

the condition of all the nations in the West, — the language of the conquerors came to be the dominant speech. Italy, Spain, Gaul, and Northern Africa became so thoroughly Romanized before the overthrow of the empire that the Latin tongue, much changed, of course, from the classical forms of the capital, came into general use among all classes.

It was different in the East, where the Hellenic language and culture had been spread. The speech of Rome never succeeded in crowding out the Greek language as it pushed aside and displaced the various rude and barbarous dialects of the tribes of Western Europe. Yet throughout all the Eastern provinces the Latin language was used to a certain extent by the ruling class, and was understood and read by many persons of education and culture.

We see, then, how very extended was the audience addressed by the Roman writers. The works of the Latin poets and historians were read everywhere within the limits of the Roman empire, and that is equivalent to saying that they circulated throughout the civilized world. And wherever Latin literature found its way, there were scattered broadcast the seeds of Greek culture, science, and philosophy. The relation of Rome to Greece was exactly the same as that of Phœnicia to Egypt, as expressed by Lenormant: Greece was the mother of modern civilization; Rome was its missionary.

301. Lays and Ballads of the Legendary Age. — The period embraced between the eighth and fourth centuries B.C. may properly be called the Heroic Age of Rome. It corresponds exactly, in its literary products, to the similarly designated period in Grecian history. During this early

age there sprang up a great number of hymns, ballads, or lays, of which the merest fragments survived the varying fortunes of the state, and which were preserved in the works of the later writers of the republic. "The fabulous birth of Romulus, the rape of the Sabine women, the most poetical combat of the Horatii and Curiatii, the pride of Tarquin, the misfortunes and death of Lucretia, the establishment of liberty by the elder Brutus, the wonderful war with Porsenna, the steadfastness of Scævola, the banishment of Coriolanus, the war which he kindled against his country, the subsequent struggle of his feelings, and the final triumph of his patriotism at the all-powerful intercession of his mother—these and the like circumstances, if they be examined from the proper point of view, cannot fail to be considered as relics and fragments of the ancient heroic traditions and heroic poems of the Romans."⁴

These stories must be placed along with the Grecian tales of Cadmus and Theseus, of the Argonautic Expedition and the Trojan War. They belong to the literary, and not to the historical, annals of the Roman people. They may be made use of for historical purposes, but only in the same way that the poems of Homer are used. The references and allusions they contain throw light upon the manners, customs, and modes of thinking of the remote times in which they grew up. The few threads of fact that may be drawn from them have been woven into the picture which, in the first part of our book, we tried to form of the early Roman state.

302. The Roman Dramatists.—From the earliest times

⁴ Schlegel, in *Lectures on Literature*, as quoted by Dunlop, *History of Roman Literature*, vol. i. p. 41.

Rome was under the influence of Grecian civilization, as is shown in the laws of the Twelve Tables; but the conquest of the Hellenic cities of Southern Italy as the outcome of the war with Pyrrhus, and the acquisition of Sicily as the result of the First Punic War, brought the Romans into much closer relations than had hitherto existed with the arts and culture of the Greeks. The Romans now began to study with much appreciation, and not without profit, the rich stores of Greek literature opened to them. Among the leading families of Rome it became the fashion to commit the education of children to Greek slaves. The conqueror bowed at the feet of the conquered. The debt incurred by the Romans in all intellectual and literary matters to the Greeks has been declared to be but faintly paralleled by that incurred by the English in theology, philosophy, and music to Germany.⁵ "Their [the Romans'] genius, I believe," says Dunlop, "would have remained unproductive and cold half a century longer, had it not been kindled by contact with a warm, polished, and animated nation, whose compositions could not be read without enthusiasm or imitated without advantage."⁶

It was the dramatic productions of the Greeks which were first copied and studied by the Romans. Translations for the stage, particularly those of a comic character, were received with great favor, and the theatre became the popular resort of all classes. For nearly two centuries, from 240 to 78 B.C., dramatic literature was almost the only form of composition cultivated at Rome. During this epoch appeared all the great dramatists ever produced

⁵ Cruttwell, *History of Roman Literature*, p. 36.

⁶ Dunlop, *History of Roman Literature*, vol. i. p. 55.

by the Latin-speaking race. Of these we may name, for brief mention, Livius Andronicus, Nævius, Ennius, Plautus, and Terence. All of these writers were close imitators of Greek authors, and most of their works were simply adaptations or translations of the masterpieces of the Greek dramatists.

Livius Andronicus, who lived about the middle of the third century B.C., was a Greek captive carried to Rome from Tarentum at the time of its conquest. He was the father of the Roman drama. He transformed the mimic dances, which had been introduced at Rome by Etruscan actors about a century before his time (in 364 B.C.), into a real dramatic representation, by adding to the performance dialogues to be recited by the actors. He was the performer of his own pieces, and was so often recalled by his admirers that he overtaxed and lost his voice. After this misfortune befell him, he employed a boy to declaim those parts of the dialogue which required to be rendered in a high tone, while he himself played the flute, recited the less declamatory passages, and accompanied the whole with the proper gesticulation. This mode of representation, which Livius had been constrained to adopt through accident, afterwards became the fashion in the Roman theatres; and the plays were usually presented by two persons, one reciting the words and the other accompanying them with the appropriate gestures.

Nævius, who wrote about the close of the third century B.C., was the first native-born Roman poet of eminence. His plays were chiefly translations from various Greek dramatists. He imitated Aristophanes; and as the latter lashed the corrupt politicians of Athens, so did the former

expose to ridicule and contempt different members of the leading patrician families at Rome. He did not escape with impunity, for he was once in prison, and finally died an exile at Utica or Carthage (about 204 B.C.). Nævius bore part as a soldier in the First Punic War, and he found solace during the years of his exile in writing in epic verse the events of that stirring time.

Ennius, a contemporary of Nævius, was an epic as well as a dramatic writer. The greatest work from his prolific pen was the *Annals*, an epic poem recounting in graceful and vigorous verse the story of Rome from the times of the kings to his own day. Had Vergil never lived, Ennius must always have been named as the greatest epic poet produced by the Roman race. For two centuries, until the advent of the Augustan poets, the works of Ennius held almost supreme sway over the Roman mind. His verses were constantly rehearsed in the theatres; they were committed to memory by the Roman youth, were quoted by the orator, and borrowed by the poet. Vergil acknowledged Ennius as his master by becoming a diligent student of his works, and by transcribing word for word many of his most beautiful passages.

Plautus (about 254-184 B.C.) and Terence (about 196-161 B.C.) were writers of comedy, who won a fame that has not yet perished. Plautus adapted various Greek plays to the Roman stage. Almost all his pieces he filled with low wit and drollery, in order to catch the ear of the lower classes that thronged the theatres. His plays reproduced before the inhabitants of the capital the corrupt life of the East, whose debasing influences were at this time beginning to effect a lowering of the tone of society at Rome.

Terence wrote more for the cultured classes, and did not stoop to employ those means by which Plautus secured the applause of his audiences. All of the six comedies which Terence wrote were either translations or adaptations from the Greek. As Plautus and Terence borrowed from the Greek stage, so have all modern writers of comedy — Italian, French, and English — drawn freely from these their great Roman predecessors.⁷

303. Poets of the Later Republican Era. — In the year 146 B.C., Corinth in Greece was destroyed, the treasures of its museums and the rolls of its libraries were carried to Italy, and Roman authority became supreme throughout Greece. The impulse that had been given to the study of Greek models by the conquest of Magna Græcia more than one hundred years before was now intensified and strengthened. But with the introduction of the learning and refinement of the conquered peoples came also the luxuries and vices

⁷ “‘The earliest writers,’ as has justly been remarked, ‘took possession of the most striking objects for description, and the most probable occurrences for fiction, and left nothing to those that followed but transcriptions of the same events, and new combinations of the same images’ [*Rassell*]. The great author from whom these reflections are quoted had at one time actually projected a work to show how small a quantity of invention there is in the world, and that the same images and incidents, with little variation, have served all the authors who have ever written. Had he prosecuted his intention, he would have found the notion he entertained fully confirmed by the history both of dramatic and romantic fiction; he would have perceived the incapacity of the most active and fertile imagination greatly to diversify the common characters and incidents of life, which, on a superficial view, one might suppose to be susceptible of infinite combinations; he would have found that while Plautus and Terence servilely copied from the Greek dramatists, even Ariosto scarcely diverged in his comedies from the paths of Plautus.” — DUNLOP, *History of Roman Literature*, Preface, p. xix.

of the East. Just at this time, evoked, it would seem, by the shameless extravagances and corruptions that invited rebuke, appeared Lucilius (born about 148 B.C.), one of the greatest of Roman satirists. The later satirists of the corrupt imperial era were the imitators of the republican poet.

Besides Lucilius, there appeared during the later republican era only two other poets of distinguished merit, — Lucretius and Catullus. Both were born early in the last century B.C. Lucretius studied at Athens, where he became deeply imbued with the doctrines of the Epicurean philosophy, which at that time was in the ascendant at the Attic capital. He left behind him but a single work, entitled *De Rerum Natura* — (“On the Nature of Things”). Lucretius was a thorough evolutionist, and in his great poem we find anticipated many of the conclusions of modern scientists. He pictures Chaos with more than Miltonic power; tells how the worlds were formed by a “fortuitous concourse of atoms”; relates how the generations of life were evolved from the teeming earth; ridicules the superstitions of his countrymen, declaring that the gods do not trouble themselves about earthly affairs, but that storms, lightning, volcanoes, and pestilences are produced by natural causes, and not by the anger of the celestials; and finally reaches the conclusion that death ends all for the human soul. Lucretius is studied more by modern scholars, whose discoveries and theories he so marvelously anticipated, than he was by the Romans of his own time.

Catullus was a lyric poet the beauty and sweetness of whose verses are winning to their study at the present day many ardent admirers. He was born about 87 B.C., and

died at the age of about forty. He complains of poverty, yet he kept two villas, and found means to indulge in all the expensive and licentious pleasures of the capital. 'He has been called the Roman Burns, as well on account of the waywardness of his life as from the sweetness of his song. The name of Catullus closes the short list of the prominent poets of the republican period of the Golden Age.

304. Poets of the Augustan Age. — Three poets have cast an unfading lustre over the period covered by the reign of Augustus,—Vergil, Horace, and Ovid. So distinguished have these writers rendered the age in which they lived, that any period in a people's literature signalized by exceptional literary taste and refinement is called, in allusion to the Roman era, an *Augustan Age*. After the terrific commotion that marked the decline and overthrow of the republic, the long and firm and peaceful reign of Augustus brought welcome relief and rest to the Roman world. In narrating the political history of this period, we spoke of the effect of the fall of the republic upon the development of Latin literature (par. 213). Many who, if the republican institutions had continued, would have been absorbed in the affairs of the state, were led, by the change of government, to seek solace for their disappointed hopes, and employment for their enforced leisure, in the graceful labors of elegant composition. Augustus encouraged this disposition, thinking thus to turn the thoughts of ambitious minds from broodings over the lost cause. By his princely patronage of letters he opened a new and worthy field for the efforts and competitions of the active and the aspiring. His minister Mæcenas, in whose veins flowed royal Etruscan blood, vied with his master in the bestowal of munifi-

cent rewards upon friends, and in the extension of a helpful and inspiring patronage to literary merit, and thus did much towards creating the enthusiasm for letters that distinguishes this period.

The vastness of the audience they addressed also reacted upon the writers of this era, and encouraged the greatest painstaking in all their productions. Never before had literary men spoken to so extended an audience—to so much of the world. The works of Vergil, of Horace, and of Ovid were read and admired in the cities of Italy and Spain, and in the camps of Britain and Syria. Political tranquillity, elegant leisure, imperial patronage, the inspirations of Greek genius, the encouragement of appreciation and wide attention,—everything conspired to create an epoch in the world of literature.

And yet we must not look for vigor, strength, originality, nervous energy in the productions of the writers of this period. These qualities belong to times of great public excitement; to periods of activity, change, revolution; to those eras that signalize the crises and grand struggles of a people's life. They mark creative, Shakespearean epochs in literature. Elegance, grace, refinement, polish, taste, beauty are the characteristics of the Augustan writers.

Of the three poets whom we have named as the representatives of the poetry of the Augustan period, Vergil doubtless has been the most widely read and admired. He was born 70 B.C. in the little village of Andes, not far from Mantua, in the district of the Po. Upon his father's farm he learned to love nature and the freedom of a country life. Through the diligent study of the philosophy and literature of Greece, he came to feel the inspiration of the great poets

of Hellas. During the disorders of the Second Triumvirate the Mantuan farm was confiscated and allotted to one of the veterans of the triumvirs. It was afterwards restored to the poet by the young Octavius. Vergil was laboring upon his greatest work, the *Æneid*, when death came to him, in the fifty-second year of his age.



VERGIL.

(From an old engraving.)

The three great works of Vergil are his *Eclogues*, the *Georgics*, and the *Æneid*. The *Eclogues* are a series of pastorals, which are very close imitations of the poems of the Sicilian Theocritus. Vergil, however, never borrowed without adorning that which he appropriated by the inimitable touches of his own graceful genius.

It is the rare sweetness and melody of these pieces and the deep love of nature shown in them that have won for them so many admirers.

In the *Georgics* Vergil extols and dignifies the husbandman and his labor. This work has been pronounced the most finished poem in the entire range of Latin literature. It was written at the suggestion of Mæcenas, who hoped by means of the poet's verse to allure his countrymen back to that love for the art of husbandry which animated the fathers of the early Roman state. Throughout the work Vergil follows very closely the *Works and Days* of the

Greek poet Hesiod. The poet treats of all the labors and cares of the farm — gives valuable precepts respecting the keeping of bees and cattle, the sowing and tillage of crops, the dressing of vineyards and orchards, and embellishes the whole with innumerable passages containing beautiful descriptions of natural scenery, or inculcating some philosophical truth, or teaching some moral lesson. Without the *Georgics* we should never have had the *Seasons* of Thomson; for this work of the English poet is in a large measure a direct translation of the verses of Vergil.

The *Æneid* stands next to the *Iliad* as the greatest epic poem of all literatures. It tells the story of the wanderings of Æneas with his companions up and down the Mediterranean after the downfall of Troy, his settlement in Italy, and the struggles of his descendants with the native inhabitants of the land. Through Æneas, the hero of the poem, Vergil doubtless intends to represent and compliment his patron Augustus. In this, his greatest work, Vergil was a close student of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, and to them he is indebted for very many of his finest metaphors, similes, and descriptive passages, as well as for the general plan and structure of the entire work. To Ennius is he also indebted for many a verse. Homer was Vergil's superior in energy and originality, and in the martial grandeur of his lines; while the latter surpassed his master in the grace and the melody of his versification.

Vergil enjoyed for his work that reward which many another great poet has been denied — the appreciation of his genius during his own lifetime. The poet, in accordance with a custom that in his day was common, read or

recited his poems in the presence of select friends, and also in public. On one occasion he repeated the sixth book of his *Æneid* before his imperial patron Augustus and his sister Octavia, who was then mourning the recent death of her son Marcellus, the special favorite and adopted child of the emperor (par. 216). In the part of the poem rehearsed by Vergil occurs the well-known passage that mourns with the tenderest pathos the too early death of the favorite prince. The closing lines run thus:

“ Ah, dear lamented boy, canst thou but break
The stern decrees of fate, then wilt thou be
Our own Marcellus ! — Give me lilies, brought
In heaping handfuls. Let me scatter here
Dead purple flowers ; these offerings at least
To my descendant's shade I fain would pay,
Though now, alas ! an unavailing rite.”⁸

It is said that as Vergil read these verses Octavia was so overcome by her feelings that she fainted, and that the poet was afterwards presented with 10,000 sesterces (about \$400) for each of the twenty-five lines of the passage.

Horace, the second great poet of the Augustan Age, was born in the year 65 B.C., only five years later than Vergil, whom he outlived by about a single decade. He studied at Athens, fought with the republicans at Philippi, gained no glory — for he tells us himself how he ran away from the field — but lost his paternal estate at Venusia, which was confiscated, and under the imperial government commenced life anew as a clerk at Rome. Through his friend Vergil he secured the favor of Mæcenas and gained an introduction to Augustus, and thenceforth led

⁸ *Æneid*, bk. vi. [Cranch's Trans.].

the life of a courtier, dividing his time between the pleasures of the capital and the scenes of his pleasant farm near the village of Tibur. The latter years of his life were shadowed by the deaths of his poet-friends Vergil and Tibullus, and that of his generous patron Mæcenas, whom he survived only a few weeks. Horace's *Odes*, *Satires*, and *Epistles* have all helped win for him his widespread fame; but the first best exhibit his genius and his subtle grace of expression.

Ovid (43 B.C.—A.D. 18) is the third name in the triumvirate of poets that ruled the Augustan Age. He was the most learned of the three, seeming indeed to be acquainted with the whole round of Greek and Latin literature and speculation. For some fault or misdemeanor, the precise nature of which remains a profound secret to this day, Augustus, his former friend and patron, banished the poet to a small town away on the frontiers of the empire — on the bleak shores of the Euxine. There he spent the last years of his life, bewailing his hard lot in the mournful verses of his *Tristia*. His most celebrated work is his *Metamorphoses*, the preservation of which we owe to the merest good-fortune. When the emperor's decree was brought to him, he was at work revising the manuscript, which, in despair or anger, he flung into the fire. Fortunately some friend had previously made a copy of the work, and thus this literary treasure was saved to the world. The poem opens with the sublime description of Chaos and the creation of the world; then tells of the production of monstrous creatures by the prolific earth, and of the changing races of men and giants; after which the poet proceeds to describe, through fifteen books, be-

tween two and three hundred metamorphoses, or transformations — such as the change of the companions of Ulysses into swine, of Cadmus into a serpent, and of Arethusa into a fountain — suffered by various persons, gods, heroes, and goddesses, as related in the innumerable fables of the Greek and Roman mythologies.

We have already alluded to Tibullus as the friend of Vergil and Horace. His graceful elegies entitle his name to a prominent place among the poets of the Augustan Age. Propertius, too, was another honored and beloved member of the brilliant coterie of poets that have rendered the reign of Augustus ever memorable in the literary history of the world.

305. Satire and Satirists. — Satire thrives best in the reeking soil and tainted atmosphere of an age of selfishness, immorality, and vice. Such an age was that which followed the Augustan Era at Rome. The throne was held by such imperial monsters as Tiberius, Caligula, Nero, and Domitian. The profligacy of fashionable life at the capital and the various watering-places of the empire was open and shameless. The degradation of the court; the corrupt and dissolute life of the upper classes; the imbruted life of the masses, fed by largesses of corn and entertained with the bloody shows of the amphitheatre; the decay of the ancient religion; the utter loss of the simplicity and virtue of the early Roman fathers; and the almost complete degradation of the intellect,—all this gave venom and point to the shafts of those who were goaded by the spectacle into attacking the immoralities and vices which were silently yet rapidly sapping the foundations of both society and state. Hence arose a succession of writers

whose mastery of sharp and stinging satire has caused their productions to become the models of all subsequent attempts in the same species of literature.

Two names stand out in special prominence, — Persius (A.D. 34–62) and Juvenal⁹ (about A.D. 40–120). The works of these writers possess a special historical value and interest, as it is through them that we gain an insight such as we could obtain in no other way into the venal and corrupt life of the capital during the early portion of the imperial period.¹⁰

The indignant protest of Persius and Juvenal against the vice and degradation of their time is almost the last utterance of the Latin Muse. From this time forward the decay of the intellectual life of Rome was swift and certain. While the Greek intellect survived by many centuries the destruction of the political life of Greece, the Latin intellect sank into decrepitude centuries before the final fall of the empire. The political fabric — so admirably consolidated had it become through the growth of many centuries — remained standing, like an aged oak, long after its heart had been eaten away. But the stem put forth no new shoots. After the death of Juvenal (about A.D. 120) the Roman world produced not a single poet of preëminent merit.

⁹ Martial, an epigrammatic poet (born about A.D. 40), also was a satirist of this period, but he rebuked only some of the minor vices of society. Many of his own writings, judged by the moral sense of to-day, are grossly immoral.

¹⁰ There are two other poets belonging to this age whose names must not be passed unmentioned, — Lucan (A.D. 38–65) and Statius (about A.D. 61–95). Lucan's only extant work is his *Pharsalia*, an epic poem on the civil war between Cæsar and Pompey. Statius wrote two epics, the *Thebaid* and the *Achilleid*, the latter being left incomplete.

306. Oratory among the Romans. — “Public oratory,” as has been truly said, “is the child of political freedom, and cannot exist without it.” All the great orators of Rome arose under the republic. As during this period almost the entire intellectual force of the nation was directed towards legal and political studies, it was natural that the most famous orators of the era should appear as statesmen or as advocates. Theology, science, and belles-lettres did not then, as they have come to do among ourselves, suggest inviting and popular themes for the best efforts of the public speaker.

Roman oratory was senatorial, popular, and judicial. These different styles of eloquence were represented by the grave and dignified debates of the senate, the impassioned and often noisy and inelegant harangues of the forum, and the learned pleadings or ingenious appeals of the courts. Junius Brutus, Appius Claudius Cæcus, the Scipios, Cato the Censor, Gaius and Tiberius Gracchus, Gaius Lælius, Marcus Antonius, Lucius Licinius Crassus, Servius Sulpicius, Hortensius, Julius Cæsar, Mark Antony,¹ and Cicero are some of the most prominent names that have made the rostra of the Roman forum and the assembly chamber of the Roman senate famous in the records of oratory and eloquence. Among all these orators, Hortensius and Cicero stand preëminent.

Hortensius (114–50 B.C.) was a famous lawyer, whose name adorns the legal profession at the capital, both as the learned jurist and the eloquent advocate. His forensic talent won for him a lucrative law practice through which he gathered an immense fortune. His easy circumstances

¹ Grandson of Marcus Antonius.

and the lack of a rival to spur him to his best seem to have caused him, for a time, to lead a self-indulgent life and to neglect his art. His friend Cicero refers to this in the following interesting passage: "After his consulship (I suppose because he saw that he was beyond comparison the first speaker among the consulars, and took no count of those who had not attained that dignity), Hortensius relaxed the efforts which he had exerted from his boyhood up, and being well off in every way chose to pass his time more agreeably, as he thought, or at any rate less laboriously. Just as the brilliancy fades from the coloring of an old picture, so the first, the second, and the third year each robbed him



THE ORATOR QUINTUS HORTENSIVS.

(From a bust in the Vil'a Albani.)

of something not noticeable by a casual observer, but which an educated and discerning critic could detect. As time went on, he continued to deteriorate in his delivery, especially in readiness and sustained flow of utterance, until he became every day more unlike his old self. . . . By the time that I was made consul, six years after his own consulship, Hortensius had almost effaced himself. Then he began again to take pains; for

now that he and I were equals in rank, he wished us to be equals in everything. Thus for the twelve years following my consulship we two were engaged in the most important cases with unbroken friendliness. I always considered him superior to myself; he put me first."²

The world has confirmed the judgment of Hortensius. Marcus Tullius Cicero (106-43 B.C.) is easily the first of Roman orators, — "the most eloquent of all the sons of Romulus."³ As a youth he enjoyed every advantage that wealth and parental ambition could confer or suggest. His teachers were the poet Archias and the orator Crassus. Like many others of the Roman patrician youth of his time, he was sent to Greece to finish his education in the schools of Athens. Returning to Italy, he soon assumed a position of commanding influence at the Roman capital. His prosecution of Verres shows his hatred of the official corruption and venality that disgraced his times (par. 184); his orations against Catiline illustrate his patriotism (par. 188); his essays exhibit the wide range of his thoughts and the nature of his philosophical reflections. The most of his works evince the most scrupulous care in their preparation. He was a purist in language, and is said to have sometimes spent several days hunting for a proper word or phrase. His greatest fault was his overweening vanity, which appears in all he ever wrote, as well as in almost every act of his life. But the times in which Cicero lived, rather than the orator himself, are responsible for this.

² Quoted by Strachan-Davidson, *Cicero*, pp. 62, 63.

³ Catullus, quoted by Strachan-Davidson, *Cicero*, p. 1. Some critics, however, are unwilling to accord much praise to Cicero. Mommsen declares that he was nothing but a "dexterous stylist."

The ancient Romans possessed scarcely a trace of that sense of propriety which has grown up among us, and which forbids a person's celebrating his own virtues.

Cicero was a most delightful letter-writer. His letters to his friend Atticus are among the most charming specimens of that species of composition.

307. Latin Historians. — Ancient Rome produced four writers of history whose works have won for them a permanent fame — Cæsar, Sallust, Livy, and Tacitus. Suetonius may also be mentioned in this place, although his writings were rather biographical than historical.⁴

Of Cæsar and his *Commentaries on the Gallic War* we have learned in a previous chapter (par. 191). This work and his *Memoirs of the Civil War* are the productions on which his fame as a writer depends. He also prepared a Latin grammar, a book on divination, a treatise on astronomy, and, besides, composed some poems that are not without merit. But Cæsar was a man of affairs rather than a man of letters. Yet his *Commentaries* will always be mentioned along with the *Anabasis* of Xenophon as a model of the narrative style of writing.

Sallust (86–34 B.C.) was the contemporary and friend of Cæsar. He was prætor of one of the African provinces. Following the example of the Roman officials of his time, he amassed by harsh if not unjust exactions an immense fortune, and erected at Rome a palatial residence with

⁴ A fuller list of Roman historical authors would have to admit the name of Fabius Pictor, who lived in the age of Nævius, and was the first historian of the Latin-speaking race; that of Cato the Censor, of whose *Antiquities* we possess the merest fragments; and that of Cornelius Nepos, who wrote in the first century B.C.

extensive and beautiful gardens, which became one of the favorite resorts of the literary characters of the capital. The two works upon which his fame rests are the *Conspiracy of Catiline* and the *Jugurthine War*. Both of these productions are reckoned among the best examples of historical composition in the range of Latin literature, and are found in the hands of every classical student in the universities of Europe and America.

Livy (59 B.C.—A.D. 17) was one of the brightest ornaments of the Augustan Age. In popular esteem he holds the first place among Latin historical authors. Herodotus among the ancient, and Macaulay among the modern, writers of historical narrative are the names with which his is oftenest compared. His greatest work is his *Annals*, a history of Rome from the earliest times to the year 9 B.C. Unfortunately, all save thirty-five of the one hundred and forty-two books of this admirable production perished during the disturbed period that followed the overthrow of the empire. Many have been the laments over “the lost books of Livy.” The books which remain have been universally read and admired for the inimitable grace and ease of the flowing narrative. Livy loved a story equally well with Herodotus. Like the Greek historian, he was over-credulous, and relates with charming ingenuousness, usually without the least questioning of their credibility, all the legends and myths that were extant in his day respecting the early affairs of Rome. Modern criticism has shown that all the first portion of his history is entirely unreliable as a chronicle of actual events. However, it is a most entertaining account of what the Romans themselves thought and believed respecting the origin of their race,

the founding of their city, and the deeds and virtues of their forefathers.

The works of Tacitus are his *Germania*, a treatise on the manners and customs of the Germans; the *Life of Agricola*, his *History* and his *Annals*. All of these are most admirable productions, polished and graceful narratives, full of entertainment and instruction. His *Germania*, written, it is thought by some, out of the fulness of knowledge derived from personal observation through service or residence on the Rhenish frontier, gives us the fullest information that we possess respecting the manners, beliefs, and social arrangements of our barbarian ancestors while they were yet living beneath their native forests. Tacitus dwells with delight upon the simple life of the uncivilized Germans, and sets their virtues in strong contrast with the immoralities of the refined and cultured Romans. His treatise on the life and campaigns of Agricola, his father-in-law, is pronounced one of the most admirable biographies in the entire round of literature. It gives a most vivid and picturesque portrayal of the conquest of Britain and the establishment of Roman authority in that remote island (par. 224). The *History* and *Annals* cover the reigns of some of the best and of some of the worst of the rulers of the early empire. The hot indignation of the virtuous and patriotic historian, poured out in scathing invective against a Tiberius, a Nero, and a Domitian has caused his name to be frequently placed with those of Persius, Juvenal, and the other Roman satirists.

Suetonius (born about A.D. 70) was the biographer of the first *Twelve Cæsars*. It is to him that we are indebted for very many of the details of the lives of these early emperors.

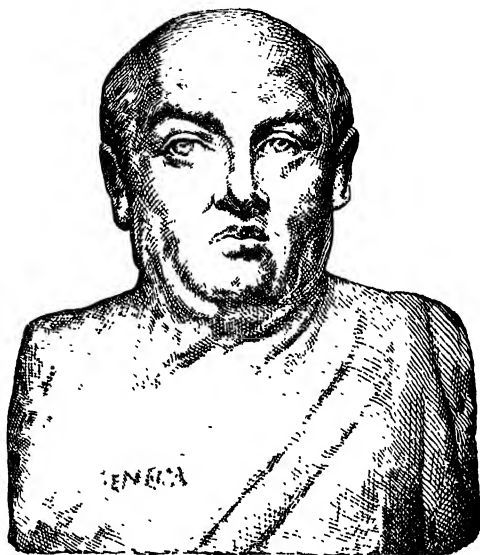
The picture which he draws is painted in dark colors, yet it is doubtless in the main a fairly reliable portraiture of some of the most detestable tyrants that ever disgraced a throne.

308. Science, Ethics, and Philosophy. — Under this head may be grouped the names of Varro, Seneca, Pliny the Elder and Pliny the Younger, Marcus Aurelius, Epictetus, Quintilian, and Phædrus.

Varro (116–27 B.C.) belongs to the later years of the republic. His almost universal knowledge has earned for him the title of “the most learned of the Romans.” He witnessed the terrific scenes of the days of Sulla and Marius, of Pompey and Cæsar, of Octavius and Antony. He himself was among the proscribed in the lists of the cruel Antony, and his magnificent villas—for he had immense wealth—were confiscated. Augustus gave him back his farms, but could not restore his library, which had perished in the sack of his villas. Like many another in those turbulent times, when he saw the hopeless ruin of the republic and the establishment of despotism in its place, he sought solace in the pursuit of literature. Almost the entire circle of letters was adorned by his versatile pen; he is said to have written between five and six hundred books. His most valuable production, however, was a work on agriculture, a sort of handbook for the Italian farmer.

Seneca (about A.D. 1–65), moralist and philosopher, has already come to our notice as the tutor of Nero (par. 220). The act of his life which has been most severely condemned was the defence which he made of his master before the senate for the tyrant’s murder of his mother,

Agrippina. Nero requited but poorly the infamous service. Seneca possessed an enormous fortune, estimated at 300,000,000 sesterces, which the ever-needy emperor coveted; he accordingly accused him of taking part in a conspiracy against his life, ordered him to commit suicide, and confiscated his estates. The philosopher met his fate calmly. Upon receiving the decree of his master, he opened the veins of his body, and died in the warm bath, whither he had retired in order that the flow of the blood might be accelerated, for it had become sluggish from age.



SENECA.

(From the double bust of Seneca and Socrates in the Berlin Museum.)

As a philosopher Seneca belonged to the school of the Stoics. He wrote many essays and letters, the latter intended for publication, containing lofty maxims of wisdom and virtue, which he certainly did not always follow in the conduct of his own life. He was a disbeliever in the popular religion of his countrymen, and entertained conceptions of God and his moral government not very different from the doctrines of Socrates. His ethical teachings are

so lofty and admirable that it has been maintained he came under the influences of Christianity; and several letters addressed apparently by the philosopher to the apostle Paul, which are still extant, were formerly referred to as proof of this fact; but these have been shown to be spurious. Besides his ethical and philosophical writings, Seneca composed ten tragedies, designed rather for reading than for the stage. Seneca's name will ever be remembered as that of a great teacher of virtue and morality to a corrupt age, whose influence upon himself all his philosophy could not wholly resist.

Pliny the Elder (A.D. 23-79) is almost the only Roman who won renown as an investigator of the phenomena of nature. His life was a marvellously busy one, every moment being filled with public services, with observations, study, and writing. He seldom walked, but rode or was carried in a litter, that he might not lose a moment from his studies. At his meals and toilet he had a slave read to him.

Pliny lost his life in an over-zealous pursuit of science. He was in command of the Roman fleet at Misenum when occurred the eruption of Vesuvius which resulted in the destruction of Pompeii and Herculaneum (par. 223). Subduing the fears of his officers, who wished to flee from the scene, Pliny employed the ships of his fleet in rescuing the inhabitants of the coast. His vessels, while engaged in this work, were covered with the hot ashes that darkened the air and fell incessantly in heavy showers. In order to gain a better view of the mountain, the philosopher ordered his sailors to put him ashore; but unfortunately he ventured too near the volcano, and was overcome and suffocated by the sulphurous exhalations.

The only work of Pliny that has been spared to us is his *Natural History*, embracing thirty-seven volumes. It is a monument of untiring industry and extensive research. It contains twenty thousand citations from more than two thousand volumes of various authors. It was the Roman Encyclopædia, containing all that the world then knew respecting astronomy, geography, botany, zoölogy, medicine, and the arts of painting and statuary. In this work he defends the theory of the sphericity of the earth, and declares that it is a globe hanging, by what means supported he knows not, in vacant space.

In connection with the name of Pliny the Elder must be mentioned that of his nephew, Pliny the Younger. He succeeded to the estate, and to somewhat of the fame, of his celebrated uncle. He was a man of letters, being a graceful writer and orator, yet was not a naturalist like the first Pliny. He was a servile courtier, and wrote a eulogy upon the character of the emperor Trajan which is filled with the most fulsome praise. Pliny's epistles, like the letters of Cicero, are among the most valuable of Roman prose productions that have come down to us.⁵

Marcus Aurelius the emperor and Epictetus the slave hold the first place among the ethical teachers of Rome. The former wrote his *Meditations* (par. 228) ; but the latter, like Socrates, committed nothing to writing, so that we know of the character of his teachings only through one of his pupils, Arrian by name. Epictetus was for many years a slave at the capital, but, securing in some way his freedom, he became a teacher of philosophy. Domitian having ordered all philosophers to leave Rome,

⁵ Compare par. 226, last part.

Epictetus fled to Epirus, where he established a school in which he taught the doctrines of Stoicism. His name is inseparably linked with that of Marcus Aurelius 'as a teacher of the purest system of ethics that is found outside of Christianity. Epictetus and Aurelius were the last eminent representatives and expositors of the philosophy of the Stoics. In them Stoicism bore its consummate flower and fruit. The doctrines of the Galilean were even then fast taking possession of the Roman world; for, giving larger place to the affections and all the natural instincts, they readily won the hearts of men from the cold, unsympathetic abstractions of the Grecian sage.

Quintilian (about A.D. 40-118) was the one great grammarian and rhetorician that the Roman race produced. For about a quarter of a century he was the most noted lecturer at Rome on educational and literary subjects. One of the booksellers of the capital, after much persuasion, finally prevailed upon the teacher to publish his lectures. They were received with great favor, and Quintilian's *Institutes* have never ceased to be studied and copied by all succeeding writers on education and rhetoric.⁶

⁶ The allusions which we have made to the publishing trade suggest a word respecting ancient publishers and books. There were in Rome several publishing houses, which, in their day, enjoyed a wide reputation and conducted a very extended business. "Indeed, the antique book trade," says Guhl, "was carried on on a scale hardly surpassed by modern times. . . . The place of the press in our literature was taken by the slaves." Through practice they gained surprising facility as copyists, and books were multiplied with great rapidity. And, as to the books themselves, we must bear in mind that a book in the ancient sense was simply a roll of manuscript or parchment, and contained nothing like the amount of matter held by an ordinary modern volume. Thus Cæsar's *Gallic Wars*, which makes a single volume of moderate

In the reign of Domitian or of Trajan, Phædrus, "the Roman Æsop," wrote his fables, which were, for the most part, translations or imitations of the productions of his Greek master. About this same time, Frontinus wrote a valuable work on military strategy and a still more interesting book on the Roman aqueducts. This latter work gives us much interesting information respecting those stupendous structures.

309. Writers of the Early Latin Church. — The Christian authors of the first three centuries, like the writers of the New Testament, employed the Greek, that being the language of learning and culture. Clement of Rome, Clement of Alexandria, Justin, Origen, Eusebius, Chrysostom, and Basil are a few of the celebrated fathers of the early Church who used in their works the language of Athens. Of these Chrysostom, the "golden-mouthed," so called on account of his persuasive oratory, was perhaps the most renowned.

But, though the Greek language was first chosen as the medium for the dissemination of Christian doctrines, as the Latin tongue gradually came into more general use throughout the West, the Christian authors naturally began to use it in the composition of their works. Hence almost all the writings of the fathers of the Church produced in the Western half of the empire during the later imperial period were composed in Latin. From among the many names that adorn the Church literature of this period, we

size with us, made eight Roman books. Most of the houses of the wealthy Romans contained libraries. The collection of Sammonicus Serenus, tutor of Gordian, numbered 62,000 books. There were in Rome twenty-nine public libraries established by the emperors.

shall select only two for special mention, — St. Jerome and St. Augustine.

Jerome (A.D. 342?–420) was a native of Pannonia. He studied at Rome and at Constantinople, and travelled through all the provinces of the empire, from Britain to Palestine. For many years he led a monastic life at Bethlehem. He is especially held in memory through his translation of the Scriptures into Latin. This version is known as the *Vulgate*, and is the one which, with slight changes, is still used in the Roman Catholic Church. “It was for Europe of the Middle Ages,” asserts Mackail, “more than Homer was to Greece.”

Aurelius Augustine (A.D. 354–430) was born near Carthage, in Africa. He was the most eminent writer of the Christian Church during the later Roman period. His numerous works — sermons, commentaries, and epistles — form a perfect library of themselves; but his fame rests chiefly on his *Confessions* and his *City of God*, two of the most remarkable productions of all Christian writings. The larger part of the *Confessions* is a touching narrative of his struggles of soul that resulted in his conversion. This work is a classic in Christian literature, and has been translated into almost every language in which the Bible is read. The *City of God* is a truly wonderful work. The book was written just when the Goths and Vandals were taking possession of the empire, when Rome was becoming the spoil of the barbarians. It was designed to answer the charge of the pagans that Christianity, turning the people away from the worship of the ancient gods, was the cause of the calamities that were befalling the Roman state. It symbolizes Rome as the city of the world, which only pre-

sumptuously can call itself the "Eternal City"; while under the figure of the City of God is portrayed the enduring nature of the Christian Church, the New Jerusalem, the truly "Eternal City."

310. Roman Law and Law Literature. — Although the Latin writers in all the departments of literary effort which we have so far reviewed did much valuable work, yet, as we have had occasion to repeat frequently, the Roman intellect in all these realms was under Greek guidance; its work was imitative, and throughout all its course unmarked by any great originality, boldness, or creative energy. But in another department it was different. We mean, of course, the field of legal or juridical science. Here the Romans cease to be pupils and become teachers. Here they are no longer the servile imitators of the excellences of others, — although they do not refuse helpful instruction, — but they become creators and masters. Nations, like men, have their mission. Rome's mission was to give laws to the world.

Our knowledge of the law system of the Romans begins with the legislation of the Twelve Tables, about 450 B.C. (par. 59). Throughout all the republican period the laws were growing less harsh and cruel, less invidious in their distinctions between the higher and lower classes of the community, and were gradually effacing the marks of their barbarous origin and becoming more liberal and scientific.

From 100 B.C. to A.D. 250 lived and wrote the most famous of the Roman jurists and law writers, who created the most remarkable law literature ever produced by any people. The great unvarying principles that underlie and regulate all social and political relations were examined,

illustrated, and clearly enunciated. Scævola,⁷ Gaius, Ulpian, Paulus, Papinian, and Pomponius are among the most renowned of the writers who, during the period just indicated, enriched by their writings and decisions this branch of Latin literature.

In the year A.D. 527 Justinian became emperor of the Eastern Roman empire. He almost immediately entered upon the work of collecting and arranging in a systematic manner the immense mass of Roman laws and the writings of the jurists. The undertaking was like the labor of the commissioners who drew up the code of the Twelve Tables, only infinitely greater. Since those tablets were set up in the forum, a thousand years had passed. During these centuries the limits of Latium had gradually expanded, until they had come to embrace all the countries fringing the Mediterranean; and over all these regions, with their motley populations, Rome had extended her authority and her laws. There was no possible relation of life that was not recognized and dealt with by the Roman government. Men's relations to the family, to the city, to the state, to the gods, were clearly defined and legislated upon and decreed about by the senate, emperors, and municipal magistrates. During all these centuries, too, the best intellects of the nation had been busy annotating and commenting upon all this growing mass of legislation, and producing whole libraries of learned works on the science of jurisprudence and government. Bearing these things in mind, we can form some faint conception of the enormous amount of material of a legal character that had been created by the time of the subversion of the empire in the West.

⁷ Quintus Mucius Scævola, surnamed Pontifex.

Justinian committed the task of collating, revising, condensing, and harmonizing all this matter to the celebrated lawyer Tribonian, with whom were associated during the course of the work fourteen assistants. This commission began its labors in the year A.D. 528, and in five years the work was completed and given to the world in the form of the *Corpus Juris Civilis*, or "Body of the Civil Law." This consisted of three parts, —the *Code*, the *Pandects*, and the *Institutes*.⁸ The *Code* was a revised and compressed collection of all the laws, instructions to judicial officers, and opinions on legal subjects, promulgated by the different emperors since the time of Hadrian; the *Pandects* ("all-containing") were a digest or abridgment of the writings, opinions, and decisions of the most eminent of the old Roman jurists and lawyers. Two thousand books of thirty-nine different authors, all of whom lived between 100 B.C. and A.D. 250, were collected, and from this enormous mass of manuscript were culled nine thousand extracts, which contained the sum and substance of all that three centuries and more of law scholars had thought out and written down. These excerpts were arranged under their proper titles, and filled fifty books. This part of the *Corpus Juris* is by far the most important and interesting, as it deals with the principles of legal science, and has to do with private law, which touches the transactions of everyday life, while the *Code* is mainly concerned with public law. The *Institutes* were a condensed edition of the *Pandects*, and were intended to form an elementary textbook for the use of students.

⁸ A later work, called the *Novels*, comprised the laws of Justinian issued subsequent to the completion of the *Code*.

When the great work was completed, copies were furnished to the law schools of Constantinople, Rome, Alexandria, Berytus, Casarea, and other cities of the empire. It was the sole text-book of the youth engaged in the study of the law.

The Body of the Roman Law thus preserved and transmitted was the most important contribution of the Latin intellect to civilization.⁹ It has exerted a profound influence upon all the legal systems of modern Europe. During the Dark Ages its study abated; but early in the twelfth century there was a great revival of interest in it in all the law schools of Italy, especially at Bologna. As a result of this fresh examination of the admirable system of jurisprudence of ancient Rome, the Justinian Code became the groundwork of the present law system of Italy, of Southern France, and of Germany. It also became auxili-

⁹ Notwithstanding that the Romans had much political experience and developed a wonderfully complex unwritten constitution, still, aside from their municipal and administrative systems (pars. 74 and 251, n. 1), they made no permanent contribution to the art of government or to the science of constitutional law. It was left for the English people, practically unaided by Roman precedents, to work out the constitution of the modern free state. The primary assemblies of the Romans (par. 15) could afford no instructive precedents in the department of legislation. The practical working of the device of the dual executive of the republic (par. 111, n. 7) was not calculated to commend it to later statesmen. Nor was there, at any period of Roman history, anything worthy of imitation in the separation and the coordination of the legislative, the judicial, and the executive department of the government. The single admirable feature in the composition of the later republican senate of Rome, namely, the giving of seats in that body to ex-magistrates (see page 107), has not been imitated by modern constitution-makers, though James Bryce, in his commentary on the American Commonwealth, suggests that they might have done so to advantage in the making up of the upper chambers of their legislatures.

ary law in Northern France and in Spain, while in England the laws of our Teutonic ancestors were by it greatly influenced and modified.¹⁰

Thus has Rome given laws to the nations — thus does the once little Palatine City of the Tiber still rule the world. The religion of Judaea, the arts of Greece, and the laws of Rome are three very real and potent elements in modern civilization.

REFERENCES. — CRUTTWELL (C. T.), *History of Roman Literature*. SELLAR (W. J.), *The Roman Poets of the Republic* and *The Roman Poets of the Augustan Age*. MACKAIL (J. W.), *Latin Literature*. THOMAS (E.), ** *Roman Life under the Cæsars*, chap. xiv. pp. 331–363. “A Typical Roman of the Empire, Pliny the Younger”; and chap. xi. pp. 253–275, “The Representatives of Moral Ideas in Roman Society [Epictetus, Marcus Aurelius, and Seneca].” LAWRENCE (E.), *Latin Literature* (Harper’s Half-Hour Series). STRACHAN-DAVIDSON (J. L.), * *Cicero* (Heroes of the Nations), chap. iii. (first part), “Cicero as an Advocate.” HADLEY (J.), * *Introduction to Roman Law*, lec. III., “The Roman Law before Justinian,” pp. 51–76. GIBBON (E.), * *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chap. xlv., for Roman jurisprudence. This chapter is one of the most noted of Gibbon’s great work. CUTTS (E. L.), *Saint Jerome* (Church Fathers Series).

¹⁰ Hadley, *Introduction to Roman Law*, p. 25 *et seq.*

CHAPTER XXV.

SOCIAL LIFE.

311. **Education.**—Under the republic there were no public schools in Rome; education was a private affair. Under the early empire a mixed system prevailed, there being both public and private schools. Later, education came more completely under the supervision of the state. In A.D. 425 the emperors Theodosius and Valentinian forbade any persons, save those especially authorized, to open schools. The salaries of the teachers and lecturers were usually paid by the municipalities, but sometimes from the imperial chest.

Never was the profession of the teacher held in such esteem as among the later Romans. Teachers were made exempt from many public burdens and duties, and were even invested with inviolability, like heralds and tribunes.¹

The education of the Roman boy differed from that of the Greek youth in being more practical. The laws of the Twelve Tables were committed to memory; and rhetoric and oratory were given special attention, as a mastery of the art of public speaking was an almost indispensable acquirement for the Roman citizen who aspired to take a prominent part in the affairs of state.

After their conquest of Magna Græcia and of Greece, the Romans were brought into closer relations with Greek

¹ Dill, *Roman Society in the Last Century of the Western Empire*, p. 333.

culture than had hitherto existed. The Roman youth were taught the language of Athens, often to the neglect, it appears, of their native tongue; for we hear Cato the Censor complaining that the boys of his time spoke Greek before they could use their own language. Young men belonging to families of means not unusually went to Greece, just as the graduates of our schools go to Europe, to finish their education. Many of the most prominent statesmen of Rome, as, for instance, Cicero and Julius Cæsar, received the advantages of this higher training in the schools of Greece.

Somewhere between the ages of fourteen and eighteen the boy exchanged his purple-hemmed toga, or gown, for one of white wool, which was in all places and at all times the significant badge of Roman citizenship and Roman equality.²

312. Social Position of Woman.—Until after her marriage, the daughter of the family was kept in almost oriental seclusion. Marriage gave her a certain freedom. She might now be present at the races of the circus and the various shows of the theatre and the amphitheatre—a privilege rarely accorded to her before marriage.

In the early virtuous period of the Roman state the wife and mother held a dignified and assured position in the household, and divorces were unusual, there being no instance of one, it is said, until the year 231 B.C.; but in

² With the exception of the chief magistrates and the senators, every citizen, whether rich or poor, patrician or plebeian, was compelled, whenever he appeared at the public games or attended court ceremonies, to wear the same white, unadorned mantle. Thus was symbolized the equality of the citizens.

later and more degenerate times her position became less honored, and divorce grew to be very common. The husband had the right to divorce his wife for the slightest cause, or for no cause at all. In this disregard of the sanctity of the family relation may doubtless be found one cause of the degeneracy and failure of the Roman stock.

313. Legacy Hunting.—The decay of family life at Rome in the last century of the republic and the first of the empire gave birth to a vice so characteristic of the society of those times that we must not pass it in entire silence. This was what is known as legacy hunting.

The disesteem in which family life had come to be held by the upper classes gave rise to the presence in society of a large number of heirless persons. This state of things called into existence a despicable class, who by every means tried to insinuate themselves into the favor of the rich but childless person, in order to induce him to name them as his heirs. The practices resorted to by these legacy hunters were as shameless as they were ingenious. They became the obsequious clients of the one whose wealth they coveted. They made him gifts and showered upon him attentions of every kind. They offered prayers and sacrifices for his recovery when he was sick, although they were hoping for his speedy death. They sat on the foremost benches when he read verses of his own composition, and though almost dead with weariness applauded loudly. They were diligent in attendance upon his lectures. Casually they showed him their own wills, drawn in his favor. If any of his houses chanced to burn down, they were the first to subscribe to a fund to make good his loss. And

thus it came about that the childless and heirless person held in society a most envied place. "The man who has heirs," says a writer of the times, "is never invited to any festive gathering, but is left to associate with the dregs of society."³ Did an heir chance to be born to a person hitherto childless, straightway he became friendless and without influence.⁴ Seneca in a letter to a mother who had lost her only child consoles her with the thought that now she will enjoy a social position which she could not have secured had her heir lived.

But there was another side to the matter. The deceivers were often deceived. In order that they might be the recipients of the attentions and the gifts bestowed by these legacy hunters upon the heirless rich, many made false pretensions to the possession of great wealth. During life such persons enjoyed great consideration, and dying, left many indignant mourners.

314. Public Amusements.—The entertainments of the theatre, the games of the circus, and the combats of the amphitheatre were the three principal public amusements of the Romans. These entertainments, in general, increased in popularity as liberty declined, the great festive gatherings at the various places of amusement taking the place of the political assemblies of the republic. The public exhibitions under the empire were, in a certain sense, the compensation which the emperors offered the people

³ Petronius, quoted by Inge, *Society in Rome under the Cæsars*, p. 35. Petronius lived in the time of Nero and wrote a remarkable novel, which was a mirror of the society of his day. Only fragments of the work have been spared to us.

⁴ Friedländer, *Darstellungen aus der Sittengeschichte Roms*, vol. i. p. 419.

for their surrender of the right of participation in public affairs; and the people were content to accept the exchange.

Tragedy was never held in high esteem at Rome; the people saw too much real tragedy in the exhibitions of the amphitheatre to care much for the make-believe tragedies of the stage. The entertainments of the theatres usually took the form of comedies, farces, and pantomimes. The last were particularly popular, both because the vast size of the theatres made it quite impossible for the actor to make his voice heard throughout the structure, and for the reason that the language of signs was the only language that could be readily understood by an audience made up of so many different nationalities as composed a Roman assemblage.

Almost from the beginning the Roman stage was gross and immoral. It was one of the main agencies to which must be attributed the undermining of the originally sound moral life of Roman society. So absorbed did the people become in the indecent representations of the stage that they lost all thought and care of the affairs of real life. And the evil was not confined to the capital. In all the great cities of the provinces the theatre held the same place of bad preëminence in the social life of the inhabitants. The people of Carthage were shouting and applauding in the theatre at the very moment when the Vandals were bursting open the city gates. "The Roman world died laughing."

More important and more popular than the entertainments of the theatre were the various games, especially the chariot races, of the circus. But surpassing in their terrible

fascination all other public amusements were the animal baitings and the gladiatorial combats of the arena.

The beasts required for the baitings were secured in different parts of the world, and transported to Rome and the other cities of the empire at enormous expense. The wildernesses of Northern Europe furnished bears and wolves; Scotland sent fierce dogs; Africa contributed



CHARIOT-RACING.

(Pompeian wall-painting.)

lions, crocodiles, and leopards; Asia, elephants and tigers. These creatures were pitted against one another in every conceivable way. Often a promiscuous multitude would be turned loose in the arena at once. But even the terrific scene that then ensued became at last too tame to stir the blood of the Roman populace. Hence a new species of entertainments was introduced, and grew rapidly into favor with the spectators of the amphitheatre. This was the gladiatorial combat.

315. The Gladiatorial Combats. — Gladiatorial shows seem to have had their origin in Etruria, whence they were brought to Rome. It was a custom among the early

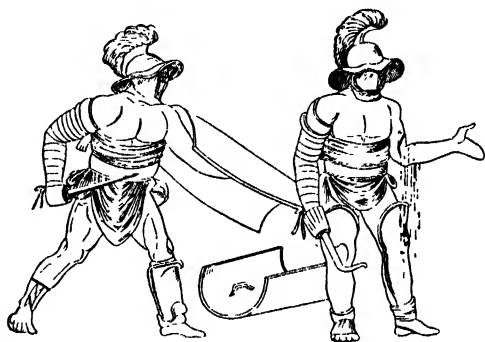
Etruscans to slay prisoners upon the warrior's grave, it being thought that the manes of the dead delighted in the blood of such victims. In later times the prisoners were allowed to fight and kill one another, this being deemed more humane than their cold-blooded slaughter. Thus it happened that sentiments of humanity gave rise to an institution which, afterwards perverted, became the most inhuman of any that ever existed among a civilized people.

The first gladiatorial spectacle at Rome was presented by two sons at the funeral of their father, in the year 264 B.C. This exhibition was arranged in one of the forums, as there were at that time no amphitheatres in existence. From this time the public taste for this species of entertainment grew rapidly, and by the beginning of the imperial period had become a perfect infatuation. It was now no longer the manes of the dead, but the spirits of the living, that the spectacles were intended to appease. At first the combatants were slaves, captives, or condemned criminals; but at last knights, senators, and even women descended voluntarily into the arena. Training-schools were established at Rome, Capua, Ravenna, and other cities. Free citizens often sold themselves to the keepers of these seminaries; and to them flocked desperate men of all classes, and ruined spendthrifts of the noblest patrician houses. Slaves and criminals were encouraged to become proficient in the art by the promise of freedom if they survived the combats beyond a certain number of years.

Sometimes the gladiators fought in pairs; again, great companies engaged at once in the deadly fray. They fought in chariots, on horseback, on foot — in all the ways that soldiers were accustomed to fight in actual battle.

The contestants were armed with lances, swords, daggers, tridents, and every manner of weapon. Some were provided with nets and lassos, with which they entangled their adversaries, and then slew them.

The life of a wounded gladiator was, in ordinary cases, in the hands of the audience. If in response to his appeal for mercy, which was made by outstretching the forefinger, the spectators waved their handkerchiefs or reached out their hands with thumbs extended, that indicated that his prayer had been heard; but if they extended their hands with thumbs



GLADIATORS.

(Pompeian wall-painting.)

turned in, that was the signal for the victor to give him the death stroke. Sometimes the dying were aroused and forced to resume the fight, by being burned with a hot iron. The dead bodies were dragged from the arena with hooks, like the carcasses of animals, and the pools of blood soaked up with dry sand.

These shows increased to such an extent that they entirely overshadowed the entertainments of the circus and the theatre. Ambitious officials and commanders arranged such spectacles in order to curry favor with the masses; magistrates were expected to give them in connection with

the public festivals ; the heads of aspiring families exhibited them "in order to acquire social position" ; wealthy citizens prepared them as an indispensable feature of a fashionable banquet ; the children caught the spirit of their elders and imitated them in their plays. The demand for gladiators was met by the training-schools ; the managers of these hired out bands of trained men, that travelled through the country like opera troupes among us, and gave exhibitions in private houses or in the provincial amphitheatres.

The rivalries between ambitious leaders during the later years of the republic tended greatly to increase the number of gladiatorial shows, as liberality in arranging these spectacles was a sure passport to popular favor. It was reserved for the emperors, however, to exhibit them on a truly imperial scale. Titus, upon the dedication of the Flavian Amphitheatre (par. 223), provided games, mostly gladiatorial combats, that lasted one hundred days. Trajan celebrated his victories with shows that continued still longer, in the progress of which ten thousand gladiators fought upon the arena, and more than ten thousand wild beasts were slain.⁵

316. Luxury. — By luxury, as we shall use the word, we mean extravagant and self-indulgent living. This vice seems to have been almost unknown in early Rome. The primitive Romans were men of frugal habits, who, like Fabricius (par. 82), found contentment in poverty and disdained riches.

A great change, however, as we have seen, passed over Roman society after the conquest of the East and the

⁵ For the suppression of the gladiatorial games, see par. 270.

development of the corrupt provincial system of the later republic. The colossal fortunes quickly and dishonestly amassed by the ruling class marked the incoming at Rome of such a reign of luxury as perhaps no other capital of the world ever witnessed.

This luxury was at its height in the last century of the republic and the first of the empire. Never has great wealth been more grossly misused than during this period at Rome. The establishment of the empire, however, and



SEMICIRCULAR DINING-COUCH.

(From a Pompeian wall-painting.)

the accompanying reform of the administration of the provinces, gradually destroyed those sources whence had been drawn many, at least, of the ill-gotten and rapidly accumulated fortunes of the earlier period. There was still, of course, a wealthy class; but the fortunes of these had generally come to them through inheritance. There were fewer "new men." This later aristocracy was more like the English landed aristocracy of to-day. In such a society there will be found less foolish ostentation and gross living than in a society like that of the days of the failing republic of Rome.

The character of the expenditures of this later Roman aristocracy was determined very largely by the circumstances of the times. Among ourselves the greater part of the income of the wealthy classes is employed in industrial enterprises. At Rome it was not so. There were not so many opportunities then as there are now for the profitable and safe use of capital. The fortunate possessor of a large income was shut up to expending it in adding new fields to his estate, in multiplying, enlarging or beautifying his palaces and villas, or in the maintenance of an expensive domestic establishment. Most of the large private incomes of the imperial period—and there were many great land-owners who enjoyed incomes ranging from \$100,000 to \$800,000 in our money—were expended in one or in all of these ways, which were forms of expenditure that seemed to good citizens legitimate and reasonable, and which offended neither the good taste nor the conscience of the time. "The real canker at the root of that society was not gross vice, but class-pride, want of public spirit, absorption in the vanities of a sterile culture, cultivated selfishness."⁶

But the most of these faults are faults which have characterized every aristocracy of wealth that the world has ever seen. During the last four centuries of the empire the luxury of the Roman aristocracy was perhaps little more extravagant or selfish than that of any of the aristocracies that since the fall of Roman civilization have absorbed and expended so large a part of the wealth of the different European countries.

⁶ Dill, *Roman Society in the Last Century of the Roman Empire*, p. 176.

317. State Distribution of Corn. — The free distribution of corn at Rome has been characterized as the “leading fact of Roman life.” It will be recalled that this pernicious practice had its beginnings in the legislation of Gaius Gracchus (par. 155). Just before the establishment of the empire, over three hundred thousand Roman citizens were recipients of this state bounty. In the time of the Antonines the number is asserted to have been even larger. The corn for this enormous distribution was derived, in large part, from a grain tribute exacted of the African and other corn-producing provinces. In the third century, to the largesses of corn were added doles of oil, wine, and pork.

The evils that resulted from this misdirected state charity can hardly be overstated. Idleness and all its accompanying vices were fostered to such a degree that we probably shall not be wrong in enumerating the practice as one of the chief causes of the demoralization of society at Rome under the emperors.

318. Slavery. -- The number of slaves in the Roman state under the later republic and the earlier empire was very great, some estimates making it equal to the number of freemen. Some large proprietors owned as many as twenty thousand. The love of ostentation led to the multiplication of offices in the households of the wealthy, and the employment of a special slave for every different kind of work. Thus in some families there was kept a slave whose sole duty it was to care for his master's sandals; and another, called the *nomenclator*, whose exclusive business 't was to accompany his master when he went upon the street, and give him the names of such persons as he ought to recognize. The price of slaves varied from a few dol-

lars to ten or twenty thousand dollars — these last figures being of course exceptional. Greek slaves were the most valuable, as their lively intelligence rendered them serviceable in positions calling for special talent.

The slave class was chiefly recruited, as in Greece, by war, and by the practice of kidnapping. Some of the outlying provinces in Asia and Africa were almost depopulated by the slave hunters. Delinquent taxpayers were often sold as slaves, and frequently poor persons sold themselves into servitude.

The feeling entertained towards this unfortunate class in the later republican period is illustrated by Varro's classification of slaves as "vocal agricultural implements," and again by Cato the Censor's recommendation to masters to sell their old and decrepit slaves, in order to save the expense of caring for them (par. 137). Sick and hopelessly infirm slaves were taken to an island in the Tiber and left there to die of starvation and exposure. In many cases, as a measure of precaution, the slaves were forced to work in chains, and to sleep in subterranean prisons. Their bitter hatred towards their masters, engendered by harsh treatment, is witnessed by the well-known proverb, "As many enemies as slaves," and by the servile revolts and wars of the republican period.

Slaves were treated better under the empire than under the later republic — a change to be attributed doubtless to the influence of Stoicism and Christianity. From the first century of the empire forward there is observable a growing sentiment of humanity towards the bondsman. Imperial edicts take away from the master the right to kill his slave, or to sell him to the trader in gladiators, or even

to treat him with undue severity. This marks the beginning of a slow reform which in the course of ten or twelve centuries resulted in the complete, or almost complete, abolition of slavery in Christian Europe.



ROMAN LAMENTATION FOR THE DEAD.

(From an ancient marble relief)

REFERENCES. — INGE (W. R.), *** Society in Rome under the Cæsars*; a prize essay on the social life of Rome in the first century of our era. Morality, education, daily life, amusements, and luxury are some features of this life that are touched upon. LECKY (W. E. H.), *History of European Morals from Augustus to Charlemagne*, 2 vols. A book of first importance. The student is recommended to read vol. i. chap. ii. GUIHL (E.) and KONER (W.), *The Life of the Greeks and Romans*. (From the German.) DILL (S.), *** Roman Society in the Last Century of the Western Empire*. Read bk. v. pp. 321-376, on "Characteristics of Roman Education and Culture in the Fifth Century." PRESTON (H. W.) and DODGE (L.), *The Private Life of the Romans* (The Students' Series of Latin Classics). THOMAS (E.), ** Roman Life under the Cæsars*. GILMAN (A.), *The Story of Rome* (Story of the Nations), chap. xviii. pp. 271-291, "Some Manners and Customs of the Roman People." FRIEDLÄNDER (L.), *Darstellungen aus der Sittengeschichte Roms*, 3 vols. FLING (F. M.), *Studies in European History* (Greek and Roman Civilization), second edition, 1899, chap. x. pp. 146-163, "Roman Law."

PART V.---THE ROMANO-GERMAN OR TRANSITION AGE.

(A.D. 476 800.)

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE OLD AND THE NEW.

319. Relation to World History of the Fall of Rome.—The calamity which in the fifth century befell the Roman empire in the West is sometimes spoken of as an event marking the extinction of ancient civilization. The treasures of the Old World are represented as having been destroyed, and mankind as obliged to take a fresh start,—to lay the foundations of civilization anew. It was not so. All or almost all that was really valuable in the accumulations of antiquity escaped harm and became sooner or later the possession of the succeeding ages. The catastrophe simply prepared the way for the shifting in the West of the scene of civilization from the south to the north of Europe, simply transferred at once political power, and gradually social and intellectual preëminence, from one race to another,—from the Roman to the Teuton.

The event was not an unrelieved calamity, because fortunately the floods that seemed to be sweeping so much away were not the mountain torrent, which covers fruitful

fields with worthless drift, but the overflowing Nile with its rich deposits. Over all the regions covered by the barbarian inundation a new stratum of population was thrown down, a new soil formed that was capable of nourishing a better civilization than any the world had yet seen. •

320. Chief Factors in the History of the Romano-German Period. — We shall best understand the character of the three transition centuries upon which we now enter, if we first note carefully what were the racial and cultural elements or forces which made their history what it is.

The name which we have chosen for this age designates two of the most vital of these elements, namely, Roman civilization and the German race. By the term "Roman" or "Græco-Roman" civilization we mean that whole body of arts, sciences, philosophies, literatures, laws, manners, customs, ideas, social arrangements, and models of imperial and municipal government, — everything, in a word, save Christianity, — which Greece and Rome transmitted to mediæval and modern Europe. These things constitute what is called in history the classical element. Taken together, they were a valuable gift to the new northern race that was henceforth to represent civilization.

And here we should not fail to observe that though in the West the barbarians had destroyed the institutions and monuments which embodied in visible form the splendid civilization of antiquity, still in the East the Roman empire was yet intact, and that there not simply the memory and idea of the empire but the actual empire itself lived on, though with activities greatly restricted and impaired.

The second element that was to enter as an all-important factor in the history of the new period was the new Teutonic race. Now the Teutons were poor in those things in which the Romans were rich. They had neither arts, nor sciences, nor philosophies, nor literatures. But they had something better than all these; they possessed the essential elements of a robust manhood.¹ They had a rare capacity for civilization, an inextinguishable love of personal freedom, and a deep veneration for womanhood. It was because they had these capacities and virtues that the future time became theirs.

The third influential element that was already working like leaven in the mingled mass of the new-forming Romano-German world of the West was Christianity. Very much that is most vital and permanent in the history of the centuries immediately before us has to do with this religion.

Among the various doctrines taught by the new religion were these: the unity of God, the brotherhood of man, and the immortality of the soul. Besides these doctrines, Christianity brought in a new moral ideal, that is to say, a group of new virtues. These teachings and this new ideal of duty have done more than any other force to make the modern so different from the ancient world.

Besides these three all-important factors in the history of the Romano-German age, there were several others which were less influential, but which cannot be overlooked. These were racial factors, — the Celts, the Slavs, the Persians, and the Arabs, — all of which will be brought to our notice as the history of the period unfolds.

¹ Yet they were not without vices, chief among which were drinking and gambling.

CHAPTER XXVII.

THE BARBARIAN KINGDOMS.

321. Introductory. — In connection with the history of the break-up of the Roman empire in the West, we have already given some account of the migrations and settlements of the German tribes. In the present chapter we shall relate briefly the political fortunes, for the two centuries and more following the fall of Rome, of the principal kingdoms set up by the German chieftains in the different provinces of the old empire.

322. Kingdom of the Ostrogoths (A.D. 493-554). — Odo-vakar will be recalled as the barbarian chief who dethroned the last of the Western Roman emperors (par. 280). His feeble government in Italy lasted only seventeen years, when it was brought to a close by the invasion of the Ostrogoths (Eastern Goths) under Theodoric, the greatest of their chiefs, who set up in Italy a new dominion, known as the Kingdom of the Ostrogoths.

The reign of Theodoric covered thirty-three years, — years of such quiet and prosperity as Italy had not known since the happy era of the Antonines. The king made good his promise that his reign should be such that “the only regret of the people should be that the Goths had not come at an earlier period.”

The kingdom established by the rare abilities of Theodoric lasted only twenty-seven years after his death, which

occurred A.D. 527. Justinian, emperor of the East, taking advantage of that event, sent his generals, first Belisarius and afterwards Narses, to deliver Italy from the rule of the barbarians. The last of the Ostrogothic kings fell in battle, and Italy, with her fields ravaged and her cities in ruins, was reunited to the empire (A.D. 554).

323. Kingdom of the Visigoths (A.D. 415-711). — The Visigoths (Western Goths) were already in possession of Southern Gaul and the greater part of Spain when the Roman empire in the West was brought to an end by the act of Odovakar and his companions. The name of Euric (A.D. 466-483) holds the same place of preëminence among their kings as does that of Theodoric among the Ostrogothic princes.

Being driven south of the Pyrenees by the kings of the Franks, the Visigoths held their possessions in Spain until the beginning of the eighth century, when their rule was brought to an end by the Saracens (par. 379). The Visigothic kingdom when thus overturned had lasted nearly three hundred years. During this time the conquerors had mingled with the old Romanized inhabitants of Spain, so that in the veins of the Spaniard of to-day is blended the blood of Iberian, Celt, Roman, and Teuton, together with that of the last intruder, the African Moor.

324. Kingdom of the Burgundians (A.D. 443-534). — The Burgundians we have already noticed as the founders of a principality in Southeastern Gaul (par. 276). They were hardly well established in these parts before they came in collision with the Franks on the north, and were reduced by them to a state of dependence.

325. Kingdom of the Vandals (A.D. 429-533). — We have also previously spoken of the establishment in North

Africa of the kingdom of the Vandals, and told how, under the lead of their king Geiseric, they bore in triumph down the Tiber the heavy spoils of Rome (par. 279).

Being Arian Christians, the Vandals persecuted with furious zeal the orthodox party, the followers of Athanasius. Moved by the entreaties of the African Catholics, Justinian, the emperor of the East, sent his general Belisarius to drive the barbarians from Africa. The expedition was successful, and Carthage and the fruitful fields of Africa were restored to the empire, after having suffered the insolence of the barbarian conquerors for the space of above a hundred years. The Vandals remaining in the country were gradually absorbed by the old Roman population, and after a few generations no certain trace of the barbarian invaders could be detected in the physical appearance, the language, or the customs of the inhabitants of the African coast. The Vandal nation had disappeared; the name alone remained.

326. The Franks under the Merovingians (A.D. 486-752).
— Even long before the fall of Rome, the Franks, as we have seen (par. 276), were on the soil of Gaul, laying there the foundations of the French nation and monarchy. They were at this time divided into two branches or groups of tribes, known respectively as the Ripuarians and the Salians. The Salians were the leading nation, and it was from the members of their most powerful family, who traced their descent from Merowig, an early chieftain of the race, that leaders were chosen by the free vote of all the warriors. Among their several kings at this time was Chlodwig or Clovis.

After the downfall of Rome, Clovis conceived the ambition of erecting a kingdom upon the ruins of the Roman

power. He attacked Syagrius, the Roman governor of Gaul, and at Soissons gained a decisive victory over his forces (A.D. 486). Thus was destroyed forever in Gaul that Roman authority established among its barbarous tribes more than five centuries before by the conquests of Julius Caesar.

Clovis in a short time extended his authority over the greater part of Gaul, reducing to the condition of tributaries the various Teutonic tribes that had taken possession of different portions of the country. Upon his death (A.D. 511) his extensive dominions, in accordance with the ancient Teutonic law of inheritance, were divided among his four sons. About a century and a half of discord followed,¹ by the end of which time the Merovingians had become so feeble and inefficient that they were contemptuously called *rois fainéants*, or "do-nothing kings," and an ambitious officer of the crown known as Mayor of the Palace (*Major Domus*), in a way that will be explained a little later, pushed aside the weak Merovingian king, and gave to the Frankish monarchy a new royal line, — the Carolingian.

327. Kingdom of the Lombards (A.D. 568–774). — Barely a decade had passed after the recovery of Italy from the Ostrogoths by the Eastern emperor Justinian (par. 322), before a large part of the peninsula was again lost to the empire through its conquest by another barbarian tribe known as the Lombards, who came from Pannonia.

When they entered Italy the Lombards were Christians

¹ Dagobert I. (628–638) was the last noteworthy ruler during this period. His rule, for he ruled as well as reigned, marked the culmination of the personal power of the Merovingians.

of the Arian sect ; but in time they became converts to the orthodox faith of the Roman Church, and Pope Gregory I. bestowed upon the Lombard king an iron crown, made, so it was affirmed, from one of the nails of the cross upon which Christ had suffered.

The kingdom of the Lombards was destroyed by Charles the Great, the most noted of the Frankish rulers, in the year 774 ; but the blood of the invaders had by this time become intermingled with that of the former subjects of the empire, so that throughout all that part of the peninsula which is still called Lombardy after them, one will to-day occasionally see the fair hair and light complexion which reveal the strain of German blood in the veins of the present inhabitants.

One important result of the Lombard conquest of Italy was the destruction of the political unity established by the Romans, and the breaking up of the country into a multitude of petty states. This resulted from the imperfect nature of the conquest, and from the loose feudal constitution of the Lombard monarchy, which was rather a group of practically independent duchies than a real kingdom.

328. The Anglo-Saxons in Britain. — We have already seen how in the time of Rome's distress the Angles and Saxons secured a footing in Britain (par. 276). No other province of the Roman empire made such a determined and heroic resistance against the barbarians. Up to the end of the sixth century — after that date the struggle grew less savage and unrelenting — so bitter and desperate was the contest that the provincials were either exterminated, reduced to serfdom, or driven bodily westward. Almost every trace of Roman civilization was obliterated. The

Christian religion, which had been introduced during the Roman sway, was virtually swept away, and Teutonic England again fell back into the paganism in which Julius Cæsar had found its tribes six hundred years before.

It is to this period of desperate struggle that the famous King Arthur belongs. The legends that have gathered about the name of this national hero are mostly mythical; yet it is possible that he had a real existence, and that the name represents one or more of the most valiant of the Celtic chiefs who battled so long and heroically against the pagan invaders.

By the close of the sixth century the invading bands had set up in the conquered parts of the island eight or nine or perhaps more kingdoms, — frequently designated, though somewhat inaccurately, as the *Heptarchy*. For the space of two hundred years there was an almost perpetual strife among the leading states for supremacy. Finally, Egbert, king of Wessex (802–839), brought all the other kingdoms to a subject or tributary condition, and became in reality, though he seems never, save on one occasion, to have actually assumed the title, the first king of England.

329. Teutonic Tribes outside the Empire. — We have now spoken of the most important of the Teutonic tribes that forced themselves within the limits of the Roman empire in the West, and that there, upon the ruins of the civilization they had overthrown, laid or helped to lay the foundations of the modern nations of Italy, Spain, France, and England. Beyond the boundaries of the old empire were still other tribes and clans of this same mighty family of nations, — tribes and clans that were destined to play great parts in European history.

On the east, beyond the Rhine, were the ancestors of the modern Germans. Notwithstanding the immense hosts that the forests and morasses of Germany had poured into the Roman provinces, the Fatherland, in the sixth century of our era, seemed still as crowded as before the great migration began. These tribes were yet barbarians in manners, and, for the most part, pagans in religion.

In the northwest of Europe were the Scandinavians, the ancestors of the modern Danes, Swedes, and Norwegians. They were as yet untouched either by the civilization or the religion of Rome. We shall scarcely get a glimpse of them until just at the close of the eighth century, when they will appear as "Norsemen," the dreaded corsairs of the northern seas.

REFERENCES.—In addition to the works mentioned on page 443 for chap. xxi. the following: *The Letters of Cassiodorus* (trans. by Thomas Hodgkin). Read bk. i. Letters 24 and 35; bk. ii. Letters 32 and 34; bk. iii. Letters 17, 19, 29, 31, and 43; bk. xi. Letters 12 and 13; bk. xii. Letter 20. These letters are invaluable as showing what was the general condition of things in the transition period between ancient and mediæval times. BOETHIUS, *Consolation of Philosophy* (Bohn). "Whoso would understand," says Hodgkin, "the thoughts that were working in the noblest minds of mediæval Europe would do well to give a few hours' study to the once world-renowned 'Consolation of Philosophy.'" HODGKIN (T.), * *Theodoric the Goth* (Heroes of the Nations). GUMMERE (F. B.), ** *Germanic Origins*. An authoritative and interesting work on the early culture of the Germans. SHEPPARD (J. G.), *The Fall of Rome and the Rise of the New Nationalities*. Selected chapters. CHURCH (R. W.), *The Beginning of the Middle Ages* (Epoch Series), chaps. i.-v. GREEN (J. R.), *The Making of England*, and the same author's *Short History of the English People* (new ed. 1899), chap. i. CHURCH (A. J.), *Early Britain* (Story of the Nations), chaps. x.-xvii. pp. 92-184. OMAN (C.), *The Dark Ages*, chaps. i. ii. iv. vii. viii. x. and xi. KITCHIN (G. W.), *History of France* (4th ed. 1898), vol. i. pp. 1-181.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

THE CHURCH AND ITS INSTITUTIONS.

•SECTION I. — THE CONVERSION OF THE BARBARIANS.

330. Introductory. — The most important event in the history of the tribes that took possession of the Roman empire in the West was their conversion to Christianity. Many of the barbarians were converted before or soon after their entrance into the empire ; to this circumstance the former Roman subjects owed their immunity from the excessive cruelties which pagan barbarians seldom fail to inflict upon a subjected enemy. The more tolerable fate of Italy, Spain, and Gaul, as compared with the hard fate of Britain, is owing, in part at least, to the fact that the tribes which overran those countries had become, in the main, converts to Christianity before they crossed the boundaries of the empire, while the Saxons, when they entered Britain, were still untamed pagans.

331. Conversion of the Goths, Vandals, and other Tribes. — The first converts to Christianity among the barbarians beyond the limits of the empire were won from among the Goths. Probably the pioneer missionaries among these tribes were captives taken by them in their raids across the Danube. Foremost of the apostles that arose among them was Ulfilas, who translated the Scriptures into the Gothic language, omitting from his version, however, “the

Books of the Kings," as he feared that the stirring recital of wars and battles in that portion of the Word might kindle into too fierce a flame the martial ardor of his new converts.

What happened in the case of the Goths happened also in the case of most of the barbarian tribes that participated in the overthrow of the Roman empire in the West. By the time of the fall of Rome the Goths, the Vandals, the Suevi, and the Burgundians had become proselytes to Christianity. They, however, professed the Arian creed, which had been condemned by the great council of the Church held at Nicæa during the reign of Constantine the Great (A.D. 325). Hence they were regarded as heretics by the Catholic Church, and all had to be reconverted to the orthodox creed. This good work was gradually and almost perfectly accomplished.

The remaining Teutonic tribes of whose conversion we shall speak — the Franks, the Anglo-Saxons, and the chief tribes of Germany — embraced at the outset the Catholic faith.

332. Conversion of the Franks. — The Franks, when they entered the empire, like the Angles and Saxons when they landed in Britain, were still pagans. Christianity gained way very slowly among them until a supposed interposition by the Christian God in their behalf led the king and nation to adopt the new religion in place of their old faith. The circumstances, as reported by tradition, were these. In a terrible battle between the Franks under their king Clovis and the Alemanni, the situation of the Franks at length became desperate. Then Clovis, falling upon his knees, called upon the God of the Christians, and vowed that if he would give victory to his arms, he would become his

follower. The battle turned in favor of the Franks, and Clovis, faithful to his vow, was baptized, and with him three thousand of his warriors.

This story of the conversion of Clovis and his Franks illustrates how the very superstitions of the barbarians, their belief in omens and divine interpositions, and particularly their feeling that if their gods did not do for them all they wanted done they had a right to set them aside and choose others in their stead, contributed to their conversion. Thus the reception of the new faith was often a tribal or national affair, rather than a matter of personal conviction.

333. Importance of the Conversion of the Franks. — “The conversion of the Franks,” says the historian Milman, “was the most important event in its remote as well as its immediate consequences in European history.” It was of such moment for the reason that the Franks embraced the orthodox Catholic faith, while almost all the other German invaders of the empire had embraced the heretical Arian creed. This secured them the loyalty of their Roman subjects, and also gained for them the official favor of the Church of Rome. Thus was laid the basis of the ascendancy in the West of the Frankish kings.

334. Augustine's Mission to England. — In the year 596 Pope Gregory I. sent the monk Augustine with a band of forty companions to teach the Christian faith in Britain, in whose people he had become interested through seeing in the slave market at Rome some fair-faced captives from that remote region.

The monks were favorably received by the English, who listened attentively to the story the strangers had come to

tell them, and being persuaded that the tidings were true, they burped the temples of Woden and Thor, and were in large numbers baptized in the Christian faith.

One of the most important consequences of the conversion of Britain was the reëstablishment of that connection of the island with Roman civilization which had been severed by the calamities of the fifth century. As Green says, — he is speaking of the embassy of St. Augustine, — “The march of the monks as they chanted their solemn litany was in one sense a return of the Roman legions who withdrew at the trumpet call of Alaric. . . . Practically Augustine’s landing renewed that union with the western world which the landing of Hengist had destroyed. The new England was admitted into the older Commonwealth of nations. The civilization, art, letters, which had fled before the sword of the English conquerors, returned with the Christian faith.”

335. The Conversion of Ireland; the Celtic Church. — Christianity, it must be borne in mind, held its place among the British Celts whom the Saxons crowded slowly westward. The struggle with the invaders was at its height when a zealous priest, Patricius by name, better known as St. Patrick, the patron saint of Ireland, whose early years had been passed in captivity among the Irish, crossed over to the island as a missionary of the Cross.

Never did any race receive the Gospel with more ardent enthusiasm. The Irish or Celtic Church sent out its devoted missionaries into the Pictish highlands, into the forests of Germany, and among the wilds of Alps and Apennines.

Among the numerous religious houses founded by the Celtic missionaries was the famous monastery established

A.D. 563 by the Irish monk St. Columba, on the little isle of Iona, just off the Pictish coast. Iona became a most renowned centre of Christian learning and missionary zeal, and for almost two centuries was the point from which radiated light through the darkness of the surrounding heathenism.

336. The Conversion of Germany. — The conversion of the tribes of Germany was effected by Celtic, Anglo-Saxon, and Frankish missionaries, — and the sword of Charles the Great. The great apostle of Germany was the Saxon Winfrid, better known as St. Boniface, who was born about A.D. 688. During a long and intensely active life he founded schools and monasteries, organized churches, preached and baptized; and at last died a martyr's death (A.D. 753). Through him, as says Milman, the Saxon invasion of England flowed back upon the Continent.

The Christianizing of the tribes of Germany relieved the Teutonic folk of Western Europe from the constant peril of massacre by their heathen kinsmen, and erected a strong barrier in Central Europe against the advance of the waves of Turanian paganism and of Mohammedanism which for centuries beat so threateningly against the eastern frontiers of Germany.¹

337. Reaction of Paganism on Christianity. — Thus were the conquerors of the empire met and conquered by Christianity. The victory, it must be confessed, was in a great degree a victory rather in name than in fact. The Church could not all at once leaven the great mass of heathenism

¹ The story of the conversion of the Scandinavian peoples, of the Eastern Slavs, and of the Hungarians belongs to a later period than that embraced by our present survey.

which had so suddenly been brought within its pale. For a long time after they were called Christians, the barbarians, coarse and cruel and self-willed and superstitious as they were, understood very little of the doctrines and exhibited still less of the true spirit of the religion they professed.

To this depressing reaction of Teutonic barbarism upon the Church is without doubt to be attributed in large measure the deplorable moral state of Europe during so large a part of the mediæval ages.

SECTION II. - THE RISE OF MONASTICISM.

338. Monasticism defined. — It was during the period between the third and the sixth century that there grew up in the Church the institution known as Monasticism. This was so remarkable a system, and one that exerted so profound an influence upon mediæval and even later history, that we must here acquaint ourselves with at least its spirit and aims.

The term "monasticism," in its widest application, denotes a life of austere self-denial and of seclusion from the world, with the object of promoting the interests of the soul. As thus defined, the system embraced two prominent classes of ascetics: (1) hermits, or anchorites, — persons who, retiring from the world, lived solitary lives in desolate places; (2) cenobites, or monks, who formed communities, and lived usually under a common roof.

339. The Development of the System. — St. Antony, an Egyptian ascetic (born about A.D. 251), who by his example and influence gave a tremendous impulse to the

strange enthusiasm, is called the "father of the hermits." The romance of his life, written by the celebrated Athanasius, stirred the whole Christian world and led thousands to renounce society and in imitation of the saint to flee to the desert. It is estimated that before the close of the fourth century the population of the desert in many districts in Egypt was equal to that of the cities.

Most renowned of all the anchorites of the East was St. Simeon Stylites, the Saint of the Pillar (died A.D. 459), who spent thirty-six years on a column only three feet in diameter at the top, which he had gradually raised to a height of over fifty feet. His austerities earned for him the title of "the Star of the Earth and the Wonder of the World."²

340. Monasticism in the West. — During the fourth century the anchoretic type of asceticism, which was favored by the mild climate of the Eastern lands and especially by that of Egypt, assumed in some degree the monastic form; that is to say, the fame of this or that anchorite or hermit drew about him a number of disciples whose rude huts or cells formed what was known as a *laura*, the nucleus of a monastery.

Soon after the cenobite system had been established in the East it was introduced into Europe, and in an astonishingly short space of time spread throughout all the Western countries where Christianity had gained a foothold. Here it prevailed to the almost total exclusion of the hermit mode of life. Monasteries arose on every side. The number that fled to these retreats was vastly augmented by the disorder and terror attending the invasion of the barbarians

² Read Tennyson's poem, "St. Simeon Stylites."

and the overthrow of the Empire in the West. The movement drew within the circle of its influence women as well as men, and nunneries were founded in great numbers, which were subjected to a discipline similar to that of the monasteries.

341. The Rule of St. Benedict. — With the view to introducing some sort of regularity into the practices and austerities of the monks, rules were early prescribed for their observance. The three essential requirements or vows of the monk were poverty, chastity, and obedience.

The greatest legislator of the monks was St. Benedict of Nursia (A.D. 480-543), the founder of the celebrated monastery of Monte Cassino, situated midway between Rome and Naples in Italy. His code was to the religious world what the *Corpus Juris Civilis* of Justinian (par. 310) was to the lay society of Europe. Many of the rules of his system were most wise and practical, as, for instance, one that made manual work a pious duty, and another that required the monk to spend an allotted time each day in sacred reading.

The monks who subjected themselves to the rule of St. Benedict were known as Benedictines. The order became immensely popular. At one time it embraced about forty thousand abbeys.

342. Services rendered by the Monks to Civilization. — The early establishment of the monastic system in the Church resulted in great advantages to the new world that was shaping itself out of the ruins of the old. The monks, especially the Benedictines, became agriculturists, and by patient labor converted the wild and marshy lands which they received as gifts from princes and others into fruitful

fields, thus redeeming from barrenness some of the most desolate districts of Europe. The monks, in a word, formed the vanguard of civilization towards the wilderness. "As formerly," says Prévost-Paradol, "the Roman colony went out from the capital in order to confirm the subjugation of the conquered, and to spread about itself the manners and laws of the great republic, so do we see, in this new conquest of Europe, monasteries establish themselves in the footsteps of the Christian armies, or of the missionaries of the Church, and constantly push out in every direction, by the clearing away of the forests and the preaching of the Gospel, the material and moral boundaries of the civilized world."³

The monks also became missionaries, and it was largely to their zeal and devotion that the Church owed her speedy and signal victory over the barbarians.

The quiet air of the monasteries nourished learning as well as piety. The monks became teachers, and under the shelter of the monasteries established schools which were the nurseries of learning during the earlier Middle Ages and the centres for centuries of the best intellectual life of Europe.

The monks also became copyists, and with great painstaking and industry gathered and multiplied ancient manuscripts, and thus preserved and transmitted to the modern world much classical learning and literature that would otherwise have been lost. Almost all the remains of the Greek and Latin classics that we possess have come to us through the agency of the monks.

The monks became further the almoners of the pious

³ *Essai sur l'Histoire Universelle*, tome ii. p. 64.

and the wealthy, and distributed alms to the poor and needy. Everywhere the monasteries opened their hospitable doors to the weary, the sick, and the discouraged. In a word, these retreats were the inns, the asylums, and the hospitals of the mediæval ages.

Again, the asceticism of the monks did much to correct those gross social vices that had sapped the strength of the Greek and Roman races, and threw a needed safeguard about the young and strong-passioned race of the North that was entering upon the inheritance of antiquity. It was undoubtedly in this its vehement protest against the immorality of the decadent society of the Græco-Roman world that the monastic Church rendered its greatest service to civilization.

SECTION III. — THE RISE OF THE PAPACY.

343. The Empire within the Empire. — Long before the fall of Rome there had begun to grow up within the Roman empire an ecclesiastical state, which in its constitution and its administrative system was shaping itself upon the imperial model. This spiritual empire, like the secular empire, possessed a hierarchy of officers, of which deacons, priests or presbyters, and bishops were the most important. The bishops collectively formed what is known as the episcopate. There were four grades of bishops; namely, country bishops, city bishops, metropolitans or archbishops, and patriarchs. The metropolitan bishop was the bishop of the capital or the chief city of a province, and stood above the other bishops of his district. The patriarch had authority over the metropolitans. There

were at the end of the fourth century five patriarchates, that is, regions ruled by patriarchs. These centered in the great cities of Rome, Constantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem.

Among the patriarchs, the patriarchs of Rome were accorded almost universally a precedence in honor and dignity. They claimed further a precedence in authority and jurisdiction, and this was already very widely recognized. Before the close of the eighth century there was firmly established over a great part of Christendom what we may call an ecclesiastical monarchy.

Besides the influence of great men, such as Leo the Great, Gregory the Great, and Nicholas I., who held the seat of St. Peter, there were various historical circumstances that contributed to the realization by the Roman bishops of their claim to supremacy and aided them vastly in establishing the almost universal authority of the mediæval papacy. In the following paragraphs we shall enumerate several of these concurrent circumstances. These matters constitute the great landmarks in the rise and early growth of the papacy.

344. The Belief in the Primacy of St. Peter and in the founding by him of the Church at Rome. — It came to be believed that the apostle Peter had been given by the Master a sort of primacy among his fellow apostles. It also came to be believed that Peter himself had founded the church at Rome. It is probable that he did so. Without doubt he preached at Rome and suffered martyrdom there under the emperor Nero.

These beliefs and interpretations of history, which make the Roman bishops the successors of the first of the apostles

and the holders of his seat, contributed greatly, of course, to enhance their reputation and to justify their claim to a primacy of authority over all the dignitaries of the Church.

345. Advantages of their Position at the Political Centre of the World. — The claims of the Roman bishops were in the early centuries greatly favored by the spell in which the world was held by the name and prestige of imperial Rome. Thence it had been accustomed to receive commands in all temporal matters; how very natural, then, that thither it should turn for command and guidance in spiritual affairs. The Roman bishops in thus occupying the geographical and political centre of the world enjoyed a great advantage over all other bishops and patriarchs. The halo that during many centuries of wonderful history had gathered about the Eternal City came naturally to invest with a kind of aureole the head of the Christian bishop.

346. Effect of the Removal of the Imperial Government to Constantinople. — Nor was this advantage that was given the Roman bishops by their position at Rome lost when the old capital ceased to be an imperial city. The removal, by the acts of Diocletian and Constantine, of the chief seat of the government to the East, instead of diminishing the power and dignity of the Roman bishops, tended greatly to promote their claims and authority. It left the pontiff the foremost personage in Rome.

347. The Pastor as Protector of Rome. — Again, when the barbarians came, there came another occasion for the Roman bishops to widen their influence and enhance their authority. Rome's extremity was their opportunity. Thus it will be recalled how mainly through the intercession of the pious Pope Leo the Great the fierce Attila was

persuaded to turn back and spare the imperial city; and how the same bishop, in the year 455, also appeared in a measure the wrath of the Vandal Geiseric and shielded the inhabitants from the worst passions of a barbarian soldiery.⁴

Thus when the emperors, the natural defenders of the capital, were unable to protect it, the unarmed Pastor was able, through the awe and reverence inspired by his holy office, to render services that could not but result in bringing increased honor and dignity to the Roman see.

348. Effects upon the Papacy of the Fall of Rome. — But if the misfortunes of the Empire in the West tended to the enhancement of the reputation and influence of the Roman bishops, much more did its final downfall tend to the same end. Upon the surrender of the sovereignty of the West into the hands of the emperor of the East, the bishops of Rome became the most important personages in Western Europe, and being so far removed from the court at Constantinople gradually assumed almost imperial powers. They became the arbiters between the barbarian chiefs and the Italians, and to them were referred for decision the disputes arising between cities, states, and kings. Especially did the bishops and archbishops throughout the West in their contests with the Arian barbarian rulers look to Rome for advice and help.

It is easy to see how greatly these things tended to strengthen the authority and increase the influence of the Roman bishops. During this time Gregory the Great (590–604), the most eminent of the early popes, ruled as though he were a temporal prince, and administered affairs almost like an independent sovereign.

⁴ See pars. 278 and 279.

349. The Missions of Rome. — Again, the early missionary zeal of the church of Rome made her the mother of many churches, all of whom looked up to her with affectionate and grateful loyalty. Thus the Angles and Saxons, won to the faith by the missionaries of Rome, conceived a deep veneration for the holy see and became its most devoted children. To Rome it was that the Christian Britons made their most frequent pilgrimages, and thither they sent their offering of St. Peter's pence. And when the Saxons became missionaries to their pagan kinsmen of the continent, they transplanted into the heart of Germany these same feelings of filial attachment and love.

350. Result of the Fall of Antioch, Jerusalem, and Alexandria before the Saracens. — In the seventh century all the great cities of the East fell into the hands of the Moslems. This was a matter of tremendous consequence for the church of Rome, since in every one of these great capitals there was, or might have been, a rival of the Roman bishop. The virtual erasure of Antioch, Jerusalem, and Alexandria from the map of Christendom left only one city, Constantinople, that could possibly nourish a rival of the Roman church. Thus did the very misfortunes of Christendom give an added security to the ever-increasing authority of the Roman prelate.

351. The Popes become Temporal Sovereigns. — A dispute about the use of images in worship, known in church history as the "War of the Iconoclasts," which broke out in the eighth century between the Greek churches of the East and the Latin churches of the West, drew after it far-reaching consequences as respects the growing power of the Roman pontiffs.

Leo the Isaurian, who came to the throne of Constantinople in 716, was a most zealous Iconoclast. The Greek churches of the East having been cleared of images, the emperor resolved to clear also the Latin churches of the West of these "symbols of idolatry." To this end he issued a decree that they should not be used. *

The bishop of Rome, Pope Gregory II., not only opposed the execution of the edict, but by the ban of excommunication cut off the emperor and all the iconoclastic churches of the East from communion with the true Catholic Church.

In this quarrel with the Eastern emperors the Roman bishops formed an alliance with the Frankish princes of the Carolingian house (par. 385). We shall a little later tell briefly the story of this alliance. Never did allies render themselves more serviceable to each other. The popes consecrated the Frankish chieftains as kings and emperors; the grateful Frankish kings defended the popes against all their enemies, imperial and barbarian, and dowering them with cities and provinces, laid the basis of their temporal power.

Such, in broad outline, was the way in which grew up the papacy, an institution which, far beyond all others, was destined to mold the fortunes and direct the activities of Western Christendom throughout the mediæval time.

REFERENCES. -- For the Conversion of the German Tribes: Bede's *Ecclesiastical History* (Bohn). Read bk. i. chaps. xxiii.-xxv.; bk. ii. chaps. i. and xiii.; bk. iii. chaps. iii. and xxv. *Translations and Reprints* (Univ. of Penn.), vol. ii. No. 7, "Life of St. Columban." An instructive and interesting biography of an Irish monk. MILMAN (H. H.), *History of Latin Christianity*, vol. i. bk. iii. chap. ii., "Conversion of the Teutonic Races." MACLEAR (G. F.), *The Celts*, and MERIVALE (C.), *The Continental Teutons* (both in *Conversion of the West*

series). ZIMMER (H.), *** The Irish Element in Mediæval Culture* (from the German). ALZOG (J.), *Universal Church History* (Catholic, from the German), vol. ii. pp. 1-252. STANLEY (A. P.), ** Christian Institutions*. Shows the influence of paganism upon the ceremonials, the ritual, usages, and various institutions of the Church. SCHAFF (P.), *** History of the Christian Church*, vol. iv. chap. ii. pp. 17-142, "The Conversion of the Northern and Western Barbarians."

For Monasticism: Henderson's *Select Documents of the Middle Ages*, pp. 274-314, "The Rule of St. Benedict." MONTALEMBERT (COUNT DE), *** The Monks of the West from St. Benedict to St. Bernard*, 7 vols. An ardent eulogy of monasticism. LECKY (W. E. H.), *History of European Morals from Augustus to Charlemagne*, vol. ii. chap. iv. Gives the light and the shade of the picture. WISHART (A. W.), *** A Short History of Monks and Monasteries*. The best short account in English of the origin, ideals, and effects of the monastic system. PUTNAM (G. H.), *Books and their Makers during the Middle Ages*, vol. i. For the labors of the monks as copyists and illuminators. KINGSLEY (C.), *The Hermits* (various editions). Very interesting. SCHAFF (P.), *** History of the Christian Church* (5th ed.), chap. iv. pp. 147-233, "The Rise and Progress of Monasticism." A masterly sketch. BUTLER (A.), *Lives of the Saints*, 2 vols., London, 1833. For consultation and reference.

For the Rise of the Papacy: SCHAFF (P.), *History of the Christian Church* (5th ed., New York, 1899), vol. iii. chap. v., "The Hierarchy and Polity of the Church." The Protestant view of the organization of the early Church. ALZOG (J.), *Manual of Universal Church History* (from the German), vol. ii. pp. 481-510. The Catholic view of the subject by an eminent scholar. MILMAN (H. H.), *History of Latin Christianity*. Selected chapters in vols. i. and ii. EMERTON (E.), *Introduction to the Study of the Middle Ages*, chap. ix., "The Rise of the Christian Church." ADAMS (G. B.), *Civilization during the Middle Ages*, chap. vi., "The Formation of the Papacy." CARDINAL GIBBONS, *The Faith of our Fathers*, chap. ix., "The Primacy of Peter"; and chap. x., "The Supremacy of the Popes." A plain, authoritative statement of the Catholic view of these matters. STILLÉ (C. J.), *Studies in Mediæval History*, chap. ix., "The Papacy to the Reign of Charlemagne." Henderson's *Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*, pp. 319-329, "The Donation of Constantine."

CHAPTER XXIX.

THE FUSION OF LATIN AND TEUTON.

352. Introductory. — The conversion of the barbarians and the development in Western Christendom of the central authority of the papacy prepared the way for the introduction among the Northern races of the arts and the culture of Rome, and contributed powerfully to hasten in Italy, Spain, and Gaul the fusion into a single people of the Latins and the Teutons, of which important matter we shall treat in the present chapter. We shall show how these two races, upon the soil of the old Empire in the West, intermingled their blood, their languages, their laws, their usages and customs, to form new peoples, new tongues, and new institutions.

In the new society arising from the fusion of the Latinized inhabitants of the old empire and their barbarian conquerors, the various resulting social or political institutions exhibit very different proportions of the two combining elements. Sometimes it is the Latin, and then again the Teutonic, element which predominates. Often, indeed, it is very difficult to determine just what was contributed by each. In many institutions we shall find the shaping spirit to have come from the classic culture, and the form from barbarian maxims and usages; or, again, we shall discover the spirit to be Teutonic and the form Roman.

In the present chapter we shall speak of only a few things touching the intermingling of the peoples themselves, the formation of the new Romance tongues, and the relation of the barbarian codes to the Roman law. We shall say just enough to show how composite is the character of the structure that was reared on the site of the ancient empire, out of the ruins of the broken-down civilization of Rome and the new contributions of the Northern peoples.

353. The Romance Nations. — In some districts the barbarian invaders and the Roman provincials were kept apart for a long time by the bitter antagonism of race, and by a sense of injury on the one hand and a feeling of disdainful superiority on the other. But for the most part the Teutonic intruders and the Latin-speaking inhabitants of Italy, Spain, and France very soon began freely to mingle their blood by family alliances.

It is quite impossible to say what proportion the Teutons bore to the Romans. Of course the proportion varied in the different countries. In none of the countries named, however, was it large enough to absorb the Latinized population; on the contrary, the barbarians were themselves absorbed, yet not without changing very essentially the body into which they were incorporated. Thus about the end of the fourth century everything in Italy, Spain, and France — dwellings, cities, dress, customs, language, laws, soldiers — reminds us of Rome. A little later and a great change has taken place. The barbarians have come in. For a time we see everywhere, jostling each other in the streets and markets, crowding each other in the theatres and courts, kneeling together in the churches, the former

Romanized subjects of the empire and their uncouth Teutonic conquerors. But by the close of the ninth century, to speak in very general terms, the two elements have become quite intimately blended, and a century or two later Roman and Teuton have alike disappeared, and we are introduced to Italians, Spaniards, and Frenchmen. These we call Romance nations, because at base they are Roman.

354. The Formation of the Romance Languages. — During the five centuries of their subjection to Rome, the natives of Spain and Gaul forgot their barbarous dialects and came to speak a corrupt Latin. Now in exactly the same way that the dialects of the Celtic tribes of Gaul and of the Celtiberians of Spain had given way to the more refined speech of the Romans, did the rude languages of the Teutons yield to the more cultured speech of the Roman provincials. In the course of two or three centuries after their entrance into the empire, Goths, Lombards, Burgundians, and Franks had, in a large measure, dropped their own tongue, and were speaking that of the people they had subjected.

But of course this provincial Latin underwent a great change upon the lips of the mixed descendants of the Romans and Teutons. Owing to the absence of a common popular literature, the changes that took place in one country did not exactly correspond to those going on in another. Hence, in the course of time, we find different dialects springing up, and by about the ninth century the Latin has virtually disappeared as a spoken language, and its place been usurped by what will be known as the Italian, Spanish, and French languages, all more or less

resembling the ancient Latin, and all called Romance tongues, because children of the old Roman speech.

355. The Barbarian Codes. — The Teutonic tribes, before they entered the Roman empire, had no written laws. As soon as settled in the provinces, however, they began, in imitation of the Romans, to frame their rules and customs into codes, and so we hear of the Salian, the Ripuarian, the Burgundian, the Lombard, and the Visigothic code.

In some countries, particularly in Spain and Italy, this work was under the supervision of the clergy, and hence the codes of the Teutonic peoples in these countries was a sort of fusion of Roman principles and barbarian practices. But in general these early compilations of laws--they were made, for the most part, between the sixth and ninth centuries--were not so essentially modified by Latin influence but that they serve as valuable and instructive memorials of the customs, ideals, and social arrangements of the Teutonic peoples.

356. The Personal Character of the Teutonic Laws. — The laws of the barbarians, so long as they remained such, that is to say, until Latins and Teutons became one people, were generally personal instead of territorial, as with us; that is, instead of all the inhabitants of a given country being subject to the same laws, there were different ones for the different classes of society. The Latins, for instance, were subject in private law only to the old Roman code, while the Teutons lived under the tribal rules and regulations which they had brought with them from beyond the Rhine and the Danube. The curious state of things resulting from this personality of law, as it

is called, is vividly pictured by the following observation of a chronicler: "For it would often happen," he says, "that five men would be sitting or walking together, not one of whom would have the same law with any other."

Even among themselves the Teutons knew nothing of the modern legal maxim that all should stand equal before the law. The penalty inflicted upon the evil-doer depended, not upon the nature of his crime, but upon his rank, or that of the party injured. Thus slaves and serfs could be beaten and put to death for minor offences, while a freeman might atone for any crime, even for murder, by the payment of a fine, the amount of the penalty being determined by the rank of the victim.

357. Ordeals.—Among primitive peoples, before public authority is strong enough to undertake the punishment of crime, every man is the avenger of his own wrongs. Gradually, however, all this is changed, and society undertakes to punish wrong-doing. Now the German tribes at the time to which we have brought our narrative had, speaking generally, made this transition. This is evidenced not only by the establishment for certain crimes of fixed penalties, such as we have noticed in the preceding paragraph, but further by the existence among them of institutions to ascertain the guilt or innocence of accused persons. But the agencies relied upon for this purpose show in how rude a state the administration of justice among them was. One very common method of proof was by what were called ordeals, in which the question was submitted to the judgment of God. Of these the chief were the *ordeal by fire*, the *ordeal by water*, and the *wager of battle*.

The *ordeal by fire* consisted in taking in the hand a piece of red-hot iron, or in walking blindfolded with bare feet over a row of hot ploughshares laid lengthwise at irregular distances. If the person escaped unharmed, he was held to be innocent.

Another way of performing the fire-ordeal was by running through the flame of two fires built close together, or by walking over live brands.

The *ordeal by water* was of two kinds, by hot water and by cold. In the hot-water ordeal the accused person thrust his arm into boiling water, and if no hurt was visible upon the arm three days after the operation, the party was considered guiltless.

In the cold-water trial the suspected person was thrown into a stream or pond; if he floated, he was held to be guilty; if he sank, innocent. The water, it was believed, would reject the guilty, but receive the innocent into its bosom.

The *trial by combat*, or *wager of battle*, was a solemn judicial duel. It was resorted to in the belief that God would give victory to the right. Naturally it was a favorite mode of trial among a people who found their chief delight in fighting. Even religious disputes were sometimes settled in this way.

The ordeal was frequently performed by deputy, that is, one person for hire or for the sake of friendship would undertake it for another; hence the expression "to go through fire and water to serve one." Especially was such substitution common in the judicial duel, as women and ecclesiastics were generally forbidden to appear personally in the lists. The champions, as the deputies were called.

became in time a regular class in society, somewhat like the gladiators in ancient Rome. Religious houses and chartered towns sometimes hired champions at a regular salary to defend all the cases to which they might become a party.

358. **The Revival of the Roman Law.** — Now the barbarian law system, if such it can be called, the character of which we have simply suggested by the preceding illustrations, gradually displaced the Roman law in all those countries where the two systems at first existed alongside each other, save in Italy and Southern France, where the provincials greatly outnumbered the invaders. But the admirable jurisprudence of Rome was bound to assert its superiority. About the close of the eleventh century there was a great revival in the study of the Roman law as embodied in the *Corpus Juris Civilis* of Justinian, and in the course of a century or two this became either the groundwork or a strong modifying element in the jurisprudence of almost all the peoples of Europe.

What took place may be illustrated by reference to the fate of the Teutonic languages in Gaul, Italy, and Spain. As the barbarian tongues, after maintaining a place in those countries for two or three centuries, at length gave place to the superior Latin, which became the basis of the new Romance languages, so now in the domain of law the barbarian maxims and customs, though holding their place more persistently, likewise finally give way, almost everywhere and in a greater or less degree, to the more excellent law system of the empire. Rome must fulfil her destiny and give laws to the nations.

REFERENCES. — Henderson's *Select Historical Documents*, pp. 176-189, "The Salic Law," and pp. 314-319, "'*Formulae Liturgicae*' in use at Ordeals." Lee's *Source-Book of English History*, chap. v., "Anglo-Saxon Laws." *Translations and Reprints* (Univ. of Penn.), vol. iv. No. 4, "Ordeals," etc. EMERTON (E.), ** *Introduction to the Middle Ages*, chap. viii., "Germanic Ideas of Law." LEA (H. C.), ** *Superstition and Force: Essays on the Wager of Law, the Wager of Battle, the Ordeal and Torture* (4th ed. 1892). Invaluable to the student of primitive culture. GUIZOT (F. P. G.), *History of Civilization in France*, vol. i. Lects. viii.-xi. HALLAM (H.), *View of the State of Europe during the Middle Ages* (revised ed.; various issues), chap. ix., first part. Although the first edition of this work appeared early in the last century, it is still of value. SOHM (R.), *The Institutes of Roman Law* (trans. by James C. Leddic: 2d ed. 1901), § 1, "The Reception of the Roman Law in Germany"; §§ 23-28, "The Subsequent Fate of Roman Law." HADLEY (J.), *Introduction to Roman Law*, Lec. ii., "The Roman Law since Justinian."

CHAPTER XXX.

THE ROMAN EMPIRE IN THE EAST.

359. The Era of Justinian (A.D. 527–565). — During the fifty years immediately following the fall of Rome, the Eastern emperors struggled hard and sometimes doubtfully to withstand the waves of the barbarian inundation which constantly threatened to overwhelm Constantinople with the same awful calamities that had befallen the imperial city of the West. Had the New Rome — the destined refuge for a thousand years of Græco-Roman learning and culture — also gone down at this time before the storm, the loss to the cause of civilization would have been incalculable.

Fortunately, in the year 527, there ascended the Eastern throne a prince of unusual ability, to whom fortune gave a general of such rare genius that his name has been allotted a place in the short list of the great commanders of the world. Justinian was the name of the prince, and Belisarius that of the soldier. The sovereign has given name to the period, which is called after him the “Era of Justinian.”

Before coming to the throne Justinian had married Theodora, an actress of the comic stage of the capital. She was a beautiful woman, of great ambition, and of unusual ability. Her relation to Justinian, so long as she lived, was both nominally and actually that of co-ruler of the empire.

360. The Recovery of Africa (A.D. 533).— One of the most important matters in the reign of Justinian is what is termed the “Imperial Restoration,” by which is meant the recovery from the barbarians of several of the provinces of the West — Italy, Africa, and a part of Spain — upon which they had seized.

The state of affairs in Africa invited the intervention of Justinian first in that quarter. Gelimer, a zealous and bigoted Arian, had just usurped the Vandal throne. Justinian sent an embassy to expostulate with the usurper and demand the restoration of the throne to the rightful prince. Gelimer replied to the imperial commissioners with that haughty insolence characteristic of his race. “King Gelimer,” thus his answer ran, “wishes to point out to King Justinian that it is a good thing for rulers to mind their own business.” Upon receiving this reply, Justinian resolved on war.

The expedition was intrusted to the command of Belisarius, a man worthy of the confidence that his master reposed in his fidelity and genius. Already in four years’ warfare upon the Persian frontier (A.D. 528–531) he had illustrated his rare qualities as a commander, although yet but a young man of twenty-six years.

With the general issue of the undertaking we have already become acquainted (par. 325). Belisarius returned to Constantinople with many Vandal prisoners and with a large booty, a part of which is said to have consisted of the sacred vessels, including the seven-branched candlestick, originally taken from the Temple at Jerusalem (par. 222). Fearing lest this sacred relic should bring upon his own capital the misfortunes which it was believed to have

brought upon both Rome and Carthage, Justinian caused it to be taken back to Jerusalem and deposited in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre.

361. The Recovery of Italy (A.D. 535-553). — The recovery of Africa from the Vandals was followed by the recovery of Italy from the Goths. The Goths, however, relinquished their hold of the peninsula only after a long and bitter struggle, the most noteworthy episodes of which are connected with the sieges of Rome. Five times during the war the unfortunate capital changed hands. In the year 537 it was invested by the barbarians under the command of their king, Witiges. During this siege, which proved unsuccessful, the city suffered irreparable damage. All of the eleven aqueducts constructed under the Consuls and Cæsars were destroyed by the barbarians, and, with the exception of three, have remained in a ruined state ever since. The stately Mausoleum of Hadrian was converted by the Roman garrison into a fortress, and the masterpieces of Greek and Roman art which embellished it were used as missiles and flung down upon the heads of the assailants.

Ten years later we find the Goths in possession of the capital. They drove every soul out of the city and then evacuated it themselves, having first dismantled its walls. "For forty days or more," affirms a chronicler, "Rome was so desolate that no one, either man or beast, remained there."

The war dragged on after this for six years. During the latter part of this time the command of the imperial forces was intrusted to the famous general Narses,¹ who

¹ Justinian had recalled Belisarius, probably because of jealousy. His treatment of his great general was at the end very ungenerous.

possessed military capacity second only to that of Belisarius. All Italy was at length wrested from the barbarians, and became once more a part of the Roman empire (A.D. 553). It was governed from Ravenna by an imperial officer who bore the title of *Exarch*.

The remnants of the Gothic nation, upon their promising never to return, were allowed to leave Italy. They crossed the Alps and "disappeared into the northern darkness."²

362. The Code of Justinian. --- But that which gives Justinian's reign a greater distinction than any conferred upon it by the achievements of his great generals, was the collection and publication by him of the *Corpus Juris Civilis*, the "Body of the Roman Law." This work embodied all the law knowledge of the ancient Romans, and was the most precious legacy of Rome to the world. Upon it are founded, as we have already learned (par. 310), the law systems of most of the leading states of modern Europe, while the jurisprudence of all the others has been more or less influenced by it. In causing its publication, Justinian earned the title of "The Lawgiver of Civilization."

363. Calamities of Justinian's Reign. - Although the reign of Justinian was in many respects auspicious and brilliant,³

But there is no foundation for the story with which romancers have embellished the close of the life of Belisarius. "That he was deprived of his eyes," says Gibbon, "and reduced by envy to beg his bread, 'Give a penny to Belisarius the general!' is a fiction of later times which has obtained credit, or rather favor, as a strange example of the vicissitudes of fortune."

² Besides recovering from the barbarians Africa and Italy, Justinian also reconquered from the Visigoths the southeastern part of Spain.

³ Among the important matters for which no space can be found in our short sketch, but which contributed to make Justinian's reign

still it was for the empire a time of almost unparalleled woes and sufferings.

Among the calamitous events of the period a prominent place must be given the seditions at Constantinople and the attendant destruction of property and loss of life. The parties or factions indulging in these disorders grew out of the chariot races of the circus. These games possessed a strange and fatal fascination for the populace of the capital, such as the gladiatorial spectacles had had for the debased multitudes of Old Rome. The people became divided into two leading factions, known as the Blues and the Greens. These factions carried their rivalries into all the relations of life, political and religious, and became ultimately a terrible menace to the peace and good order of society.

In the year 532 there broke out what is known as the "Nika" riot. In this instance the Greens and the Blues united their forces against the government and maliciously set fire to the city. For five days a conflagration, almost as disastrous to the New Rome as the Great Fire in Nero's reign was to the Old Rome, raged in the heart of the capital. Palaces, baths, churches, porticoes, and buildings of every description were reduced to ruins. The mob was

memorable in the story of European civilization. was the introduction and establishment in Europe of the industry of silk manufacture. Before this time the markets of the West were supplied with silk from China. Some varieties of the silkworm were indeed cultivated in Europe previous to this; but the fibre produced by these was inferior to that spun by the mulberry-feeding worm of the East. The Chinese guarded jealously their industry. Their watchfulness, however, was eluded by two Persian monks, who, having concealed in a hollow cane some eggs of the silkworm, made their way out of the empire without detection. The eggs were successfully hatched, and in a short time the silk products of Europe far surpassed those of China.

finally enticed by Justinian within the Hippodrome, where it was set upon by the soldiers of Belisarius, and thirty-five thousand of the rioters were slain.

To sedition were added the scourges of war, pestilence, and famine. Under the visitation of these desolating agencies the number of the human race sensibly diminished. Some of the fairest regions of the earth, depopulated at this time, have remained almost without inhabitants up to the present day.

The last increment to the misery and wretchedness of the subjects of the empire, particularly of the poor peasantry, was added by the heavy taxation that the extravagant expenditures⁴ of the emperor made necessary. In its exhausting effects upon the empire, Justinian's outwardly brilliant reign has been likened to that of Louis XIV. of France.

364. The Reign of Heraclius (A.D. 610-641). — For half a century after the death of Justinian, the annals of the Byzantine empire are unimportant. Then we reach the reign of Heraclius, a prince about whose worthy name gather matters of significance in world history.

About this time Chosroes II., king of Persia, wrested from the empire the fortified cities that guarded the Euphratean frontier, and overran all Syria, Egypt, and Asia Minor. What was known as the "True Cross" was torn from the church at Jerusalem and carried off in triumph to Persia.

⁴ Justinian was a great builder, and spent enormous sums not only upon the embellishment of his capital, but also in the construction of churches, hospitals, aqueducts, and various other monuments in almost every part of his empire. His most ambitious architectural undertaking was the rebuilding with increased splendor of the Church of St. Sophia, now a mosque, which, founded by Constantine the Great, had been burned during a riot early in his own reign.

For many years Heraclius battled heroically for the integrity of the empire. One of his campaigns deserves a place among the brilliant military exploits of history. In order to compel Chosroes, whose armies were distressing the Roman provinces, to call his soldiers home, Heraclius conceived the project of an invasion of the Persian empire. For the accomplishment of this daring undertaking, — which presents a striking parallel to the invasion of Africa by the Roman general Scipio in the Second Punic War in order to compel the Carthaginians to call Hannibal out of Italy to the defence of Carthage, — Heraclius chose a company of only five thousand men, with whom he sailed through the Black Sea to the port of Trebizond (A.D. 623). Having recruited his little army from among the hardy mountaineers of Armenia, he pushed on into the heart of Persia. One city after another fell into his hands; and in revenge for the insults heaped by the infidels upon the Christian churches, the altars of the fire-worshippers were everywhere overturned and the fires upon them quenched. Thebarmes, the place held sacred by tradition as the birth-place of Zoroaster, was laid in ruins, in special revenge for the desecration of the holy places of Jerusalem.

The exhausting struggle between the two rival empires was at last decided by a terrible combat known as the battle of Nineveh (A.D. 627), which was fought upon or near the ruins of the old Assyrian capital. The Persian army was almost annihilated. Grief or violence ended the life of Chosroes. With him passed away the glory of the Second Persian Empire.

The new king negotiated a treaty of peace with Heraclius, in which he gave up all the conquests of his father,

surrendered the prisoners and standards that had fallen into the hands of the Persians, and restored the "True Cross," which had been carried off by Chosroes. The articles of this treaty left the boundaries of the two rival powers unchanged. Heraclius, whose rare abilities and desperate daring had rescued the empire and Church from threatened destruction, was received at Constantinople with acclaim as the "New Scipio."

365. The Approaching Storm. — The two combatants in the fierce struggle which we have been watching were too much absorbed in their contentions to notice the approach of a storm from the deserts of Arabia, — a storm destined to overwhelm both alike in its destructive course.

Within a few years from the date of the battle of Nineveh the Saracens entered upon their surprising career of conquest, which in a short time completely changed the face of the entire East, and set the Crescent, the emblem of a new faith, alike above the fire-altars of Persia and the churches of the empire. Only a few years elapsed after the death of the great Chosroes, before the dominions of the Persian kings were overrun by the Arabian conquerors; and Heraclius himself lived to see — so cruel are the vicissitudes of fortune — the very provinces which he had wrested from the hands of the fire-worshippers in the possession of the followers of the "False Prophet."

366. The Empire becomes Greek. — But these seeming misfortunes, so far as they concerned the Roman empire, were really blessings in disguise. The empire was actually strengthened by what it lost. The conquests of the Saracens cut off those provinces that had the smallest Greek element, and thus rendered the population subject to the

emperor more homogeneous, more thoroughly Greek. The Roman element disappeared, and though the government still retained the imperial character impressed upon it by the conquerors of the world, the court of Constantinople became Greek in tone, spirit, and manners. Hence, instead of longer applying to the empire the designation *Roman*, many historians from this on call it the *Greek* or *Byzantine* empire.

367. Services rendered European Civilization by the Roman Empire in the East.⁵ --- The later Roman empire rendered such eminent services to the European world that it justly deserves an important place in universal history. „First, as a military outpost it held the Eastern frontier of European civilization for a thousand years against Asiatic barbarism. The historian Bury would have us think of Heraclius, Leo the Isaurian, and other emperors and warriors like them, as “the successors of Themistocles and Africanus.”

Second, it was the keeper for centuries of the treasures of ancient civilization, and the instructress of the new Western nations in law, in government and administration, in literature, in painting, in architecture, and in the industrial arts.⁶

Third, it kept alive the imperial idea and principle, and gave this fruitful idea and this molding principle back to the West in the time of Charles the Great. Without the later

⁵ Bury, *History of the Later Roman Empire*, vol. ii. chap. xiv.

⁶ This instruction was imparted largely through the mediation of the Italian cities, and particularly of Venice, which throughout all the earlier mediæval ages were in close political or commercial relations with Constantinople.

Roman empire of the East there would never have been a Romano-German empire of the West (par. 388).

Fourth, it was the teacher of religion and civilization to the Slavic races of Eastern Europe. Russia forms part of the civilized world to-day by virtue of what she received from New Rome.

REFERENCES. — GIBBON (E.), *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (Bury's ed. recommended), chaps. xl.-xliv., on the reign of Justinian. Chap. xliv. deals with Roman jurisprudence. OMAN (C.), **The Story of the Byzantine Empire* (Story of the Nations), chaps. iv.-xi.; and, by the same author, *The Dark Ages*, chaps. iii. v. vi. ix. and xii. HODGKIN (T.), **Italy and her Invaders*, vol. iv., "The Imperial Restoration." RAWLINSON (GEO.) *The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy*, chap. xxiv. *Ency. Brit.*, Art. on Justinian by James Bryce. BURY (J. B.), ***History of the Later Roman Empire*, 2 vols. A work of superior scholarship. HARRISON (F.), *Byzantine History in the Early Middle Ages*. A brilliant lecture which summarizes the results of the latest researches in the field indicated. The *Institutes* of Justinian. The translation by Moyle is recommended. FINLAY (G.), *History of Greece*, vol. i.

CHAPTER XXXI.

THE RISE OF ISLAM.

368. The Attack from the South upon Ancient Civilization. — We have seen the German barbarians of the North descend upon and wrest from the Roman empire all its provinces in the West. We are now to watch a similar attack made upon the empire by the Arabs of the South, and to see wrested from the emperors of the East a large part of the lands still remaining under their rule.¹

369. The Religious Condition of Arabia before Mohammed. — Religion, which had had nothing to do with the fateful movement among the German barbarians, was the inciting cause of the great Arabian revolution.

Before the reforms of Mohammed, the religion of the Arabs was a sort of mixture of fetichism and star-worship. In the minds of many at least there seems to have been a dim perception of the unity of God, or rather of a Supreme God. The holy city of Mecca was the centre of the religious life of all the Arabian tribes. Here was the ancient and most revered shrine of the Kaaba,² where was preserved a sacred black stone that was believed to have been given by an angel to Abraham. To this Meccan shrine pilgrimages were made from the most remote parts of Arabia.

¹ The student should make a careful comparative study of the maps after pp. 444, 530, and 568.

² So named from its having the shape of a cube.

But though a debased polytheism was the prevailing religion of Arabia, still there were in the land many followers of other faiths. The Jews especially were to be found in some parts of the peninsula in great numbers, having been driven from Palestine by the Roman persecutions. From them the Arab teachers had been made acquainted with the doctrine of one sole God. From the numerous Christian converts dwelling among them they had learned something of the doctrines of Christianity.

About the time to which we have now brought our narrative, there was much religious unrest in Arabia. As it was in Judæa at the time of the appearance of Christ, so was it now in this southern land. There were here many seekers after God, men who had become dissatisfied with the old idolatry and were ready to embrace a purer and higher faith.

Such was the religious condition of the tribes of Arabia about the beginning of the seventh century of our era, when there appeared among them a prophet under whose teachings the followers of all the idolatrous worships were led to give assent to a single and simple creed, and were animated by a fanatical enthusiasm that drove them forth from their deserts upon a career of conquest which could not be stayed until they had overrun the fairest portions of the Roman and Persian empires, and given a new religion to a large part of the human race.

370. Mohammed. — Mohammed, the great prophet of the Arabs, was born in the holy city of Mecca probably in the year 570. He sprang from the distinguished tribe of the Koreish, the custodians of the sacred shrine of the Kaaba. In his early years he was a shepherd and a watcher of flocks by night, as the great religious teachers

Moses and David had been before him. Later he became a merchant and a camel driver.

Mohammed possessed a soul that was early and deeply stirred by the contemplation of those themes that ever attract the religious mind. When the fast of Ramadan approached, — a month set apart for humiliation and prayer, — he was wont to withdraw from his family and the world, to a cave on Mount Hira, a few miles from Mecca, and there spend long vigils in religious exercises and contemplation.

It is in connection with these visits to this solitary chamber that we find the mystery of Mohammed's life. He declared that there he had visions — afterwards repeated elsewhere — in which the angel Gabriel appeared to him and made to him revelations which he was commanded to make known to his fellow-men. The essence of the new faith which he was to teach was this: There is but one God, and Mohammed is his Prophet.

For a long time Mohammed endeavored to gain adherents merely by persuasion; but such was the incredulity which he everywhere met, that at the end of three years his disciples numbered only forty persons.

371. The Hegira (622). — The teachings of Mohammed at last aroused the anger of a powerful party among the Koreish, who feared that they, as the guardians of the national idols of the Kaaba, would be compromised in the eyes of the other tribes by allowing such heresy to be openly taught by one of their number, and accordingly they began to persecute Mohammed and his followers.

To escape these persecutions, Mohammed fled to the neighboring city of Medina. This *Hegira*, or "flight," as

the word signifies, occurred in the year 622, and was considered by the Moslems as such an important event in the history of their religion that they adopted it as the beginning of a new era, and from it still continue to reckon historical dates.

372. The Faith extended by the Sword. — His cause being warmly espoused by the inhabitants of Medina, Mohammed now assumed along with the character of a lawgiver and moral teacher that of a warrior. He declared it to be the will of God that the new faith should be spread by the sword.

The year following the Hegira he began to attack and plunder caravans. The flame of a sacred war was soon kindled. Warriors from all quarters flocked to the standard of the prophet. Their reckless enthusiasm was intensified by the assurance that death met in fighting those who resisted the true faith insured the martyr immediate entrance upon the joys of Paradise. At the same time they were allured by the spoils of successful war, which could not fail of appealing powerfully to their predatory instincts.

Within ten years from the time of the assumption of the sword by Mohammed, Mecca had been conquered (630) and the new creed established among all the independent tribes of Arabia. The prophet had become not only the spiritual but also the military head of the innumerable Arab clans, which the intense ardor of religious fanaticism had welded into a mighty brotherhood and nation.

Mohammed's life was just sufficiently prolonged — he died in the year 632 — to enable him to set the Arabian tribes on their marvellous career of foreign conquest.

Upon the ground of an insult to one of his ambassadors he declared war against Heraclius, and wrested from the empire several cities lying between the Dead Sea and the Euphrates. These were the only conquests made beyond the limits of the peninsula during the lifetime of Mohammed.

373. The Koran and its Teachings. — The doctrines of Mohammedanism or Islam, which means "submission to God," are contained in the Koran, which is believed by the orthodox to have been written from all eternity on tablets in heaven. From time to time Mohammed recited to his disciples portions of the "heavenly book" as its contents were revealed to him in his dreams and visions. These communications were held in the "breasts of men," or were written down upon pieces of pottery, the broad shoulder bones of sheep, and the ribs of palm leaves. Soon after the death of the prophet these scraps of writing were religiously collected, supplemented by tradition, and then arranged chiefly according to length. Such was the origin of the book that has been received as sacred by so large a portion of the human race.

The Koran teaches that "there is no God save Allah" and that "Mohammed is the Prophet of Allah." It further inculcates the practice of four cardinal virtues or duties. The first is prayer; five times every day must the believer turn his face towards Mecca and engage in devotion. The second requirement is almsgiving. The third is keeping the fast of Ramadan, which lasts a whole month. The fourth duty is making a pilgrimage to Mecca. Every person who can possibly do so is required to make this journey.

374. The Conquest of Syria (634-637).—For exactly one century after the death of Mohammed, the Caliphs or Successors of the Prophet³ were engaged in an almost unbroken series of conquests. One of the countries first subjugated by them was Syria.

The emperor Heraclius made a brave effort to defend the holy places against the fanatical warriors of the desert, but all in vain. His armies were cut to pieces. Seeing there was no hope of saving Jerusalem, he removed from that city to Constantinople the "True Cross," which he had rescued from the Persians (par. 364). "Farewell, Syria," were his words as he turned from the consecrated land which he saw must be given up to the enemies of his faith.

375. The Conquest of Persia (632-641).—While one army of the caliphs was effecting the conquest of Syria, another was busy with the subjugation of Persia. Enervated as this country was by luxury, and weakened by her long wars with the Eastern emperors, she could offer but feeble resistance to the terrible energy of the Saracens.⁴ In a few years the authority of the Koran was established throughout the country.

376. The Conquest of Egypt (640).—The reduction of Persia was not yet fully accomplished when the ruling

³ Abu Bekr (632-634), Mohammed's father-in-law, was the first caliph. He was followed by Omar (634-644), Othman (644-655), and Ali (655-661), all of whom fell by the hands of assassins, for from the very first dissensions were rife among the followers of the prophet. Ali was the last of the four so-called orthodox caliphs.

⁴ The term "Saracen," applied to the Arabs, is of doubtful origin, but seems to come from two Arabic words meaning "children of the desert."

caliph, Omar, commissioned Amrou, one of the chiefs whose valor had won for Islam the cities of Palestine, to carry the standard of the prophet into the valley of the Nile.

Egypt was, at this time, one of the most populous and highly civilized of the countries under the rule of the Eastern emperors. Since its conquest by the Romans (30 B.C.), it had remained in the hands of the Cæsars of Rome or of Constantinople, and from its inexhaustible granaries were loaded the vast fleets of grain ships that supplied the markets of those imperial cities.

Fortunately for the bold undertaking of the Arabs, the native Egyptians had been alienated from the court of Constantinople by intolerable taxation and religious persecution. They therefore hailed as deliverers the Arabs, who promised to permit them to retain their religion upon the payment of a moderate tribute.

The imperial forces that garrisoned the capital Alexandria held out against the arms of the Saracens for more than a year, and then abandoned the city to the enemy. Amrou, in communicating the intelligence of the important event to Omar, told him also about the famous Alexandrian Library, and asked what he should do with the books. Omar is said to have replied, "If these books agree with the Koran, they are useless; if they disagree, they are pernicious: in either case they ought to be destroyed." Accordingly the books, so the tradition continues, were distributed among the four thousand baths of the capital, and served to feed their fires for six months.

377. The Conquest of North Africa (643-689).—The lieutenants of the caliphs were obliged to do much and fierce fighting before they obtained possession of the

oft-disputed shores of North Africa; but finally Carthage was taken by them and razed to the ground, and the entire coast from the Nile to the Atlantic was forced to acknowledge the authority of the caliphs.

By this conquest all the countries of North Africa, whose history for a thousand years had been intertwined with that of the opposite shores of Europe, and which at one time seemed destined to share in the career of freedom and progress opening to the peoples of that continent, were drawn back into the fatalism, the despotism, and the stagnation of the East. From being an extension of Europe, they became once more an extension of Asia.

378. Attacks upon Constantinople.—Within fifty years from the death of Mohammed his standard had been carried by the lieutenants of his successors through Asia Minor to the Hellespont, on the one side, and across Africa to the Straits of Gibraltar, on the other. We may expect to see the Saracens at one or both of these points attempt the invasion of Europe.

The first attempt was made in the East (673–677), where the Arabs endeavored to gain control of the Bosphorus, by wresting Constantinople from the hands of the Eastern emperors. After repeated unsuccessful assaults they abandoned the undertaking.

In 717–718 the city was again invested by a powerful Saracen fleet and army; but the skill and personal heroism of the emperor, Leo the Isaurian, and the use by the besieged of a recently invented combustible compound known as *marine fire* ("Greek fire"), saved the capital for several centuries longer to the Christian world.

This check that the Saracens received before Constantinople was doubtless next in importance for European civilization to the check given their conquering hordes a little later in France, at the great battle of Tours.

379. The Conquest of Spain (711).—While the Moslems were thus being repulsed from Europe at its eastern extremity, the gates of the continent were opened to them by treachery at the western, and they gained a foothold in Spain. At the great battle of Xeres (711), Roderic, the last of the Visigothic kings (par. 323), was hopelessly defeated, and all the peninsula, save some mountainous regions in the northwest, quickly submitted to the invaders. By this conquest some of the fairest provinces of Spain were lost to Christendom for a period of eight hundred years.

No sooner had the subjugation of the country been effected than multitudes of colonists from Arabia, Syria, and North Africa crowded into the peninsula, until in a short time the provinces of Seville, Cordova, Toledo, and Granada became predominantly Arabic in dress, manners, language, and religion.

380. Invasion of France; Battle of Tours (732).—Four or five years after the conquest of Spain, the Saracens crossed the Pyrenees, and established themselves upon the plains of Gaul. This advance of the Moslem host beyond the northern wall of Spain was viewed with the greatest alarm by all Christendom. It looked as though the followers of Mohammed would soon possess all the continent. As Draper pictures it, the Crescent, lying in a vast semi-circle upon the northern shore of Africa and the curving coast of Asia, with one horn touching the Bosphorus and

the other the Straits of Gibraltar, seemed about to round to the full and overspread all Europe.

In the year 732, exactly one hundred years after the death of the great prophet, the Franks, under their able leader Charles (par. 385), and their allies, met the Moslems upon the plains of Tours in the centre of Gaul, and committed to the issue of a single battle the fate of Christendom and the future course of history. The desperate valor displayed by the warriors of both armies was worthy of the prize at stake. Abderrahman, the Mohammedan leader, fell in the thick of the fight, and night saw the complete discomfiture of the Moslem hordes. The loss that the sturdy blows of the Germans had inflicted upon them was enormous, the accounts of that age swelling the number killed to the impossible figures of 375,000. The disaster at all events was so overwhelming that the Saracens lost hope of extending their conquests further into Gaul, and gradually withdrew behind the Pyrenees.

The young Christian civilization of Western Europe was thus delivered from an appalling danger, such as had not threatened it since the fearful days of Attila and the Huns.

381. The Dismemberment of the Caliphate.—“At the close of the first century of the Hegira,” writes Gibbon, “the caliphs were the most potent and absolute monarchs of the globe. The word that went forth from the palace at Damascus⁵ was obeyed on the Indus, on the Jaxartes, and

⁵ Medina was the seat of the caliphate until the year 661, when the dynasty of the Ommeiades was established and Damascus made the seat of the government. In the year 750 a new dynasty, known as that of the Abbassides, was set up, and a few years later a new capital, Bagdad, was founded on the lower Tigris.

on the 'Tagus.'" But in a short time the extended empire, through the quarrels of sectaries and the ambitions of rival aspirants for the honors of the caliphate, was broken in fragments, and from three capitals — from Bagdad upon the Tigris, from Cairo upon the Nile, and from Cordova upon the Guadalquivir — were issued the commands of three rival caliphs, each of whom was regarded by his adherents as the sole rightful spiritual and civil successor of Mohammed. All, however, held the great prophet in the same reverence, all maintained with equal zeal the sacred character of the Koran, and all prayed with their faces turned toward the holy city of Mecca.

382. **The Civilization of Arabian Islam.**⁶ — The Saracens were co-heirs of antiquity with the Germans. The Germans received and transmitted to later times particularly the literary, philosophical, and legal treasures of the Hebrew and Græco-Roman cultures, while the Arabs made especially their own the scientific⁷ accumulations of the ancient civilizations and bequeathed them to Christian Europe. These elements of civilization they added to and enriched, and in several of the countries of which they took possession, especially in Babylonia and in Spain, developed a civilization which in some respects far surpassed any that the world had yet seen.

In the arrangements of their court, the organization of their army, and the administration of their government the Arabs imitated the Persians or the Byzantine Greeks.

⁶ Kremer's *Culturgeschichte des Orients unter den Chalifen*, chaps. vii. and ix.

⁷ Gibbon affirms that no Greek poet, orator, or historian was ever translated into Arabic. See *Decline and Fall*, chap. lii.

Their government was an absolute monarchy, such as has always been the favorite form of government among oriental peoples.

The Moslem law system, the basis of which is found in the Koran, was the most original creation of the Arab mind. After the Roman law it is probably the most influential and widely obeyed system of laws and regulations that any race or civilization has developed. Since the system embraces religious as well as civil matters, it is in some respects like the Mosaic code, from which it liberally borrowed.

In Arabia and in all the countries of which the Arabs had made themselves masters, there had been carried on from time immemorial the chief industrial arts. The establishment of the wide empire of the caliphs quickened this industrial life and caused all these arts to be carried to a state of perfection that was not surpassed until the great industrial inventions and improvements of our own day.

Commerce and trade also assumed a fresh activity and a new importance. The Arabs in Babylonia and in Syria became the heirs and successors of the ancient Chaldæans and the Phœnicians, and re-created that commercial activity of the earlier time that nourished the great cities of Babylon, Tyre, and Sidon. As in the *Odyssey* of Homer we have a mirror of the commercial activity and the adventurous trade voyages of the early maritime Greeks, so in the marvellous stories of *Sindbad the Sailor* we have a like mirror of the voyages and adventures of the Arabian sailors.

The great intellectual activity that characterized the earlier centuries of Arabian Islam resulted at least in part

from the study of the Koran, just as in the Christian West the intellectual life of the mediæval ages was at first quickened by the study of the Bible. Thus the sciences of grammar, rhetoric, lexicography, theology, and jurisprudence grew up out of the study and interpretation of the words of the sacred book.

Alongside these studies, historical and biographical writings naturally took an important place. The need of preserving in their original form the sayings of Mohammed and the traditions of his life, as well as the desire to transmit to posterity the story of the wonderful conquests and exploits of the founders of the Arabian empire, inspired and encouraged the writing of biography and history. In both fields the early centuries of Arabian Islam produced many illustrious names.

In the lighter forms of literature — romance and poetry — the Arabs produced much that possesses a high degree of excellence. In the field of romance they followed the Persian story-tellers. The inimitable tales of the *Arabian Nights' Entertainments*, besides being a valuable commentary on Arabian life and manners at the time of the culmination of oriental culture at the court of Bagdad, forms also an addition to the imperishable portion of the literature of the world. The poetry of the Arabs was wholly original. It was the natural and beautiful expression of the Arabian genius and temperament.

The physical sciences were also pursued by the Arabian scholars with great eagerness and with considerable success. Geography was forced upon their attention by their wide conquests and their extended trade relations. From the Greeks and the Hindus they received the germs of astronomy,

geometry, arithmetic, algebra, medicine, botany, and other sciences. The scientific writings of Aristotle, Euclid, and Galen, and Hindu treatises on astronomy and algebra were translated from the Greek and Sanskrit into Arabic, and formed the basis of the Arabian studies and investigations. Almost all of the sciences that thus came into their hands were improved and enriched by them, and then transmitted to European scholars.⁸ They devised what is known from them as the Arabic or decimal system of notation,⁹ and gave to Europe this indispensable instrument of all scientific investigations dependent upon mathematical calculations. In chemistry they never advanced beyond alchemy, but in their experiments as alchemists they discovered the existence and nature of several of the chemical elements and thus laid the basis of modern chemistry.

All this literary and scientific activity naturally found expression in the establishment of schools, universities, and libraries. In all the great cities of the Arabian empire, as at Bagdad, Cairo, and Cordova, centuries before Europe could boast anything beyond cathedral or monastic schools, great universities were drawing together vast crowds of eager young Moslems and creating an atmosphere

⁸ What Europe received in science from Arabian sources is kept in remembrance by such words as *alchemy*, *alcohol*, *alembic*, *algebra*, *alkali*, *almanac*, *azimuth*, *chemistry*, *elixir*, *zenith*, and *nadir*. To how great an extent the chief Arabian cities became the manufacturing centres of the mediæval world is indicated by the names which these places have given to various textile fabrics and other articles. Thus *muslin* comes from Mosul, on the Tigris, *damask* from Damascus, and *gauze* from Gaza. ⁹ Damascus and Toledo blades tell of the proficiency of the Arab workmen in metallurgy.

⁹ The figures or numerals, with the exception of the zero symbol, employed in their system, they seemed to have borrowed from India.

of learning and refinement. The famous university at Cairo, which has at the present day an attendance of several thousand students, is a survival from the great days of Arabian Islam.

In the erection of mosques and other public edifices the Arab architects developed a new and striking style of architecture, — one of the most beautiful specimens of which is preserved to us in the palace of the Moorish kings at Granada, — a style which has given to modern builders some of their finest models and most fruitful motives.

383. The Evil and the Good in Islam. — Islam in many of its teachings and inherited institutions is unfavorable to individual development and social progress. In opposition to Christianity, it tolerates polygamy¹⁰ and places no restraint upon divorce,¹¹ and thus destroys the sanctity of the family life.

Islam further legalizes slavery; Mohammedan countries are the main strongholds of slavery at the present time. It fosters religious intolerance; the Moslem is forbidden by his religion to grant equality to unbelievers. It unites in the same hands both religious and civil authority, and thereby fosters despotism.

Still another most serious defect of Islam is found in the immutable character of its system of laws. All the enactments and judicial decisions of Mohammed and of the first four caliphs are regarded as binding, at least in spirit, for

¹⁰ The Koran (Sura iv. 3) allows the believer to take "two, or three, or four wives, and not more." By a special dispensation (Sura xxxiii. 49) Mohammed was allowed to take a larger, and seemingly indefinite, number. At one time the prophet had nine wives.

¹¹ Sura ii. 229, 230.

all time. Since the system, as we have learned (par. 382), covers the civil as well as the religious sphere, Mohammedan law has been prevented from adapting itself to the changing needs of society. This is doubtless one cause of the unprogressive character of Mohammedan society as contrasted with the progressive civilization of the Western races, who were the fortunate inheritors of the admirable secular, and therefore elastic, system of the Roman law.

Islam, however, inculcates some inspiring truths and recommends some great virtues. Like Christianity, it teaches the unity of God, immortality, and retributive rewards and punishments after death. These doctrines render it immeasurably superior to fetichism or polytheism, and have made it a great force for the uplift of multitudes of idolatrous tribes in Asia and Africa.

Among the leading virtues inculcated by Islam is that of temperance. The Koran forbids to the believer the use of wine, and inferentially of all strong drinks.¹² To this prohibition may unhesitatingly be attributed the fact that drinking and drunkenness are less common and open in Mohammedan than in Christian lands.

Finally, in forming our estimate of Islam we should carefully bear in mind that the religion as held and practised by the different Mohammedan races to-day, particularly by the Ottoman Turks, is a very degenerate form of the Islamic faith when compared with that held and practised by the Arabs, the people among whom it first arose. Mohammedanism, like Christianity, was at its best in what we may call its Apostolic Age.

¹² Suras ii. 216 and v. 92.

REFERENCES. — *The Koran*. The translation by Palmer, in *Sacred Books of the East* series, is the best. That by Sale is now antiquated. The translation in metre by Rodwell conveys some idea of the literary merits of the original. The Koran, like the Bible for Christianity, is our chief source for a knowledge of Islam as a religion. *The Speeches and Table-Talk of the Prophet Mohammed* (chosen and translated by Stanley Lane-Poole). The scholarly articles on *Mohammedanism* in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, by Wellhausen, Nöldeke, and Guyard, have a very special value. MUIR (W.), *The Corân: Its Composition and Teachings; The Life of Mohammed*, 4 vols. (2d ed. in 1 vol.); *Annals of the Early Caliphate*; and *The Rise and Decline of Islam*. These are all works of the highest authority; they are for the use of the mature student. SMITH (R. B.), *Mohammed and Mohammedanism*. Has a short bibliography. Deutsch's article on "Islam" forms an appendix to the volume. IRVING (W.), *Mahomet and his Successors* (numerous editions). GIBBON (E.), *Decline and Fall*, chaps. l.–lii. Still valuable. CARLYLE (T.), *Heroes and Hero-Worship* (ed. by Archibald MacMechan), Lec. ii., "The Hero as Prophet." STANLEY (A. P.), *History of the Eastern Church*. Read lecture entitled "Mohammedanism in its Relations to the Eastern Church." SCHIAFF (P.), *History of the Christian Church*, vol. iv. chap. iii. pp. 143–202, "Mohammedanism in its Relations to Christianity." FREEMAN (E. A.), *History and Conquests of the Saracens* (2d ed., London, 1876). A rapid sketch by a master. GILMAN (A.), *The Saracens from the Earliest Times to the Fall of Bagdad* (*Story of the Nations*). Contains a list of over two hundred books bearing on the subject, with short appreciations of the most important works. SYED AMEER ALI, *The Spirit of Islam: or the Life and Teachings of Mohammed* (2d ed., London, 1896); also the same author's *Short History of the Saracens*. These works are deserving of special attention because written by a learned and liberal Mohammedan. SMITH (H. P.), *The Bible and Islam*. MILMAN (H. H.), *History of Latin Christianity*, vol. ii. bk. iv. chaps. i. and ii.

CHAPTER XXXII.

CHARLES THE GREAT AND THE RESTORATION OF THE EMPIRE IN THE WEST.

384. General Remarks. — In the foregoing chapter we traced the rise and decline of the power of the Saracens. We saw the Semitic East roused for a moment to a life of tremendous energy by the miracle of religious enthusiasm, and then beheld it sinking rapidly again into inaction and weakness, disappointing all its early promises. Manifestly the Law is not to go forth from Mecca. The Semitic race is not to lead the civilization of the world.

But returning again to the West, we discover among the Teutonic barbarians indications of such youthful energy and life, that we are at once persuaded that to them has been given the future time. The Franks, who, with the aid of their confederates, withstood the advance of the Saracens upon the field of Tours, and saved Europe from subjection to the Koran, are the people that first attract our attention. Among them it is that a man appears who makes the first grand attempt to restore the laws, the order, the institutions of the ancient Romans. Charlemagne or Charles the Great, their king, is the imposing figure that moves amidst all the events of the times; indeed, is the one who makes the events, and renders the period in which he lived an epoch in universal history.

The story of this era affords the key to very much of the subsequent history of Western Europe. The mere enumeration of the events which are to claim our attention will illustrate the important and germinal character of the period. We shall tell how the mayors of the palace of the Merovingian princes became the actual kings of the Franks; how, through the liberality of the Frankish kings, the popes laid the foundations of their temporal sovereignty; and how Charles the Great restored the Roman empire in the West, and throughout its extended limits, in the fusion of things Roman and of things Germanic, laid the basis of modern civilization.

385. How Duke Pippin became King of the Franks (751).
— Charles Martel, who saved the Christian civilization of Western Europe on the field of Tours, although the real head of the Frankish nation, was nominally only an officer of the Merovingian court. He died without ever having borne the title of king, notwithstanding he had exercised all the authority of that office.

But Charles' son, Pippin II., aspired to the regal title and honors. He resolved to depose his titular master and to make himself king. Not deeming it wise, however, to do this without the sanction of the pope, he sent an embassy to represent to him the state of affairs, and to solicit his advice. Mindful of recent favors that he had received at the hands of Pippin, the pope gave his approval to the proposed scheme by replying that it seemed altogether reasonable that the one who was king in reality should be king also in name. This was sufficient. Childeric—such was the name of the Merovingian king—was straightway deposed and placed in a monastery; while Pippin, whose

own deeds, together with those of his illustrious father, had done so much for the Frankish nation and for Christendom, was anointed and crowned king of the Franks (751), and thus become the first of the Carolingian line, the name of his illustrious son, Charles the Great, giving name to the house.

386. Pippin lays the Basis of the Temporal Power of the Popes (756). — In the year 754 Pope Stephen II., troubled by the king of the Lombards, besought Pippin's aid against the barbarian. Pippin, quick to return the favor which the head of the Church had rendered him in the securing of his crown, straightway interposed in behalf of the pope. He descended into Italy with an army, expelled the Lombards from their recent conquests, and made a donation to the pope of the regained lands ¹ (756). As a symbol of the gift he laid the keys of Ravenna, Rimini, and of many other cities on the tomb of St. Peter.

This endowment may be regarded as having laid the basis of the temporal sovereignty of the popes; for although Pope Stephen, as it seems, had already resolved to cast off allegiance to the Eastern emperor and set up an independent Church state, still it is not probable that he could have carried out successfully such an enterprise had he not been aided in his project by the Frankish king.

387. Accession of Charles the Great; his Wars. — Pippin died in the year 768, and his kingdom passed into the hands of his two sons, Carloman and Charles, the latter being better known by the name he achieved of "Charlemagne," or Charles the Great. Three years after the

¹ The sovereignty of all these lands belonged nominally to the emperor at Constantinople. His claims were ignored by Pippin.

accession of the brothers, Carloman died, and Charles took possession of his dominions.

Charles' long reign of nearly half a century — he ruled forty-six years — was filled with military expeditions and conquests, by which he so extended the boundaries of his dominions that at his death they embraced the larger part of Western Europe. He made fifty-two military campaigns, the chief of which were against the Lombards, the Saracens, the Saxons, and the Avars. Of these we shall speak briefly.

Among the first undertakings of Charles was a campaign against the Lombards, whose king, Desiderius, was troubling the pope. Charles wrested from Desiderius all his possessions, shut up the unfortunate king in a monastery, and placed on his own head the famous iron crown of the Lombards (par. 327). While in Italy he visited Rome, and in return for the favor of the pope, confirmed the donation of his father, Pippin (774).

In the year 778 Charles gathered his warriors for a crusade against the Mohammedan Moors in Spain. He crossed the Pyrenees and succeeded in winning from the Moslems all the northeastern corner of the peninsula. These lands thus regained for Christendom he made a part of his empire, under the title of the Spanish March. As Charles was leading his victorious bands back across the Pyrenees, the rear of his army, under the lead, as legend has it, of the famous paladin Roland, while hemmed in by the walls of the Pass of Roncesvalles, was set upon by the wild mountaineers (the Gascons) and cut to pieces before he could give relief. Of the details of this event no authentic account has been preserved; but long

afterwards it formed the favorite theme of the tales and songs of the Trouveurs of Northern France.

But by far the greater number of the campaigns of Charles were directed against the pagan Saxons, who almost alone of the German tribes still retained their ancient paganism. Reduced to submission again and again, as often did they rise in desperate revolt. The heroic Witikind was the "second Arminius" who encouraged his countrymen to resist to the last the intruders upon their soil. Finally Charles, angered beyond measure by the obstinacy of the barbarians, caused forty-five hundred prisoners in his hands to be beheaded in revenge for the contumacy of the nation.² The Saxons at length yielded and accepted Charles as their sovereign and Christianity as their religion.

To the east and the southeast, behind the German tribes whom Charles had reduced to obedience, were the Avars, a race terrible as the Huns of Attila, and an offshoot seemingly of the same stock.

In a series of campaigns Charles broke their power, destroyed their so-called "Great Ring," a sort of royal camp and stronghold, and reduced the race to a tributary condition. This subjugation of the Avars was one of the greatest services that Charles rendered the young Christian civilization of Europe. For three centuries they had been the scourge of all their neighbors.

388. Restoration of the Empire in the West (800). — An event of seemingly little real moment, yet, in its influence

² The so-called massacre of Verden (782). The victims of the massacre had on Charles' demand been given up to him by their own countrymen.

upon succeeding affairs, of the very greatest importance, now claims our attention. Pope Leo III. having called upon Charles for aid against a hostile faction at Rome, the king soon appeared in person at the capital and punished summarily the disturbers of the peace of the Church. The gratitude of Leo led him at this time to make a most signal return for the many services of the Frankish king. To understand his act a word of explanation is needed.

For a considerable time a variety of circumstances had been fostering a growing feeling of enmity between the Italians and the emperors at Constantinople. Disputes had arisen between the Church of the East and that of the West, and the Byzantine rulers had endeavored to compel the Latin Church to introduce certain changes and reforms in its worship, which thing had aroused the most determined opposition of the Roman bishops, who denounced the Eastern emperors as schismatics and heretics. And while persecuting the orthodox churches of the West, these unworthy emperors had allowed the Christian lands of the East to fall a prey to the Arabian infidels.

Just at this time, moreover, by the crime of the Empress Irene, who had deposed her son, Constantine VI., and put out his eyes that she might have his place, the Byzantine throne was vacant, in the estimation of the Italians, who contended that the crown of the Cæsars could not be worn by a woman. In view of these circumstances it was natural that Pope Leo and those about him should have conceived the purpose of taking away from the heretical and effeminate Greeks the imperial crown, and bestowing it upon some strong and orthodox and worthy prince in the West.

Now, among all the Teutonic chiefs of Western Christendom, there was none who could dispute in claims to the honor with the king of the Franks, the representative of a most illustrious house, and the strongest champion of the young Christianity of the West against her pagan foes. Accordingly, as Charles was participating in the solemnities of Christmas Day in the basilica of St. Peter at Rome, the pope approached the kneeling king, and placing a crown of gold upon his head, proclaimed him Emperor and Augustus (800).

The intention of Pope Leo was, by a sort of reversal of the act of Constantine the Great, to bring back from the East the seat of the imperial court; but what he really accomplished was a restoration of the line of emperors in the West, which 324 years before had been ended by Odovakar, when he dethroned Romulus Augustulus and sent the royal vestments to Constantinople. We say this was what he actually effected; for the Greeks of the East, disregarding wholly what the Roman people and the Pope had done, maintained their line of emperors just as though nothing had occurred in Italy. So now from this time on for centuries there were, most of the time, two emperors, one in the East and another in the West, each claiming to be the rightful successor of Cæsar Augustus, and each upon occasion denouncing the other as a pretender and an impostor.³

³ From this time on it will be proper for us to use the terms *Western* empire and *Eastern* empire. These names should not, however, be employed before this time, for the two parts of the old Roman empire were simply administrative divisions of a single empire; but we may properly enough speak of the Roman empire *in* the West, and the Roman empire *in* the East, or of the Western and Eastern emperors.

This revival of the Empire in the West was one of the most important matters in European history. It gave to the following centuries "a great political ideal," which was the counterpart of the religious ideal of a Universal Church embodied in the papacy, and which was to determine the character of large sections of mediæval history.

Charles reigned as emperor only fourteen years. He died in 814, and his empire soon afterwards fell in pieces. It was renewed, however, by Otto the Great of Germany, in 962, and came to be known as the Holy Roman Empire.

389. The Revival of the Empire as a Dividing Line in History. --- As Pope Leo placed the imperial diadem upon the head of Charles in St. Peter's Cathedral he cried, "To Charles the Augustus, crowned by God, great and pacific Emperor, life and victory." The Roman populace within the church repeated the cry, which was taken up by the Frankish warriors outside. "In that shout was pronounced the union, so long in preparation, so mighty in its consequences, of the Roman and the Teuton, of the memories and the civilization of the South with the fresh energy of the North, and from that moment modern history begins."⁴

What it is very essential to note is, that Charles, in restoring the line of the Western emperors, actually destroyed the unity of the old empire, so that from this time on until the destruction of the Eastern empire in 1453, there were, as we have said in the text, two rival emperors, each in theory having rightful suzerainty of the whole world, whereas the two emperors in Roman times were the co-rulers of a single and indivisible World-Empire. See Bryce's *The Holy Roman Empire*.

⁴ Bryce, *The Holy Roman Empire*, p. 49. Bryce here uses the phrase "modern history" as comprehending both the mediæval and the modern period. For the moment he conceives history as presenting only two phases, the ancient and the modern.

REFERENCES. — EGINHARD (Einhard), ** *Life of the Emperor Karl the Great* (trans. by William Glaister recommended). Einhard was Charles the Great's private secretary. "Almost all our real, vivifying knowledge of Charles the Great," says Hodgkin, "is derived from Einhard, and . . . the *Vita Caroli* is one of the most precious bequests of the early Middle Ages." Henderson's *Select Historical Documents*, pp. 189-201, "Capitulary of Charlemagne, issued in the year 802." *Translations and Reprints* (Univ. of Penn.), vol. vi. No. 5, "Selections from the Laws of Charles the Great."

HODGKIN (T.), ** *Charles the Great* (Foreign Statesmen), and MOMBERT (J. I.), ** *A History of Charles the Great*. These are the two best short biographies in English. BRUCE (J.), *The Holy Roman Empire*, chaps. iv. v. and xxi. give a clear view of the import of the restoration of the empire. EMERSON (E.), *Introduction to the Middle Ages*, chaps. xii.-xiv. OMAN (C.), *The Dark Ages*, chaps. xx.-xxii. GUIZOT (F. P. G.), *History of Civilization in France*, vol. i. Lec. xx. SERGEANT (L.), *The Franks* (Story of the Nations), chaps. xvi.-xxii. An admirable sketch, with a calm and moderate appraisal of Charles' work. FREEMAN (E. A.), *The Chief Periods of European History*, Lects. iii. and iv. ADAMS (G. B.), *Civilization during the Middle Ages*, chap. vii. DAVIS (H. W. C.), *Charlemagne* (Heroes of the Nations).

INDEX AND PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

• NOTE. — In the case of words whose correct pronunciation has not seemed to be clearly indicated by their accentuation and syllabication, the sounds of the letters have been denoted thus: ā, like *a* in *grāy*; ǎ, like ā, only less prolonged; ǣ, like *a* in *hǣve*; a, like *a* in *far*; ē, like *ee* in *mēt*; ě, like *e* in *ěnd*; e and eh, like *k*; ç, like *s*; ġ, like *g* in *ġet*; ģ, like *j*; ō, like *o* in *nōte*; ô, like *o* in *fôr*; ş, like *z*; ñ, like *ng* in *song*.

Abbasides (ab-bās'īdz), 579, n. 5.
Abu Bekr (a'boo bek'r), caliph,
575, n. 3.

Ābd'er-rāh'mān, Moslem leader,
579.

A-chæ'an league, how formed,
184; hostages in Italy, 190;
war with Rome, 190; dissolu-
tion, 193.

A-cha'i-a, province, 193.

Æ'ti-um, battle of, 309.

Adolf. See *Ataulf*.

A'dri-an-o'ple, battle of (A.D. 323),
394; battle near (A.D. 378), 420.

Adriatic Sea, 2.

Ædiles (ē'dils), plebeian, duties,
70; made sacrosanct, 89; tabu-
lated facts respecting, 110.

Æduans, 287.

Æ-gā'tian Islands, naval battle
near, 153.

Æmīanus. See *Scipio*.

Æ-ne'as, legend of, 57.

Æ-ne'id, the, 489.

Æ'qui-ans, early enemies of Rome,

80, 81; territory incorporated in
Roman domain, 126.

A-ē'ti-us, Roman general, 437.

Ætolian league, formation of, 183;
ally of Rome in First Mace-
donian War, 175; dissolved,
193.

A'ger publicus. See *Public lands*
and *Agrarian laws*.

Ager Romanus, 96 and n. 3.

Agrarian laws: of Spurius Cassius,
73-75; law of Tiberius Gracchus,
212; its effect, 217.

A-gric'o-la, in Britain, 352.

A-grip'pa, M., 458, 467, n. 8.

Ag'rip-pi'na, 344.

Aix-la-Chapelle (āks-lā-shā-pēl'),
470.

Alaric, his first invasion of Italy,
427; wrings ransom from Rome,
430; sacks the city, 432; his
death, 433.

Alba Longa, its situation, 41; tra-
ditional founding, 57; destroyed
by the Romans, 59.

- Alban Hills, 41.
 Alban Lake, 93; emissary at, 93.
 94.
 Al'çi-bi''a-dēs, 169, n. 7.
 Al'e-man''ni, 417.
 A-lē'si-a, 288.
 Alexander the Great, compared with Roman generals, 125.
 Alexandria captured by the Arabs, 576.
 Alexandrian Library, 576.
 Algeria, 463, n. 5.
 Al'gi-dus, Mount, 80.
 Ali (ä'lee), caliph, 575, n. 3.
 Al'li-a, battle of the, 97.
 Alphabet, gift to the Romans from the Greeks, 10.
 Alps, Julian, 4; Maritime, 227.
 Am-bār-rä'lä-ä, 32, n. 3.
 Ambrose, bishop, 425.
 Amphitheatres, spectacles of, arranged by Augustus, 327; the Flavian, 460-462; shows of, 517.
 Amrou (äm'roo), 576.
 A-mu'li-us, king of Rome, 57.
 Ancestor worship among the Romans, 13; most important element in their religion, 31; culminates in cult of the emperor, 330.
 An-chi'sēs, 57.
 An'cus Mar'ti-us, king of Rome, 46.
 Andalusia (an-da-lu'she-a), origin of the name, 435.
 Andes, 487.
 An'dro-ni''cus, Livius. poet, 482.
 Angles. See *Anglo-Saxons*.
 Anglo-Saxons, as pirates, 417; invade Britain as settlers, 436; the "Heptarchy," 533; their conversion, 538.
 A'ni-o River, 256.
 An-tig'o-nus, general of Alexander, 267, n. 3.
 Antioch, population at time of Augustus, 327.
 An-ti'o-chus the Great, king of Syria, forms an alliance with Philip V. of Macedonia, 185; war with Rome, 186; defeated at Magnesium, 187.
 An'ti-um, 121.
 An'to-ni''nus Pi'us, emperor, 364.
 Antony, Mark, the triumvir, offers crown to Cæsar, 301; delivers funeral oration over Cæsar's body, 304; plays the tyrant, 304; opposed by Octavius, 305; enters the Second Triumvirate, 305; receives the government of the East, 306; his revels with Cleopatra, 308; his expedition against the Parthians, 309; at the battle of Actium, 310; his death, 310.
 Ap'en-nines, the, 4, 5.
 Apollo, temple at Rome, 329; statue of, set up by Constantine, 403, 404.
 A-pol'lo-do''rus, architect, 363.
 Appeal, right of, secured by the *Lex Valeria*, 66; law revived, 89.
 Appian Way. See *Via Appia*.
 Appius Claudius. See *Claudius*.
 Ap'pu-le'i-us Saturninus, 231, 232; his death, 233.
 Apulia, 2.
 Apulians join Hannibal, 172.

A'quæ Sex'ti-æ, battle of, 228, n. 1.
 Aqueducts, Roman, general description of, 465-467; broken by the Goths, 562.
 Aq'ui-le'i-a, besieged by the Marcomani, 366; battle at, between Theodosius and Eugenius, 424.
 Aq'ui-ta'ni-a, 289, n. 2.
 Arabia-Petræa, province, 359.
 Arabic system of notation, 583.
 Arabs. See *Saracens*.
 Ar-ca'di-us, emperor of the East, 426.
 Arch, use of, by Roman builders, 456.
 Ar'chi-as, poet, 496.
 Ar'chi-me'dēs, 174.
 Architecture, Roman, Greek origin of, 456; use of the arch, 456.
 Ar'e-thu'sa, 492.
 Arianism, denounced by the Council of Nicæa, 396.
 A-rim'i-num, Latin colony, 134, n. 7, 158.
 A'ri-o-vis'tus, 287.
 A'ri-us, 396, n. 4.
 Armenia, province, acquired, 358; abandoned, 360.
 Ar-min'i-us defeats Varus at the Teutoburg Wood, 322-324.
 Army, Roman, the, before Servian reforms, 51; after Servian reforms, 53; strength in time of kings, 54; changes effected in, by Marius, 229.
 Ar'no River, 5; Roman dominions carried to, 131.
 Ar'nus. See *Arno*.
 Ar-pi'num, 115.
 Ar-re'ti-um, 8.

Ar-ver'ni, 288.
 As-ca'ni-us, 57.
 As'cu-lum, battle of, 131.
 Asia, political and economic condition of, before Mithradatic wars, 245-247; province of, 246; massacre of Italians in, 248.
 As-pen'dos, theatre at, 459.
 Assemblies, public, tabulated facts respecting nature, number, and competence, 108; effect upon, of enfranchisement of the Italians, 243; judicial functions transferred to jury court, 259; legislative powers lessened, 260; functions under Augustus, 318; deprived of the right to elect magistrates, 334. See *Comitia* and *Concilium tributum plebis*.
 Assyria, province, acquired, 358; abandoned, 360.
 At'aulf, Gothic chieftain, 434.
 Ath'a-na'si-us, 396, n. 4.
 Athens, joins Mithradates against the Romans, 248; taken by Sulla, 254.
 At'ta-lus, I., king of Pergamus, 186, n. 8; III., bequeaths his kingdom to the Roman people, 246.
 At'ti-la, leader of the Huns, 436; his defeat at Châlons, 437; invades Italy, 437; death, 438.
 Au'fi-dus River, 4.
 Augurs, college of, 33, 34.
 Augustan Age, 486.
 Au'gus-tine, Aurelius, Church Father, 506.
 Augustus Cæsar. See *Octavius*.
 Aurelian, emperor, 379.
 Au-re'li-us, Marcus, emperor, reign,

- 364-368; his persecutions of the Christians, 365; the Marcomanic War, 366; death, 368; his *Meditations*, 503; as a representative of Stoicism, 504.
- Aus'pi-ces, taking of the, 33; taken by means of sacred fowls, 151.
- Austro-Hungarian monarchy, 450.
- Ä-värs', subdued by Charles the Great, 591.
- Av'en-tine (-tīn) Hill, 51.
- Bä'den-Bä'den, 470.
- Bæt'i-ca, 321, n. 8.
- Bagaudæ, the, 386.
- Bagdad, founded, 579; centre of Arabian culture, 582.
- Baïæ (ba'ye), 344, 470.
- Balbi, the, 342.
- Barbarians, German, movements in the last century of the empire, 416; effects of invasions, 417, n. 8; earliest settlements within the empire, 434-436; advance in civilization, 454; the proximate cause of the fall of the Roman empire in the West, 455; their conversion, 536-541; as a factor in Romano-German age, 528; the so-called "Barbarian Kingdoms," 529-534; their fusion with Latins, 552-555; their codes, 555.
- Barca. See *Hamilcar*.
- Barrack emperors, 372.
- Bä'sil, Church Father, 505.
- Basques (basks), the, 590.
- Batavians, 348.
- Baths. See *Thermae*.
- Bel'gi-ca, 289, n. 2, 322, n. 10.
- Belisarius, commander, 561, 562, n. 1.
- Benedictines (bĕn'ĕdĭk'tīns), 543.
- Ben'e-ven'tum, battle of, 131.
- Be-ry'tus, 510.
- Bes'ti-a, Lu'ci-us Cal-pur'ni-us, consul, 225.
- Bib'u-lus, admiral, 295.
- Bi-thyn'i-a given provincial constitution, 282, n. 5.
- Bo'i-i, Gallic tribe, 157.
- Bologna (bō-lōn'yä), 510.
- Bon'i-face, Count, 435.
- Books, Roman, 504, n. 6.
- Bos'po-rus, 396.
- Bo'vi-a'num taken by the Romans, 124.
- Bren'nus, Gallic leader, 99, 100.
- Britain, invaded by Cæsar, 288; conquest of, in reign of Claudius, 343; Agricola in, 352; the Hadrian Wall, 360-362 and notes; legions withdrawn from, 436; ravaged by Picts and Saxons, 436; Angles and Saxons settle in, 436.
- Bri-tan'ni-a, Roman province, 343.
- Brun-di'si-um, 294.
- Bruttians join Hannibal, 172.
- Brut'ti-um, 2.
- Brutus, Lucius Junius, consul, 64; condemns sons to death, 65.
- Brutus, Marcus, 301; heads conspiracy against Cæsar, 301, 302; seeks refuge in, Greece, 304; death at Philippi, 308.
- Burgundians establish kingdom in Southeastern Gaul, 435; conquered by the Franks, 530.

- Burgundy, 435.
 Bur'thus, 344.
 Bu'sen-ti'nus River, 434.
 By-zan'ti-um, 396.
- Cæ're, 8; gives asylum to Roman vestals, 98; made a *municipium*, 112.
 Cæ'te franchise, 111, 112.
 Cæsar, Augustus. See *Octavius*.
 Cæsar, Gaius. See *Caligula*.
 Cæsar, Gaius Julius, in the Sullan proscription, 256; his early life, 284; consul, 286; assigned as proconsul Gallic provinces, 286; campaigns in Gaul, 280-288; invades Britain, 288; results of his Gallic wars, 288-290; rivalry with Pompey, 292; crosses the Rubicon, 293; civil war between him and Pompey, 293-295; in Egypt, 296; defeats Pharnaces, 296; as an uncrowned king, 297; his triumph, 297; as a statesman, 298; reforms the calendar, 300; unfinished projects, 300; his assassination, 301; his literary works, 497.
 Cæs'a-re''a, 510.
 Cæsarion (sē-zā're-on), 310.
 Cairo, 580; university at, 584.
 Ca-la'bri-a, 2, n. 1.
 Caledonia, 362, 436.
 Calendar, Julian, 300; Gregorian, 300, n. 11.
 Ca-lig'u-la, reign, 339-341.
 Cā'lip's, 575 and n. 3.
 Cam'e-ri''um, 341.
 Ca-mil'lus. See *Furius*.
 Campagna (kām-pän'yä), 466.
- Campania, 2.
 Campanians, mercenaries seize town of Messana, 143, n. 3.
 Cam'pus Mar'ti-us, 54.
 Can'næ, battle of, 169-171; events after, 171.
 Cantons of early Latium, 39-41.
 Canuleian law, 90.
 Can'u-le''i-us, Gaius, tribune, 90, 91.
 Cap'i-tol-inc Hill, 43.
 Capitoline temple, location, 50; burned, 255; rebuilt, 348; robbed of trophies by Vandals, 446; description, 457, n. 2.
 Ca'pre-æ, island, 337.
 Cap'u-a, revolts from Rome, 172; Hannibal's winter quarters, 173; fall of, 174; as a prefecture, 236, n. 8.
 Car'a-cal'lla, emperor, reign, 374-376; confers citizenship upon all free men of the empire, 375.
 Ca-rac'ta-cus, 343.
 Carbo, Gnæus Papirius, consul, 255.
 Carloman, king of Franks, 589.
 Carthage, location, 142; empire of, 139; government and religion, 140; compared with Rome, 140-142; navy at beginning of Punic wars, 142; Truceless War, 158; prosperous condition just before Third Punic War, 200; destruction, 202-204; Gaius Gracchus founds colony on site, 221; becomes capital of Vandal empire, 435; destroyed by the Saracens, 576.
 Carthage, New, 159.

- Carthaginians, their empire in Spain, 159; unpromising character of their civilization, 204.
- Ca'rus, emperor, 379.
- Cas'si-us, Gaius, conspirator, 301; death, 308.
- Cassius, Spu'ri-us, renews the Latin alliance, 71; his agrarian proposals, 73-75; his martyrdom, 75.
- Catacombs, 389.
- Cat'i-li'na, Lu'ci-us Ser'gi-us, in the Sullan proscription, 256; conspiracy of, 282; his death, 283.
- Catiline. See *Catilina*.
- Cato, Marcus Porcius, the Censor, 195-199; military record, 196; civil life, 197; attitude toward Greek culture, 197; advice touching slaves, 198; counsels the destruction of Carthage, 200.
- Cato, Marcus Porcius, the Younger, exiled, 286; his suicide, 296.
- Ca-tul'lus, poet, 485.
- Cat'u-lus, C. Lutatius, consul, 153; Q. Lutatius, consul, 265.
- Cau'dine Forks, humiliation of Romans at, 121.
- Cau'di-um. See *Caudine Forks*.
- Ce'ler, Petronius, 463, n. 5.
- Celt'i-be''ri-ans, 205.
- Celts, Christianity among, 539.
- Censors, creation of office, 91, 92; functions and duties, 92; wide range of authority, 92, n. 10; tabulated facts respecting, 110; powers absorbed by Augustus, 317, 318.
- Censorship, office practically abolished by Sulla, 260.
- Census, how often taken, 92, n. 9; of the year 265 B.C., 141, n. 8; table, 333.
- Century, unit of military organization, 53.
- Cer-ci'na, island, 252.
- Ce'ri-a'llis, Roman general, 348.
- Cervetri (cher-~~va~~'tree). See *Cere*.
- Chær'o-ne''a, battle at, 254, n. 7.
- Chal'ce-don, battle of, 394.
- Châlons (shâ'lon'), battle of, 436.
- Charlemagne (shar'le-mân). See *Charles the Great*.
- Charles the Great, accession, 589; wars, 590, 591; restores the Empire in the West, 591; death, 594; services to civilization, 594.
- Charles Martel, 579.
- Chil'de-ric, last Merovingian king, 588.
- Chinese Wall, the, 419, n. 2.
- Chlodwig. See *Clovis*.
- Chos'ro-es, king of Persia, 565, 566.
- Christ, birth, 331; crucifixion, 338.
- Christianity, first preached, 338; gains adherents from the higher classes, 354; under Trajan, 359; martial spirit enters the Church, 392-394; made in effect state religion by Constantine, 394; effects upon, of imperial patronage, 395, 406; as an element of strength in the imperial government, 403; state of the Church at Julian's accession, 405; destroyed the unity of the Græco-Roman world, 408; its morality borrowed by Julian, 410; one of the most vital elements in the

- empire, 415; heresy and idolatry suppressed by Theodosius and Gratian, 421-424; its triumph under Theodosius and Gratian, 423-425; represents a new moral force, 426; influence in suppressing the gladiatorial combats, 428; effects of monasticism upon the population of the empire, 447; effects of doctrines on the military spirit, 449; on the civic virtues, 453; effects of sectarian quarrels on the fortunes of the empire, 453; as an element in general history, 528; among the German races, 536-541; reaction upon, of Teutonic barbarism, 540. See *Christians*.
- Christians. the persecution of, under Nero, 345; under Domitian, 352; under Marcus Aurelius, 365; motives of these persecutions, 365; the Christian legion, 367; persecutions under Diocletian, 386-389; number at this time, 388; status under Julian, 408-410; teachers excluded from the schools, 409; name first applied to converts at Antioch, 412.
- Chrys'os-tom, Church Father, 505.
- Cicero, Marcus Tullius, his prosecution of Verres, 274; First Oration against Catiline, 283; banished from Rome, 286; proscribed, 306; death, 307; as an orator, 496; his letters, 497.
- Ci-lic'i-a, rendezvous of pirates, 278; government organized, 282, n. 5.
- Cim'bri, the, 226-229.
- Cin'cin-na''tus, Lucius Quinc'ti-us, legend of, 80.
- Cin'e-as, minister of Pyrrhus, 130.
- Cinna. See *Cornelius*.
- Cir-ce'i-i (cir-se'ye), 251.
- Circus, games of the, 35, 516.
- Cir'cus Max'i-mus, location, 51; description, 458.
- Cisalpine Gaul, inhabitants, admitted to the city, 299, n. 10.
- Citizenship, Roman, privileges of, 21; rights bestowed in instalments, 22, 23, n. 5; definition of, 23, n. 5; Rome's liberal policy in conferring upon aliens, 44; citizens enjoying Cærite rights, 111, 112; dual citizenship of the burghers of *municipia*, 115; Gaius Gracchus proposes that Latins be made citizens, 221; status of citizens as compared with aliens, 235; demanded by the Italians, 238; secured by them as result of the Social War, 241; conferred upon Latin towns of Transpadane Gaul, 241, 242; given inhabitants of Cisalpine Gaul, 299, n. 10; Cæsar's liberality in conferring upon provincials, 299; conferred by Caracalla upon all free inhabitants of the empire, 375.
- City-state, Rome as a, 17.
- Ci-vi'lis, Claudius, 348.
- Civitates fœderatæ*. See *Italian allies*.
- Clan. See *Gens*.
- Classes, the five Servian, 51.
- Claudius. emperor, reign, 341-344:

- admits Gallic nobility to Roman senate, 341; conquest of Britain, 343; Claudian aqueduct, 343; his death, 344.
- Claudius, Appius, father-in-law of Tiberius Gracchus, 216.
- Claudius, Appius, Cæcus, 125; counsels Romans not to treat with victorious foe, 130.
- Claudius, Appius, decemvir, 84; his misconduct, 87; suicide, 88.
- Claudius, Publius, consul, 151.
- Clement of Alexandria, Church Father, 505.
- Clement of Rome, Church Father, 505.
- Cleon, Athenian demagogue, 169, n. 7.
- Cleopatra, Cæsar secures for her the throne of Egypt, 296; meets Mark Antony, 308; at the battle of Actium, 309; her death, 311.
- Clients, dependents of family, 14; relation to the gens, 14, n. 10; members of the plebeian order, 22, n. 4; of the plebeian assembly, 82.
- Clo-a'ca Max'i-ma, 48 and n. 7.
- Clovis, king of the Franks, his reign, 531, 532; his conversion, 537.
- Clusium, 8; besieged by Gauls, 97.
- Clyde, Frith of, 352.
- Co'cles, Ho-ra'ti-us, legend of, 60.
- Code, the, of Justinian, 509.
- Coemptio*, 12, n. 8.
- Col'la-ti'nus, Tar-quin'i-us, consul, 64.
- Colleges, sacred, 32.
- Colline, city district, 52, n. 10.
- Colline Gate, battle at, 255.
- Colonies, Latin, why 'so called, 134; rights of colonists, 134; curtailment of privileges, 134, n. 7; status of settlers in, compared to that of settlers in a territory of the United States, 135; number at time of Second Punic War, 135; influence in spreading Roman culture, 135; list of, 137; in the Social War, 240, 241.
- Colonies, Roman, rights and privileges, 133 and n. 5; table of, 138; in the Social War, 241, n. 6.
- Co'los-se'um, origin of name, 350; description, 460.
- Co-mi'ti-a centuriata*, outgrowth of Servian reforms, 54 and n. 3; manner of voting in, 54; tabulated facts respecting, 108.
- *curiata*, functions of, 19; a non-representative body, 20; tabulated facts respecting, 108.
- *tributa*, patricio-plebeian assembly, first appearance, 90; tabulated facts respecting, 108.
- Co-mi'ti-um*, the, 49.
- Commerce of early Rome, 45, 46.
- Commercium*. See *Jus commercii*.
- Com'mo-dus, emperor, reign, 371.
- Con-cil'i-um tributum plebis*, origin, 82; its resolutions given the force of law, 88; tabulated facts concerning, 108.
- Concord, temple of, 105, 223.
- Confarreatio*, 11, n. 7.
- Connubium*. See *Jus connubii*.
- Constans, emperor, 405.

Constantine the Great, reign, 391-404; defeats Maxentius at the Milvian Bridge, 392; makes the cross his standard, 392; defeats Licinius at Adrianople and Chalcedon, 394; grants toleration to Christians, 394; recognizes Sabbath as a rest-day, 395; summons council of Nicæa, 396; founds Constantinople, 396; reasons for transfer of the capital, 397-399; reorganizes the government, 400; separates civil and military powers, 400, 401; court, 402; character, 403; sacrifices offered before his statues, 404.

Constantine, son of preceding, 405.

Constantine VI., 502.

Constantinople, founded, 396; advantages of situation, 397-399; services to civilization, 568; besieged by the Saracens, 577.

Constantius I., as Cæsar, 385; as emperor, 390, 391; II., 405.

Consuls, first chosen, 62; original powers, 62; immunity from prosecution, 64; authority restricted by the *Lex Valeria*, 66; tabulated facts respecting, 109; clothed with dictatorial powers, 283 and n. 6; term of office shortened, 318, n. 3.

Consulship, made illegal to hold successive years, 261; Sulla provides that entrance to, shall be through quæstorship and prætorship, 261; age of eligibility to, 261, n. 7.

Cora, 120.

Cordova, 578, 580.

Cor-fin'i-um, 240.

Corinth, defies Rome, 191; its destruction, 191; why destroyed, 192.

Co'ri-o-la'nus, Gaius Marcius, legend of, 76.

Co-ri'o-li, Volscian city, 76, n. 3.

Corn, free distribution of, 272; in time of Augustus, 327; Augustus restricts the number receiving the dole, 327, n. 5; evils of the practice, 523. See *Corn laws*.

Cor-ne'li-a, mother of the Gracchi, 211; her monument, 223.

Cornelians, the, 257.

Cornelius Cinna, Lucius, consul, 252.

Corn laws, the Gracchan, 219.

Cor'pus Ju'ris Ci-vi'lis, 509-511; its influence, 510.

Corsica, island, relation to Italy, 3; province, 155.

Cor'un-ca'ni-i, the, 341.

Cotta, L. Aurelius, prætor, 272, n. 7.

Council, first, of church, 396.

Crassus, Marcus Licinius, defeats the gladiators, 269, 270; elected consul, 270; his great wealth, how gained, 284, n. 7; enters the First Triumvirate, 285; his Parthian campaign, 290; death, 291.

Crem'e-ra River, 78.

Cre-mo'na Colony, 158.

Cræsus, king of Lydia, 246.

Ctes'i-phon, 357, 413.

Curia, 16; number of curies in early Rome, 17, 43.

Cu'ri-a''ti-i, 59.
 Cu'ri-o, G. Scribonius, 295.
 Currency of Rome, 132, n. 4.
 Curtius, Marcus, legend of, 28, n. 9.
 Curule (kū'rul) offices, 110.
 Cyb'e-le, goddess, 37.
 Cyn'os-ceph'a-læ, battle of, 186.

Dacia reduced to a province by Trajan, 355, 356.

Dacians exact promise of tribute from Rome, 352.

Däg'o-bêrt I., king of the Franks, 532, n.

Danube, the, bridged by Trajan, 356; crossed by the Goths, 417.

Debtor, Livy's picture of, 68; provisions regarding, in Twelve Tables, 85.

De-cem'virs, first board, 83-87; second, 87; their misrule and overthrow, 87, 88.

Decius, emperor, 378.

Decius Mus, Publius, consul, devotes himself for his army, 120.

Decius Mus, son of preceding, devotes himself, 127.

Decuriones, the, 385, n. 8.

Delatores. See *Delators*.

De-la'tors, 336.

Dêlps, sacked by pirates, 277; inherits the trade of Corinth, 192, 193.

Democracy supersedes monarchy in Græco-Roman world, 56, n. 5.

Den-ta'tus, Manius Curius, 131, . 196.

Des-i-de'ri-us, king of the Lombards, 590.

Dictator, his powers, 63; how

nominated, 63, 64, n. 10; appeals from his decisions, 89, n. 3; tabulated facts respecting office, 109; term first made indefinite in Sulla's case, 258; consuls clothed with dictatorial powers, 283 and n. 6.

Dioceses, 400, 401.

Di'o-cle'ti-an, emperor, reign, 381-390; governmental reforms, 381-384; administrative system, 384-386; persecution of the Christians, 386-389; his abdication, 389; his villa at Salona, 473.

Divination, 32.

Divorce, frequency of, 328.

Dominus, title assumed by Diocletian, 383.

Domitian, emperor, reign, 351-354.

Do'mi-til'la, 354.

Draco, 84, n. 5.

Drama, Roman, 480-484.

Drep'a-na, sea fight at, 151, n. 7.

Drusus, son of Tiberius, 337.

Drusus, stepson of Augustus, 322.

Drusus, Marcus Livius, 222.

Drusus, Marcus Livius, son of preceding, 238; his assassination, 239; his character, 240.

Du-il'tius, Gaius, consul, gains victory at Mylæ, 146, 147.

Du-um'vi-rī, 385, n. 8.

Dy-ra'chi-um, 295.

E'bro River, 160.

Ec-no'mus, naval battle near promontory of, 148.

E-des'sa, 378, n. 1.

- Education, under Julian, 409; statement respecting, among the Romans, 512; exemptions of teachers, 512; Roman youth in schools of Greece, 513.
- Egbert, king of Wessex, 533.
- Egypt, condition about 200 B.C., 183; its grain trade, 185; made a Roman province, 311; conquered by the Arabs, 575.
- El'a-gab'a-lus, emperor, 376.
- Elbe (ēlb) River, 321, 322.
- Elephants, use in war, 149.
- El'eu-sin'i-an mysteries, 156, n. 1.
- E-leu'sis, 156, n. 1.
- En'ni-us, poet, 483.
- Ep'ic-te'tus, the Stoic, 503.
- Eq'ui-tes (ēk'wī-tēz). See *Knights*.
- Esquiline, city district, 52, n. 10.
- E-tru'ri-a, location, 2; southern part Romanized, 96.
- E-trus'cans, their early civilization, 8; decline of their power, 115; suffer defeat at Vadimonian Lake, 124 and n. 2.
- Eu-dox'i-a, empress, 439.
- Eu-ge'ni-us, emperor, 424.
- Eu'me-nēs, king of Pergamus, 187.
- Eu'no-us, leader of slaves in Servile War, 209.
- Euric, king of Visigoths, 530.
- Eu-se'bi-us, Church Father, 505.
- Fa'bi-i, the, legend of, 77-80.
- Fabius Maximus, "the Delayer," 165-169.
- Fabius Maximus Gur'gēs, 128.
- Fabius Maximus Rul'i-a'nus, 124; compared with Alexander the Great, 125.
- Fabius, Quintus, ambassador to the Gauls, 97.
- Fabius, Quintus, ambassador to the Carthaginians, 160.
- Fa-bric'i-us, Roman statesman, 131.
- Fa-le'ri-i, Etruscan city, 111.
- Family, the Roman, 11-14; its place in Roman history, 15.
- Fasces (fās'sēz), the, 18; significance of the removal of the axe from, 67.
- Fav'o-ri'nus, rhetorician, 363.
- Festivals. See *Sacred games*.
- Fetiales. See *Heralds*.
- Fi-de'næ, Etruscan stronghold, 93; fall of amphitheatre at, 338.
- Flam'i-nes, 25, n. 6.
- Flaminian Way. See *Via Flaminia*.
- Flam'i-ni'nus, Roman general, 186.
- Flamininus, L. Quintius, senator, 197.
- Fla-min'i-us, Gaius, Roman general, 165.
- Flavian Age, 347.
- Forth, Frith of, 352.
- Forum, the Roman, in time of the kings, 48-50.
- Franks, the, form first settlement in Gaul, 435; under the Merovingians, 531; their conversion, 537; importance of this event, 538.
- Fratres Arvales, 32, n. 3.
- Frit'i-gern, Visigothic leader, 420.
- Fron-ti'nus, 505.
- Fulvia, wife of Mark Antony, 307.

Funeral, provisions of Twelve Tables respecting, 86.

Furius Camillus, Marcus, dictator, takes city of Veii, 94; ransoms Rome with steel, 99; dissuades the Romans from abandoning their city, 100; dedicates temple to Concord, 105.

Gabinian law. See *Lex Gabinia*.

Ga-bin'i-us, A., tribune, 277.

Gaius, grandson of Augustus, 330.

Gaius, jurist, 508.

Gaius Cæsar (Caligula), emperor, reign, 339-341.

Galba, emperor, 347.

Ga-le'ri-us, Cæsar, 388, 389; emperor, 390, 391.

Gal'li-a Cis'al-pi''na, geographical situation, 1; origin of name, 2.

Gal'li-a Nar'bō-nen''sis, 286.

Gas'cons, the, 590.

Gaul, conquest of, by Cæsar, 286-288; results of the Gallic wars, 288; Romanization of, 289; native tribes given local self-government, 289, n. 3. See *Gauls*.

Gauls, early settlement in North Italy, 2, 9; sack Rome, 96-100; besiege Clusium, 97; victory over the Romans near the Allia, 97; besiege the Capitol, 99; Rome's war with, between First and Second Punic Wars, 156-158; join Hannibal, 165.

Geiseric, Vandal leader, 439.

Gelimer, king of Vandals, 561.

Ge'lon, king of Syracuse, 76.

Gens, 15, 16; number of gentes in early Rome, 43.

Gen'ser-ic. See *Geiseric*.

Geography, influence upon the fortunes of Rome, 45.

Ger-man'i-cus, nephew of the emperor Tiberius, retakes eagles lost by Varus, 335.

Germans. See *Barbarians*.

Ge'ta, emperor, 374.

Gladiatorial combats, given by Augustus, 327; naval spectacle in reign of Claudius, 343; Nero descends into the arena, 344; Commodus as a gladiator, 372; their suppression, 428; attitude of Christians towards, 429; general description of the, shows, 517-520.

Gladiators, war of the, 269.

Glaucia. See *Servilius*.

Golden Horn, 398.

Golden House, Nero's, 346, 471.

Gordian, emperor, 378.

Goths, Eastern. See *Ostrogoths*.

— Western. See *Visigoths*.

Gracchan constitution, essentials of, restored by Pompey, 271-273. See *Tiberius* and *Gaius Gracchus*.

Grac'chus, Gaius, his noble birth, 211; motives and aims, 218; reform measures, 219; downfall and death, 221, 222.

Gracchus, Tiberius, early life, 211; his agrarian law, 212; resorts to unconstitutional means, 214; defends his action, 215; his violent death, 216; effects of his land law, 217.

Gratian, emperor, 417; associates Theodosius with himself in the

- government, 421; refuses to receive the insignia of the office of *Pontifex Maximus*, 421; removes the statue of Victory from senate chamber, 422; disestablishes the sacred colleges, 423.
- Great fire at Rome in Nero's reign, 344.
- Greece, looks towards the east, 6; Rome's first intervention in its affairs, 156; becomes a Roman province, 193; how "ruin averted ruin," 193; reaction upon Rome, 194; enthralled her captor, 195; effects of conquest by Rome on Roman literature, 484.
- Greek fire, 577.
- Greeks, settlement in South Italy, 9, 10; contend with Carthaginians for mastery of Sicily, 142; liberty of Greek cities restored by Flamininus, 186; join Mithradates, 248.
- Gregory II., pope, 550.
- Guadalquivir (*gwa-dal-ké-vēr'*), river, 580.
- Habeas Corpus Act, 67, n. 2.
- Hadrian, emperor, reign, 360-364; villa at Tibur, 473; Mausoleum, 475, 562.
- Hadrian Wall in Britain, 360-362; left unguarded, 436.
- Ha-mil'car Barca, Carthaginian general, 152; in Spain, 159.
- Hannibal, as a youth, 159; attacks Saguntum, 160; marches from Spain, 162; passage of the Pyrenees, 163; passage of the Rhone, 163; passage of the Alps, 163; in Italy, 164-178; his stratagem, 168; winters in Capua, 173; before Rome, 174; at bay in Bruttium, 178; defeat at Zama, 178; as a statesman, 189; exile and death, 189, 190.
- Hanno, Carthaginian general, 153.
- Ha-rus'pi-ces, art of the, 32.
- Has'dru-bal, brother of Hannibal, in Spain, 159; at the Metaurus, 176-178.
- Hasdrubal, son-in-law of Hamilcar, 159.
- Hegira (*hé-jī'râ*), the, 572.
- Helvetians, 287.
- Hengist, Jutish chief, 539.
- Heptarchy, Anglo-Saxon, 533.
- Her'a-cle'a, battle of, 129.
- Her'a-cli'us, Eastern emperor, 565-567; abandons Syria to the Saracens, 575.
- Heralds, college of, 32, 35.
- Her'cu-la'ne-um, 350.
- Hercules, Pillars of, 139.
- Hermann. See *Arminius*.
- Hermits, 541.
- Hernicans form alliance with Rome and the Latin towns, 71.
- Her'u-l, the, 441.
- Hi'e-ro, king of Syracuse, 144, 172.
- Him'er-a, battle of, 143, n. 2.
- Hip'po-drome at Constantinople, 399.
- Hira, Mount, 572.
- His-pa'ni-a, Citerior, 178, n. 4; Ulterior, 178, n. 4.

Ho-no'ri-us, emperor, 426; suppresses gladiatorial games, 429.
 Horace, poet, 326, 490.
 Ho-ra'ti-i, combat with Curiatii, 59.
 Horatius, Marcus, consul, 88.
 Hortensian law, 128, n. 6.
 Hor-ten'si-us, jurist, 494.
 Hos-til'i-us, Tullus, king of Rome, 46.
 Hungary, Huns of Attila settle in, 438, n. 9.
 Huns, drive Goths across the Danube, 419; defeated at Châlons, 437; part taken by, in founding the Hungarian state, 438, n. 9.
 Hy-ge'i-a, temple of, 199.
 I'a-pyg'i-ans, 6, n. 3.
 Iconoclasts, war of the, 549.
 Ilium, 203.
 Illyrian corsairs punished by Rome, 156.
 Il-lyr'i-cum, 286.
Imperator, the title, 317.
Im-pe'ri-um, 63.
 Institutes of Justinian, 509.
 Intercession, consular rights of, 62.
 Intermarriage between patricians and plebeians, 21.
Intèrrèx, 18.
 Iona (é-ô'na) monastery, 540.
 Irene (î-reen'), empress, 592.
 I'sar, river, 163.
 Isère (ē-zâr'). See *Isar*.
 Isis, 37.
 Iş'lam. See *Mohammedanism*.
 I-ta'li-a, application of the name, 1.
 Italian allies, status before the

Social War, 236, 237; how enrolled in the tribes, 244, n. 12. See *Social War*.
 Italians, chief states, 6.
 I-tal'i-ca. See *Corfinium*.
 Italy, divisions, 2; geography, 1-6; mountain system, 3; rivers, 4; the front of the land, 5; geographical relation to Greece, 5, 6 and n. 2; its early inhabitants, 6-10; united under Rome, 132; becomes a province of the Eastern empire, 441.
 Ja-nic'u-lum, the, 34, n. 4.
 Ja'nus, Roman deity, 30; doors of temple closed in reign of Augustus, 325, 331.
 Jax-ar'tes river, 579.
 Jerome, Church Father, 506.
 Jerusalem, taken by Pompey, 281; by Titus, 347; made site of Roman colony, 363; Julian's attempt to restore temple at, 411.
 Jews, revolt of, in reign of Hadrian, 362, 363; final dispersion of, 363; Julian's relations to, 411. See *Jerusalem*.
 Josephus, historian, 347.
 Jovian, emperor, concludes treaty with Persian king, 414; restores Christianity, 414.
 Ju'ge-rum, 103, n. 1.
 Ju-gur'tha, war with Rome, 224-226.
 Julia, daughter of Augustus, 330.
 Julian Alps, 4.
 Julian line of emperors, 346.
 Julian the Apostate, reign, 405-414; state of Church at his

- accession, 405; his religion, 407; means used to effect the pagan restoration, 408; attempts to rebuild temple at Jerusalem, 411; campaign against the Persians, 412; death, 413.
- Ju-li-a'nus, Did'i-us, 373.
- Ju'li, 341.
- Juno, Roman goddess, 29; Etruscan, 94.
- Ju-no'ni-a, burgess colony, 221.
- Jupiter Latiaris, 41.
- Jupiter Tonans, 367.
- Jura Mountains, 287.
- Jury courts, in hands of knights, 220; Sulla provides that judges shall be selected from senators, 259; reconstituted by Pompey, 272 and n. 7.
- Jus auxilii*, of the plebeian tribune, 69; *commercii*, defined, 21; enjoyed by plebeians in early Rome, 23; *connubii*, defined, 21; withdrawn from Latin colonies, 134, n. 7; *honorum*, defined, 21; *imaginum*, defined, 91; *provocationis*, defined, 21; *suffragii*, defined, 21.
- Justin Martyr, 365.
- Justinian Code, 508, 563.
- Justinian, Eastern emperor, era of, 560; reign, 561-565; recovers Africa, 561; recovers Italy, 562; his code, 508, 563; calamities of his reign, 563.
- Juvenal, satirist, 493.
- Kaaba (kâ-â'bâ), 571.
- Khediye (kâ'dêv'), 427, n. 1.
- Kings, the Roman, their early power, 18; names transmitted by legend, 46; expelled from Rome, 56. See *Tarquins*.
- Knights, 95, n. 1; character of the order, 220, administration of criminal courts placed in their hands, 220; pervert justice in the jury courts, 239, n. 1; in control of these courts, 272 and n. 7.
- Koran (kô'ran or kô-rân'), the, its doctrine, 574; its influence, 581, 582; its precepts touching marriage, slavery, use of wine, etc., 584, 585.
- Kô-reish, Arabian tribe, 571, 572.
- Lab'a-rum*, 392, n. 10; removed from the army, 409; restored, 414.
- La-cin'i-um, promontory of, 129.
- Læ'ti-us, Gaius, orator, 494.
- Lands, public, management of, 71-73; monopolization by a few families, 446. See *Ager publicus* and *Agrarian laws*.
- Lares, cult. 31; worship interdicted, 424; secretly practised, 425.
- Lat-i-fun'-ti-a*, growth, 223.
- Latin colonies. See *Colonies*.
- Latin Festival, 41.
- Latin League, in earliest times, 41; renewal of alliance with Rome, 71; dissolution, 120. See *Latins*.
- Latin rights, in what these consisted, 133; conferred by Vespasian upon Spanish cities. See *Colonies*.
- Latins, early institutions, 7; ethnic

- relationship, 7; throw off the Roman yoke, 66; revolt of Latin towns in 340 B.C., 117; how treated by Rome after the Latin War, 120; political status of, 235.
- La'ti-um, 2; before the rise of Rome, 39.
- Lau-ren'tum, 120.
- La-vin'i-a, legendary princess, 57.
- La-vin'i-um, 57.
- Law. See *Lex* and *Roman law*.
- Legacy hunting, 514.
- Legion, its normal strength and tactical formation in early times, 53; changes in formation, 95, n. 2; citizens without property enrolled, 229; changes in, made by Marius, 230, n. 4; size reduced by Constantine, 400.
- Lenormant (lē-nor'mōn') quoted, 479.
- Leo the Great, pope, turns Attila back, 438; intercedes for Rome with Geiseric, 439.
- Leo III., pope, 592, 593.
- Leo the Isaaurian, Eastern emperor, 550.
- Lep'i-dus, Marcus Aemil'i-us, his revolt, 264; his death, 265.
- Lepidus, Marcus Aemilius, son of preceding, the triumvir, aids Antony in his usurpation, 304; enters the Second Triumvirate, 305; receives the government of Africa, 306.
- Lex, Aurelia*, 272, n. 7; *frumentaria*, 219, n. 2; *Gabinia*, 277, n. 9, and 278; *Julia*, 241, n. 7; *Julia municipalis*, 299; *judi-*
- caria*, 220, n. 3; *Plautia Papiria*, 241, n. 8; *Pompeia*, 242, n. 9; *Sempronia*, 246, n. 5; *Valeria*, 66.
- Library, Alexandria, burned, 300, 301.
- Licinian laws, 103-105.
- Licinius, competitor for the imperial throne, 334.
- Li-cin'i-us, Gaius, tribune, 103.
- Lictors, attendants of the king, 18; consular, 62.
- Li-gu'ri-a, 1.
- Ligurians, 6, n. 3.
- Li'ris, the, 5.
- Literature, Roman, under Augustus, 325; relation to Greek models, 477, 478.
- Li-ter'num, 190.
- Iiv'i-us, Marcus, consul, 177.
- Livy, historian, mentioned, 326; his history, 498.
- Lombards, enter Italy, 532; king receives "iron crown" from the pope, 533; kingdom destroyed by Charles the Great, 533, 590; consequence of their conquest of Italy, 533.
- Lon-gi'nus, rhetorician, 379.
- Lu'can, poet, put to death by Nero, 346; his *Pharsalia*, 493, n. 10.
- Lu-ca'ni-a, 2.
- Lucanians, mentioned, 6; join Hannibal, 172.
- Lucca, 290.
- Lu'ce-rēs, tribe in early Rome, 43, n. 11.
- Lu-ce'ri-a, Apulian town, 141.
- Lu-cil'i-us, poet, 485.
- Lucius, grandson of Augustus, 330.

Lu-cre'ti-us, poet, 485.

Lu-cul'lus, Lucius Licinius, Sulla's lieutenant, 254; in Third Mithradatic War, 279, 280; superseded by Pompey, 280.

Lug-du-nen'sis, 289, n. 2.

Lu'per-cā'li-a, the, 32, n. 3.

Lu-pér'ci, guilds of the, 32, n. 3.

Lu'si-ta'ni-a, province, 321, n. 8.

Lusitanians, 205; invite Sertorius from Africa, 265.

Lustrum, 92, n. 9.

Luxury, Roman, 520-522.

Lyc'i-a given to the king of Pergamus, 187.

Macedonia, condition about 200 B.C., 182; organized as a province, 188.

Macedonian War, First, 175; Second, 185; Third, 188.

Ma-crí-nus, emperor, 376.

Mæ-ce'nas, patron of literature, 326, 486.

Magistrates, Roman, immunity from prosecution while in office, 64 and n. 11; tabulated facts respecting, 109, 110; order in which different offices were entered, 261, n. 7; ages of eligibility, 261, n. 7; under Augustus, 317.

Magna Charta, the Roman, 88.

Magna Græcia, origin of name, 2; effects of conquest by the Romans upon Roman literature, 481.

Mag-ne'si-a, battle of, 187.

Ma'go, brother of Hannibal, 170.

Magyars (möd'yors), 438, n. 9.

Ma-har'bal, Carthaginian general, 171.

Mamertine dungeon, 226.

Mam'er-tines, 143, n. 3.

Manilian law, 279, n. 2.

Manlius, Marcus, defends the capital, 99; champion of the plebeians, 102; condemnation, 102.

Manlius, Titus, consul, opposes demands of the Latins, 119; inflicts death penalty upon his son, 119; compared with Alexander the Great, 125.

Ma'mus, 12, n. 8.

Mar-cel'lus, Marcus Claudius, Roman general, 173.

Mar'co-man'i, 366.

Ma'ri-us, Gaius, in Jugurthine War, 226; destroys the Cimbri and Teutones, 227-229; fifth consulship, 228; confers Roman citizenship upon allies, 229; makes changes in the army, 229; attempts revolution, 231; suppresses disorder in Rome, 233; votive journey to Asia, 233; in the Social War, 241; contends with Sulla for command against Mithradates, 249; is proscribed, 250; his wanderings, 251; returns to Italy, 252; his proscription, 252; his seventh consulship, 253; his death, 253.

Marriage, forms among the Romans, 11, n. 7; intermarriage of patricians and plebeians prohibited by law of Twelve Tables, 90, n. 7; made legal by Canuleian law, 90; held in disesteem in later times, 447.

- Mars, god of war, 29.
 Marsians in the Social War, 240.
 Marsic War. See *Social War*.
 Martial, poet, 493.
 Mas'i-nis'sa, king of Numidia, 200, 201.
 Massilia, 295.
 Master of the horse, 64.
 Mau'ri-ta'ni-a, 321.
 Max-en'ti-us, competitor for the imperial throne, 392.
 Max-im'i-an, emperor, 385; abdication, 390.
 Max'i-min, emperor, 377.
 Maximus, emperor, 439.
 Mecca, 571, 573.
 Medina (mā-dē'na), 573.
 Merovingians, Frankish kings, 531, 532.
 Mer'ō-wig, Frankish chief, 531.
 Mesopotamia, province, acquired, 358; abandoned, 360.
 Mes-sa'na, town, 143, n. 3.
Metamorphoses, the, of Ovid, 491.
 Metaurus River, 4.
 Metaurus, battle of the, 177; a turning point in history, 204.
 Metellus, L. Cæcilius, consul, 149.
 Metellus, Quintus Cæcilius, tribune, 294.
 Metellus, Quintus Cæcilius, Pius, Roman general, 267, 268.
 Migration of the German tribes checked by Cæsar, 290.
 Military roads, construction begun, 125; description, 462-465.
 Military spirit, decline of, among the Romans, 449.
 Military system, Roman, modified by long siege of Veii, 94, 95. See *Army*.
 Milvian Bridge, battle at, 392.
 Minerva, goddess, 29.
 Min-tur'næ, 251.
 Mi-nu'ci-us, master of horse, 169.
 Mi-se'num, 502.
Misopogon, the, satire by the Emperor Julian, 413.
 Mith'rā, worship of, 37.
 Mith'ra-da'tes VI., Eupator, the Great, king of Pontus, his character, 247; orders massacre of Italians in Asia, 248; invades Europe, 248; first war against Rome, 253; sues for peace, 254; second war against Rome, 278, n. 1; third war, 278-281; his death, 281.
 Mithradatic War, First, 253; Second, 278, n. 1; Third, 278-281.
 Mæsia, province, 322; Dacians make inroads into, in reign of Domitian, 352.
 Mohammed, 571-574.
 Mohammedanism, its teachings, 574; conquests of Saracens, 575-579; dismemberment of caliphate, 579; civilization of Arabian Islam, 580-584; the good and the evil in Islam, 584.
 Monasticism, effects upon the empire, 447, 453; development of the system, 541; in the West, 542; services of, to civilization, 543-545.
 Money, coining forbidden to subject states, 132, n. 4; right to coin taken from Latin colonists, 134, n. 7.

Monte Cassino (mōn'tá kà-sē'nō),
543.

Monymentum Ancyrantum, 328, n.
6, and 331.

Morality in early Rome, 15; state
of morals in the later empire,
454.

Mō'sūl, city, 583, n. 8.

Mulvian Bridge. See *Milvian*.

Mum'mi-us, Lucius, consul, de-
stroys Corinth, 191; story of,
192; his triumph, 192.

Mun'da, battle of, 297, n. 7.

Municipal system, nature and be-
ginnings, 112-115; effects upon,
of the enfranchisement of the
Italians, 244, 245; grades of
municipia, 245, n. 3; the *Lex*
Julia municipalis, 299. See
Municipia.

Mu-ni-ci-pi-a, meaning and use of
the term, 112 and n. 5; number
increased as an outcome of the
Social War, 244; different grades
reduced to one, 245, n. 3; lose
self-government under later em-
perors, 384. See *Municipal*
system.

Mus. See *Decius*.

My'læ, naval battle near promon-
tory of, 146.

Næ'vi-us, poet, 482.

Naples harbor, 6.

Narbonensis. See *Gallia*.

Narses, commander, 562.

Na-si'ca. See *Scipio*.

Ne-ap'o-lis. See *Naples*.

Neoplatonists, 407.

Ne'pos, Cornelius, 497, n. 4.

Nero, emperor, reign, 344-346;
persecution of the Christians,
345; death, 346.

Nero, Gaius Claudius, consul, 177.

Nerva, emperor, reign, 354.

Ni-çæ'a, church council at, 396.

Nicholas I., pope, 546.

Nic'o-me'dēs III., king of Bithynia,
wills his kingdom to Roman
people, 279.

Nîmes (nēm), 465, n. 6.

N'o-men-clā-tor, 523.

Nor'i-cum province, 322.

Novels, the, of Justinian, 509.

Nu'ma, king of Rome, 46.

Nu-man'ti-a, destruction of, 205,
206.

Numantine War, 205.

Nu'mi-tor, king of Rome, 57.

Octavia, sister of Augustus, 490.

Octavius, Gaius, opposes Antony,
305; enters the Second Trium-
virate, 305; receives the govern-
ment of the West, 306; gives
up to the assassins his friend
Cicero, 306; at the battle of
Actium, 310; sole master of the
Roman world, 310; his reign,
315-332; character of his gov-
ernment, 315; reforms the ad-
ministration of the provinces,
319; rounds out the empire, 320;
population of the empire under
him, 324; its resources, 325;
literature and the arts during his
reign, 325; social life, 328; re-
ligious life, 328; his death and
apotheosis, 330; his tomb, 474;
his patronage of literature, 486.

Octavius, Gnæus, consul, 252.
 Octavius, Marcus, tribune, 214.
 Od'e-na'tus, prince of Palmyra, 379.
 Odoacer. See *Odoakar*.
 Od'o-va'kar, leader of the Heruli,
 441; rules in Italy as "patrician,"
 441.
 Omar, caliph, 575, n. 3.
 Om-mei'ades, 579, n. 5.
 O-pim'i-us, Lucius, consul, 222.
 Optimates, term defined, 211.
 Oracles, none at Rome, 32; the
 Delphian, 32; Romans consult
 the Delphian, during siege of
 Veii, 93.
 Oratory, Roman, 494-497.
 Or-chom'e-nus, battle at, 254, n. 7.
 Ordeals, 556.
 O-res'tēs, the Pannonian, places
 his son on the imperial throne,
 441; put to death, 441.
 Orient, condition of, about 200
 B.C., 181-185.
 Or'i-gen, Church Father, 505.
 Ostia, founding of, 46; pirates in
 the harbor of, 277.
 Ostrogoths, cross the Danube,
 419; reduced to obedience by
 Theodosius, 421; in Italy, 529.
 Othman, caliph, 575, n. 3.
 O'thō, emperor, 347.
 Otto I, the Great, 594.
 Ov'id, poet, 326, 491.

Pa'dus. See *Po*.

Pæs'tum. See *Posidonia*.

Paganism, ancient cults restored
 by Augustus, 329; relation of
 pagan cults to morality, 410,
 411; restoration of, under Ju-

lian, 408-411; removal of statue
 of Victory from senate cham-
 ber, 421; prohibition of pagan
 cults, 422; abolished by Roman
 senate, 424; "no longer any pa-
 gans," 425; effect upon, of sack
 of Rome by the barbarians, 433.
Paganus, how the term acquired
 religious significance, 425.
 Palaces on the Palatine, 471;
 Nero's Golden House, 471.
 Pal'a-tine (tīn) hill, 42.
 Palmyra, fall of, 379.
Pandects, the, 509.
 Pan-no'nia, province, 322.
 Pa-nor'mus, battle of, 149.
 Pantheon, the, 458.
 Papacy, rise of, 545-550; origin
 of its temporal power, 549, 589.
 Pa-pin'ian, jurist, 374, 508.
 Papirius, senator, 99.
 Papirius Cursor, Lucius, consul,
 123.
 Parthians, defeat Crassus, 290,
 291; their empire overthrown,
 405, n. 2.
Pa'ter-fa-mil'i-as, 11; power of, 12.
Patres, 20.
Pā'tri-a pō-tēs'tas, 12, n. 8; provi-
 sion touching, in Twelve Tables,
 85, 86.
 Patricians, term explained, 20; in
 early Rome, 22.
 Paul the Apostle, 67 and n. 3;
 victim of the Neronian persecu-
 tion, 345.
 Paulus, jurist, 508.
 Pau'lus, Lu'cius Æ-mil'i-us, con-
 sul, 169, n. 7.
 Paulus, Lucius Æmilius, son of

preceding, victor at Pydna, 188.
 Pausanias, the traveller, 194.
Pax Romānā. See *Roman Peace*.
 Pei-ræ'us, besieged by Sulla, 253.
 Pe-na'tes, household gods, 31; worship interdicted, 424; secretly practised, 425.
 Per'ga-mus, kingdom of, 187.
 Per'seus, king of Macedonia, 188.
 Persian Empire, New, established, 405, n. 2; Julian's campaign against, 412; overthrown by Arabs, 575.
 Per'si-us, poet, 493.
 Per'ti-nax, emperor, 373.
 Pestilence, effects on the population of the empire, 448.
 Peter the Apostle, martyr at Rome, 345. See *St. Peter*.
 Petronius, 515, n. 3.
 Phæ'drus, 505.
 Phar'na-cēs, 281; defeated by Cæsar, 296.
Phar-sa'li-a, the, of Lucan, 493, n. 10.
 Phar'sa-lus, battle of, 295.
 Philip, emperor, 378.
 Philip V., king of Macedonia, forms alliance with Hannibal, 172; in First Macedonian War, 175; in Second, 185, 186.
 Phi-lip'pi, battle of, 307.
 Pi-ce'num, 2.
 Pictor, Fabius, 497, n. 4.
 Picts ravage province of Britain, 417.
 Pippin II., becomes king of the Franks, 588; makes donation of lands to the pope, 589.

Piracy in early times, 45, 46.
 Pirates, in the Mediterranean, 275-278; punished by Pompey, 278.
 Pis-to'ri-a, battle at, 283.
 Placentia, colony, 158.
 Plau'ti-us, Roman general, 343.
 Plautus, dramatist, 483.
 Plebeian assembly. See *Concilium tributum plebis*.
 Plebeians (ple-bē'yans), origin of the order, 22; their status in early Rome, 23; when properly called citizens, 23, n. 5; significance to them of the Servian reforms, 54; become active citizens, 55; first secession, 67-69; marriage with patricians made legal, 90; secure admission to the consulship, 104; to the dictatorship and other offices, 104, n. 4; import of admission to full citizenship, 105; third secession, 128, n. 6.
Pleb-is-ſi'ta, 88.
 Pliny the Elder, his life and work, 502, 503; his death, 350.
 Pliny the Younger, letter to Trajan, 360; literary notice, 503.
 Po River, 4.
 Pœ'ni, 142, n. 1.
 Pol-len'ti-a, battle at, 427.
 Po-lyb'i-us, the historian, his account of the First Punic War, 153; at the sack of Corinth, 191; his opinion of his countrymen, 193; on the destruction of Carthage, 203.
 Pol'y-carp, Church Father, 365.
 Pompeii (pom-pē'yī or pom-pā'yee)

- destroyed, 350; excavations at, 350, n. 1.
- Pompey, Gnæ'us, the Great, joins Sulla as a volunteer, 255; sent into Spain against Sertorius, 267; settles the affairs of Spain, 268; annihilates band of gladiators, 270; elected consul, 270; restores the Gracchan constitution, 271-273; his violation of constitutional rule, 273; given command against the pirates, 277; chastises them, 278; given charge of war against Mithradates, 280; conquers Syria, 280; takes Jerusalem, 281; his triumph, 282; how he increased his patronage, 285; enters the First Triumvirate, 285; receives the government of the two Spains, 291; rivalry between him and Cæsar, 292; civil war, 293-295; his death, 295.
- Pompey, Gnæus, son of the preceding, 297, n. 7.
- Pompey, Sextus, 297, n. 7.
- Pom-po'ni-us, 508.
- Pons Su-blic'i-us*, 34, n. 4.
- Pontifex Maximus*, 34; powers of, conferred by senate upon Augustus, 317.
- Pontiffs, college of, 32, 34.
- Põn'tine (or põn'tin) marshes, 300.
- Pontius Gavius, Samnite general, entraps Roman army at Caudium, 122; put to death, 128.
- Popes. See *Papacy*.
- Pop-lic'o-la. See *Publius Valerius*.
- Population of Rome, under Augustus and in the reign of Honorius, 327, n. 4; decline of, in later empire, 446; cause of the decline, 447-449.
- Por'ci-i, the, 341.
- Por-sen'na, Lars, king of Clusium, 60, 66.
- Por'tus Ro-ma'nus*, 343.
- Po-sei'don, Græek god, 156, n. 2.
- Pos'i-do''ni-a, 9.
- Posilipo (põ-sē-lē'põ), grotto, 464.
- Possessio*, form of land tenure, 73 and n. 10.
- Pos-tu'mi-us, Aulus, dictator, 66.
- Postumius, S., consul, 121.
- Præ-nes'te, 120, 235, n. 7.
- Prætorian guard, corps created by Augustus, 337, n. 4; these soldiers sell the empire, 373; disbanded by S. Severus, 374.
- Præ'tors, original title of the consuls, 62; creation of the office, 104; tabulated facts respecting, 109; as provincial magistrates, 154; number raised to six, 178, n. 4; number raised to eight, 259, n. 3.
- Prē'fect, prætorian, 401.
- Prē'fec-tures, the government of, under the republic, 236, n. 8; the subdivisions of the later empire, 400.
- Priam, 203.
- Princeps*, the title, 317.
- Probus, emperor, 379.
- Proconsuls, or governors of provinces, 154, n. 9.
- Pro-per'ti-us, poet, 492.
- Pro-põn'tis, 184.
- Pro-præ'tors as provincial magistrates, 154, n. 9.

Proscriptions, of Sulla, 255; of the triumvirs, 306.

Provinces, first Roman province, 154; misgovernment of, 279, 280; list of provinces organized under the republic, 313; under the empire, 314; imperial provinces, 319; senatorial provinces, 320; government of, reformed by Augustus, 319; number increased by Diocletian, 400; by Constantine, 400.

Provincial system, Roman, its beginnings, 155; status of provincials, 155; how a province was governed, 154. See *Provinces*.

Public assemblies. See *Comitia*.

Public lands at the time of the Gracchi, 209-211.

Pub-lil'i-us, Volero, tribune, 82.

Punic War, First, 142-152.

— Second, 162-180.

— Third, 200-204.

Pu-te'o-li, 262.

Pyd'na, battle of, 188.

Pyr'rhus, takes command of the Tarentines, 129; campaigns in Italy, 129, 130; in Sicily, 131; defeated at Beneventum, 131; returns to Epirus, 131.

Quæs'tors (kwēs'tōrs), number raised from two to four and plebeians chosen, 89, n. 5; tabulated facts respecting, 110; number raised to twenty, 259; ex-quæs'tors given seats in the senate, 259.

Quinqueremes (kwīn'kwē-rēms),

first fleet of, built by the Romans, 144; number lost by Romans and Carthaginians in First Punic War, 152 and n. 8.

Quin-til'i-an, 504.

Quirinal hill, 42.

Quirites (kwī-rī-tēz), 16.

Rad'a-gai'sus, 429.

Ræ'ti-a, province, 322.

Ram'a-dān'', Moslem fast, 574.

Ram'nēs, the, 41, 43.

Ravenna, exarchate of, 563.

Re-gil'us, Lake, battle at, 66.

Reg'u-lus, A-til'i-us, Roman general, made prisoner by Carthaginians, 148; as an ambassador, 150; legend of his death, 150.

Religion, Roman, 25-38; no priesthood at Rome, 25 and n. 6; place in the history of Rome, 25; Roman gods contrasted with Greek divinities, 26; utilitarian character of the religion, 27; expiatory sacrifices, 28; legal character of the religion, 28; chief deities, 29, 30; defects of the system, 36-38.

Re'mus, 57.

Representation, principle of, unknown to the Romans, 20.

Rex sacrorum, 62, n. 9.

Rhe'a Silvia, vestal, 57.

Rhe'gi-um, 143, n. 3.

Rhe'nus River, 305.

Rhodes, head of Rhodian League, 184; centre of Hellenistic culture, 184.

Rhodian League, formation of, 184.

Riç'i-mer, Count, 441.

Rimini (rē'mē-nē), 589.

Roderic, Visigothic king, 578.

Ro-ga'tions, meaning of term, 104, n. 3.

Roland, famous paladin, 590.

Roma, temple of, 363.

Roma Quadrata, 42.

Roman citizens, number after Social War, 242; division in body of, after Social War, 243. See *Citizenship*.

Roman colonies. See *Colonies*.

Roman empire, definitely established by Augustus, 315; frontiers established by him, 320; greatest extent under Trajan, 358; public sale of, 373; its final division, 426; the Eastern, 426; Fall of the, in the West, 440; import of its downfall, 441; lack of unity in, 450-452; summary of the causes of its fall, 445-455; the empire in the East, 560-569; its services to civilization, 568; restored in the West by Charles the Great, 591-594.

Roman government becomes an undisguised monarchy under Diocletian, 381.

Roman law, 507-511; revival of, 558.

Romance languages, 553.

Romance nations, origin, 553.

Roman Peace (*Pax Romana*), 132 and n. 3; established in Gaul, 289.

Romanization, of Southern Etruria, 96; of Italy, 132, 133; of Gaul, 289.

Rome, early society and government, 11-23; under the kings, 39-60; its beginnings, 41; first enlargement, 42; three tribes in early city, 43; causes of early growth, 45; early commerce, 45, 46; early coinage, 46; growth of, under the Tarquins, 47-56; why called "City of the Seven Hills," 48; legendary account of its foundation, 57, 58; sacked by the Gauls, 96-100; its rebuilding, 100-102; compared with Carthage, 140-142; effect upon, of conquest of the East, 194; destroyed by the great fire, 344; rebuilt by Nero, 345; effects upon, of the founding of Constantinople, 397, n. 5; last triumph at, 428; ransom of, by Alaric, 430-432; sacked by Alaric, 432; by the Vandals, 438; import of its fall, 441; relation of fall, to universal history, 526; in the Gothic wars, 562.

Rom'u-lus, king of Rome, 46, 57, 59.

Romulus Augustulus, last emperor of the West, 441.

Roncesvalles (ron-thes-väl'yes), pass, 590.

Ros'tra, 49 and n. 8; origin of name, 121.

Rou-ma'ni-a, 356 and n. 2.

Rubicon River, 4; crossed by Cæsar, 293.

Ru-pil'i-us, P., consul, 209.

Ru-til'i-us, C. Marcius, first plebeian dictator, 104, n. 4.

Rutulians, prehistoric folk, 57.

- Sabbath, adopted as day of rest by Constantine, 395; Babylonian institution, 396, n. 3.
- Sabines, country of the, 2; settlement on Quirinal, 42; Roman youth seize Sabine women, 58; union of Sabine and Roman community, 59.
- Sacred colleges, election of members taken away from the people, 261. See *Colleges*.
- Sacred Games among the Romans, 35, 36.
- Sacred Mount, first withdrawal to, of plebeians, 68; second, 88; third, 128, n. 6.
- Sa-gun'tum, taken by Hannibal, 160.
- St. Angelo, Castle of, 475.
- St. Antony, 541.
- St. Augustine, mission to Britain, 538.
- St. Benedict, his Rule, 543.
- St. Bēr'nard, Little, pass, 163.
- St. Boniface (bōn'e-fāss), 540.
- St. Columba, 540.
- St. Gregory the Great, pope, 538, 548.
- St. Patrick, 539.
- St. Peter, martyr at Rome, 345; his primacy, 546.
- St. Simeon Sty-l'itēs, 542.
- St. Sophia, church of, 565, n. 4.
- Sal'a-mis, battle of, 143, n. 2.
- Sal'i-i, guilds of, 32, n. 3.
- Sallust, historian, 497.
- Sal-lo'na, 390.
- Samnite War, First, 116; Second, 121-125; Third, 126-128.
- Samnites, place in Roman history, 8; their part in the Social War, 240.
- Sam'ni-um, 2; depopulated by Sul-lan proscriptions, 256; settlement in, of adherents of Sulla, 256, 257.
- Sa'por, king of Persia, 378, n. 1, 414.
- Saracens, meaning of name, 575, n. 4.
- Sardinia, relation to Italy, 3; with Corsica, made a Roman province, 155.
- Sat'ur-na''li-a, 36.
- Sat'ur-ni''nus. See *Apulcius*.
- Saxons, on the continent, subdued by Charles the Great, 591. See *Anglo-Saxons*.
- Scæv'o-la, Mucius, 60.
- Scævola, Quintus Mucius, jurist, 508.
- Scandinavians mentioned, 534.
- Scipio, Gnæus Cornelius, in Spain, 176 and n. 3.
- Scipio, Lucius Cornelius (Asiaticus), 187.
- Scipio, Publius Cornelius, engages Hannibal, 164, 165; in Spain, 176 and n. 3.
- Scipio, Publius Cornelius (Africanus Major), in Spain, 176 and n. 3; defeats Hannibal at Zama, 178; his death, 190.
- Scipio, Publius Cornelius Æmilianus (Africanus Minor), at siege of Carthage, 203; at siege of Numantia, 205.
- Scipio, Publius Cornelius, Nasica, 217.
- Se-ja'nus, 337.

- Se-leu'ci-dæ, origin of, dynasty, 182, n. 7.
- Se-leu'cus Ni-ca'tor, 182, n. 7.
- Sem-pro'ni-us, Tiberius, 164, 165.
- Senate, Roman, under the kings, 18; tabulated facts respecting number of members, competence, etc., 107; senators compared to English peers, 220; power restored by Sulla, 258; ex-quæstors given seats in, 259; number of members increased to about six hundred, 259; given by Sulla the initiative in legislation, 260; number of members raised to one thousand by Antony, 318; reduced to six hundred by Augustus, 318; shorn of all real power by him, 318; new men given seats in, by Augustus, 318; Tiberius confers upon, right to elect magistrates, 334; admission to, of Gauls, 341; stronghold of the pagan cults, 422.
- Senate-house in regal Rome, 50.
- Sen'e-ca, moralist, Nero's tutor, 344; his teachings, 501; letter to a mother, 515; death, 501.
- Sen'o-neſ, Gallic tribe, 342.
- Sen-ti'num, battle of, 127.
- Sepulchral monuments, 474.
- Se-re'nus, Sam-mon'i-cus, 504, n. 6.
- Ser-to'ri-us, Quintus, proprætor of Farther Spain, 266, n. 1; his character, 265, 266; wide scope of plans, 266; his assassination, 268.
- Servian reforms, 54-56.
- Servile War, First, 207; Second, 230.
- Ser-vil'i-us Glaucia, 231 and n. 5 his death, 233.
- Servius Tullius, builds walls of Rome, 48; his reforms, 51-56; five classes of, 51; four new tribes created by, 52.
- Seven Hills, the, 45.
- Se-ve'rus, Alexander, emperor, 377.
- Severus, Septimius, reign, 373; disbands prætorian guard, 374.
- Seville (sev'il), 578.
- Sextus, Roman governor, 252.
- Shiraz (shē'rāz), 378, n. 1.
- Sib'yl-line books, 32; number of keepers raised to ten, 104; prophecy in, 157; burned, 255.
- Sicily, relation to Roman history, 2; at the beginning of the First Punic War, 142; battlefield of the nations, 143; conquest of, by the Romans, 144; becomes a Roman province, 154; First Servile War in, 207; Second, 230.
- Sil'a-rus, defeat of gladiators at, 270.
- Silk culture introduced into Europe, 563, n. 3.
- Slavery, in early Rome, 15; condition of slaves in Sicily, 207-209; merges into serfdom, 386, 445, 524; disastrous effects of, upon Roman society and government, 445; effects on population, 447; general statements respecting, 523-525.
- Social War, 240-242; comments

upon, 242; effects upon the municipal system, 244.
So'ci-i. See *Italian allies*.
 Soissons (swās'sōn'), battle of, 532.
 Solon, his reforms at Athens, 55.
 Solway Firth, 360.
 Spain becomes Romanized, 206; conquered by the Saracens, 578.
 Spä-li'to, 473.
 Spar'ta-cus, leader of gladiators, 269; his death, 270.
 Spu-rin'na, astrologer, 302.
 Statius, poet, 493, n. 10.
 Stephen II., pope, 589.
 Stil'i-cho, Vandal general, drives Goths from Greece, 427; defeats them at Pollentia, 427; his triumph, 428; withdraws legions from Britain, 436; death, 430.
 Stoicism, relation to civic virtues, 453; represented by M. Aurelius and Epictetus, 504.
 Su-bu'ran, city district, 52, n. 10.
 Sue-to'ni-us, biographer, 499.
 Sue'vi, 287.
 Suffe'tes, Carthaginian magistrates, 140.
 Sulla, Lucius Cornelius, in Jugurthine war, 226; in Social War, 241; given command against Mithradates, 250; marches upon Rome, 250; embarks for the East, 251; campaign against Mithradates, 253; exacts indemnity from cities of Asia, 254; returns to Italy, 254; war between him and the Marian party, 254; massacres Samnite prisoners, 255; his proscriptions, 255-258; effects of these, 257; made

dictator, 258; his constitution, 258-262; its breakdown, 262; his abdication and death, 262; results of his dictatorship, 263.
 Sullan constitution, 258-262; its overthrow, 270-273.
 Sul-pic'i-us Rufus, Publius, tribune, 250.
 Sulpicius, Servius, orator, 494.
 Sy-a'gri-us, Roman governor, 532.
 Sym'ma-chus, 422.
 Syracuse, early Greek colony, 10; its possessions at beginning of First Punic War, 142; forms alliance with Carthage, 172; fall of, 173, 174.
 Syria, dominion of the Seleucidæ, 182; made a Roman province, 281; subjugated by Arabs, 575.
 Syrtis, Greater, 139.
 Tacitus, emperor, 379.
 Tacitus, historian, 499.
 Tā'gus, river, 580.
 Taras. See *Tarentum*.
 Tarentum, Greek colony, 10; war with Rome, 128-131; character of inhabitants, 128.
 Tar-pe'i-a (-ya), 103, n. 9.
 Tarpeian Rock, 103, n. 9.
 Tar-quin'i-i, Etruscan city, 8, 111.
 Tar-quin'i-us Priscus, king of Rome, 46.
 Tarquinius Superbus, king of Rome, 47; his expulsion, 56; attempts to reinstate himself in Rome, 64-66.
 Tar'ra-co-nen'sis, province, 321, n. 8.
 Ta'ti-us, Sabine king, 59.

- Taxation, Roman, land tax abolished, 188; made more oppressive by Constantine's administrative reform, 401; in the later empire, 446; effects on population, 447.
- Tel'a-mon, battle at, 157.
- Te-lem'a-chus, monk, 429.
- Ter'ence, dramatist, 484.
- Terentilian rogation, 84, n. 6.
- Ter'en-til'i-us Harsa, Gaius, 84, n. 6.
- Ter-tul-li-an, Church Father, 453.
- Tetrarchy (tět'rärk-y), 385, n. 6.
- Teutoburg Wood (toi'tō-börg), scene of defeat of Varus, 323; location of, 323, n. 1.
- Teu'to-nēs, 226-229.
- Teutons. See *Barbarians*.
- Thap'sus, battle of, 296.
- Theatres, Roman, construction, 459; entertainments of, 516; immorality of the stage, 516.
- Thebarmes, 566.
- The-mis'to-cles, 194, n. 5.
- The-o-do'ra, empress, 560.
- The-od'o-ric, king of the Ostrogoths, 529.
- Theodoric, king of the Visigoths, killed at Châlons, 437.
- Theodosius I., the Great, emperor, reduces Goths to submission, 421; zeal for the Church, 421; the "Destroyer of Paganism," 424; defeats Eugenius, 424; orders massacre at Thessalonica, 425; bows to Bishop Ambrose, 425, 426; sole emperor, 426; divides the empire, 426.
- Theodosius II., emperor, 425.
- Ther'mæ, Roman, description of, 467-470; baths of Diocletian, 469; of Caracalla, 469.
- Thes'sa-lo-ni''ca, massacre at, 425.
- Thirty Tyrants, the, 378.
- Tiber River, 4.
- Tiberius, emperor, reign, 334-339.
- Tiberius, stepson of Augustus, in Germany, 322, 323.
- Ti-bul'us, poet, 492.
- Ti'bur, situation, 40; in Latin war, 120.
- Ti-ci'nus, battle of the, 165.
- Tities, tribe in early Rome, 43, n. 11.
- Titus, emperor, at siege of Jerusalem, 347; reign, 349, 350.
- Tiv'o-li. See *Tibur*.
- Toga, the, 513 and n. 2.
- Toledo, 578.
- Tours (toor), 578.
- Tragedy, little esteemed at Rome, 516.
- Trajan, emperor, reign, 354-360; his Dacian campaigns, 355; expedition against the Parthians, 357, 358; his patronage of the arts, 359; letter from Pliny the Younger respecting the Christians, 360; death, 360.
- Tras'i-me''nus Lake, battle at, 165.
- Treason, the *Law of Majestas* under Tiberius, 336; the law abolished, 354.
- Tre'bi-a, battle of the, 165.
- Treb'i-zond, 566.
- Tribes, as divisions of the Roman community, 17; the three original, in early Rome, 17, 43; the four Servian, 52 and n. 10; made up at first of freeholders,

- 52; number raised to twenty, 83, n. 3; number raised to twenty-one, 83; distinction between city and rural tribes, 83, n. 3; non-landowners enrolled, 96, n. 4; number increased to twenty-seven, 121, n. 14; number brought up to twenty-nine, 121; to thirty-one, 126, n. 4; to thirty-three, 126 and n. 4; brought up to thirty-five, the maximum number, 244, n. 12.
- Tri-bo'ni-an, jurist, 509.
- Tribunes, military, with consular power, creation of office, 91; abolished, 104.
- Tribunes, plebeian, first, 69, number, 69; duties, 69; their right of aid, 69; sacrosanct character, 70; importance of the creation of the tribunate, 70; germs of mischief in the office, 70; acquire the right to sit within the senate hall, 89; tabulated facts respecting, 109; their right of veto, 214, n. 4; Gracchan law makes legal reelection without an interval, 219; power lessened by Sulla, 259, 260; penalty imposed for abuse of right of intercession, 260; disqualified for holding curule offices, 261; prerogatives restored by Pompey, 272; powers absorbed by Augustus, 317.
- Triumph, last at Rome, 428.
- Triumvirate, First, 285; Second, 304-307.
- Truceless War, the, 158.
- Turnus, king of Rutulians, 57.
- Tusculum a *municipium*, 112, n. 6; Cato's birthplace, 196.
- Twelve Tables, the, 83-87; influence of, 87.
- Tyne (tin), the, 360.
- Tyr-rhe'ni-an Sea, 2.
- Ūl'fi-las, apostle of the Goths, 536.
- Ū'pi-an, jurist, 508.
- Ulpian Library, 359.
- Um'bri-a, 2.
- Umbro-Sabellians, 6-8.
- Ū'sus, Roman form of marriage, 12, n. 8.
- Utica, becomes leading city in Africa, 204.
- Vadimonian Lake, 124, n. 2.
- Valens, emperor, 416, n. 7; admits Visigoths within the empire, 418; refuses to admit the Ostrogoths, 419; his death, 420.
- Val'en-tin'i-an I., emperor, 416, n. 7; his death, 417.
- Va-le'ri-an, emperor, 378, n. 1.
- Valerio-Horatian laws, 88-90.
- Va-le'ri-us, Lu'ci-us, consul, 88.
- Valerius, Publius, consul, secures passage of the *Lex Valeria*, 66; treats with insurgent plebeians, 69.
- Vandals, in Pannonia, 435; in Spain, 435; in Africa, 435; sack Rome, 438; persecute African Catholics, 531; kingdom destroyed by Justinian, 531.
- Varro, the writer, 500.
- Varro, Gaius Terentius, consul, 169, n. 7; at Cannæ, 170; thanked by senate, 171.

- Varus, Quintilius, defeated by Arminius, 322.
- Veientians ensnare the Fabii, 78-80.
- Veii (vē'yī), Etruscan city, 8; siege and capture, 93-96.
- Ven'e-ti, the, 287.
- Ve-ne'ti-a, 1.
- Venetians, 6, n. 3.
- Venice, mentioned, 5; its beginnings, 437, 438.
- Venus, temple of, at Rome, 363.
- Ve-nu'si-a, Latin town, 237.
- Ver-cel'la, battle at, 228.
- Ver-cin'get'o-rix, 288.
- Verden (fēr'den), massacre of, 591, n. 2.
- Vergil, mentioned, 326; life, 487, 488; works, 488-490.
- Ve-ro'na, battle at, 427.
- Ver'res, proprætor, his scandalous misgovernment of Sicily, 273, 274; his prosecution by Cicero, 274.
- Vespasian (ves-pā'zhi-an), Flavius, emperor, reign, 347-349.
- Vesta, worship of, 30; temple of, 30, 50.
- Vestals, the, 30; house of, 30, n. 1.
- Vesuvius, eruption of, destroys Pompeii, 350.
- Veturius, T., consul, 121.
- Vī'a Aī-mil'i-a, 158, n. 3; Ap'pi-a, construction begun, 125; tombs along, 474; Fla-min'i-a, construction of, 157; its course, 463; Sacra, 51.
- Victory, statue of, removed from note hall, 221.
- Villas, when palaces are so designated, 471; description, 473.
- Vin'do-bo'na, 368.
- Virginia, plebeian maiden, 87.
- Vir'i-a'thus, Lusitanian chief, 205.
- Visigoths, cross the Danube, 417-421; revolt under Frigerich, 420; reduced to submission by Theodosius, 421; invade Italy, 427; second invasion, 430-433; after sack of Rome, 434; at Châlons, 437; establish kingdom in Spain, 530; kingdom destroyed by the Saracens, 578.
- Vi-tel'li-us, emperor, 347.
- Volsicians, border wars with Rome, 75, 76, 77.
- Volsinii, Etruscan city, 8.
- Voting, manner of, in Roman assemblies, 19.
- Wallia, king of the Goths, 434.
- Winfrid. See *St. Boniface*.
- Witiges, Ostrogothic king, 562.
- Wit'i-kīnd, 591.
- Woman, social status of the Roman wife, 513; divorce, 513.
- Xan-thip'pus, Spartan general in Carthaginian service, 148, n. 6.
- Xeres (há-rēs'), battle of, 578.
- Yoke, symbol of submission, 81 and n. 9.
- Za'ma, battle at, 178.
- Ze'la, battle at, 296.
- Zeno, emperor of the East, 441.
- Zenobia, Queen of Palmyra, 379.
- Zoroaster, 566.

